

तमसा मा ज्योतिर्गमय

VISVA BHARATI  
LIBRARY  
SANTINIKETAN

D. G.

942

M 128















# MACAULAY HISTORY OF ENGLAND

From the Accession of James II

## CHAPTER III

( The State of England in 1685 )

*With Introduction, Synopsis of English History,  
Notes, Explanations, etc.*

GENERAL EDITOR :  
Prof. M. Sen, M.A.

**Sen, Ray & Co.,**  
*BOOK-SELLERS & PUBLISHERS*  
15, College Square.  
CALCUTTA

1931

PUBLISHED BY  
N. C. MUKHERJEE,  
*for* MESSRS. SEN, RAY & Co.,  
15, COLLEGE SQUARE,  
CALCUTTA.

(Copyright reserved by the publishers.)

PRINTED BY R. K. GUHA,  
AT THE SEN PRESS,  
6, SHIBNARAIN DAS LANE,  
CALCUTTA.

## CONTENTS

SUBJECT	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	
Life of Macaulay	i
Chief events of Macaulay's Life	vii
Macaulay's personal appearance	viii
Macaulay's love of walking	viii
Macaulay's reading habits	ix
Macaulay's wonderful memory	xi
Macaulay's labours in the cause of Indian Education	xii
Macaulay as an Essayist	xiii
Macaulay as a Historian	xviii
General characteristics of Macaulay's writings	xxiv
Macaulay's Style	xxviii
<b>MACAULAY'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND :</b>	
History of composition and publication	xxxi
Merits	xxxiii
Demerits	xxxiv
<b>A SHORT SYNOPSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY</b>	xxxvii
<b>A FULL ANALYSIS OF THE TEXT</b>	xlv
<b>TEXT</b>	1—271

### *MACAULAY'S OWN TABLE OF CONTENTS*

Great Change in the State of England since 1685	1
Population of England in 1685	6
The Increase of Population greater in the North than in the South	10



SUBJECT	PAGE
Revenue in 1685	15
Military System	22
The Navy	35
The Ordnance	49
Noneffective Charge	50
Charge of Civil Government	52
Great Gains of Courtiers and Ministers	53
State of Agriculture	59
Mineral Wealth of the Country	68
Increase of Rent ; the Country Gentlemen	73
The Clergy	84
The Yeomanry	101
Growth of the Towns ; Bristol	103
Norwich	107
Other County Towns	109
Manchester	113
Leeds	114
Sheffield	115
Birmingham	117
Liverpool	119
Watering places : Cheltenham, Brighton, Buxton...	121
Tunbridge Wells	122
Bath	125
London	128
The City	131
The Fashionable Part of the Capital	141
Police of London	150
The Lighting of London	152
White Friars	154
The Court	156
The Coffeehouses	161

SUBJECT	PAGE
Difficulty of Travelling ... ..	169
Badness of the Roads ... ..	172
Stage Coaches ... ..	181
Highwaymen ... ..	186
Inns ... ..	191
The Post Office ... ..	195
The Newspapers ... ..	199
The Newsletters ... ..	199
The Observer ... ..	206
Scarcity of Books in Country Places ... ..	208
Female Education ... ..	210
Literary Attainments of Gentlemen ... ..	213
Influence of French Literature ... ..	215
Immorality of the Polite Literature of England ... ..	218
State of Science in England ... ..	231
State of the Fine Arts ... ..	243
State of the Common People ; Agricultural Wages ... ..	243
Wages of Manufacturers ... ..	253
Labour of Children in Factories ... ..	256
Wages of different Classes of Artisans ... ..	257
Number of Paupers ... ..	259
Benefits derived by the Common People from the Progress of Civilisation ... ..	262
Delusion which leads Men to overrate the Happi- ness of preceding Generations ... ..	268
NOTES ... ..	1—456
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS ... ..	457—488
MAPS	
England and Wales	
The County of London	







LORD MACAULAY

## INTRODUCTION

### 1. LIFE OF MACAULAY

Thomas Babington Macaulay was born at Rothley Temple in Leicestershire in 1800. Birth and parentage. He was remarkably fortunate in the circumstances of his life and was happy in the possession of God-fearing but tender parents who could wisely train their gifted child without spoiling him by over-indulgence. His mother knew the right method of bringing up her children by combining a firm discipline with love and affection. Early in his life she taught him the useful lesson that he should mend his compositions after due thought and reflection. She wrote to advise him when at school that he was to spare no time or trouble to render each piece as perfect as he could and then he was to leave the event without any anxious thought. For a facile writer like Macaulay this advice proved invaluable in his later life. His father, Zachary Macaulay, was one of that inner circle through whose diligent labours and self-sacrifice the cruel system of slavery was abolished throughout the British Empire. The elder Mr. Macaulay had acquired his knowledge of the evils of the slave-system as the manager of a slave-plantation in Jamaica and this knowledge induced him to give up a lucrative career in order that he might devote himself wholly to the interest of the slaves. The son of such a man grew up in an atmosphere of devotion to public duty and of ceaseless labour for objects entirely unselfish.

Macaulay's education might be said to have begun at a private school kept by Mr. Preston. He was sent there when he was 12 years of age and remained there for five years. Already he had given some instances of his wonderful precocity and he is said to have written portions of a heroic poem even before he came to school. Moreover, he is said to have begun a history of the world while he was yet in his teens. He had one great asset in his unerring memory which enabled him to remember the contents of a page which he had simply glanced at. In his later life he is reported to have said that if the *Paradise Lost* were destroyed, he could restore it from memory. Again, it was in these early years that Macaulay developed that passion for study which played so prominent a part in his later life.

In 1818 he was sent to Trinity College, Cambridge, where he gained considerable distinction although he was once plucked for his distaste for mathematical studies. He secured the Craven scholarship, gained other medals and prizes and made his mark as a good classical scholar. He was elected a fellow of Trinity in 1824. But more important than these literary attainments was the influence of the assembly of undergraduates in whose company he was thrown during these university days. Some of those young men were not unworthy to measure themselves against him and among these we might notice H. N. Coleridge, Praed, the wit and poet, and Charles Austin. From these men Macaulay learnt that there were many ways of looking at great problems and he thus passed the bounds of the narrow prejudices of his early age.

Macaulay was called to the bar soon after he left Cambridge ; but his literary life may be said to have begun before this.

Beginnings of public life.

He had already gained prizes for two English poems and while he was still at the University he contributed regularly to *Knight's Quarterly Magazine*. His first contribution to the *Edinburgh Review* was an *Essay on Milton* which won for him a sort of a meteoric fame. The connection with this paper was continued for nearly twenty years and the product is a collection of literary compositions, one of the richest that a journal can boast of. But this journalistic fame was valuable to Macaulay in another direction for it opened to him the door to politics. In 1830 he entered the House of Commons as the Whig member for Calne and his oratorical power soon raised him into prominence. His first speech, that on the Reform Bill, showed the stuff that he was made of and it began to be remarked that this clever man was more at home with his tongue than even with his pen and the rapidity of speech suited his impetuous genius more than literary composition. But he did not relinquish his labours in the latter direction during these years of political activity. A genuine man of letters as he was, he felt that the days and nights spent in the House of Commons were lost to literature. Thus while he was discharging his official duties and making his mark in society as one of the cleverest wits and talkers of the days, he wrote for the *Edinburgh Review* papers of such merit as those on "*Hallam's History*" and "*Lord Chatham*."

It must not be imagined, however, that Macaulay was moving along a smooth path of worldly life with no experience of domestic events.



of its thorns and miseries. The firm of which his father was the senior partner had failed and the burden of maintaining the whole family had fallen on Macaulay's shoulders. Thus he had to struggle with poverty all these years and was glad to accept a seat on the Supreme Council of India in 1834.

Macaulay came out to India with the avowed intention of making money. But during  
 Indian career. the four years that he was out here he did at least two things worth noticing. As President of the Committee of Public Instruction he introduced the system of Western education through the medium of English in place of the oriental system used in the past, and it is only to-day that the good of an English medium is being questioned. As Professor Walker has put it, "He had an overweening confidence in the wisdom of the West and did not adequately appreciate the enormous difficulty of replacing an ancient civilisation by another." But the system is here even now for good or for evil. His other great Indian work can be praised in a more unqualified way. It was he who drafted the Indian Penal Code, which, revised by his successors, came into operation in 1862. Eminent lawyers like Sir James Fitz-James Stephen have borne emphatic testimony to the thoroughness of this work and the grasp it shows of criminal law. So it must be said that he set his stamp very deeply on the progress of India and as Mr. Woodrow says "seldom does it fall to one man to be at once the chief Educator and the chief Lawgiver of a vast nation." —After four years of residence in India, Macaulay returned to England in 1838 with means which enabled him to be independent for the rest of his life.

After his return to Europe he went out for an Italian tour and at the end of this he was elected to the House of Commons as a member for Edinburgh and appointed a cabinet minister as the Secretary of War. The fall of the Whig ministry in 1841 deprived him of his office but he remained a member of Parliament till 1847. It was in this year that he lost his seat in consequence of his tolerant attitude with regard to the Roman Catholics. The previous year he had been given the post of the Paymaster-General ; but he lost it along with his seat. This apparent loss, however, was greatly beneficial to him inasmuch as it left him free to devote himself to literature. Already in 1842 he had brought out his *Lays of Ancient Rome*, a volume of stirring verse which though not ranking among the highest poetry, well deserved its popularity and has since commended itself to all classes of readers. A vigour and directness of speech, a singular purity of diction and a clear impression of the subject-matter go to make up for the absence of the higher poetic qualities. This work was followed in 1843 by a collective edition of the *Essays* reprinted from the *Edinburgh Review* and in the next year his connection of twenty years with that paper ceased.

Now the plan which he had before formed of writing a history of England began to materialise. He had intended to write a history of England from the Revolution of 1689 to the Passing of the Reform Bill in 1832. But actually he began from James II\* (with several preliminary chapters) and the first two volumes came out in 1848. The success of the book was immense and nearly 20,000 copies were sold off within a few months after publication. But great as this success was, it was

eclipsed by that of the next two volumes of 1855, of which the whole edition of 25,000 was sold off before being printed. In the meanwhile the people of Edinburgh had offered him the seat he had lost in 1847 and he was returned for the city in 1852. But though he re-entered Parliament, he refused a seat in the Cabinet and gave up active politics for good. Other honours came showering on him. He was raised to peerage in 1857 as Baron Macaulay of Rothley and public assemblies of various countries sought to honour him. But his health had suffered a break-down in 1852 and he never completely regained his energies after that. On the 28th of December, 1859, he passed away and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

Throughout his active political career he was one of the most prominent figures in the intellectual society of London. He was everywhere famous for the brilliancy and copiousness of his talk, though the impression produced depended in a considerable measure upon the character and the mood of the listener. It is said that Charles Greville, the author of the *Greville Memoirs*, nearly dropped from his chair in astonishment when he discovered that the ordinary-looking man beside him was Macaulay. Again when Carlyle was told who it was that had monopolised the conversation, he held up his hands with the exclamation, "Eh! the Honourable Tom! was *that* the Honourable Tom?"

Macaulay was very happy in his domestic life. We have already noticed the influence of his parents in moulding his mind. He was never married and he was devotedly attached to the families of his brothers and sisters,—particularly

to his sister, Lady Trevelyan, who edited the last volume of his History from the Mss. left by him.

### Chief Events of Macaulay's Life.

<i>Dates.</i>	<i>Events.</i>
1800	Birth.
1812—'18	School-life.
1818—'25	Cambridge-life.
1824	Fellow of Trinity.
1825	<i>Essay on Milton.</i>
1826	Called to the Bar.
1830	Entered Parliament.
1834	<i>Essay on Lord Chatham.</i>
1834	Acceptance of Indian post.
1838	Return to England.
1839	Re-entered Parliament.
1840	War-Secretary.
1841	Loss of office.
1842	<i>Lays of Ancient Rome.</i>
1842	<i>Essay on Frederick the Great.</i>
1843	<i>Essay on Addison.</i>
1843	<i>On Chatham</i> (2nd vol.).
1843	Collected edition of <i>Essays</i> .
1847	Loss of Parliamentary seat.
1848	History of England, Vols. I and II.
1852	Re-election to Parliament.
1855	History of England, Vols. III and IV.
1857	Raised to peerage.
1859	Death.
1861	Posthumous publication of History, Vol. V.

### **Macauley's personal appearance.**

"Macauley's outward man was never better described than in two sentences of Praed's Introduction to *Knight's Quarterly Magazine*. 'There came up a short manly figure, marvellously upright, with a bad neckcloth, and one hand in his waistcoat pocket. Of regular beauty he had little to boast; but in faces where there is an expression of great power, or of great good humour or both, you do not regret its absence.' This picture, in which every touch is correct, tells us all that there is to be told. He had a massive head, and features of a powerful and rugged cast, but so constantly lit up by every joyful and ennobling emotion that it mattered little if, when absolutely quiescent, his face was rather homely than handsome. While conversing at table no one thought him otherwise than good-looking; but when he rose, he was seen to be short and stout in figure. "At Holland House, the other day" writes his sister Margaret in September 1831, "Tom met Lady Lyndhurst for the first time. She said to him: 'Mr. Macauley, you are so different to what I expected. I thought you were dark and thin, but you are fair, and really, Mr. Macauley, you are fat'." He at all times sat and stood straight, full and square, and in this respect Woolner, in the fine statue at Cambridge, has missed what was undoubtedly the most marked fact in his personal appearance. He dressed badly, but not cheaply. His clothes, though ill put on, were good, and his wardrobe was always enormously overstocked."—*Trevelyan*.

### **Macauley's love of walking.**

"Macauley was utterly destitute of bodily accomplishments and he viewed his deficiencies with supreme

indifference. He could neither swim nor row, nor drive, nor skate, nor shoot. He seldom crossed a saddle and never willingly. When in attendance at Windsor as a cabinet minister he was informed that a horse was at his disposal. "If her Majesty wishes to see me ride," he said "she must order out an elephant." The only exercise in which he can be said to have excelled was that of threading crowded streets with his eyes fixed upon a book. He might be seen in such thoroughfares as Oxford Street and Cheapside, walking as fast as other people walked, and reading a great deal faster than anybody else could read. As a pedestrian he was indeed above the average. Till he had passed fifty he thought nothing of going on foot from the Albany to Clapham and from Clapham on to Greenwich; and while still in the prime of life, he was for ever on his feet indoors as well as out."—*Trevelyan*.

### Macaulay's reading habits.

"He spent the time during his voyage (to India) in a very characteristic manner, by reading all the way. "Except at meals" he said "I hardly exchanged a word with any human being. I devoured Greek, Latin, Spanish, Italian, French and English; folios, quartos, octavos, duodecimos." He always had an immoderate passion for reading, on which he never seems to have thought of putting the slightest restraint. When in India he writes to his sister, Mrs. Cropper, saying that he would like nothing so well as to bury himself in some great library, and never pass a waking hour without a book before him. And as a matter of fact, except when engaged in business or composition this seems to have been what he actually did. He walked about London

reading ; he roamed through the lanes of Surrey reading and even the new and surprising spectacle of the sea—so suggestive of reverie and brooding thought—could not seduce him from his books. His appetite was so keen as to be almost indiscriminating. He was constantly reading worthless novels which he despised. Once he is shocked himself, and exclaims in his diary : “Why do I read such trash?” One would almost say that his mind was naturally vacant when left to itself, and needed the thoughts of others to fill up the void. How otherwise are we to account for the following extraordinary statement under his own hand. He was on a journey to Ireland :—

I read between London and Bangor the lives of the emperors from Maximian to Carinus, inclusive, in the Augustan history. . . . We sailed as soon as we got on board. I put on my great coat and sat on deck during the whole voyage. *As I could not read*, I used an excellent substitute for reading. I went through *Paradise Lost* in my head. I could still repeat half of it, and that the best half.

\* \* \* \*

His acute intellect and nimble fancy are not paired with an emotional endowment of corresponding weight and volume. His endless and aimless reading was the effect, not the cause, of this disposition. While in India he read more classics in one year than a Cambridge undergraduate who was preparing to compete for the Chancellor's medals. But this incessant reading was directed by no aim, to no purpose—was prompted by no idea on which he wished to throw light, no thoughtful conception which needed to be verified and tested. *Macaulay's omnivorous reading is often referred to as if it were a title to honour ; it was far more of the nature of a defect.*—Morison.

**Macaulay's wonderful memory.**

"The secret of his (Macaulay's) immense acquirements lay in two invaluable gifts of nature—an unerring memory and the capacity for taking in at a glance the contents of a printed page. During the first part of his life he remembered whatever caught his fancy without going through the process of consciously getting it by heart. As a child, during one of the numerous seasons when the social duties devolved on Mr. Macaulay, he accompanied his father on an afternoon call, and found on a table *The Lay of the Last Minstrel*, which he had never before met with. He kept himself quiet with his prize while the elders were talking, and, on his return home, sat down upon his mother's bed, and repeated to her as many cantos as she had the patience or the strength to listen to. At one period of his life he was known to say that, if by some miracle of Vandalism all copies of *Paradise Lost* and the *Pilgrim's Progress* were destroyed off the face of the earth, he would undertake to reproduce them both from recollection, whenever a revival of learning came. In 1813 while waiting in a Cambridge coffee room for a postchaise which was to take him to his school, he picked up a country newspaper containing two such specimens of provincial poetical talent as in those days might be read in the corner of any weekly journal. One piece was headed "Reflections of an Exile"; while the other was a trumpery parody on a Welsh ballad, referring to some local anecdote of an ostler whose nose had been bitten off by a filly. He looked them once, through and never gave them a thought for forty years, at the end of which time he repeated them both without missing—or as far as he knew, changing—a single word."—*Trevelyan*.



Trevelyan adds in a foot-note on the above that Macaulay told Jeffrey that he believed he could repeat everything of his own he had ever printed and nearly all he had ever written except perhaps some of his college exercises.

### **Macaulay's labours in the cause of Indian Education.**

"The post (of the President of the Committee of Public Instruction) was no sinecure. It was an arduous task to plan, found, and construct, in all its grades, the education of such a country as India. The means at Macaulay's disposal were utterly inadequate for the undertaking on which he was engaged. Nothing resembling an organised staff was as yet in existence. There were no Inspectors of Schools. There were no training colleges for masters. There were no boards of experienced managers. The machinery consisted of voluntary committees acting on the spot, and corresponding directly with the superintending body at Calcutta. Macaulay rose to the occasion, and threw himself into the routine of administration and control with zeal sustained by diligence and tempered by tact. "We were hardly prepared" said a competent critic "for the amount of conciliation which he evinces in dealing with irritable colleagues and subordinates, and for the strong, sterling, practical common-sense with which he sweeps away rubbish, or cuts the knots of local and departmental problems." The mastery which a man exercises over himself and the patience and forbearance displayed in his dealings with others, are generally in proportion to the value which he sets upon the objects of his pursuit. If we judge Macaulay by this standard, it is plain he cared a great deal more for providing our Eastern Empire with an

educational outfit that would work and wear, than he ever cared for keeping his own seat in Parliament or pushing his own fortunes in Downing Street. Throughout his innumerable Minutes, on all subjects from the broadest principle to the narrowest detail, he is everywhere free from crotchets and susceptibilities ; and everywhere ready to humour any person who will make himself useful, and to adopt any appliance which can be turned to account."—*Trevelyan*.

As President of the Committee of Public Instruction Macaulay had to attend to drawing up of lists of suitable books for prizes. He makes in this connection the following interesting distinction between prize books and school books. "There is a marked distinction between a prize book and a school book. A prize book ought to be a book which a boy receives with pleasure and turns over and over not as a task but spontaneously. I have not forgotten my own school-boy feelings on this subject. My pleasure at obtaining a prize was greatly enhanced by the knowledge that my little library would receive a very agreeable addition. I never was better pleased than when at fourteen I was master of Boswell's *Life of Johnson*, which I had long been wishing to read. If my master had given me, instead of Boswell, a Critical Pronouncing Dictionary or a Geographical Class Book, I should have been much less gratified by my success."—*Trevelyan*.

### Macaulay as an Essayist.

Macaulay's essays are philosophical and historical disquisitions embracing a vast range of subjects ; but the larger number and the more important relate to English history.

To understand the characteristics of Macaulay as an essayist it will be convenient to classify the essays in the following groups after Mr. Morison:—

- (1) *English History.*
- (2) *Foreign History.*
- (3) *Controversial.*
- (4) *Critical and miscellaneous.*

(1) This is the most important group and if the essays are arranged chronologically they may be said to form a fairly complete survey of English history from the days of Elizabeth to the closing years of George III's reign. They number twelve ; and these twelve essays (on Burleigh, Hampden, Milton, Temple, Walpole, Pitt, Chatham, Hallam, Mackintosh, Clive and Warren Hastings) may be regarded as a sort of preparation for the great work on history. He here confined himself to that period of history to which he had devoted much time and attention ; and made these the means for the expression of his individual political opinions. The partisan spirit of Macaulay has to be noted below and we may just mention here that there are sometimes veiled references to contemporary events in the discussion of past history. The essays are naturally unequal in merit and one of the weakest is that on *Burleigh and his Times*, while that on *Hallam's Constitutional History* is one of the best. For the Pitts, both father and son, Macaulay had a genuine admiration and so he wrote of them with greater sympathy and insight than in any other case. The papers on Clive and Warren Hastings should also be interesting to the Indian student.

(2) In this group we get five essays on Machiavelli, Mirabeau, Von Ranke, Frederick and Barère. Of these that on Ranke's *History of the Popes* is undoubtedly the best, while the *Mirabeau* is quite good in its own way.

(3) The four papers are on Mill, Saddler, Southey and Gladstone and the article on Southey is undoubtedly the most attractive.

(4) Here we have the essays on Dryden, Bunyan, Johnson, Bacon, Addison, Montgomery, Hunt and Byron. With regard to his literary criticisms Macaulay says "I am not successful in analysing the work of a genius..... I have never written a page of criticism on poetry or the fine arts which I would not burn if I had the power." After this confession of the writer one does not want to examine these papers and dissect their faults and defects.

Having considered the essays in particular, let us now try to arrive at some general estimate of the merits and defects of the whole volume.

Defects : i. Want of critical element.	Macaulay has been reproached for the absence of the critical element in his essays ; but such a criticism is beside the point for he never pretended to seriously bring in his critical faculty.
--	--

Take for example, his essay on Frederick. It is ostensibly on Campbell's work on *Frederick the Great and His Times* but beyond the first and the last paragraphs there is no reference to the work. It is all Macaulay upon Frederick and the essay is not to be regarded as a review or a piece of literary criticism. That Macaulay had the genuine critical faculty is shown by his destructive criticisms on Montgomery and some passages in his essays on Addison and D'Arblay. But he seldom chose to exercise this faculty,—he loved to evade the task of literary analysis, and to treat the subject from the historian's point of view instead.

Although we are not to look upon Macaulay as a critic, some points in the *Essays* may be noted as they give us a knowledge of the nature of the writer, and the most important point in this connection is the conservativeness of judgment which he displays. He never displays enthusiasm for any writer whose methods are irreconcilable with those sanctioned by time. He was later than others in coming under the new influences of the age ; and although he was a voracious reader there are very few references to contemporary writers. He did not learn German until he was nearly forty years old and then too it was not from any sense of admiration of that literature.—Herein might be pointed out a great difference between Macaulay and Carlyle. The latter was essentially a romantic,—his genius sought inspiration from Scandinavian more than from Greek mythology and thus he was a force for change in literary ideals. Macaulay was, however, a classic and not a romantic ; he leant more to Latin than to Teutonic inspiration. In English literature Milton was his ideal more than Shakespeare, Addison more than Carlyle.

Macaulay was essentially unphilosophical and nothing can illustrate this better than his treatment of Baconian philosophy which is tainted with a shallow materialism. The contrast he draws between Bacon and Aristotle would have been impossible to anyone with tolerable ideas about the aim or the method of philosophy. Macaulay shows his great weakness when he holds up Aristotle as an example of an unfruitful speculative life for it is doubtful if any man produced so much "fruit" as Aristotle.

ii. Conservative nature of writer,—  
classicism.

iii. Absence of philosophical spirit.

It has been pointed out in connection with Macaulay's treatment of Johnson and Frederick that his handling was merely superficial. We may say generally that Macaulay had not the power to understand the essence of individual character. He can give admirable descriptions of externals and he can understand motives of actions ; but he has not the penetrating gaze and the creative gift which enabled Shakespeare and Scott to create life-like figures of history.

Macaulay was a severe critic of his own essays. He thought most of them immature and written in the heat of the moment for his own generation and not meant to be transmitted to future days. For this reason he did not want to bring out a collective edition of the essays but to leave them as contributions to a periodical. We must, however, rejoice that pressure was applied on the author and he was forced to bring out such an edition. No such collection has ever been so brilliantly successful and very few deserved success so much. It has been one of the most widely useful works of the nineteenth century and has served to entertain multitudes of various shades of people. For many thousands of minds the volume has been *an admirable introduction to history* and this is a service too great to be over-estimated.—Moreover the essays are *intensely interesting* because of the *multiplication of illustrations* from every age and country. There are few books that touch so many *diverse subjects* and hence it has a sort of universal charm and attraction.

The matter of style is not brought in here separately, as it will have to be discussed at length elsewhere. Suffice it to remember that the style is always the man and has contributed not a little towards the merits and defects of the work. -

### Macaulay as a historian.

“History” says Macaulay, “at least in its state of ideal perfection, is a compound of philosophy and poetry. It impresses general truths on the mind, by a vivid representation of particular characters and incidents. But in fact the two hostile elements of which it consists have never been known to form a perfect amalgamation ; and at length in our own time they have been completely and professedly separated. Good histories, in the proper sense of the word, we have not. But we have good historical romances and good historical essays.” (*Essay on Hallam*).

From the earliest times two elements of history have been recognised,—the element of fact and the element of artistic handling which makes the facts attractive. We know that the earliest forms of history partook mostly of the nature of myth or legend and in them the element of fact was reduced to a minimum. Art ruled without restraint and accuracy of representation was not valued by any of the ancient writers, neither by Herodotus nor Thucydides, neither Livy nor Tacitus. But the scientific study of history came into prominence in the 18th century and history began to be studied with new eyes. Historians began to penetrate the past not

for composing graceful narratives but for collecting accurate and verifiable knowledge. The artistic element in history was degraded and a simple unadorned statement of accurate results was thought to be the aim of scientific history.

Macaulay passed his youth in the atmosphere of this change in the ideal of history, but the movement did not find favour in his eyes. His conservative nature came into evidence and he resolved to ignore this trend and even to oppose it. He determined to unite the two elements of history and clearly stated what his plans were. According to him "history should be a true novel" fit for "interesting the affections and presenting pictures to the imagination. It should invest with the reality of flesh and blood beings whom we are inclined to consider as personified qualities in an allegory ; call up our ancestors before us with all their peculiarities of language, manners and garb ; show us over their houses, seat us at their tables, explain the uses of their ponderous furniture." This was the plan which he proceeded to carry out in his *History* ; he went on to make history concrete and individual, "to invest it with flesh and blood, and make it more capable of stirring the emotions." While his contemporaries were trying to make history more scientific, Macaulay went boldly backwards and proceeded to dignify artistic history as it had been in the ancient past.

The ideal he had formed led him to work on a gigantic scale, for to produce his effects, extreme minuteness of detail was necessary. Life-size portraits of the characters had to be brought forward,



events were to be fully related and the interest of the narrative kept up by individual anecdotes. So, his work could not be meant to show a process of social growth and it could only deal with a very limited period of human history. Thus although the writer's original plan was to produce a history of England from the days of James II to the reign of George IV (a period of nearly one hundred and fifty years), he succeeding in bringing down his history only through fifteen years. But this does not show that he failed to achieve the task he had set before himself. On the contrary, if history is to rival the novel in personal interest, unexpected bulk must ensue. Macaulay had no idea that he would be so prolix, but he could not reduce his scale without sacrificing his ideal of artistic history.

Next we have to investigate how far he was able to achieve success in his novel method. He himself was confident that he had improved on his predecessors. He says "There is merit, no doubt, in Hume, Robertson, Voltaire and Gibbon. Yet it is not the thing. I have a conception of history more just, I am confident, than theirs."

No student of his History will deny that his confidence was well-grounded. The story of England had become a complex thing in his hands,—it had a complexity while preserving *clearness and unity of purpose*. We follow his scenes as in the pages of a drama; the whole seems to have been carefully planned and united as the different acts of a play and the thread of the story runs on without any break or pause. The writer sometimes digresses from the main line of his narrative, but he manages the matter so skilfully that the reader is not aware of any pause or transition. No

iii. Miscellaneous merits.

historian before him had resolved to *treat historical events on the lines of a novel or romance* ; no one had ever seen that the scattered fragments of truth might be worked into a production that might rival the creations of fancy. No one had been able to use 'details as he did and wherever a new personage was introduced or a new place named, the subject was immediately made more vivid with biographical facts, with a description of the place, with a reference to its past history. Nothing was too trivial or unimportant for his wonderful memory to retain and supply. The reader is occasionally tempted to think that the details are flung together at haphazard ; but no mere medley could have produced the effect the book has done. Macaulay has embodied in his pages *an astonishing number of facts*, but he has, at the same time, shown the skill of making them no longer hard or dry but interesting as the episodes of an adventure-novel.

He was always fired with an *enthusiasm for his subject* and his industry in the *collection of materials* was immense ; while his *narrative vigour and picturesque description* contribute not a little to the success of his famous 'History.'

Macaulay wrote to one of his friends when he set himself to the composition of his History that he would not be satisfied unless his work superseded the last fashionable novel on the tables of the young ladies. His work more than fulfilled this aim. Immediately after its publication Macaulay's History became the most popular work of the day and continues to be popular till now. Every one both high and low was loud in its praise. The most interesting compliment came from a party of working men near Manchester who proposed a vote of

thanks to the author "for having written a book which working men can understand".

Macaulay belonged to the Whig party in English politics and he was a staunch political partisan. It may be said indeed that few great historians are free from this defect of partisanship, but that is no justification of the fault. Moreover it must be confessed that there is nothing particularly praiseworthy in his objects of admiration. The English Whigs are quite a useful body of people ; but there is nothing intellectually great or morally inspiring in them to lift them up to the rank of heroes. The fact is this that Macaulay could best understand such men and so he is more than fair to them.

Defects :  
i. Political partisan-  
ship.

A more serious defect is his occasional misrepresentation of facts and the unreliableness of his verdicts on the characters he portrays. Macaulay cannot certainly be recommended as a safe guide for a beginner. Though not guilty of intentional unfairness he was unjust in his pronouncements on men and even races of which he did not heartily approve. He had the greatest scorn for fools and knaves. This led him perhaps unintentionally to overload them with faults of which they were not really guilty. His picture of Marlborough may be mentioned as an instance of this habit. Sometimes from artistic considerations he adds touches of his own here and there so that he might create villains to serve as foils for his favourite heroes. The crowning example of this habit is to be found in his infamous picture of the Bengalis in his essay on Warren Hastings. As Mr. Morison says :— "His (Macaulay's) need of lighter and darker shades caused him to make colours when he could not find

them ; his necessities as an artist forced him to correct the adverse fortune which had not provided him with the tints which his purpose required."

Macaulay has little reflective power. As Gladstone said, "Macaulay is always conversing, or recollecting or reading or composing, but *reflecting never*." The History appeals strongly to our imagination through the variety of facts and the colouring of details. But it has little charm for the reason, the intellect of the reader which goes away empty and dissatisfied. The reason is this that while he is a master of the art of narration, he is totally careless about the classification of facts. Taken up as he is with the dramatic and picturesque setting of the details he pays little attention to generalising them,—to comprehending them in abstract statements. As an example we might refer to his painting of the events of the Stuart period. He has described many phases of it with wealth of detail, but he has not reproduced the import and historical meaning of the period.

His diffuseness has already been referred to—prolixity of details also repetition of the same idea in varieties of forms. While the average historian endeavours to cultivate brevity, he labours to be prolix and redundant. He wants to describe the change that came over the ideals of the Tories after the trial of the bishops (in James II's reign) and he requires six pages to give his ideas.

This is what Leslie Stephen calls Macaulay's habit of "blocking the chimney." He is not satisfied with mere statements of facts that are clear to everybody but elaborates them at great length with frequent repetitions and wealth of examples.

It has been contended that Macaulay did not possess the genuine historical spirit. This is best illustrated by a reference to his attitude towards the past. He gives elaborate and picturesque sketches of the past as if this is the only function of the historian. He seldom or never offers an explanation of its origin or accounts for its character. The most important duty of a historian is rightly held to be an examination of the play of the various forces that have led to the gradual evolution or decay of societies. Judged by this standard Macaulay is found to be sadly wanting. His History of England is a brilliant picture of the Stuart and the Revolution periods and nothing more. It explains neither the forces which lay behind them nor those which helped their development into the England of his day. When he goes to explain a past period, he is not content with simply describing and analysing it or even with comparing it with other periods. He will try to bring it beside the period in which he lives and thence disparage the former. He will never compare a period with its previous stages but he will bring in his contemporary England and show how far that is superior to what he has been looking at.

In conclusion we may say that if he is inferior to the greatest historians, he is inferior to them alone. He has not the breadth and range of Gibbon; he has not the poetic gift of Carlyle; he has not the keen wisdom of Tacitus. But he is a consummate master of narrative and in this respect he is surpassed only by Herodotus.

### **General characteristics of Macaulay's writings.**

It is difficult to arrive at a correct estimate of Macaulay's genius even to-day. After the flood of contemporary fame had subsided, a wave of reaction set in

as in the case of Byron and Pope, and it was quite what might be expected. Even now the balance has not been restored, and there are, as it were, two classes of Macaulay's critics. His admirers always think of the brilliant qualities in which he has hardly ever been surpassed; his censors, on the other hand, pass over these qualities with haste and point to grave defects which, according to them, are incompatible with real greatness. No correct estimate of Macaulay's genius is possible until each party is made to adopt his opponent's view without giving up the truth in his own criticisms.—We shall here simply point out, some characteristics of his and leave the reader to arrive at an estimate for himself.

The first great quality that we have to notice is his power of narration. As Mr. Morison puts it, "Macaulay's great quality is that of being one of the best story-tellers that ever lived, and if we limit the competition to his only proper rivals, the historians, he may be pronounced the *best* story-teller..... He kindled a fervent human interest in past and real events which novelists kindle in fictitious events. He wrote of the 17th century with the same vivid sense of present reality which Balzac and Thackeray had when they wrote of the nineteenth century, which was before their eyes." This quality of vivid narration appeals to readers of all classes and it fascinated Macaulay's contemporaries making them lavish the highest praise on his works.

Next we come to his power of entertaining the reader and engaging his interest. Dr. Johnson said "you have done a great deal when you have brought a boy to have entertainment from a book." This

Merits :  
i. Power of story-telling.

ii. Power of interesting readers.

Macaulay has done for a vast number of boys and men as well. He is never absolutely dull and on the other hand never too lively and stimulating. If we try to understand how a man can make his works interesting we shall seldom succeed in our task. Macaulay himself did not understand the secret as he somewhere confesses..... "where lies the secret of being amusing? and how is it that art and eloquence and diligence may all be employed in making a book dull?"—We may however suggest two grounds for the secret of this charm of Macaulay: (1) He is deeply interested in the subjects that he handles. He is straightforward and frank in his dealings with the reader and thus communicates the interest he himself feels. (2) He has the power of putting himself in perfect agreement with his reader by being neither too fast nor too deep for ordinary intellects.

This quality leads us on to another characteristic of his,—his clearness of language and thought. He never follows a trend of thought in which the slightest obscurity is involved. Thus he brings his ideas within easy reach of everyone and no one feels any difficulty in mastering his thoughts. As Mr. Morison puts it: "He is never vague, shadowy and incomplete. The reader is never perplexed by ideas imperfectly grasped, by thoughts which the writer cannot fully express. Again, he does not want to soar into the higher regions of thought; and so although he may have lost the esteem of some intellectual persons, for the average reader he is all the more attractive." It has been well said of him that "he is one of the most entertaining but also one of the least suggestive of writers."

iii. Clearness and  
lucidity.

We might next refer to his powers as a historical artist. The great difficulty in all historical compositions is this that while we are drawing the picture of a particular age we should not lose the connection between the whole and the parts,—the details should be kept in subordinate relation to the whole narrative. The historian cannot bring in all the materials of his picture at once, but he has to draw them one by one. While he has to do this, he has also to keep up the unity of the narrative in which all these isolated details are harmoniously grouped together and each is assigned its proper place.

We may here also refer to his powers of brilliant illustration and his capacity of bringing perfectly natural images at his will to exemplify what he means to say. This is a point which will be dealt with at full length in connection with Macaulay's style and we need here simply to refer to his gorgeous similes and historical allusions which open out new avenues of thought for us. He is one of the most entertaining writers not simply because of his bare narrative but also because of his power of ornamentation.

Turning to the general demerits of his writings we may first mention his air of omniscience in all matters. Whatever may be the topic of discussion he pronounces his opinions in a domineering way as though he can never be mistaken. Lord Brougham satirically remarked of him, "I wish I could be as cocksure of anyone thing as Tom Macaulay is of everything." Now so far as the command of facts is concerned, he might well assume this attitude, for he had

iv. Historical artist.

v. Powers of illustration.

Defects :

i. Air of certainty.



unerring memory and could reproduce facts with a wonderful precision. But when it comes to theories and opinions he makes sweeping statements that are glaringly false with the same air of certainty. This defect is more in evidence when Macaulay is led astray by his biased opinions on men and things. Then he pronounces his opinions with such a vehemence that even the most superficial reader may find out his tendencies and his desire to convince others of the truth of his own ideas and not of facts in themselves.

This habit becomes ludicrously prominent in his facile condemnation of speculative and moral philosophy. His dictum that the first shoemaker was a greater benefactor of his race than the author of the essay on Anger may be mentioned as an absurd illustration of this habit.

But the chief complaint against him is of a constant want of depth, both of sentiments and ideas. We have already referred to the latter want,—his poverty in intellectual stores. He expresses a contempt not simply for metaphysical and ethical speculations, but also for the important historical works of his own age. As regards the strength of sentiments too he was equally poor. The truth is that he almost wholly lacked the stronger passions. "A sweet affectionate tenderness for friends and relations was the deepest emotion he knew. This, coupled with his unselfishness, made him a most winning character to those near him, as it certainly filled his life with placid content and happiness. But there is no evidence of strong feelings in his story."

### **Macaulay's Style.**

It is always difficult to pick out the characteristics of a style like Macaulay's and put them in an intelligible

manner before the average Indian undergraduate. The following may be enumerated as some of the striking characteristics of his style.

First we must note that it was a new style and all critics are agreed on that point. Novelty and originality. "The more I think, the less I can conceive where you picked up that style"—this was Jeffrey's pregnant comment on the style of the essay on Milton. Real novelty of style enables us to understand the originality of a man's mind and we must say that Macaulay's style is an original thing about him. He was a born orator and a fluent talker; and he has imparted to written language a large portion of the flow and rush of spoken oratory. Generally fluent oratory makes bad reading; but Macaulay knew the art of transposing his thoughts from the language of spoken discourse to that of written prose without loss of effect.

This kinship with spoken oratory deprives Macaulay's style of genuine refinement and delicacy. Want of delicacy. The harmonies of the refined literary style cannot be appreciated by the multitude; and so oratory must do without these. As in the sphere of thought and sentiment, Macaulay avoided all height and depth and was content to march along the path of smooth commonplaces, so in the matter of style too he followed the common multitude and "the measures of Macaulay's prose are emphatically the measures of spoken deliverance,"—the spoken deliverance of the bar or the House of Commons.

What we have said in the last paragraph should not lead anyone to infer that his style is plain and simple, devoid of ornateness and imagery. Imaginative power. On the contrary, we must emphasise

the imaginative power and the splendour of his periods. We must also note the wealth of illustration and similes with which the lines are packed. As we have pointed out before, his powerful memory was of great help in this direction ; and classical and historical allusions and illustrations are natural enough with him.

Mr. Morison notes one or two curious incongruities with regard to Macaulay's style. He takes pains to avoid the commonplace and uses redundant expressions, but he is nevertheless invariably lively. Then again "the oratorical swing and rapidity which he undoubtedly possesses do not appear easy to reconcile with his short sentences and the mechanically regular strokes of his periods." Similarly his paragraphs do not grow from a central root of thought and sentiment but the sentences are piled up above one another.

Thus we may examine Macaulay's style from two different standpoints. We may consider it from the point of view of the grammarian or rhetorician, with reference to the choice of words or the rhythm of sentences. Or we may take it from a higher standpoint, that of the general effects and impressiveness of the whole composition,—the lucidity and coherence which make a book easy to master. From the former standpoint Macaulay lacks a good deal, but as regards the latter he has few superiors. Clumsy as he is in building a sentence, in building a chapter or an article he does not find any difficulties.

In conclusion we may say that though the colouring is brilliant, there are tricks and mannerisms, a tendency to exaggeration and a fondness for antithesis in Macaulay's style. At first the reader is swept away by admiration

of its liveliness, of its rush and brilliance, its fertility of illustration, its strength and effectiveness. But afterwards he becomes conscious of those defects which are so severely censured by Matthew Arnold. He finds that softer tones are wanting and that everything is painted in glare or in gloom. It is the style of an advocate who was to plead for a particular side and not of an impartial judge. All that tells on the side Macaulay is defending is heightened,—anything that is adverse is quietly passed over. Thus we may conclude with Prof. Walker: "The quiet purity of Goldsmith, the severe perfection of Landor, the long harmonies of Ruskin, are outside the range of Macaulay."

## MACAULAY'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

### History of composition and publication.

The career of William III took a strong hold of Macaulay's mind quite early in his life. He chose "the conduct and character of William" as the subject for the Greaves historical prize for which he competed as a Junior Bachelor. The essay is still in existence and its language strikingly resembles the style of his later work.

We may be certain that Macaulay had formed the idea of writing the history even when he was in India. Shortly after his return to England in 1838 he mentions the plan of his history in a letter to Napier, the editor of the *Edinburgh Review*. From this letter as also from other notes we gather that Macaulay intended to write a history of England from the Revolution of 1688 to the Reform Bill of 1832. It was to be made up of three parts,—the first taking the chronicle to the age of George I, the second extending it to the American War of Inde-

pendence and the third rounding off the whole with the Reform of the Parliament at the close of George IV's reign. Then Macaulay felt it necessary to add an introduction in the shape of a history of the reign of James II as also a sketch of the history of England to the days of Charles II.

This was the original plan, but the elaborateness of Macaulay's design and his ideal of history stood in the way of his completing the work. He wanted to impart to history the interest of a work of fiction and so he had to bring in a multitude of details and episodes at each point of his narrative. Thus the chronicle did not advance but grow up in bulk ; and in the end he could not complete even the first part of his projected work. It has been calculated that at the rate that Macaulay was progressing it would have taken him one hundred and fifty years to complete his work and this shows the impossibility of his project.

Macaulay must have begun the work in 1839 but for a time his political activities stood in the way of his work. After his loss of office in 1841 he was more free to devote himself whole-heartedly to his great work. This he did and brought out the first two volumes in 1848. The work had a phenomenal success with readers and 13,000 copies were sold off in three months. The next two volumes were even more successful and even before these appeared (in 1855), the whole edition of 25,000 was sold off. During the last four years of his life he managed to finish a fifth volume and take the history to the beginning of the 18th century but he did not live to revise and round off the part. This was done by his sister, Lady Trevelyan, and the volume was brought out posthumously in 1861.

## BRIEF CRITICISM OF 'THE THIRD CHAPTER OF MACAULAY'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

### Merits.

(1) *This is one of the most interesting chapters in the whole work.* Its composition imposed on the author according to his own admission very hard labour—as the materials had to be collected from innumerable detached sources. It is doubtful if any man not gifted with Macaulay's encyclopædic knowledge and tenacious memory could have been equal to this task. That he aimed at scrupulous accuracy about the details is proved by the abundance of foot-notes citing the authorities for his statements. Trevelyan's account of the way in which he obtained the correct figure for the population of Leeds in the 17th century would shew the elaborate care he took to ensure the accuracy of his work. Such scrupulous care and hard, uncomplaining industry could not but be well rewarded; and even his worst critics admit that the chapter is *a fairly accurate picture of England in the latter half of the 17th century.*

(2) *Secondly the picture of England that he draws is full and exhaustive.* He does not confine himself to any particular aspect of social life and activity or content himself with meagre details on any subject. He traverses the whole range and places before us *a full and living picture of the entire country and the whole field of national life.* The country, its appearance and produce, the revenue, the army, the navy, the capital and the towns, arts, literature, everything finds a place in the picture. The sketch besides is so life-like, clear and picturesque that one almost thinks that it is not the picture of England in a bygone age but the picture of a country that Macaulay had actually visited during *one* of his

travels, and the different features of which were carefully reproduced from his note-book.

### Demerits.

(1) *The most objectionable part of the chapter is that describing the social position and character of the country clergy. The attack was quite undeserved and uncalled-for ; hence it naturally gave offence to a large body of respectable men. Whatever justification might there be in support of the description of the clergymen, the attack on the character of their wives was most unchivalrous, to say the least. Any man not blinded by party-spirit might have shrunk from bringing such a grave charge against a whole class of respectable women on the strength of a single line in Swift. The clergymen were the strongest champions of Tory principles in the country and might have thus exposed themselves to Macaulay's wrath. His explanation was that no man who had his mind soaked in the lighter literature of the day could hold any other opinion. This explanation is far from convincing. Possible his artistic sense might have to some extent been responsible for the darkness of the picture. The Tory clergymen, lost to all sense of decency and honour, were perhaps intended to be a set-off against the high and unbending Tory gentlemen with their keen sense of honour and family-pride.*

(2) The other charge, brought against this chapter, refers to *Macaulay's manner of treatment*. This is an objection which this chapter shares in common with the whole work. And it is *due to Macaulay's deficiency in true historical insight and his defective point of view*. It has been well said that he views the past through the *wrong end of the telescope*. He is content with merely

unfolding the picture of England in the 17th century and triumphantly pointing out its comparative inferiority to the England of his day. *He neither seeks to trace the condition of England in the 17th century to the causes that lay behind it nor does he explain the forces that led to its development into the England of the 19th century.* This chapter has therefore been aptly compared to a budget-speech in which a statesman justifies the imposition of fresh taxes on the ground of the growth of the country in wealth and population.

---



## A SHORT SYNOPSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY

### (Up to the reign of Charles II)

*Students absolutely innocent of any knowledge of English history are advised to read the synopsis given below—it gives a very short but connected and chronological account of the important figures and events of English history up to and including the reign of King Charles II.*

**Celtic Britain and Roman occupation**—The Celts were in some respects semi-barbarous. They had reached a certain stage of civilisation. They tilled ground, kept herds of cattle, made pottery for household use and were divided into many tribes, each tribe having its own chief. These Britons worshipped many gods, and their priests, called the Druids, taught them that the soul was immortal and inspired them with courage and indifference to death.

The most powerful nation of these days were the Romans and their greatest general, Julius Cæsar, invaded Britain in 55 and 54 B. C. His stay in the island was very short on both occasions and he soon returned to Rome. In 43 A. D. the Roman Emperor, Claudius, sent his generals to invade England and, the whole of Southern and Eastern Britain was conquered in a short time. The government of England by the Roman governor, Suetonius Paulinus, is important and in his time, the island, Anglesey (then called Mona), was conquered, a rebellion headed by the British warrior queen, Boadicea, was quelled, and eighty thousand Britons were put to death. Julius Agricola who came to England in 78 A. D. completed the conquest of Britain, and the great stone wall of Hadrian was built in 121 A. D. to keep back the Picts and Scots. The Romans were in Britain for over 300 years and in 410 A. D. the Emperor Honorius being

hard pressed by barbarians/at home recalled the Roman army that was stationed in Britain.

## THE TEUTONIC SETTLEMENT

After the Romans had left, Teutonic races, who inhabited the middle of Europe, came down to invade Britain and they came over in three batches :—(1) The Jutes, (2) the Saxons and (3) the Angles. Vortigern, a British chief, who ruled over Kent, being hard pressed by the Picts and Scots, invited the Jutes. They came in answer to his invitation and having got rid of the invaders, turned their arms against the people. Hengist, one of the first leaders, was made king of Kent and was the ancestor of a long line of Kentish kings. The Jute invasion took place in 449 and the second Teutonic batch, the Saxons, came over in 477 and they were followed by the Angles in 519. The kingdom of Wessex was founded in 495 and that of Essex in 527. The Angles too founded the kingdoms of Northumbria, East Anglia and Mercia. So there were these seven distinct kingdoms, founded by the Teutons (known as the *Heptarchy*) ; Northumbria, East Anglia, Mercia, Sussex, Wessex, Essex and Kent. The ancient Celtic inhabitants were driven out of the land and those who survived were known as the Welsh (or strangers). Christianity was introduced with the coming of St. Augustine to England in 597.

The Northumbrians rose early to supremacy and they were succeeded by the Mercians under Offa. Then came the great kings of Wessex who styled themselves kings of England.

### Wessex line and Danish invasions

**Egbert**, who reigned from 802-839, was the first to become supreme lord of England.

The greatest of his successors was **Alfred** in whose reign, the Danes or Northmen came down to England in hordes and overran the land. Alfred was, for a time, driven out, but he ultimately got the better of the invaders and a treaty was concluded at Wedmore by which the land was divided between himself and the Danes. The reigns of his successors were unimportant except for the work of Dunstan, a clergyman, who was the chief adviser of three successive kings, Edred, Edgar and Edwy. In the reign of Ethelred the Unready, the Danes ravaged England with fire and sword and Sweyn, their leader, became king of England after driving out Ethelred. Sweyn was succeeded by his son Canute who ruled as an English king for 20 years. The Saxon rule was revived with the restoration of Edward the Confessor, son of Ethelred. He ruled for twenty-four years and on his death, Harold, a nobleman of the kingdom, was chosen as king by the Witenagemot or assembly of wise men which had some of the powers of the Parliament of to-day. Shortly afterwards William, Duke of Normandy, invaded England and after defeating Harold's army at the battle of Senlac (or Hastings), he was proclaimed king as William I.

## THE NORMAN CONQUEST

### The Norman Kings (1066—1154)

(1) **William I** (1066—1087)—He ruled England with severity and firmness, passed many punitive laws against the English and quelled all Saxon insurrections. He established the **Feudal system** by which land was given out to barons and tenants on condition of military service. The Domesday Book was prepared and it included a survey of England with regard to extent and value of land and population.

(2) **William II** (1087—1100)—He became king to the exclusion of his elder brother, Robert ; and his reign was unimportant except for wars with Scotland and Wales and contentions against the Church.

(3) **Henry I** (1100-1135)—He married a Saxon princess, Matilda, and he granted the Charter of Liberties to conciliate the Church, the Barons and the people. He ruled with the help of the Great Council or Magnum Concilium and the Curia Regis or the king's court, and on the death of his son he tried to secure the succession in favour of his daughter, Matilda.

(4) **Stephen** (1135—1154)—On the death of Henry, the people not wanting to be ruled by a woman, chose Stephen (a grandson of William I by his daughter) as the king. The first event was a Scotch invasion which was repelled. The rest of his reign was, however, taken up with fights with the Barons. Prince Henry, the son of Matilda, Henry's daughter, invaded England and was acknowledged by Stephen as his successor.

### **The Plantagenet Kings (1154-1399)**

(1) **Henry II** (1154—1189)—Henry's reign began with a struggle between the king and the clergy. The king wanted to curtail the privileges of the latter and drew up the Constitutions of Clarendon which placed the clergymen on the same level as laymen in some matters. In this connection, the king came into collision with Becket, the Archbishop of Canterbury, and the latter was murdered at Henry's instigation. Ireland was conquered chiefly through the efforts of Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, who became King of Leinster. The concluding years of Henry's reign were clouded by rebellions of his sons, Richard and Geoffrey, who were incited by their mother.

In this reign important constitutional changes were carried out: (1) The trial of criminals by Jury; (2) trial by touring justices and (3) payment of *scutage* or money by barons and tenants in place of military service.

(2) **Richard I** (1189—1199)—Richard I joined the Crusade, the expedition for the recovery of Jerusalem from the Turks, and showed great bravery in Palestine. While coming back, he was made a prisoner by the Archduke of Austria and ransomed on the payment of a huge sum. He continued a martial career and was mortally wounded while he was besieging a castle in France.

(3) **John** (1199—1216)—He was the youngest brother of Richard and came to the throne even though a son of his elder brother, Geoffrey, was living. This boy died mysteriously and Philip, king of France, asked John as his vassal, Duke of Normandy, to answer for his nephew's death. John refused and Philip thereupon took possession of Normandy. Thus the English king lost all his territories in France, and this ultimately proved to be England's gain. Then John came into a conflict with the Pope about the election of the Archbishop of Canterbury. As John did not obey the Pope's orders, the latter laid England under an interdict and excommunicated John, and asked Philip to depose him. John was frightened and had to submit. He showed the same weakness in his contention with the barons and the people and had to yield to the wishes of the latter in granting the **Magna Carta**, (*the great charter*)—which had embodied the essential principles of English freedom. John acknowledged here that the English king should never be a despot.

(4) **Henry III** (1216—1272)—John's son succeeded to the throne while a minor, and Pembroke was his guardian.

The years of his reign are a history of bad government and the Barons rose against him under Simon De Montfort. Henry was compelled to accept another charter of English privileges,—the Provisions of Oxford but refused to confirm it later. He was taken prisoner by Montfort at the battle of Lewes and for a year Montfort ruled the land. The first regular Parliament was convoked under him. Montfort was defeated and killed by Henry's son, Edward, a year later, and the latter went to a crusade.

(5) **Edward I** (1272—1307)—The main events of his reign were the conquest of Wales and the attempted conquest of Scotland. Scotland was reduced for a time, but Robert Bruce, the Scotch patriot, again gained in power.

The House of Commons became, under Edward I, more complete and developed.

(6) **Edward II** (1307—1327)—Weak monarch as he was, he was defeated by Bruce at Bannockburn, and at home the queen and her lover, Mortimer, intrigued against him. He was deposed and put to death through their instrumentality.

(7) **Edward III** (1327—1377)—**The Hundred Years' War** with France began through Edward's claim to the French throne. The first two campaigns were productive of conquests and John, the French king, was taken prisoner. English armies also marched into Spain and reinstated a deposed monarch on his throne. But the king's great son, the Black Prince, fell ill, and the French, gathering strength, dispossessed the English of the majority of their French possessions.

(8) **Richard II** (1377-1399)—The son of the Black Prince became king while a minor. He quelled the Peasants' rebellion under Wat Tyler and wanted to be an

absolute monarch. While he was absent on an expedition to Ireland, his cousin, Henry Bolingbroke, seized the throne. He was made a prisoner and done away with.

### **Lancastrian Kings (House of Lancaster)**

(1) **Henry IV** (1399—1412)—He quelled the rebellion of the Percies after defeating the Scotch in a great battle. The heir to the Scotch throne was long kept a prisoner in England.

(2) **Henry V** (1413-1422)—Reckless while a youth, he grew up to be the bravest king of England. He invaded France and defeated French armies in many battles one after another till the King had to marry his daughter to him and accept him as the heir to the throne.

(3) **Henry VI** (1422-1461)—He came to the throne when an infant of six months. The French people soon rose against English supremacy and drove the English out of almost all French towns. Then there were rebellions at home which were quelled. Finally Richard, Duke of York, claimed the throne and rose against the king. Then began the war known as the **Wars of the Roses**. Richard was killed at the battle of Wakefield but his son Edward completely defeated the king's forces at Towton and became king.

### **Yorkist Kings (House of York)**

(1) **Edward IV** (1461—1483)—Edward displeased a powerful nobleman, the Earl of Warwick, and was dispossessed of his crown by him. Henry was brought back for a year ; but Edward returned from Flanders with a strong army and defeated and killed Warwick at Barnet and again became king. Henry's son was killed at

Tewkesbury and he himself was done away with in the Tower.

(2) **Edward V** (1483)—Edward's infant son reigned for two months but was murdered at the instigation of Richard. Edward IV's brother, Richard, now became king.

(3) **Richard III** (1483—1485)—After a reign of terror for about two years, Richard was defeated and killed at Bosworth by Henry of Richmond who married the daughter of Edward IV and became king as Henry VII.

### **Tudor Kings and Queens**

(1) **Henry VII** (1485-1509)—A very powerful king—he quelled two rebellions and ruled the people despotically. He established the tyrannical court of Star Chamber and tried to consolidate his power in Ireland.

(2) **Henry VIII** (1509-1547)—One of the most arbitrary and cruel of English kings—he began his reign with a defeat of the Scotch at Flodden where the Scotch king was killed. *The wave of Protestant Reformation came to England and Henry followed the middle path between Catholicism and Protestantism.* The monasteries were suppressed. The King was declared the head of the English Church. Henry married six times and left three children, Edward, Mary and Elizabeth, who reigned one after another.

(3) **Edward VI** (1547-1553)—While Edward was the nominal King, the real power was in the hands of the Protector of the realm. Somerset was the first Protector and then Northumberland. The latter planned to continue his power by making Edward declare his cousin Lady Jane Grey, as his successor, while he married his son to her.



(4) **Mary** (1553—1558)—In spite of all Northumberland's plottings, Mary was proclaimed queen and Northumberland, Lady Jane and her husband were all executed. Then followed some *bitter days for the Protestants, who were burned wholesale at the stake by the orders of the queen who was a bigoted Catholic* and had married the Catholic king of Spain. On Mary's death her sister came to the throne.

(5) **Elizabeth** (1558-1603)—Her reign was a truly glorious one for England. *It was the final triumph of Protestantism over Roman Catholicism in England. It witnessed the establishment of the Church of England, the triumph of British adventurers abroad, the destruction of the great fleet (the Armada), which the Spanish king had sent against her and the golden age of English literature.* Mary, Queen of Scots, a rival claimant to the throne, was driven out of her kingdom and came to England to seek shelter. She was kept a prisoner and there were several plots for murdering Elizabeth and setting Mary on the throne. The latter was ultimately executed. Irish affairs gave trouble for a time but Lord Mountjoy settled affairs to a great extent. On the death of Elizabeth, the Scotch king who was the next heir to the throne (as he was the great grandson of Henry VII's eldest sister) became king.

### The Stuart Kings

(1) **James I** (1603—1625)—He was a weak, foolish and yet conceited monarch. He put great faith in his favourites, Robert Carr and George Villiers, and through their advice he wanted to rule without the help of Parliament. He did not want to have another war with Spain, and to conciliate the Spaniards executed the great explorer Sir Walter Raleigh.

(2) **Charles I** (1625-1649)—*Charles I wanted to rule arbitrarily and to exercise his powers independently of Parliament. For a time Charles had to submit and he had to accept in 1628 the Petition of 'Right'—“After that, so far as the law went, there was to be no more martial law.....no forced loans or taxes imposed without a Parliamentary grant, or imprisonment without cause shown”*—(Gardiner). His helpers in this ambition were first the Duke of Buckingham, and later on Strafford and Laud. For eleven years he had no Parliament but in 1646 he summoned one. *The quarrel between the King and Parliament began again and the Civil War commenced in 1642. The King was at first victorious, but the people found an able leader in Oliver Cromwell who led them to repeated victories at Marston Moor, Naseby etc. The King was at first imprisoned and then executed in 1649.*

**The Commonwealth** (1649-1660)—*After the execution of King Charles I, “the House of Commons declared England to be a Commonwealth without a King or House of Lords”*—(Gardiner). For eleven years there was no King in England, but Cromwell was practically the King. He also dispensed with the Parliament and ruled with the help of the army. After his death, however, his son Richard was not powerful enough to carry on his father's system and the late King's son was recalled and crowned King as Charles II.

(3) **Charles II** (1660-1685) and the Restoration—The accession of Charles II to his father's throne (thus bringing about the restoration of monarchy) after the fall of the Commonwealth is known as *the Restoration*. Charles II was a weak and licentious King who cared only for his pleasures. He let the people and the Parliament

do what they liked and himself enjoyed a secret pension from the French king. A Catholic at heart, he had not the courage to enforce his own ideas on the people. He died sonless and was succeeded by his brother James as King James II of England.

---

## A FULL ANALYSIS OF THE TEXT

### The purpose of the chapter.

Para 1. The purpose of this chapter is to give a description of England at the time of King Charles II's death.

### Great change that occurred in England since 1685.

Para 2. England at the date of Macaulay's bringing out this history (1848) was quite a different country from what it had been before. Experimental sciences are continually advancing and men have a natural tendency to improve their condition. Consequently human affairs tend towards progress in spite of gross misgovernment and serious natural calamities. The history of England has been one of continual progress during the last five hundred years—the advance having been very rapid and pronounced since the middle of the 18th century. This has been due to the favourable geographical position of the country and the character of her people. These saved her against the ravages of war and domestic revolutions from which the other European countries terribly suffered. But for the striking natural features and a few old edifices, the face of the country had undergone a wholesale change. Few could recognise the England of 1685 in the England at the date of this history. The face of the country as well as the dress and manners of the people were utterly changed.

### The population of England in 1685.

Para 3. The population of England in 1685 cannot be accurately ascertained because the system of periodically numbering the inhabitants had not come into use. People were left to their own conjectures and their estimates, influenced by their passions and prejudices, were ludicrously absurd. Even intelligent Londoners spoke of the city as containing several millions of inhabitants. On the other hand, there were writers of repute who held the population of England, Scotland and Ireland to be no more than two millions.

Para 4. Some means are available for arriving at a fairly correct decision on the subject. The three estimates that happen to exist

were formed independently of each other and yet they point to the same conclusion.

(a) *Estimate from hearth money.*

Para 5. Gregory King, Lancaster herald and a writer of acute judgment estimated the population at 5 millions and a half. His calculations were based on the returns of the officers who made the last collection of the hearth money in 1690.

(b) *Estimate from religious sects.*

Para 6. About this date King William III caused an inquiry to be made into the comparative strength of the different religious sects. Judging from these reports the population of England must have been about 5 millions and a half.

(c) *Estimate from parochial registers.*

Para 7. Mr. Finlaison, the actuary, computed the population to be a little under 5 million and two hundred thousand persons. His investigations into the old parochial registers of the country led him to this conclusion

Para 8. From the above estimates, formed by three persons independently of each other, it may be safely concluded that the population of England during the reign of James II was between five million and five million and five hundred thousand. England had then less than a third of her present population and less than three times the present population of her capital.

*Increase of population greater in the north than in the south.*

Para 9. The growth of population has been much greater in the north than in the south. A large part of the country in the north was in a decidedly backward condition. This was partly due to natural and partly to moral causes. The climate was severe and the soil required skilful cultivation. Besides, this part of the country was often the scene of war and subject to ravages by the Scottish marauders. Life and property in the north were quite unsafe till long after the union of the Scotch and the English crowns. Even in the reign of Charles II severe laws were enacted to put a stop to the raids of the Scotch mosstroopers. People lived in a state of constant preparation for an attack; their houses were fortified and the cattle were penned beneath some tower. The prevailing lawlessness of the country was reflected in the manners of the people.

Para 10. The establishment of peace in the north led to the development of industry and the arts of life. The discovery of rich coal mines and the establishment of factories attracted population northwards. The population of the archiepiscopal province of York, that had been only one-seventh of the entire population of England at the time of the Revolution, rose to two-sevenths in 1841. The increase of population in Lancashire was about ninefold while in the southern countries it was hardly double.

#### **Government revenue in 1685.**

Para 11. More accurate data are available about taxation than about population. England had a comparatively poor revenue at the time of Charles II's death—it was no more than three-fourths of the revenue of the United Provinces and was hardly one-fifth of the revenue of France.

#### *Excise. Customs. Hearth money.*

Para 12. The most important heads of revenue were the excise and customs producing net £5,85,000 and £5,30,000 respectively. These taxes were not felt to be burdensome. The tax on chimneys though less productive caused bitter discontent because direct taxes are always very unpopular. It was felt to be especially hateful because it led to domiciliary visits and secondly because it was collected in a harsh and odious manner, if not paid in time.

#### *Royal domains.*

Para 13. The revenue under the above heads, added to the income from the royal domains and other minor sources, amounted to a total of £14,00,000. Part of this revenue was hereditary and the rest had been granted to Charles II for life. Any saving that could be made by the curtailment of the expenses of administration, belonged to the King's privy purse. The profits of the Post Office had been assigned to the Duke of York.

#### **Government expenditure.**

Para 14. Out of this revenue, £80,000 was payable every year as interest on the sum fraudulently detained in the Exchequer by the Cabal. The interest on this debt was paid, so long as Danby was in office—though not so regularly as in modern times. After his fall no interest was paid on this debt. The regular payment of interest on the government debt was introduced into England after the Revolution.

Para 15. Small as the government revenue was in England it was sufficient with occasional help from France to meet the expenses of the government and the wasteful expenditure of the court. This was possible because the military charges were very light compared with those of the continental states. No one could travel a few miles on the Continent without coming across regiments of soldiers and fortifications erected on scientific principles. In England on the contrary, one could travel far and wide without finding any evidence of the existence of a regular army, and the majority of Englishmen, who were under twenty-five years of age, had never seen a company of regular soldiers. The cities were unfortified and the forts were in ruins. The tar-barrels on the sea-coasts and the inland hills had ceased to serve any useful purpose and served as curious relics of old manners and usages.

### The English military system.

#### (a) *The Militia.*

Para 16. The only army recognised by law was the militia. Two successive Acts of Parliament, passed after the Restoration, required persons to maintain a horseman or pikeman according to property qualifications. Societies of smaller proprietors were required to furnish a horse or foot-soldier according to their means. The whole army, thus raised, was estimated at 130,000 men.

Para 17. The King was, according to the old constitution of the realm and the recent pronouncement of the Parliament, the Captain-General of this force. The Lord Lieutenants and their Deputies, deriving their authority from the King, appointed the meetings for drilling and inspection. This period did not exceed fourteen days in a year. The crown had to bear no part of the ordinary cost of this army but had only to pay for the maintenance of the trainbands when they were called out for service against an enemy.

Para 18. The rude English militia compared very unfavourably with the well-drilled armies of the powerful continental states and roused the ridicule of competent observers. Patriotic Englishmen knew very well that a powerful standing army might prove dangerous to the liberties of the nation. Still they considered it unsafe to stake the independence of the country on such rude levies who would prove no match for the well-drilled French armies that might invade the shores of England. The existing system had, however, the support of both the parties in the English Parliament especially

the Tory landowners, who mostly officered this army. They were proud of their military ranks and remembered with horror the excesses committed by the standing army of the Commonwealth from which they had greatly suffered.

(b) *The Standing Army*

Para 19. Shortly after his restoration Charles II began to form a small standing army. The nucleus of this army was formed by the body of guards that he kept for his safety against the fanatical Puritans. He made gradual additions to this body with the growth of his revenues. This army received a considerable re-inforcement when the Tangier garrison was brought over to England.

Para 20. These were the beginnings of the great English army which in subsequent ages won its memorable victories in the different parts of Asia and Europe. The Life Guards had the charge of the safety of the King and of the royal family. It was composed of young men of good families and the privates were designated as gentlemen. Another body of household cavalry, called the Blues, was stationed near the capital. A body of dragoons, recently returned from Tangier, was also stationed near the capital. A troop of such soldiers was stationed near Berwick for the purpose of keeping peace in the borders. The dragoon is now merely a horse-soldier. In those days he was really a foot-soldier who used a horse only to arrive more quickly at the place where his services were necessary.

Para 21. Two regiments of household infantry, now called the Foot Guards and the Coldstream Guards, did duty near Whitehall and St. James's Palace. There being no barracks at the time the soldiers lived in alehouses.

Para 22. There were besides five other regiments of foot. The Admiral's Regiment was intended to serve on board the fleet. Two had served with distinction in the wars of the Continent—one under Gustavus Adolphus and the other under Maurice of Nassau. They were at length recalled from foreign service and placed on the English establishment.

Para 23. The remaining two regiments, now known as the second and fourth regiments of the line, had in 1685 just returned from Tangier. A few companies of infantry garrisoned Tilbury Fort and important stations like Portsmouth and Plymouth.



(c) *Arms.*

Para 24. The pike of the infantry was giving place to muskets since the beginning of the 17th century. By the end of Charles II's reign most of the foot-soldiers were armed with muskets though there was still a large number of pikemen. Every foot-soldier was armed besides with a sword for close fighting. The bayonet was coming into use under the name of dagger but it was not yet such a formidable weapon as it is now.

Para 25. At the beginning of 1685 the total strength of the English army was 7,000 foot and 1,700 horse. The cost of this establishment was £290,000 a year. The daily wages of soldiers varied from 4 shillings in the Guards to eight pence in the line. The law of the country knew nothing of courts martial and made no distinction between a soldier and any other subject in time of peace. Military discipline under such circumstances could not but be extremely lax.

Para 26. The liberties of Englishmen could not be subverted by the King with such a weak army. Nor could any help for the purpose be obtained from the Scotch and the Irish armies because they were not more than sufficient to keep in check the Protestant and Popish malecontents. Besides the above, six fine regiments, that the King had the power to recall at any hour of danger, were serving in the Netherlands.

**The English navy.**

Para 27. The navy was popular both with the Whigs and the Tories and they cordially supported in the English Parliament every measure to increase its power and efficiency. The latest exploits of the English army had been achieved over English princes and left painful memories in the minds of large classes of Englishmen. But the victories of the English navy had been won over the enemies of the country and were a source of pride and gratification to Englishmen of all classes and political views. Ever since the Restoration the Parliament even when most discontented voted large sums of money to increase the efficiency and power of the English navy.

Para 28. The English navy consisting of nine first rates, fourteen second rates and thirty-nine third rates looked formidable, no doubt, but it existed only on paper. The frightful corruption and the wastefulness of the government had reduced it to the lowest state of degradation and decay. The memorial drawn up by Pepys agrees with the report of Bonrepaux, the French expert, regarding

the inefficient condition of the English navy in those times. The newly built vessels were made of such wretched timber that they were unfit to go to sea—nay, some of them were so rotten that unless speedily repaired they would go down at their moorings. No care was taken for the punctual payment of the salaries of the sailors and their officers for which they had to undergo the utmost distress and hardship.

*(a) The naval and military services not separated.*

Para 29. No separation had yet been made between the naval and military services. Since ancient times the command of the navy was entrusted to generals who had distinguished themselves on land. This system was followed after the Restoration, and Monk and Rupert who were placed in charge of English fleets, were able generals who knew nothing of navigation.

Para 30. The separation, introduced between the two services in France, was not followed in England. In England the utmost corruption and jobbery prevailed in the appointment and promotion of naval officers. A man without any previous naval training would often be put in charge of a three-decker if he could enlist the favour of one of the King's mistresses. John Sheffield, Earl of Mulgrave, rose to be the captain of one of the finest vessels in the English navy when he was only twenty-three years old and before he had been three months afloat. The Mediterranean and Atlantic coasts were then infested by Barbary pirates so that merchants could trust precious cargoes only to the custody of men of war. The remuneration, received from merchants for escorting such ships, constituted the chief attraction of service in the English navy. The officers who owed the command of their vessels to the favour of the King, could with impunity disregard the orders of their superiors in the pursuit of these illegal profits.

*(b) Discipline of the navy.*

Para 31. Discipline was extremely lax throughout the whole navy. The Captain, backed by strong court influence, disregarded his superiors and was in his turn despised by the crew for his gross professional ignorance. The direction of navigation was therefore transferred from the Captain to the Master. Frequent disputes occurred between these officers because no precise line of demarcation between their duties was possible. Some of these aristocratic captains left the working of the vessels entirely to their subordinates

and cared only for their dissolute pleasures. These were in fact the least mischievous.

(c) "*Tarpaulin*" *Captains*.

Para 32. Amongst the naval commanders were some able officers who had risen to distinction from the lowest ranks by dint of merit. Sir Christopher Mings, Sir John Narborough and Sir Cloudesley Shovel were the best representatives of this class of officers. Men like these had upheld the honour of the English flag in spite of maladministration and the incompetence of superior officers. These men were thorough masters of the practical side of their profession but had never studied it as a science. They were without any education and their conversation and manners were rough. Indeed amongst the English naval officers of those times the seamen were not gentlemen and the gentlemen were not seamen.

Para 33. The annual cost of the English navy in this wretched condition was £400,000 though it could have been kept in an efficient condition for £380,000. The cost of the French marine was the same as that of the English, the cost of the Dutch navy was much greater.

**The Ordnance.**

Para 34. The charge of the English ordnance in the 17th century was much smaller than now. There were few engineers, no regiment of artillery and no college for teaching the scientific side of war. Mechanical contrivances for moving field-pieces were unknown and the rude apparatus for the purpose brought by William III excited universal admiration. The quantity of gunpowder, kept in stock, was only a twelfth of what is now considered necessary.

**Noneffective charge.**

Para 35. The whole effective charge of the army, navy and ordnance amounted to about £750,000. The noneffective charge can hardly be said to have existed. Only the Captains of first and second rate vessels were entitled to pensions and as many of these held good posts on land, the expenditure under this head amounted to very little. In the army only a small number of officers in two regiments enjoyed pensions. The hospitals for disabled soldiers and sailors had not yet come into existence. The whole noneffective charge did not exceed £10,000 a year.

**Charges of civil government.**

Para 36. The crown had to bear only a small portion of the costs of civil administration. The executive officers, like sheriffs, mayors and aldermen who were entrusted with the duty of maintaining order within the country, did their work\* without any remuneration. The judicial officers were supported by fees.

Para 37. The diplomatic service of the government\* was run in a most economical way. The only agent with the title of an ambassador resided at Constantinople and was partly paid by the Turkey Company. In the other European countries England was represented only by envoys. The whole expense under this head did not exceed £20,000.

**Great gains of Courtiers and Ministers.**

Para 38. The public services were starved in favour of the courtiers and ministers whose salaries must be pronounced to have been quite extravagant for that age. Considering the incomes of the peers, the bishops and the leaders of the bar\* of those times it would have been sufficient if an official were paid a fourth or fifth part of his present stipend. But in fact the salaries of the higher officials were as large as now and sometimes larger. Besides the grossest corruption prevailed in all branches of administration. Government officials from the highest to the lowest did not scruple to add to their emoluments by dishonest practices.

Para 39. In the 18th century no prime minister became rich in office and several of them impaired their fortune by maintaining its dignity. In the 17th century high posts in the administration were the shortest roads to wealth. Charles II's ministers derived enormous incomes from their offices. This explains the reason why they violently struggled for their posts and clung to them tenaciously in spite of humiliations and dangers. It has been a healthy practice in England that the emoluments of offices, instead of increasing with the growing wealth of the country, have positively diminished.

**State of agriculture.\*****(a) The amount of arable land.**

Para 40. There has been an enormous increase of the resources of the country during the last two generations. In 1685 the chief source of national wealth was agriculture. Yet agriculture was in a rude and imperfect condition and the total arable and pasture

land of the country did not amount to more than half its area. The rest of the country consisted of forests and moors, frequented by wild birds and beasts that have since become either extinct or very rare.

Para 41. The progress of the reclamation of the country can best be traced in the Statute Book. The number of enclosure acts, passed since the accession of George II, exceeds four thousand. It may safely be laid down that during little more than a century a quarter of the country has been converted from a wilderness into a garden.

(b) *Farming not skilful.*

Para 42. Even in the best cultivated parts of the country the system of agriculture followed was rude and defective. As a consequence of this the yield of the soil was very poor. The total quantity of wheat, rye, barley and other grains then grown amounted to less than ten million quarters but it now exceeds thirty millions. The yield of wheat was estimated at less than ten millions of quarters—and it could be consumed only by people in easy circumstances.

Para 43. The principle of rotation of crops was not understood, and it was not yet the practice to grow vegetables like the turnip for feeding cattle in winter. These animals were slaughtered in large numbers at the beginning of cold weather and people had to depend mostly on salted meat during winter.

(c) *Domestic animals.*

Para 44. The sheep and the cattle of that age were of a diminutive size when compared with those of the present. The English horses were then held in small esteem and foreign breeds were greatly preferred. The best horses of the day were imported from Flanders and Arabia. The need of the improvement of the English breed by the infusion of new blood was keenly felt and the animals best suited for the purpose were held to be those of Barbary.

**The mineral wealth of the country.**

Para 45. The only mineral wealth of the country consisted in the produce of the tin mines of Cornwall amounting to only a third of its present yield. The working of the copper mines was not considered worth the attempt though the annual output of the Cornish and Welsh mines now amounts to fifteen thousand tons. Salt was manufactured by a rude process; hence it was of poor quality and was believed to be injurious to health. Foreign salt was

imported for the use of well-to-do people. At present English salt not only supplies the national demand but is besides exported in immense quantities to foreign countries.

Para 46. Iron was manufactured from early times but this industry was not viewed with favour either by the public or the government. The manufacture of iron could be only on a very small scale because the employment of wood for smelting ore was forbidden by an Act passed in the reign of Elizabeth. At the close of the reign of Charles II the total output of iron did not exceed ten thousand tons and a large part of the iron used in England had to be imported from abroad.

Para 47. Coal was not used for the purposes of manufacture. It was used only as fuel in the coal districts and in London. The annual consumption of coal in London was three hundred and fifty thousand tons, *i.e.*, a tenth of what it is at present. The annual output of coal at present cannot be estimated at less than thirty million tons.

#### **Increase of rent.**

Para 48. There has been an all-round rise of rent. The increase has been different in different districts. It may be said to have quadrupled on the average.

Para 49. A large proportion of the rent was divided among the country gentlemen. Their influence shaped the history of the nation under critical circumstances.

#### **The character of the English country gentlemen.**

Para 50. The modern country gentlemen possess liberal education and varied accomplishments. Their tastes are refined by travels in foreign countries and prolonged residence in towns. Their refinements follow them into the country and their rural seats are models of good taste and comfort. The country gentlemen of the 17th century were a rude and unlettered class quite different in character from their present descendants. Their lands yielded only a quarter of what they now do as rent, consequently they had not the means to travel abroad or to visit the capital frequently. Their whole lives were spent on their estates in the company of grooms and gamekeepers and their learning was just sufficient to enable them to sign their names. Their tastes were rude and manners unrefined; their chief pleasures were derived from field sports and

coarse sensuality. Their ways of life were in every way different from those of their posterity.

Para 51. On account of their ignorance and inexperience of the great world the country gentlemen were men of narrow and violent prejudices! Their opinions on religion and government were as unreasonable as those of children because they were based on traditions current in their narrow circles. Their bitter prejudices against foreigners, Papists and Dissenters were not without their effects on the politics of the country. Their wives and daughters were very ignorant and with accomplishments not extending beyond the performance of their domestic duties.

Para 52. The country gentlemen with all their rough and boorish ways were gentlemen in some essential points. They had a strong sense of family pride and had all the virtues and vices of aristocrats. As magistrates they administered justice without any remuneration according to their lights and as officers of the trainbands they had a high sense of their own dignity. Besides the service they had seen had been no child's play. Their character was therefore a compound of two inconsistent elements. With their almost plebeian rudeness and ignorance they had a keen sense of honour and were strict about etiquette.

Para 53. The uneducated country gentlemen though staunch Tories (and as such loyal to the King) yet hated the King's ministers and the corruption that prevailed in the court. Yet they rallied round the King when his pampered favourites deserted him and enabled him to gain a victory over the opposition. They deserted King James II because he offended their deep-seated religious instincts by his attack on the Church of England. Though their love of this Church was not the fruit of study or reflection yet this was an institution which they loved better than even hereditary monarchy.

#### The clergy.

Para 54. The rural clergy were even fiercer Tories than the gentry. As the tithe then bore a smaller ratio to the rent than now the clergymen must have been relatively poorer than the gentlemen. The total income of the clergy did not exceed £540,000 a year, i.e., it was only one seventh of what it is now. As the average rent of land has not increased proportionally the rectors

and vicars, as compared with the knights and squires, were much poorer in the 17th than in the 19th century.

*(1) Change in their position since the Reformation.*

Para 55. The social position of the clergy was disastrously affected by the Reformation. (1) Before the Reformation, the clergymen formed the majority of the House of Lords and rivalled and sometimes excelled the temporal peers in wealth and splendour. The highest offices in the government were the monopoly of the ecclesiastics (clergymen); and the Church thus offered suitable careers for the youths belonging to the noblest families of the land. The suppression of the monasteries in the reign of Henry VIII deprived the Church of the greater part of her wealth; after this the princely splendour of the ecclesiastics became a thing of the past. (2) Secondly, after learning had spread amongst laymen, it was not considered necessary to appoint men in holy orders (clergymen) to high administrative offices. Under these altered circumstances a man's spiritual character, instead of being regarded as a recommendation for such officers, was viewed rather as a disqualification. Hence the Church lost its attraction for the ambitious youths of good families. The Church still contained a few prizes no doubt but these were mean when compared with the splendour enjoyed by the prelates of the older times. Accordingly few men of good families cared to enter the Church and gradually clergymen happened to be regarded as a plebeian class. A large number of the divines (clergymen) who could not maintain themselves on their benefices lived in the houses of laymen. This tended to degrade their calling (profession) in popular opinion. The domestic chaplains attached to the houses of the rude and ignorant country gentlemen were regarded as little better than menials.

*(2) Chaplains.*

Para 56. After some years of drudgery in a patron's household the chaplain was presented to a living. The nature of his matrimonial connection was the best index of his social position. No girl of any honourable family would accept a priest for her husband and he had to choose his wife from women of the humbler classes like waiting women and cooks.

*(3) Rural clergy.*

Para 57. When he was presented to a living the clergyman found it extremely difficult to maintain himself and his family in



comfort on its poor income. He found it impossible to make two ends meet even though he eked it out by hard manual labour on his fields. He had to lead a life of extreme penury and hardship and his children were brought up like those of the neighbouring peasants. He had not the means to buy books and intellectual culture was quite out of the question under such conditions.

(4) *The clergy at the Universities and in London.*

Para 58. The above description applied only to the rural clergy. The Church of England of course contained a number of ministers distinguished for their talents and culture. These were to be found only at the Universities, the great Cathedrals or in the capital where opportunities for intellectual culture existed. The pulpits of London were adorned by a number of distinguished ministers of whom any country might be proud. Amongst rural clergymen the only theological writer of repute was George Bull and Bull was able to produce his learned works because the estate he had inherited enabled him to collect a library.

(5) *Political opinions.*

Para 59. The Anglican priesthood consisted of two classes of men—one cultured, intelligent and scholarly and the other poor and rude, dispersed through the rural areas. The former leaned towards constitutional principles of government and lived on friendly terms with the Dissenters. The latter were narrow bigots who believed in the doctrine of passive obedience to the King and were bitterly opposed to all measures of toleration for the different nonconforming sects. These men though rude and poor and occupying a low rank in society exercised the most tremendous influence in the country. In the 17th century the pulpit held the place that the press does now and the country clergymen exercised their influence strongly on the Tory side. The Tory reaction that followed the dissolution of the Oxford Parliament was to a large extent due to the oratory of the rural clergy.

**The Yeomanry.**

Para 60. The influence of the country gentlemen and the rural clergy was to some extent counterbalanced by the power of the yeomanry. These were petty landed proprietors, who though enjoying a modest competence did not enjoy any gentlemanly rank. They were a spirited and a true-hearted race, who made up more than one-seventh of the entire population. Their average income

ranged between sixty and seventy pounds a year. They had fought on the side of the Parliament during the civil war and were bitterly opposed to Popery and arbitrary power.

### Growth of the English towns.

Para 61. The change that has taken place in the towns of England since the Revolution, has been more striking than the change that has taken place in the rural areas. Now one-sixth of the population is crowded into towns containing more than thirty thousand inhabitants. In the time of Charles II only four provincial towns contained as many as ten thousand inhabitants.

Para 62. The largest towns of that age next to London were Bristol, the first English seaport, and Norwich, the first manufacturing town. Since then the population of the former has quadrupled and that of the latter has doubled.

#### (1) *Bristol.*

Para 63. Pepys who visited Bristol described it as a city in which one might see nothing but houses around him on all sides. Bristol was the largest seaport of those times and the centre of trade with the American plantations (colonies). Its streets were so narrow that goods were generally conveyed in trucks drawn by dogs. The city was famed for its hospitality and the luxury of its table. All the inhabitants of the city had a share, large or small, in the trade with the American plantations or the West Indies. The practice of kidnapping labourers and shipping them off to the colonies was a recognised branch of the trade of the city. Its population at that time was about 29,000 persons.

#### (2) *Norwich.*

Para 64. Norwich was the capital of a fruitful province and was the centre of the chief manufacture of the country. It was the residence of a Bishop and was famous for the library and museum that had been collected by Sir Thomas Browne. The city contained the princely seat of the Dukes of Norfolk who kept an almost royal state. The population of the city in 1693 was between twenty-eight and twenty-nine thousand persons.

#### (3) *Other county towns.*

Para 65. The other county towns were greatly inferior to the above two. Still they had some dignity and importance because they served as the metropolis of the country gentlemen. They were

the seats of the courts of justice and were the centres of local trade from which the inhabitants of the district received their supplies. Some of these towns derived dignity from cathedrals and castles with rich historical associations.

Para 66. The more important of these provincial towns were York, Exeter, Worcester, Nottingham, Gloucester, Derby and Shrewsbury. None of these contained 10,000 inhabitants and some much less.

Para 67. The population of all these towns has greatly increased since the Revolution. They have been entirely rebuilt and are now far more prosperous. Yet their growth has not been so rapid as that of some younger towns of which no mention is to be found in early history.

*Some of the younger towns—(1) Manchester.*

Para 68. The most eminent of these towns was Manchester. It enjoyed the right of sending one representative to Cromwell's Parliament. In Charles II's reign it was known to be a thriving seat of cotton manufacture which was then in its infancy. The total annual import of cotton then did not amount to two million pounds. The city, which now excels many of the capitals of Europe in population and wealth, was then a mean ill-built town with a population under 6,000 inhabitants. It did not possess at that time a single press or a coach.

*(2) Leeds.*

Para 69. Leeds was the chief seat of woollen manufacture in Yorkshire. It had a thriving trade and was granted municipal privileges by Charles I. The town enjoyed the right of sending one representative to Cromwell's Parliament. The population of the town did not exceed 7,000 in Charles II's reign.

*(3) Sheffield.*

Para 70. About a day's journey south of Leeds stood an old manor on the border of a wild moor known by the name of Hallamshire. Iron abounded in that region and was manufactured into whittles from very early times. The trade languished for several centuries on account of the unwise restrictions placed on it by the lord of the manor, and finer kinds of cutlery were either made in the capital or imported from the Continent. In the reign of James I it was a miserable place containing about two thousand inhabitants. At the end of Charles II's reign the population was

below four thousand, many of the inhabitants having distorted limbs on account of the unhealthy nature of their work. This was the origin of the present prosperous town of Sheffield that contains a hundred and twenty thousand inhabitants and exports its excellent cutlery all over the world.

#### (4) *Birmingham.*

Para 71. It did not enjoy the right of sending any representative to Oliver's Parliament. It was a thriving place of manufacture and its hardware was highly prized in London and even as far as Ireland. The town had earned an unenviable notoriety for manufacturing spurious coins. The population of the town that now numbers about two hundred thousand, did not amount to four thousand in 1685. The manufacture of buttons had just begun but guns had not yet begun to be manufactured. The town did not contain a single book-shop though two generations later it astonished the librarians of Europe with its excellent Baskerville editions. \*

Para 72. The above four towns were the chief seats of manufacture in those times; many industrial towns of the present age were then mere hamlets or desolate moors, the haunts of wild birds and animals. Similar striking development has occurred in the ports by which the products of the English factories are exported all over the world. Liverpool which now contains endless docks and quays was then rising into importance and carried on a profitable trade with Ireland and the sugar colonies. The population of Liverpool that now numbers three hundred thousand, hardly exceeded four thousand in 1685. The shipping of the town amounted to fourteen hundred tons and the number of seamen did not exceed two hundred. .

#### *Watering places—(1) Cheltenham, (2) Brighton.*

Para 73. The progress that has taken place in the manufacturing and trading towns is also perceptible in the resorts of health and recreation. Cheltenham now so populous, was in the 17th century and at the beginning of the 18th a rural parish affording good ground for tillage and pasture. Brighton had once been a thriving place with over 2,000 inhabitants but was fast sinking into decay on account of the encroachment of the sea. It was reduced to a miserable fishing village and the place was so desolate, that the vicarage was scarcely thought worth having.

*(3) Buxton, and (4) Tunbridge Wells.*

Para 74. The gentry of Derbyshire and the neighbouring counties repaired to Buxton, a small village with low sheds where visitors were provided with suspicious meat. Tunbridge Wells within a day's journey from London had greater attractions. It is now a populous town possessed of greater wealth and grandeur than anything that England could shew in the 17th century. When the court visited Tunbridge Wells after the Restoration, there was no town but only a number of cottages, scattered round the springs on the heath, and a sort of daily fair was held near the fountain during the season. Tradesmen dealing in fashionable articles would come down from London and open a bazaar under the trees. The place contained no church till 1685 when subscriptions for building one were just raised by the visitors.

*(5) Bath.*

Para 75. Bath was the greatest of English watering places. Its springs were famous from the Roman times, and were resorted to by invalids from all parts of the country. It was the seat of a Bishop, and the King too sometimes held his court there. Yet this was a mean-looking town consisting of only 400 or 500 houses crowded within the old wall. It had not yet grown into the beautiful city that now rouses our admiration and that has been made the scene of the stories of some of the famous English novelists. From the accounts of a writer of the early decades of the 18th century, the town seems to have been wanting in those comforts and luxuries that characterise it at present.

*London.*

Para 76. The position of London in the time of Charles II relatively to other towns was far higher than at present. The population of London is now only six times the population of Manchester or Liverpool. In the days of Charles II it was seventeen times the population of Bristol or Norwich. There are reasons to believe that in 1685 London was the most populous capital in Europe. The inhabitants of London that now number 19 hundred thousand were then about half a million. Though the shipping of London roused the wonder of the English writers of the age, it was less than a quarter of the present shipping of Newcastle. In 1685 the customs of London amounted to £330,000 a year—the sum now exceeds ten millions.

Para 77. London of 1685 was only the nucleus of the present city. It did not extend to the borders of Middlesex and into the heart of Surrey and Kent as it does now. The immense line of warehouses from the Tower to Blackwall and the stately piles of building on the west, inhabited by the rich and fashionable, did not yet exist. Chelsea was a quiet and sparsely inhabited village and sportsmen wandered after game over uninhabited tracts that are now known as the boroughs of Marylebone, Finsbury and the Tower Hamlets. Islington was a solitude. There was only a single bridge connecting the city with its suburb.

(1) *The City of London.*

Para 78. The City was the most important division of the metropolis. Before the Great Fire the houses had been made either of wood and plaster or of ill-baked bricks. The Fire had destroyed within a few days all the houses standing over a square mile of the City. The houses were quickly rebuilt but though the style of building was far superior to that of the City which had perished, they followed the old narrow lines of streets. "St. Paul's took sometime in building but the other churches were quickly re-built.

Para 79. Now the City is only the place of business of the great bankers and merchants who have their homes in the suburbs. On Sundays and on week-days after business hours the mercantile quarters are as silent and deserted as the glades of a forest. As the merchants have ceased to be citizens, they do not care for the municipal honours and duties. Accordingly these offices are now seldom held by the heads of the leading commercial houses.

Para 80. In the 17th century the city of London was not merely the counting house of the merchant-princes but their very home. Their houses were majestic edifices and were fitted up in a princely manner. All the tender ties of home bound the merchants to their city. The Londoners were proud of their city and were jealous of her honours and privileges.

Para 81. The cancellation of the old charter rankled in the minds of the Londoners towards the close of Charles II's reign. All the offices of the new corporation were held by Tories though the Whigs excelled them in number and wealth. The festive character of the city that had declined under Puritanic rule improved by the change and it is believed that the practice of huzzaing after drinking healths dates from this period.

Para 82. The magnificence that surrounded the Lord Mayor was almost like that of a king. On great occasions he appeared in public, clad in his official dress and accompanied by a procession almost regal in splendour. The Lord Mayor could lay a just claim to this pomp and state because he represented the dignity of the City. The City exercised in those times a preponderating influence in the politics of the country by reason of its wealth and military resources. It had the power of making and unmaking governments. The hostility of the City had brought about the downfall of Charles I and of the military tyrants who had succeeded Richard Cromwell and the restoration of Charles II became possible because the City favoured it.

Para 83. These considerations explain why some powerful men of high rank chose to dwell in the City instead of fixing their residence in the west towards which the members of the aristocracy were moving during a long course of years. Shaftesbury and Buckingham, while engaged in bitter opposition to the government, lived under the protection of the City magistrates and City militia. The former lived in Aldersgate Street and the latter fixed his residence in Dowgate.

(2) *The fashionable quarter of London.*

Para 84. Most of the noble families had moved beyond the walls, and the district, where their houses stood, lay between the City and the quarters now regarded as fashionable. A few nobles still continued to dwell in their old town houses between the Strand and the river. The favourite quarters were the south and west of Lincoln's Inn Fields, the Piazza of Covent Garden, Bloomsbury Square and Soho Square. Bloomsbury Square was then regarded as one of the wonders of London. The Londoners of the 17th century were proud of Soho Square though it is no longer regarded as an aristocratic quarter. Two celebrated palaces, Southampton House and Montague House, stood a little to the north of Holborn on the verge of the open country.

Para 85. Saint James's Square and Jermyn Street had been built nearer to the court on an open space called Saint James's Fields. Golden Square, inhabited by lords and ministers of state, had not yet begun. On the north of Piccadilly were three or four rural mansions of which the best known was the Dunkirk House, built by the Earl of Clarendon. Clarendon Hotel and Albemarle Street preserve the memory of the site.

Para 86. The fashionable and thickly peopled quarter of Regent Street was then a solitude where one might come across wild birds. The road to Oxford on the north ran between hedges and the houses three or four hundred yards to the south, were considered out of town. On the west was a meadow through which Conduit Street now runs. The desolate field, where the victims of the plague were buried, lay on the east.

Para 87. The squares and the streets were quite different in appearance from what they are now. Even the most fashionable quarters would appear dirty and squalid if judged by the modern standard. The mansions of the rich nobles in Covent Garden stood surrounded by filth and rubbish.

Para 88. The centre of Lincoln's Inn Fields was an open space where the rabble congregated every evening close to the dwellings of the rich nobles for their rude sports. Horses were exercised and noisy beggars assembled in large numbers. It was after a serious accident had occurred to Sir Joseph Jekyll, Master of the Rolls, that the place was enclosed and a garden was laid out.

Para 89. St. James's Square was a receptacle for all the offal and rubbish of Westminster. Though situated in the close neighbourhood of the highest peers of the realm, the place was the haunt of the ruffians and the scum of the town. These nuisances continued for a long time till at last Parliament permitted the place to be enclosed and planted with trees.

Para 90. The miserable condition of the other parts of the city may be easily understood from this description of the fashionable quarters. The streets were unspeakably dirty and the pavements detestable. No care was taken for proper drainage and after a heavy shower the gutters became canals full of animal and vegetable filth. As people ran the risk of being splashed with dirty water when coaches passed through them, every one tried to keep close to the wall and this often gave rise to quarrels and free fights.

Para 91. The houses were not numbered. As very few of the lower classes were able to read, the system of numbering would not have been very useful. The shops were generally known by painted signs which added to the gay appearance of the city.

### (3) *The Police of London.*

Para 92. As the streets were not lighted till the last year of the reign of Charles II, it was not only difficult but dangerous to



walk them after evening. Then pails were discharged on the streets with little regard for those who were passing below. Also the streets were infested by thieves and robbers and roisterers belonging to the upper ranks of society. Bands of such dissolute young men roamed the streets breaking windows and insulting women. The machinery for keeping peace was quite inadequate for its purpose. The law provided for a body of more than a thousand watchmen to keep the peace of the city but they grossly neglected their duties.

*The lighting of the streets of London.*

Para 93. In the last year of Charles II's reign, Edward Heming obtained a charter for lighting the streets of London. His plan, a most modest one, proposed to place a light before every tenth door on moonless nights from six to twelve o'clock from Michaelmas to Lady Day. His proposal met with enthusiastic support from all friends of reform and improvement. Strange as it may seem, the plan met with bitter opposition from some quarters.

*Whitefriars.*

Para 94. The district of Whitefriars, situated near the Temple, happened to be so named from a House of Carmelite Friars, founded in the 13th century. Before the Reformation it provided a sanctuary for criminals and afterwards it retained the privilege of protecting debtors from arrest. Though recognised only as an asylum for insolvent debtors, it became, in course of time, a nest of the worst criminals of the country. The utmost lawlessness prevailed in the region and even the warrants of the highest courts of justice could not be executed without the help of a company of soldiers. It was strange indeed that such lawlessness should have been permitted to exist so close to the Temple where some of the greatest Englishmen of the day were prosecuting their study of law, arts and science.

*The Palace and the Court.*

Para 95. The Palace and the Exchange were the two chief centres of attraction of London. The influence of the Palace declined after the Revolution because it did not take the people long to understand that the King had very little to give and that offices and promotions were really bestowed by the ministers and not by the King. Candidates for favour quickly understood that they would best advance their interests by rendering some service to

the ministers and not by dancing attendance on the King. The change, introduced by the Revolution, was completed during the reigns of the first two Georges who could not, from their habits and training, prove gracious and affable hosts. They governed strictly according to law but could not be the heads of English polite society.

Para 96. In Charles II's time the Palace was the centre of fashion and political intrigue. Candidates for favours knew that the success of their suits depended on the will of the King and so they tried to make themselves agreeable to the King or his mistresses. The palace was therefore thronged with candidates for favour and its gates always stood open for everybody except the extreme Whigs. The King practised open-handed hospitality and his affable manners won every heart.

Para 97. Whitehall was the chief centre of news, and whenever there was any rumour of anything important, people resorted to it in large numbers to obtain intelligence at the fountain-head. News from the different quarters of Europe was there eagerly discussed and grave domestic problems were discussed in whispers.

#### *The coffee houses.*

Para 98. The coffee houses might well be called important political institutions of the age. No Parliament had sat for years and the municipal council of London had ceased to reflect the public opinion of the citizens. Public meetings had not come into fashion and no newspaper of the modern type did yet exist. Under these circumstances the coffee houses were the chief organs for the expression of public opinion.

Para 99. The first coffee house was established during the time of the Commonwealth by a Turkey merchant who had acquired a taste for the beverage from among the Mahometans. The fashion soon became popular and spread among the upper and the middle classes. They soon became a power in the land and the government viewed them with dislike. An attempt was made during Danby's administration to close them but so vehement was the public outcry against the measure that the government did not venture to enforce it. The coffee house was indeed the Londoner's home, and men of different classes, opinions and professions had their different coffee houses. There were coffee houses for well-dressed fops, literary men, doctors, Puritans, Papists and even for

Jews. The most famous coffee house was Will's situated between Covent Garden and Bow Street. It was frequented by literary men of all classes. The seat of honour was occupied by Dryden, the greatest of the living poets.

Para 100. The coffee houses exercised an important influence in shaping the character of the Londoners of those times that materially differed from the character of the rustic Englishmen. There was then little intercourse between the capital and the country. It was not yet the fashion of the country gentlemen to visit the capital once a year, nor was it yet the practice of the Londoners to spend a few weeks in the country every summer. A Londoner was, therefore, seldom seen in a village and a country gentleman coming to London could easily be distinguished by his uncouth dress and manners. Cheats and sharpers could readily recognise him as a suitable victim of their tricks, and bullies could, with impunity, treat him with insolence. His experiences of London were one long series of mortifications and humiliations.

#### **Difficulties of travelling.**

Para 101. The imperfect fusion of the two elements of society, the people of the town and the country, was mainly due to the difficulties of communication in those times. Improved means of locomotion have greatly contributed to the advance of human civilisation. Facilities of communication have conferred inestimable benefits, material and moral, on mankind. They have bound up the whole human race into one family by helping the interchange of the productions of art and nature and by tending to remove racial and provincial antipathies.

Para 102. The principle of the steam-engine that has made locomotion so easy and quick was not quite unknown in the time of Charles II. The Marquess of Worcester had observed the expansive power of steam and constructed an engine which he called a fire water work. This however did not meet with favourable reception because the Marquess was suspected to be a mad man and known to be a Papist. There was very little internal communication by water. The few attempts to deepen the natural streams had failed and not a single navigable canal had been projected.

#### **Badness of the roads.**

Para, 103. Highways were the only means of communication and transport. The roads were ill-kept and in places positively

dangerous. They were not clearly marked off from the fields on both sides and so people, travelling in the dark, frequently lost their way. Often the mud lay deep on both sides of the road and only a narrow track of firm ground was passable. It was only in fine weather that the whole breadth of the road was available for wheeled traffic. Sometimes coaches would stick fast in the mud and horses had to be brought from the neighbouring fields to pull them out. In bad seasons the roads would be flooded cutting off all communication. In such cases travellers had to swim for their lives or to ride through saddle-deep water. The markets were often inaccessible during several months and the badness of the roads prevented the produce of the neighbouring fields from reaching them. In some districts wheeled carriages were drawn by oxen. Prince George of Denmark took six hours in travelling nine miles when he visited the mansion of Petworth in wet weather.

Para 104. The badness of the roads was mainly due to the defective state of the law. It required every parish to repair the high roads passing through it and the peasants were forced to work for six days in a year on them without any remuneration. If this was not sufficient then hired labour was employed, the expense of which was met by a parochial rate. The manifest injustice of this system attracted the notice of the Parliament soon after the Restoration and the first of the many turnpike acts was passed levying a small toll on travellers and goods for keeping the roads in good repair. This change though salutary caused loud murmurs and led to riots in some places. However, the opposition died down at last and a good system of turnpike roads was introduced.

Para 105. Heavy articles were carried from place to place by means of stage waggons. Poorer people, who could not afford to travel in a coach or on horseback, availed themselves of these conveyances for purposes of travel. The expense of such carriage of goods amounted to 15d. a ton for every mile, i.e., 15 times the freight now charged by railway companies. This heavy cost of carriage naturally served as a prohibitory tax on many useful articles. Coal could be used only in the district where it was produced or where it could be carried by sea.

Para 106. On byroads, and in the extreme north and west, goods were carried on packhorses. Travellers of humble circumstances found it economical to travel on these packsaddles between

two loads. The expense was small but progress was extremely slow and in winter the cold was severely felt.

Para 107. The rich travelled in their own carriages drawn by at least four horses. A coach and six is used in modern times only by way of a pageant, but in the days of Charles II this was a disagreeable necessity imposed by the badness of the roads. People in those times travelled with six horses because with a smaller number, there was a great danger of sticking fast in the mud. In places the mire lay so deep that even six horses were not found to be sufficient.

#### *Stage coaches.*

Para 108. At the time of the Restoration a stage coach ran from London to Oxford in two days. In 1669 the Flying Coach was introduced that covered the distance in 12 hours. The undertaking roused the deepest enthusiasm and interest and a similar service was shortly established between Cambridge and the capital. Towards the close of Charles II's reign Flying Coaches ran thrice a week from London to the chief provincial towns. But no stage coach proceeded further north than York or further west than Exeter. The ordinary day's journey of a Flying Coach was about 50 miles in summer and thirty in winter. Each coach carried six passengers and the usual fare was 2½d. a mile in summer and a little more in winter.

Para 109. The Flying Coaches provided the swiftest means of travel known to the age, and Englishmen boasted of their superiority to the continental posts in speed. But though generally praised and extolled, various objections were raised against them from interested quarters. It was contended that these coaches would injuriously affect the breed of horses and the noble art of horsemanship, that they would prove detrimental to the interests of the sailors plying on the Thames and that these coaches would mean the ruin of several important professions like those of saddlers, farriers and innkeepers. It was therefore urged that no coach should be permitted to use more than four horses, to start oftener than once a week and to travel more than 30 miles a day. Petitions embodying these opinions were submitted to the King in council from several public bodies of the City of London and many provincial towns.

Para 110. In spite of the convenience, offered by Flying Coaches, riding was the usual method of travel adopted by healthy men who were not encumbered with baggage. Those who wished to travel quickly rode post and fresh saddle horses and guides were available all along the lines of roads at three pence a mile for the horse and four pence a stage for the guide. Post-chaises had not yet come into use and those who rode in their own coaches could not ordinarily procure a change of horses. This was a rare luxury confined to princes and ministers who could easily obtain relays of these animals.

#### *Highwaymen.*

Para 111. Men had to travel well armed and in company for fear of highwaymen. These most infested the waste tracts round London, viz., Hounslow Heath in the west and Finchley Common in the north. To pass through Epping Forest was dangerous even in broad daylight. Seamen, paid off at Chatham, were often plundered at Gadshill. The Government did not know how to deal with these criminals and there were reasons to suspect that the innkeepers were in collusion with the robbers.

Para 112. These robbers were generally bold and skilful riders and were men of polished manners. They held an aristocratical position in the community of thieves. They often appeared at fashionable coffee houses and gaming houses and mixed freely with men of quality. Sometimes they happened to be men of education and of good families. All sorts of romantic tales about their generosity, goodness and courage were current amongst the vulgar people. Nevison of Yorkshire and Claude Duval, the ex-page of the Duke of Richmond, were two such notorious highwaymen. It was related of the latter that when he was seized in 1670, ladies of rank visited him in prison and interceded for his pardon. After his execution his body lay in princely state but was ordered by Judge Morton to be buried without any ceremony.

#### *The Inns.*

Para 113. To avoid the dangers that beset the roads in darkness in those ages travellers sought betimes the shelter of the inns. From very early times the English inns have been famous for the comforts they provide for the guests. No continental inn could stand comparison with the English in this respect. There were some inns that could easily provide accommodation and board for

two or three hundred guests and their horses. The bedding and the linen were comfortable and cleanly and the meat was served on valuable plates. The small village inns were models of neatness and comfort and the larger establishments provided all sorts of luxuries and conveniences for the guests. Indeed an Englishman never felt more at home than in an inn. Dr. Johnson voiced this feeling when he declared that a tavern chair was the throne of human felicity. Shenstone too was of opinion that one is sure to meet with more warm welcome in an inn than under a private roof however friendly.

Para 114. Though modern hotels contain many conveniences that could not be found in the palace of the 17th century, yet it may safely be affirmed that the improvement of the modern hotels has not kept pace with improvements in other directions. The reason is simple. The means of travelling being greatly improved, people are not required to stop on the way for rest and refreshment as they were required to do before. It is obvious that other circumstances being equal, the inns will be the best where the means of travelling are the worst. One of the results of the modern improved means of travelling has been that many inns have fallen into decay. Now-a-days good hotels can only be expected to flourish in places where people are detained by business or pleasure.

### **The Post Office.**

Para 115. A rude sort of postal system had been established by Charles I. It was swept away during the Commonwealth and was re-established at the Restoration. On most lines of roads the mails were carried on alternate days and only once a week in the more inaccessible parts of the country like the fens of Lincolnshire and the hills of Cumberland. During a royal tour a daily post was despatched from the capital to where the court sojourned. There was daily communication between London and the Downs; Tunbridge Wells and Bath enjoyed this privilege during the seasons. The bags were carried on horseback day and night at the rate of four miles an hour. The income of the Post Office was settled on the Duke of York.

Para 116. The Post Office alone was entitled to provide travellers with horses. This monopoly was a subsidiary source of revenue besides the charge for the transmission of letters.

Para 117. The Post Office did not carry letters from one part of London to another. In the reign of Charles II, an enterprising citizen of London, named William Dockwray, established a penny post which delivered letters and parcels six or eight times a day in the crowded parts near the Exchange and four times a day in the outskirts of the capital. The proposal raised at first a fierce opposition and was condemned in some quarters as a Popish contrivance. However, the utility of the scheme soon overcame all opposition. But as the venture proved profitable, the Duke of York complained of it as an encroachment on his monopoly and the court decided in his favour.

Para 118. The revenue of the Post Office was constantly growing. The net receipt that had been estimated at £20,000 in the year of the Restoration, grew to £50,000 towards the close of Charles II's reign. The postage of a single letter was 2d for eighty miles and 3d for longer distances and the postage increased with the weight of the packets. Comparing the income of the Post Office of that age with what it is in modern times, there is no reason to doubt that the number of letters now carried must be at least seventy times the number carried in that age.

### Newspapers and Newsletters.

Para 119. Nothing like a modern daily paper existed in 1685. Apart from all other difficulties it was believed that there were legal objections against it. Though the licensing act had expired in 1679 yet the judges were unanimously of opinion that no one not authorized by the crown had the right to publish any political news. When the Whigs were in power they connived at the violation of this rule and a number of newspapers appeared during the Exclusion Bill controversy. They appeared only twice a week and did not exceed a single small leaf in size. After the fall of the Whigs the King resolved to exercise his prerogative in the matter and towards the close of the reign of Charles II, the only newspaper, that was permitted to be published, was the London Gazette. The paper appeared only twice a week—on Mondays and Thursdays. It contained only such news against which the court could take no objection. Whenever the government thought it necessary to gratify public curiosity regarding some important transaction, it published a broadside giving fuller details of the event than could be found in the Gazette. But neither the broadside nor the Gazette



contained any account of parliamentary proceedings or of state trials in which the public felt a keen interest. In London the coffee-houses served to some extent the purpose of newspapers and people assembled there to learn the inner secrets of the government. Those who lived in the country could be informed of what was passing in the towns only by means of newsletters. The preparation of such letters therefore became a calling and the writers would collect their materials from the coffee houses, the law-courts and the palace. The arrival of these weekly letters was eagerly expected at the seats of the country gentlemen. They quickly passed from hand to hand and supplied topics for conversation and sermons.

Para 120. There were no provincial newspapers in those times. There was scarcely a printer except at the capital and the two Universities. The only printing press north of Trent was at York.

#### *The Observer.*

Para 121. The London Gazette published only news without any comment. Another paper, published under the patronage of the court, was the *Observer*. This paper only published comment without any news. It was a violent Tory paper edited by Roger Lestrangé. His writings, though characterised by shrewdness and vigour, were disfigured by a spirit of bitter animosity against the Whigs and Dissenters. His savage outbursts on the occasion of the death of William Jenkyn under pathetic circumstances betrayed his virulent party spirit

#### **Scarcity of books in country places.**

Para 122. The only supply of literature available to the rural gentry and clergy was that provided by newspapers and newsletters. The transport of bulky packets was costly and difficult and so the libraries of the country gentlemen were very poorly equipped. A gentleman passed for a scholar if his library contained three or four hackneyed volumes. No circulating library then existed even in the capital but the shops of the great book-sellers near St. Paul's Churchyard were crowded with readers and known customers were permitted to take books home for study. No such convenience existed in the country; there a man had to buy every book he wished to read.

**Female Education.**

Para 123. A prayer book and a receipt book constituted the entire library of the country ladies. This was not because they lived in rural seclusion but because female education was grossly neglected in that age. Indeed English women were in those times decidedly worse educated than in any age since the revival of learning. During the preceding age many of them were accomplished scholars—in the present age they are well-versed in the modern European languages. But during the latter part of the 17th century a lady with the least smattering of literature was regarded as a prodigy. Most ladies could not write even a single line in correct English.

Para 124. The licentious manners fashionable in that age resulted in the moral and intellectual degradation of women. They were courted and flattered more for their physical attractions than intellectual attainments. A woman was likely to win a rich and noble husband more by her immodest style of dress and questionable ways than by her classical scholarship. Indeed extreme ignorance and frivolity were considered more lady-like than the slightest tincture of pedantry. It was no wonder that under these circumstances the intellectual acquirements of the women should sink very low.

**Literary attainments of Gentlemen.**

Para 125. Greek learning did not flourish in England in the reign of Charles II as it did in the earlier or the succeeding ages. There were of course some Englishmen who were learned Greek scholars but these were to be found only among the clergy resident at the Universities. Even at Cambridge it was not considered necessary for a clergyman to be able to read the Gospel in the original. Nor was the state of things better at Oxford. The controversy about the Epistles of Phalaris shews to what a low ebb Greek learning had sunk. Few English statesmen of the age took any delight in the study of Greek literature.

Para 126. There was no want of Latin scholars among Englishmen because this language was indispensable for travellers and diplomatists. The ability to speak Latin was in those times a more common accomplishment than now and there were some scholars

at the Universities who could produce clever imitations of the poems of Ovid and Virgil.

### **Influence of French literature.**

Para 127. French was fast replacing Latin as the language of international communication and diplomacy. France was then not merely the leading military power of Europe but exercised besides a paramount authority in literature, arts and fashion. French literature was extensively studied in Europe and acquaintance with it was regarded as a mark of good breeding and culture. New canons of criticism came into fashion and English prose under the influence of French lost its former majesty but became more lucid and easy.

### **Immorality of the Polite Literature of England.**

Para 128. The immoral tone, that pervaded the English literature of the age, was a blot on the English national character. The wits and the Puritans had been the natural enemies of each other. They viewed human life from opposite standpoints and the pleasures of the one were the torments of the other. The wits had made fun of the Puritans and ridiculed their serious ways. The Puritans in their turn had condemned innocent diversions as crimes. When the Puritans came into power they closed the theatres, put a ban on poetry and had themselves amply revenged on the mockers. Their tyranny never ceased to rankle in the minds of the wits, and when the Puritans fell from power, the wits gave no quarter to their old enemies.

Para 129. The war between wit and Puritanism soon changed into a war between wit and morality. Because the Puritans had assumed airs of superior virtue and holiness therefore their enemies took a pleasure in fendering virtue and holiness themselves as ridiculous. The Roundheads were in the habit of frequently using scriptural phrases in their conversation, as a reaction against this, the new breed of wits never opened their mouths without uttering curses or obscene remarks of which the lowest clown should be ashamed.

Para 130. It is no wonder that English polite literature should take an immoral turn with the revival of the old political system and the restoration of monarchy. But for a few poets, like Waller, Cowley and the great Milton, who were the products of a previous age, the most shameless immorality characterised the works of the poets of

the Restoration age. Butler also suffered from this infection of immorality but in a mild form. The shameless immorality and the utter absence of decency in the works of these poets contained their own remedy; and the public grew sick of them in no time.

Para 131. The dramas of this period were the most immoral productions of the age. The playhouses, closed during Puritan rule, re-opened after their fall from power with more attractive scenes and dresses. Actresses were engaged to represent the female characters—this constituted an additional fascination. The prevailing immorality of the theatre-houses drove away all sober-minded people from them. The frivolous and the dissolute who remained required every year stronger and stronger stimulants and the artists had to pander to their depraved tastes. Thus the artists (actors and actresses) corrupted the spectators and the spectators the artists.

Para 132. One notorious feature of these dramas was that the loosest and most immoral verses were put into the mouths of women (actresses). The worst portions were the epilogues—these were generally recited by the favourite actresses.

Para 133. Many of the dramas of this period were indebted for their plots to Spanish and French authors or to English writers of the preceding age. The originals always happened to be corrupted in the hands of the borrowers.

Para 134. The drama was the most profitable branch of polite literature in those times. The sale of books was so small that an author could not expect more than a miserable return from his works. Dryden received only £250 for the copyright of his *Fables* that contains some of his best productions. By writing dramas poets could expect to earn much larger sums for much less trouble. Southern received £700 for a single play and Shadwell cleared £130 from a single representation of the *Squire of Alsatia*. Accordingly Dryden set himself to the composition of dramas though his genius did not fit him for this sort of literature.

Para 135. The sale proceeds of their works being very small, authors had to eke out their incomes by dedicating their books to some rich Lord who was expected to reward them with a purse of gold. The fee, received from the dedication of a work, was often much larger than what could be obtained from the sale of the copyright. Hence books happened to be printed merely for the purpose of being dedicated. This practice had a very demoralising effect on the authors. No flattery was considered too mean or

degrading and the author degenerated into something between a pandar and a beggar.

Para 136. The wits as a class in their hatred of Puritanism ranged themselves on the side of the King and were guilty of the most savage intolerance against the Whigs. Dryden's satire *Absalom and Achitophel* is a case in point. As a literary performance the poem deserves the highest praise but the savage party-spirit it breathes cannot be too severely condemned. The literary men of the age betrayed violent and insatiable hatred against their political opponents and did not think that the cruel measures, taken by judges and magistrates against them, were severe enough.

### State of Science in England.

Para 137. While the lighter literature was proving a national disgrace, the English genius was winning some of its triumphs in science that may be regarded as the highest achievements of the human mind. The principles, taught by Bacon in a previous age, now began to bear fruit. The civil and religious struggles had roused the curiosity of the educated class but they did no longer waste their time and energy in framing ideal constitutions for the country. Monarchy being now recognised as an established principle of the constitution, the revolutionary spirit found an outlet in testing what had hitherto been regarded as the fundamental laws of nature. This led to an exploration into every department of Physics. The Royal Society was founded in 1660 and scientific investigation became the fashion. Political controversies yielded place to discussions on scientific discoveries and problems. Men of different classes and opinions were united in the pursuit of science, and poets sang of the glories of the golden age that its study would usher. The scientific movement counted among its followers bishops, judges, courtiers and soldiers. The pursuit interested even the indolent and frivolous Charles who established a laboratory at Whitehall. It was considered necessary to the character of a fine gentleman to be able to say something about scientific instruments and even ladies affected a taste for the subject.

Para 138. Though the study of science was ridiculed in some quarters yet it bore important fruits in all departments of investigation. It led to reform of agriculture and horticulture and introduced the art of growing the fruits of warmer climates in England. Great developments were made in the science of medicine; and this new

knowledge was utilized for rebuilding London after the Great Fire on more sanitary principles. Foundations were laid of the sciences of botany, zoology and study of fossils and Boyle's monumental discoveries in Chemistry were made in this age. The study of experimental science exposed the fallacy of age-old beliefs in Astrology, Alchemy and Witchcraft. The most glorious triumphs were won in those departments of knowledge in which induction and mathematical demonstration co-operate and the greatest names in this domain were those of John Wallis, Halley and above all of Sir Isaac Newton.

### State of the Fine Arts.

Para 139. Though a great advance was made in science, the Fine Arts remained undeveloped. In Architecture England could boast of at least one great man, viz., Sir Christopher Wren. The Great Fire of London gave him a unique chance of displaying his powers. True, he could not produce anything equal to the beautiful Athenian portico or the Gothic arcade but no European north of the Alps could reproduce like him the magnificent beauty of the Italian churches. His St. Paul's remains unrivalled and even the great Lewis could leave behind him no work equal to it. No Englishman was to be found among the great painters and sculptors of the age though these artists were held in honour and handsomely rewarded. The greatest painters of the age viz., Lely, Kneller, the Vandevelde etc. were all foreigners. So were the greatest sculptors Cibber and Gibbons. Even the designs for the coins were made by French artists. No great English painter appeared before the reign of George II and England could not boast of any sculptor before George III was on the throne.

### State of the common people.

Para 140. Very little information is available about the condition of labourers and artisans of those times. Historians did not think it worth their while to notice these in their books, and politicians did not yet find it profitable to expatiate on the miseries of the labouring classes. It would, however, be an error to suppose that they were better-off than people of these classes in modern times.

#### (1) *Agricultural Wages.*

Page 141. The wages of the common people furnish the best criterion for judging their condition. Four-fifths of this class of men

were then employed in agriculture and means are available for a fairly correct calculation of their wages.

Para 142. According to Sir William Petty the daily wages of a labourer were four pence with food or eight pence without it. Four shillings a week, therefore, represented fair agricultural wages.

Para 143. The accuracy of this calculation is borne out by the decision of the Justices of Warwickshire who in 1685 fixed the wages of agricultural labourers at four shillings a week from March to September and at three shillings and a half per week during the remaining months of the year.

Para 144. The wages of the peasants differed in different parts of the country. The Warwickshire wages probably represented their average earnings. They were less in the counties near the Scottish border. In Devonshire the wages of a peasant were on the authority of Richard Dunning about five shillings a week.

Para 145. The magistrates of Suffolk fixed the wages of labourers in the neighbourhood of Bury St. Edmund's at five shillings a week in winter and at six shillings in summer.

Para 146. In 1661 the wages of an Essex labourer were fixed at six shillings in winter and at seven in summer. These represented the highest wages of agricultural labour between the Restoration and the Revolution.

Para 147. At present though the weekly stipend of a soldier in a regiment of the line is seven shillings and seven-pence still English youths do not enlist themselves in sufficient numbers. In 1685 the government had no difficulty in obtaining many thousands of recruits though the pay of a private was only four shillings and eight pence a week. Taking the previously mentioned facts along with these wages of private soldiers it seems reasonable to conclude that in the reign of Charles II the ordinary wages of peasants did not exceed four shillings a week. In some parts of the kingdom they were higher and rose even to seven shillings in summer. The weekly wages of a peasant in modern times vary from 12 to 16 shillings.

## *(2) Wages of labourers engaged in manufactures.*

Para 148. The wages of factory labourers are generally higher than those of the peasants. The fair remuneration of workmen, employed in woollen manufacture, was one shilling a day, i.e., six shillings a week. This appears from a speech made by a member

of the House of Commons in 1680 and also from an extant ballad on the subject.

(3) *Labour of children in factories,*

Para 148. Now-a-days the employment of child-labour in factories is forbidden by law. In the 17th century this practice prevailed on a large scale. Even children not more than six years old were considered fit for such work. The evils of this system were not perceived in those days.

(4) *Wages of different classes of artisans.*

Para 150. From the registers of wages, preserved in Greenwich Hospital, it appears that the wages of workmen, employed in all branches of the building trade, have risen during the last 120 years. The daily wages of brick-layers, masons and carpenters have risen from half a crown to four shillings and ten pence, five shillings and three pence and five shillings and five pence respectively. Those of plumbers have risen from three shillings to five shillings and six pence.

Para 151. The wages of labour in 1685, estimated in money, were not more than half of what they are now but the prices of most of the necessities of life were not less than half of what they are at present. Beer was much cheaper than now, and meat, though cheaper, was still beyond the means of most families of the working class. The price of wheat has remained stationary but the great majority of the nation lived on rye, wheat and barley.

Para 152. The produce of the tropical countries, of mines and of machinery was much dearer than now. Articles of clothing and bedding, salt, sugar, coal were much dearer than now. The clothes and blankets did not only cost more but were less durable.

(5) *Number of paupers.*

Para 153. Below the labourers who maintained themselves and their families on their wages were a large class of men who could not maintain themselves without help from the parish. The proportion of these men to the entire population is an important test of the condition of common people. In modern times the number of persons obtaining relief from the poor-rates, varies from one-thirteenth to one-tenth of the population. Gregory King estimated them at



more than a fifth in his time and Davenant considered this estimate to be quite judicious.

Para 154. The poor-rate was the heaviest tax paid by Englishmen in those days. In the reign of Charles II it amounted to £7,00,000, i.e., almost half the entire revenue of the crown. It increased rapidly and within a few years rose to between £8,00,000 and £9,00,000 a year, i.e., it amounted to one-sixth of what it now is. The population at the time was less than a third of the present and as the rate of wages was only half of the present rate the allowance to paupers must necessarily have been in the same proportion. It thus follows that the proportion of people in receipt of poor relief must have exceeded the present proportion.

**Benefits derived by the common people from the progress of civilisation.**

Para 155. The only disadvantage suffered by the poorer classes from the progress of civilisation has been due to the reclamation of a large part of the country from its previous wild condition. In those times the peasant obtained his fuel free, could catch wild fowl on the marshes or rear a flock of geese in the fens. As these moors and fens have now been drained and converted into orchards and cornfields he has been deprived of these privileges. The blessings that the progress of civilisation has conferred on him against this solitary disadvantage have been immense. The improved roads enable him to bring his produce to the fields quickly and easily; the artisan can securely walk the well-lighted streets at night without any fear of accidents or dangers from thieves and robbers: there is better provision for treatment in case of accidents and some terrible diseases have been extirpated. The term of human life has been lengthened and death-rate substantially reduced.

Para 156. The progress of civilisation has exercised a softening influence on the national character. Englishmen have, with the progress of times, become not merely a wiser but a kinder people. From the study of history and literature there seems no reason for doubt that Englishmen of the 17th century were less humane than their descendants. Their harshness and cruelty were perceptible in all departments of life—in workshops, schools, family life, prisons and methods of punishment. The present is decidedly a more humane age, and the class, that has most benefited by it, has been the poorest, the most dependant and the most defenceless.

**Delusion (error) which leads men to overrate the happiness of the preceding generations.**

Para 157. The above picture of England during the time of the Stuarts tells its own tale. Yet there are many who think that England was then a more pleasant country to live in than now. This is because men are never satisfied with their existing condition and their discontent naturally leads them to exaggerate the happiness of their ancestors. This discontent serves, however, a very useful purpose—it is a powerful incentive to progress and improvement.

Para 158. The tendency of men to exaggerate the happiness of their ancestors of the past age, though natural, is as illusory as the mirage seen in Arabian deserts. The golden age of England which is supposed to have existed in the past was a rude uncivilised, unprosperous age when noblemen could not enjoy comforts without which a modern footman would consider his life miserable. The farmers and shopkeepers of that age were content to live on bread which is now considered unfit even for the inmates of a workhouse. And following this tendency to magnify the happiness of the past, the people of England, in the 20th century, when further improvements will have been made, will believe that there was greater virtue and happiness in the England of the 19th century.

---







# MACAULAY'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND

STATE OF ENGLAND IN 1685

## CHAPTER III.

### **The Purpose of this Chapter.**

1. I intend, in this chapter, to give a description of the state in which England was at the time when the crown passed from Charles the Second to his brother. Such a description, composed from scanty and dispersed materials, must necessarily be very imperfect. Yet it may perhaps correct some false notions which would make the subsequent narrative unintelligible or uninteresting.

The purpose of this chapter is to give a description of England at the time of King Charles II's death.

**Progressive tendencies of human societies ;  
great change in the state of England  
since 1685**

2. If we would study with profit the history of our ancestors, we must be constantly on our guard against that delusion

The history of England has been one of continual

progress.  
England at  
the date  
of this  
book (1848)  
was quite  
different  
from the  
England  
of 1685.

which the well known names of families, places, and offices naturally produce, and must never forget that the country of which we read was a very different country from that in which we live. In every experimental science there is a tendency towards perfection. In every human being there is a wish to ameliorate his own condition. These two principles have often sufficed, even when counteracted by great public calamities and by bad institutions, to carry civilisation rapidly forward. No ordinary misfortune, no ordinary misgovernment, will do so much to make a nation wretched, as the constant progress of physical knowledge and the constant effort of every man to better himself will do to make a nation prosperous. It has often been found that profuse expenditure, heavy taxation, absurd commercial restrictions, corrupt tribunals, disastrous wars, seditions, persecutions, conflagrations, inundations, have not been able to destroy capital so fast as the exertions of private citizens have been able to create it. It can easily be proved that, in our own land, the national wealth has, during at least six

centuries, been almost uninterruptedly increasing; that it was greater under the Tudors than under the Plantagenets; that it was greater under the Stuarts than under the Tudors; that, in spite of battles, sieges, and confiscations, it was greater on the day of the Restoration than on the day when the Long Parliament met; that, in spite of maladministration, of extravagance, of public bankruptcy, of two costly and unsuccessful wars, of the pestilence and of the fire, it was greater on the day of the death of Charles the Second than on the day of his Restoration. This progress, having continued during many ages, became at length, about the middle of the eighteenth century, portentously rapid, and has proceeded, during the nineteenth, with accelerated velocity. In consequence partly of our geographical and partly of our moral position, we have, during several generations, been exempt from evils which have elsewhere impeded the efforts and destroyed the fruits of industry. While every part of the Continent, from Moscow to Lisbon, has been the



theatre of bloody and devastating wars, no hostile standard has been seen here but as a trophy. While revolutions have taken place all around us, our government has never once been subverted by violence. During a hundred years there has been in our island no tumult of sufficient importance to be called an insurrection. The law has never been borne down either by popular fury or by regal tyranny. Public credit has been held sacred. The administration of justice has been pure. Even in times which might by Englishmen be justly called evil times, we have enjoyed what almost every other nation in the world would have considered as an ample measure of civil and religious freedom. Every man has felt entire confidence that the state would protect him in the possession of what had been earned by his diligence and hoarded by his selfdenial. Under the benignant influence of peace and liberty, science has flourished, and has been applied to practical purposes on a scale never before known. The consequence is that a change to which the history of the old world furnishes no parallel has

taken place in our country. Could the England of 1685 be, by some magical process, set before our eyes, we should not know one landscape in a hundred or one building in ten thousand. The country gentleman would not recognise his own fields. The inhabitant of the town would not recognise his own street. Everything has been changed, but the great features of nature, and a few massive and durable works of human art. We might find out Snowdon and Windermere, the Cheddar Cliffs and Beachy Head. We might find out here and there a Norman minster, or a castle which witnessed the wars of the Roses. But, with such rare exceptions, everything would be strange to us. Many thousands of square miles which are now rich corn land and meadow, intersected by green hedgerows, and dotted with villages and pleasant country seats, would appear as moors overgrown with furze, or fens abandoned to wild ducks. We should see straggling huts built of wood and covered with thatch, where we now see manufacturing towns and seaports renowned to the farthest ends of the world.

The capital itself would shrink to dimensions not much exceeding those of its present suburb on the south of the Thames. Not less strange to us would be the garb and manners of the people, the furniture and the equipages, the interior of the shops and dwellings. Such a change in the state of a nation seems to be at least as well entitled to the notice of a historian as any change of the dynasty or of the ministry.

### Population of England in 1685.

The population of England in 1685 cannot be correctly known; men had vague ideas on the subject.

3. One of the first objects of an inquirer, who wishes to form a correct notion of the state of a community at a given time, must be to ascertain of how many persons that community then consisted. Unfortunately the population of England in 1685 cannot be ascertained with perfect accuracy. For no great state had then adopted the wise course of periodically numbering the people. All men were left to conjecture for themselves; and, as they generally conjectured without examining facts, and under the influence of strong passions and prejudices, their guesses were often ludicrously absurd. Even intelligent Lon-

doners ordinarily talked of London as containing several millions of souls. It was confidently asserted by many that, during the thirty-five years which had elapsed between the accession of Charles the First and the Restoration, the population of the city had increased by two millions.\* Even while the ravages of the plague and fire were recent, it was the fashion to say that the capital still had a million and a half of inhabitants.† Some persons, disgusted by these exaggerations, ran violently into the opposite extreme. Thus Isaac Vossius, a man of undoubted parts and learning, strenuously maintained that there were only two millions of human beings in England, Scotland, and Ireland taken together.‡

4. We are not, however, left without Means are available for

---

\* Observations on the Bills of Mortality, by Captain John Graunt (Sir William Petty), chap. xi.

† "She doth comprehend  
Full fifteen hundred thousand which do spend  
Their days within."

Great Britain's Beauty, 1671.

‡ Isaac Vossius, *De Magnitudine Urbium Sinarum*, 1685. Vossius, as we learn from St. Evremond, talked on this subject oftener and longer than fashionable circles cared to listen.

a fairly  
correct idea  
on the  
subject

the means of correcting the wild blunders into which some minds were hurried by national vanity and others by a morbid love of paradox. There are extant three computations which seem to be entitled to peculiar attention. They are entirely independent of each other: they proceed on different principles; and yet there is little difference in the results.

(1) Gregory King estimated the population of England in 1690 at 5½ millions.

5. One of these computations was made in the year 1696 by Gregory King, Lancaster herald, a political arithmetician of great acuteness and judgment. The basis of his calculations was the number of houses returned in 1690 by the officers who made the last collection of the hearth money. The conclusion at which he arrived was that the population of England was nearly five millions and a half.\*

(2) Estimate of population according to religious sects.

6. About the same time King William the Third was desirous to ascertain the comparative strength of the religious sects into which the community was divided.

---

\* King's Natural and Political Observations, 1696. This valuable treatise, which ought to be read as the author wrote it, and not as garbled by Davenant, will be found in some editions of Chalmers's Estimate.

An inquiry was instituted; and reports were laid before him from all the dioceses of the realm. According to these reports the number of his English subjects must have been about five million two hundred thousand.\*

7. Lastly, in our own days, Mr. Finlaison, an actuary of eminent skill, subjected the ancient parochial registers to all the tests which the modern improvements in statistical science enabled him to apply. His opinion was, that, at the close of the seventeenth century, the population of England was a little under five million two hundred thousand souls.†

(3) Finlaison's estimate.

8. Of these three estimates, framed without concert by different persons from different sets of materials, the highest, which is that of King, does not exceed the lowest, which is that of Finlaison, by one twelfth. We may, therefore, with con-

The population of England in James II's reign was a third of the present population.

---

\* Dalrymple's Appendix to Part II. Book I. The practice of reckoning the population by sects was long fashionable. Gulliver says of the King of Brobdingnag, "He laughed at my odd arithmetic, as he was pleased to call it, in reckoning the numbers of our people by a computation drawn from the several sects among us in religion and politics."

† Preface to the Population Returns of 1831;

fidence pronounce that, when James the Second reigned, England contained between five million and five million five hundred thousand inhabitants. On the very highest supposition she then had less than one third of her present population, and less than three times the population which is now collected in her gigantic capital.

**Increase of Population greater in the North than in the South.**

Increase of population has been much greater in the north than in the south. In the past the backward condition of the northern districts was due to moral and physical causes.

9. The increase of the people has been great in every part of the kingdom, but generally much greater in the northern than in the southern shires. In truth a large part of the country beyond Trent was, down to the eighteenth century, in a state of barbarism. Physical and moral causes had concurred to prevent civilisation from spreading to that region. The air was inclement; the soil was generally such as required skilful and industrious cultivation; and there could be little skill or industry in a tract which was often the theatre of war, and which, even when there was nominal peace, was constantly desolated by bands of Scottish marauders.

Before the union of the two British crowns, and long after that union, there was as great a difference between Middlesex and Northumberland as there now is between Massachusetts and the settlements of those squatters who, far to the west of the Mississippi, administer a rude justice with the rifle and the dagger. In the reign of Charles the Second, the traces left by ages of slaughter and pillage were still distinctly perceptible, many miles south of the Tweed, in the face of the country and in the lawless manners of the people. There was still a large class of moss-troopers, whose calling was to plunder dwellings and to drive away whole herds of cattle. It was found necessary, soon after the Restoration, to enact laws of great severity for the prevention of these outrages. The magistrates of Northumberland and Cumberland were authorised to raise bands of armed men for the defence of property and order; and provision was made for meeting the expense of these levies by local taxation.\* The

The prevailing lawlessness of this region was reflected in the manners of the people.

---

\* Statutes 14 Car. II. c. 22; 18 & 19 Car. II. c. 3; 29 & 30 Car. II. c. 2.



parishes were required to keep bloodhounds for the purpose of hunting the freebooters. Many old men who were living in the middle of the eighteenth century could well remember the time when those ferocious dogs were common.\* Yet, even with such auxiliaries, it was often found impossible to track the robbers to their retreats among the hills and morasses. For the geography of that wild country was very imperfectly known. Even after the accession of George the Third, the path over the fells from Borrowdale to Ravenglas was still a secret carefully kept by the dalesmen, some of whom had probably in their youth escaped from the pursuit of justice by that road.† The seats of the gentry and the larger farmhouses were fortified. Oxen were penned at night beneath the overhanging battlements of the residence, which was known by the name of Peel. The inmates slept with arms at their sides. Huge stones and boiling water were in readiness

---

\* Nicholson and Bourne, Discourse on the Ancient State of the Border, 1777.

† Gray's, Journal of a Tour in the Lakes, Oct. 3, 1769.

to crush and scald the plunderer who might venture to assail the little garrison. No traveller ventured into that country without making his will. The Judges on circuit, with the whole body of barristers, attorneys, clerks, and serving men, rode on horseback from Newcastle to Carlisle, armed and escorted by a strong guard under the command of the Sheriffs. It was necessary to carry provisions; for the country was a wilderness which afforded no supplies. The spot where the cavalcade halted to dine, under an immense oak, is not yet forgotten. The irregular vigour with which criminal justice was administered shocked observers whose life had been passed in more tranquil districts. Juries, animated by hatred and by a sense of common danger, convicted house-breakers and cattle stealers with the promptitude of a court martial in a mutiny; and the convicts were hurried by scores to the gallows.\* Within the memory of some whom this generation has seen, the sportsman who wandered in

---

\* North's Life of Guildford. Hutchinson's History of Cumberland, parish of Brampton.

pursuit of game to the sources of the Tyne found the heaths round Keeldar Castle peopled by a race scarcely less savage than the Indians of California, and heard with surprise the half naked women chaunting a wild measure, while the men with brandished dirks danced a war dance.\*

Later on population was attracted northwards by the establishment of peace and the foundation of manufactures due to the discovery of rich coal mines.

10. Slowly and with difficulty peace was established on the border. In the train of peace came industry and all the arts of life. Meanwhile it was discovered that the regions north of the Trent possessed in their coal beds a source of wealth far more precious than the gold mines of Peru. It was found that, in the neighbourhood of these beds, almost every manufacture might be most profitably carried on. A constant stream of emigrants began to roll northward. It appeared by the returns of 1841 that the ancient archiepiscopal province of York contained two sevenths of the population of England. At the time of the Revolu-

---

\* See Sir Walter Scott's Journal, Oct. 7, 1827, in his Life by Mr. Lockhart.

tion that province was believed to contain only one seventh of the population.\* In Lancashire the number of inhabitants appears to have increased ninefold, while in Norfolk, Suffolk, and Northamptonshire it has hardly doubled.†

### Revenue of England in 1685.

11. Of the taxation we can speak with more confidence and precision than of the population. The revenue of England, when Charles the Second died, was small, when compared with the resources which she even then possessed, or with the sums which were raised by the governments of the neighbouring countries. It had, from the time of the Restoration, been almost constantly increasing : yet it was little more than three fourths of the revenue of the United Provinces, and was hardly one fifth of the revenue of France.

(1) England had a comparatively small revenue at the time of Charles II's death.

---

\* Dalrymple, Appendix to Part II, Book I. The returns of the hearth money lead to nearly the same conclusion. The hearths in the province of York were not a sixth of the hearths of England.

† I do not, of course, pretend to strict accuracy here; but I believe that whoever will take the trouble to compare the last returns of hearth money in the reign of William the Third with the census of 1841, will come to a conclusion not very different from mine.

(2) Excise and customs, the most important heads of revenue, produced respectively net £585,000 and £5,30,000.

The tax on chimneys was less productive but caused bitter discontent.

12. The most important head of receipt was the excise, which, in the last year of the reign of Charles, produced five hundred and eighty-five thousand pounds, clear of all deductions. The net proceeds of the customs amounted in the same year to five hundred and thirty thousand pounds. These burdens did not lie very heavy on the nation. The tax on chimneys, though less productive, raised far louder murmurs. The <sup>poor</sup> discontent excited by direct imposts is, indeed, almost always out of proportion to the quantity of money which they bring into the Exchequer; and the tax on chimneys was, even among direct imposts, peculiarly odious: for it could be levied only by means of domiciliary visits; and of such visits the English have always been<sup>n</sup> impatient to a degree which the people of other countries can but faintly conceive. The poorer householders were frequently unable to pay their hearth money to the day. When this happened, their furniture was distrained without mercy: for the tax was farmed; and a farmer of taxes is, of all creditors, pro-

verbially the most rapacious. The collectors were loudly accused of performing their unpopular duty with harshness and insolence. It was said that, as soon as they appeared at the threshold of a cottage, the children began to wail, and the old women ran to hide their earthenware. Nay, the single bed of a poor family had sometimes been carried away and sold. The net annual receipt from this tax was two hundred thousand pounds.\*

---

\* There are in the Pepysian Library, some ballads of that age on the chimney money. I will give a specimen or two :—

“ The good old dames, whenever they the  
chimney man espied,  
Unto their nooks they haste away, their  
pots and pipkins hide.  
There is not one old dame in ten, and  
search the nation through,  
But, if you talk of chimney men, will  
spare a curse or two.”

Again,

“ Like plundering soldiers they'd enter the door,  
And make a distress on the goods of the poor,  
While frightened poor children distractedly cried :  
This nothing abated their insolent pride.”  
In the British Museum there are doggerel verses  
composed on the same subject and in the same spirit :  
“ Or, if through poverty it be not paid,  
For cruelty to tear away the single bed,  
On which the poor man rests his weary head,  
At once deprives him of his rest and bread.”

(3) The revenue under the above heads, added to that from the royal domains and other minor sources, amounted to £1,400,000. The profits of the Post Office had been made over to the Duke of York.

13. When to the three great sources of income which have been mentioned we add the royal domains, then far more extensive than at present, the first fruits and tenths, which had not yet been surrendered to the Church, the Duchies of Cornwall and Lancaster, the forfeitures and the fines, we shall find that the whole annual revenue of the crown may be fairly estimated at about fourteen hundred thousand pounds. Of this revenue part was hereditary: the rest had been granted to Charles for life; and he was at liberty to lay out the whole exactly as he thought fit. Whatever he could save by retrenching the expenditure of the public departments was an addition to his privy purse. Of the Post Office, more will hereafter be said. The profits of that establishment had been appropriated by Parliament to the Duke of York.

(4) Interest on the Public Debt

14. The King's revenue was, or rather ought to have been, charged with the

---

I take this opportunity, the first which occurs, of acknowledging most gratefully the kind and liberal manner in which the Master and Vicemaster of Magdalene College, Cambridge, gave me access to the valuable collections of Pepys.

payment of about eighty thousand pounds a year, the interest of the sum fraudulently detained in the Exchequer by the Cabal. While Danby was at the head of the finances, the creditors had received their dividends, though not with the strict punctuality of modern times : but those who had succeeded him at the Treasury had been less expert, or less solicitous to maintain public faith. Since the victory won by the court over the Whigs, not a farthing had been paid ; and no redress was granted to the sufferers, till a new dynasty had established a new system. There can be no greater error than to imagine that the device of meeting the exigencies of the state by loans was imported into our island by William the Third. From a period of immemorial antiquity it had been the practice of every English government to contract debts. What the Revolution introduced was the practice of honestly paying them.\*

(the debt of the Government) was never paid after Danby's fall ; the regular payment of this interest was introduced after the Revolution.

---

\* My chief authorities for this financial statement will be found in the Commons' Journals, March 1. and March 20, 1689.



(5) In King Charles II's time it was possible to make this small revenue (with occasional help from France) meet the expenses of administration and the wasteful expenditure of the court because the military charges were very light.

15. By plundering the public creditor, it was possible to make an income of about fourteen hundred thousand pounds, with some occasional help from France, support the necessary charges of the government and the wasteful expenditure of the court. For that load which pressed most heavily on the finances of the great continental states was here scarcely felt. In France, Germany, and the Netherlands, armies, such as Henry the Fourth and Philip the Second had never employed in time of war, were kept up in the midst of peace. Bastions and ravelins were everywhere rising, constructed on principles unknown to Parma or Spinola. Stores of artillery and ammunition were accumulated, such as even Richelieu, whom the preceding generation had regarded as a worker of prodigies, would have pronounced fabulous. No man could journey many leagues in those countries without hearing the drums of a regiment on march, or being challenged by the sentinels on the drawbridge of a fortress. In our island, on the contrary, it was possible to live long and to travel far, without being once reminded,

by any martial sight or sound, that the defence of nations had become a science and a calling. The majority of Englishmen who were under twenty-five years of age had probably never seen a company of regular soldiers. Of the cities which, in the civil war, had valiantly repelled hostile armies, scarce one was now capable of sustaining a siege. The gates stood open night and day. The ditches were dry. The ramparts had been suffered to fall into decay, or were repaired only that the townsfolk might have a pleasant walk on summer evenings. Of the old baronial keeps many had been shattered by the cannon of Fairfax and Cromwell, and lay in heaps of ruin, overgrown with ivy. Those which remained had lost their martial character, and were now rural palaces of the aristocracy. The moats were turned into preserves of carp and pike. The mounds were planted with fragrant shrubs, through which spiral walks ran up to summer houses adorned with mirrors and paintings.\* On the capes of the sea

---

\* See for example the picture of the mound Marlborough, in Stukeley's *Itinerarium Curiosum*.

coast, and on many inland hills, were still seen tall posts, surmounted by barrels. Once those barrels had been filled with pitch. Watchmen had been set round them in seasons of danger; and, within a few hours after a Spanish sail had been discovered in the Channel, or after a thousand Scottish mosstroopers had crossed the Tweed, the signal fires were blazing fifty miles off, and whole countries were rising in arms. But many years had now elapsed since the beacons had been lighted; and they were regarded rather as curious relics of ancient manners than as parts of a machinery necessary to the safety of the state.\*

### Military System.

(1) The only army, recognised by law, was the militia numbering about one hundred and thirty thousand men—horse and foot.

16. The only army which the law recognised was the militia. That force had been remodelled by two Acts of Parliament passed shortly after the Restoration. Every man who possessed five hundred pounds a year derived from land, or six thousand pounds of personal estate, was

---

\* Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684.

bound to provide, equip, and pay, at his own charge, one horseman. Every man who had fifty pounds a year derived from land, or six hundred pounds of personal estate, was charged in like manner with one pikeman or musketeer. Smaller proprietors were joined together in a kind of society, for which our language does not afford a special name, but which an Athenian would have called a Synteleia; and each society was required to furnish, according to its means, a horse soldier or a foot soldier. The whole number of cavalry and infantry thus maintained was popularly estimated at a hundred and thirty thousand men.\*

17. The King was, by the ancient constitution of the realm, and by the recent and solemn acknowledgment of both Houses of Parliament, the sole Captain General of this large force. The Lord Lieutenants and their Deputies held the command under him, and appointed meetings for drilling and inspection. The time occupied by such meetings, however, was not to exceed

The King  
was the  
Captain-  
General of  
the militia.

---

\* 13 & 14 Car. II. c. 3; 15 Car. II. c. 4. Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684.

fourteen days in one year. The Justices of the Peace were authorised to inflict slight penalties for breaches of discipline. Of the ordinary cost no part was paid by the crown: but, when the trainbands were called out against an enemy, their subsistence became a charge on the general revenue of the state, and they were subject to the utmost rigour of martial law.

(3) The militia, though ill-trained, had the support of both the political parties in the Parliament. The Tories remembered with horror the excesses committed by the standing army during the Commonwealth.

18. There were those who looked on the militia with no friendly eye. Men who had travelled much on the Continent, who had marvelled at the stern precision with which every sentinel moved and spoke in the citadels built by Vauban, who had seen the mighty armies which poured along all the roads of Germany to chase the Ottoman from the gates of Vienna, and who had been dazzled by the well ordered pomp of the household troops of Lewis, sneered much at the way in which the peasants of Devonshire and Yorkshire marched and wheeled, shouldered muskets and ported pikes. The enemies of the liberties and religion of England looked with aversion on a force which could not, without extreme risk, be

employed against those liberties and that religion, and missed no opportunity of throwing ridicule on the rustic soldiery.\* Enlightened patriots, when they contrasted these rude levies with the battalions which, in time of war, a few hours might bring to the coast of Kent or Sussex, were forced to acknowledge that, dangerous as it might be to keep up a permanent military establishment, it might be more dangerous still to stake the honour and independence of the country on the result of a contest between ploughmen officered by Justices of the Peace, and veteran warriors led by Marshals of France. In Parliament, however, it was

---

\* Dryden, in his *Cymon and Iphigenia*, expressed, with his usual keenness and energy, the sentiments which had been fashionable among the sycophants of James the Second :—

“The country rings around with loud alarms.  
And raw in fields the rude militia swarms;  
Mouths without hands, maintained at vast expense,  
In peace a charge, in war a weak defence.  
Stout once a month they march, a blustering band,  
And ever, but in time of need, at hand.  
This was the morn when, issuing on the guard,  
Drawn up in rank and file, they stood prepared  
Of seeming arms to make a short essay,  
Then hasten to be drunk, the business of the day.”

necessary to express such opinions with some reserve; for the militia was an institution eminently popular. Every reflection thrown on it excited the indignation of both the great parties in the state, and especially of that party which was distinguished by peculiar zeal for monarchy and for the Anglican Church. The array of the counties was commanded almost exclusively by Tory noblemen and gentlemen. They were proud of their military rank, and considered an insult offered to the service to which they belonged as offered to themselves. They were also perfectly aware that whatever was said against a militia was said in favour of a standing army; and the name of standing army was hateful to them. One such army had held dominion in England; and under that dominion the King had been murdered, the nobility degraded, the landed gentry plundered, the Church persecuted. There was scarce a rural grandee who could not tell a story of wrongs and insults suffered by himself, or by his father, at the hands of the parliamentary soldiers. One old Cavalier had

seen half his manor house blown up. The hereditary elms of another had been hewn down. A third could never go into his parish church without being reminded by the defaced scutcheons and headless statues of his ancestry, that Oliver's red-coats had once stabled their horses there. The consequence was that those very Royalists, who were most ready to fight for the King themselves, were the last persons whom he could venture to ask for the means of hiring regular troops.

19. Charles, however, had, a few months after his restoration, begun to form a small standing army. He felt that, without some better protection than that of the trainbands and beef-eaters, his palace and person would hardly be secure, in the vicinity of a great city swarming with warlike Fifth Monarchy men who had just been disbanded. He therefore, careless and profuse as he was, contrived to spare from his pleasures a sum sufficient to keep up a body of guards. With the increase of trade and of public wealth his revenues increased; and he was thus enabled, in spite of the occasional murmurs of the

(4) The body of guards, kept by Charles II formed a small standing army. It was largely increased when the Tangier garrison was brought over to England.



Commons, to make gradual additions to his regular forces. One considerable addition was made a few months before the close of his reign. The costly, useless, and pestilential settlement of Tangier was abandoned to the barbarians who dwelt around it; and the garrison, consisting of one regiment of horse and two regiments of foot, was brought to England.

(5) These were the beginnings of the mighty English army. The Life Guards had the charge of the safety of the King and royal family. The Blues were quartered near the capital. A troop of dragoons was stationed near Berwick.

20. The little army thus formed by Charles the Second was the germ of that great and renowned army which has, in the present century, marched triumphant into Madrid and Paris, into Canton and Candahar. The Life Guards, who now form two regiments, were then distributed into three troops, each of which consisted of two hundred carabineers, exclusive of officers. This corps, to which the safety of the King and royal family was confided, had a very peculiar character. Even the <sup>as described</sup> privates were designated as gentlemen of the Guard. Many of them were of good families, and had held commissions in the civil war. Their pay was far higher than that of the most favoured regiment of our time, and would in that age have been

thought a respectable provision for the younger son of a country squire. Their fine horses, their rich housings, their cuirasses, and their buff coats adorned with ribands, velvet, and gold lace, made a splendid appearance in St. James's Park. A small body of grenadier dragoons, who came from a lower class and received lower pay, was attached to each troop. Another body of household cavalry distinguished by blue coats and cloaks, and still called the Blues, was generally quartered in the neighbourhood of the capital. Near the capital lay also the corps which is now designated as the first regiment of dragoons, but which was then the only regiment of dragoons on the English establishment. It had recently been formed out of the cavalry who had returned from Tangier. A single troop of dragoons, which did not form part of any regiment, was stationed near Berwick, for the purpose of keeping the peace among the mosstroopers of the border. For this species of service the dragoon was then thought to be peculiarly qualified. He has since become a mere horse soldier.

But in the seventeenth century he was accurately described by Montecuculi as a foot soldier who used a horse only in order to arrive with more speed at the place where military service was to be performed.

(6) The two regiments of household infantry did duty near Whitehall and St. James's Palace.

21. The household infantry consisted of two regiments, which were then, as now, called the first regiment of Foot Guards, and the Coldstream Guards. They generally did duty near Whitehall and St. James's Palace. As there were then no barracks, and as, by the Petition of Right, soldiers could not be quartered on private families, the redcoats filled all the ale-houses of Westminster and the Strand.

(7) There were five other regiments of foot. The Admiral's regiment served on board the fleet. Two, after service in the Continent, were placed on the English establishment.

22. There were five other regiments of foot. One of these, called the Admiral's Regiment, was especially destined to service on board of the fleet. The remaining four still rank as the first four regiments of the line. Two of these represented two brigades which had long sustained on the Continent the fame of British valour. The first, or Royal regiment, had, under the great Gustavus, borne a conspicuous part in the deliver-

ance of Germany. The third regiment, distinguished by flesh coloured facings, from which it derived the well known name of the Buffs, had, under Maurice of Nassau, fought not less bravely for the deliverance of the Netherlands. Both these gallant bands had at length, after many vicissitudes, been recalled from foreign service by Charles the Second, and had been placed on the English establishment.

23. The regiments which now rank as the second and fourth of the line had, in 1685, just returned from Tangier, bringing with them cruel and licentious habits contracted in a long course of warfare with the Moors. A few companies of infantry which had not been regimented lay in garrison at Tilbury Fort, at Portsmouth, at Plymouth, and at some other important stations on or near the coast.

(8) The remaining two regiments.

24. Since the beginning of the seventeenth century a great change had taken place in the arms of the infantry. The pike had been gradually giving place to the musket; and, at the close of the reign of Charles the Second, most of his foot were

The arms :—  
The pike was giving place to the musket though the army still contained a large

number of pikemen. Every foot-soldier carried a sword by his side for close fight.

musketeers. Still, however, there was a large intermixture of pikemen. Each class of troops was occasionally instructed in the use of the weapon which peculiarly belonged to the other class. Every foot soldier had at his side a sword for close fight. The dragoon was armed like a musketeer, and was also provided with a weapon which had, during many years, been gradually coming into use, and which the English then called a dagger, but which, from the time of our revolution, has been known among us by the French name of bayonet. The bayonet seems not to have been so formidable an instrument of destruction as it has since become; for it was inserted in the muzzle of the gun; and in action much time was lost while the soldier unfixed his bayonet in order to fire, and fixed it again in order to charge.

The total strength of the regular army was 7,000 foot and 1,700 horse and the expenditure was £2,90,000 a year.

25. The regular army which was kept up in England at the beginning of the year 1685 consisted, all ranks included, of about seven thousand foot, and about seventeen hundred cavalry and dragoons. The whole charge amounted to about two hundred and ninety thousand pounds a

year, less than a tenth part of what the military establishment of France then cost in time of peace. The daily pay of a private in the Life Guards was four shillings, in the Blues two shillings and sixpence, in the Dragoons eighteenpence, in the Foot Guards tenpence, and in the line eightpence. The discipline was lax, and indeed could not be otherwise. The common law of England knew nothing of courts martial, and made no distinction, in time of peace, between a soldier and any other subject; nor could the government then venture to ask even the most loyal Parliament for a Mutiny Bill. A soldier, therefore, by knocking down his colonel, incurred only the ordinary penalties of assault and battery, and by refusing to obey orders, by sleeping on guard, or by deserting his colours, incurred no legal penalty at all. Military punishments were doubtless inflicted during the reign of Charles the Second, but they were inflicted very sparingly, and in such a manner as not to attract public notice, or to produce an appeal to the courts of Westminster Hall.

There was no special law for soldiers and discipline was extremely lax.

National  
liberty was  
safe against  
such an  
army.

26. Such an army as has been described was not very likely to enslave five millions of Englishmen. It would indeed have been hardly able to suppress an insurrection in London, if the trainbands of the City had joined the insurgents. Nor could the King expect that, if a rising took place in England, he would be able to obtain help from his other dominions. For, though both Scotland and Ireland supported separate military establishments, those establishments were not more than sufficient to keep down the Puritan malecontents of the former kingdom, and the Popish malecontents of the latter. The government had, however, an important military resource which must not be left unnoticed. There were in the pay of the United Provinces six fine regiments, formerly commanded by the brave Ossory. Of these regiments three had been raised in England and three in Scotland. Their native prince had reserved to himself the power of recalling them, if he needed their help against a foreign or domestic enemy. In the meantime they were maintained without any charge to him, and were kept

under an excellent discipline, to which he could not have ventured to subject them.\*

### The Navy.

27. If the jealousy of the Parliament and of the nation made it impossible for the King to maintain a formidable standing army, no similar impediment prevented him from making England the first of maritime powers. Both Whigs and Tories were ready to applaud every step tending to increase the efficiency of that force which, while it was the best protection of the island against foreign enemies, was powerless against civil liberty. All the greatest exploits achieved within the memory of that generation by English soldiers had been achieved in war against English princes. The victories of our sailors had been won over foreign foes,

The navy was viewed with favour both by the Whigs and Tories and liberal money grants were voted by Parliament to increase its efficiency and power.

\* Most of the materials which I have used for this account of the regular army will be found in the Historical Records of Regiments, published by command of King William the Fourth, and under the direction of the Adjutant General. See also Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684 ; Abridgment of the English Military Discipline, printed by especial command, 1685 ; Exercise of Foot, by their Majesties' command, 1690.



and had averted havoc and rapine from our own soil. By at least half the nation the battle of Naseby was remembered with horror, and the battle of Dunbar with pride chequered by many painful feelings; but the defeat of the Armada, and the encounters of Blake with the Hollanders and Spaniards, were recollected with unmixed exultation by all parties. Ever since the Restoration, the Commons, even when most discontented and most parsimonious, had always been bountiful even to profusion where the interest of the navy was concerned. It had been represented to them, while Danby was minister, that many of the vessels in the royal fleet were old and unfit for sea; and, although the House was, at that time, in no giving mood, an aid of near six hundred thousand pounds had been granted for the building of thirty new men of war.

But  
corruption  
and mis-  
management  
had reduced  
the navy  
to a  
wretched  
condition.

28. But the liberality of the nation had been made fruitless by the vices of the government. The list of the King's ships, it is true, looked well. There were nine first rates, fourteen second rates, thirty-nine third rates, and many smaller vessels. The

first rates, indeed, were less than the third rates of our time ; and the third rates would not now rank as very large frigates. This force, however, if it had been efficient, would in those days have been regarded by the greatest potentate as formidable. But it existed only on paper. When the reign of Charles terminated, his navy had sunk into degradation and decay, such as would be almost incredible if it were not certified to us by the independent and concurring evidence of witnesses whose authority is beyond exception. Pepys, the ablest man in the English Admiralty, drew up, in the year 1684, a memorial on the state of his department, for the information of Charles. A few months later Bonrepaux, the ablest man in the French Admiralty, having visited England for the especial purpose of ascertaining her maritime strength, laid the result of his inquiries before Lewis. The two reports are to the same effect. Bonrepaux declared that he found everything in disorder and in miserable condition, that the superiority of the French marine was acknowledged with shame and envy at Whitehall, and that

the state of our shipping and dockyards was of itself a sufficient guarantee that we should not meddle in the disputes of Europe.\* Pepys informed his master that the naval administration was a prodigy of wastefulness, corruption, ignorance, and indolence, that no estimate could be trusted, that no contract was performed, that no check was enforced. The vessels which the recent liberality of Parliament had enabled the government to build, and which had never been out of harbour, had been made of such wretched timber that they were more unfit to go to sea than the old hulls which had been battered thirty years before by Dutch and Spanish broadsides. Some of the new men of war, indeed, were so rotten that, unless speedily

---

\*I refer to a despatch of Bonrepaux to Seignelay, dated Feb. 1<sup>st</sup> 1686. It was transcribed for Mr. Fox from the French archives, during the peace of Amiens, and, with the other materials brought together by that great man, was intrusted to me by the kindness of the late Lady Holland, and of the present Lord Holland. I ought to add that, even in the midst of the troubles which have lately agitated Paris, I have found no difficulty in obtaining, from the liberality of the functionaries there, extracts supplying some chasms in Mr. Fox's collection.

navigation, made it necessary to draw a line between two professions which had hitherto been confounded. Either the command of a regiment or the command of a ship was now a matter quite sufficient to occupy the attention of a single mind. In the year 1672 the French government determined to educate young men of good family from a very early age specially for the sea service. But the English government, instead of following this excellent example, not only continued to distribute high naval commands among landmen, but selected for such commands landmen who, even on land, could not safely have been put in any important trust. Any lad of noble birth, any dissolute courtier for whom one of the King's mistresses would speak a word, might hope that a ship of the line, and with it the honour of the country and the lives of hundreds of brave men, would be committed to his care. It mattered not that he had never in his life taken a voyage except on the Thames, that he could not keep his feet in a breeze, that he did not know the difference between latitude and longitude. No previous training was.

(the army and the navy) in France was not followed in England. The utmost corruption and jobbery prevailed in the appointment and promotion of naval officers.

thought necessary; or, at most, he was sent to make a short trip in a man of war, where he was subjected to no discipline, where he was treated with marked respect, and where he lived in a round of revels and amusements. If, in the intervals of feasting, drinking and gambling, he succeeded in learning the meaning of a few technical phrases and the names of the points of the compass, he was fully qualified to take charge of a threedecker. This is no imaginary description. In 1666, John Sheffield, Earl of Mulgrave, at seventeen years of age, volunteered to serve at sea against the Dutch. He passed six weeks on board, diverting himself, as well as he could, in the society of some young libertines of rank, and then returned home to take the command of a troop of horse. After this he was never on the water till the year 1672, when he again joined the fleet, and was almost immediately appointed Captain of a ship of eighty-four guns, reputed the finest in the navy. He was then twenty-three years old, and had not, in the whole course of his life, been three months afloat. As soon as he

came back from sea he was made Colonel of a regiment of foot. This is a specimen of the manner in which naval commands of the highest importance were then given; and a favourable specimen; for Mulgrave, though he wanted experience, wanted neither parts nor courage. Others were promoted in the same way who not only were not good officers, but who were intellectually and morally incapable of ever becoming good officers, and whose only recommendation was that they had been ruined by folly and vice. The chief bait which allured these men into the service was the profit of conveying bullion and other valuable commodities from port to port; for both the Atlantic and the Mediterranean were then so much infested by pirates from Barbary that merchants were not willing to trust precious cargoes to any custody but that of a man of war. A Captain in this way sometimes cleared several thousands of pounds by a short voyage; and for this lucrative business he too often neglected the interests of his country and the honour of his flag, made mean submissions to foreign powers.

disobeyed the most direct injunctions of his superiors, lay in port when he was ordered to chase a Sallee rover, or ran with dollars to Leghorn when his instructions directed him to repair to Lisbon. And all this he did with impunity. The same interest which had placed him in a post for which he was unfit maintained him there. No Admiral, bearded by these corrupt and dissolute minions of the palace, dared to do more than mutter something about a court martial. If any officer showed a higher sense of duty than his fellows, he soon found that he lost money without acquiring honour. One Captain, who, by strictly obeying the orders of the Admiralty, missed a cargo which would have been worth four thousand pounds to him, was told by Charles, with ignoble levity, that he was a great fool for his pains.

Duties were divided between the Captain and the mate; the ways of the aristocratic Captains (gentlemen Captains) were scandalous

31. The discipline of the navy was of a piece throughout. As the courtly Captain despised the Admiralty, he was in turn despised by his crew. It could not be concealed that he was inferior in seamanship to every foremast man on board. It was idle to expect that old sailors, familiar

with the hurricanes of the tropics and with the icebergs of the Arctic Circle, would pay prompt and respectful obedience to a chief who knew no more of winds and waves than could be learned in a gilded barge between Whitehall Stairs and Hampton Court. To trust such a novice with the working of a ship was evidently impossible. The direction of the navigation was therefore taken from the Captain and given to the Master : but this partition of authority produced innumerable inconveniences. The line of demarcation was not, and perhaps could not be, drawn with precision. There was therefore constant wrangling. The Captain, confident in proportion to his ignorance, treated the Master with lordly contempt. The Master, well aware of the danger of disobliging the powerful, too, often, after a struggle, yielded against his better judgment ; and it was well if the loss of ship and crew was not the consequence. In general the least mischievous of the aristocratical Captains were those who completely abandoned to others the direction of the vessels, and thought only of making money and spending it. The way,



in which these men lived was so ostentatious and voluptuous that, greedy as they were of gain, they seldom became rich. They dressed as if for a gala at Versailles, ate off plate, drank the richest wines, and kept harems on board, while hunger and scurvy raged amongst the crews, and while corpses were daily flung out of the portholes.

The naval commanders who had risen to distinction from the lowest ranks were rude and uneducated men, though of eminent professional skill.

32. Such was the ordinary character of those who were then called gentlemen Captains. Mingled with them were to be found, happily for our country, naval commanders of a very different description, men whose whole life had been passed on the deep, and who had worked and fought their way from the lowest offices of the fore-castle to rank and distinction. One of the most eminent of these officers was Sir Christopher Mings, who entered the service as a cabin boy, who fell fighting bravely against the Dutch, and whom his crew, weeping and vowing vengeance, carried to the grave. From him sprang, by a singular kind of descent, a line of valiant and expert sailors. His cabin boy was Sir John Narborough ; and the cabin

boy of Sir John Narborough was Sir Cloudesley Shovel. To the strong natural sense and dauntless courage of this class of men England owes a debt never to be forgotten. It was by such resolute hearts that, in spite of much maladministration, and in spite of the blunders of more courtly admirals, our coasts were protected and the reputation of our flag upheld during many gloomy and perilous years. But to a landsman these tarpaulins, as they were called, seemed a strange and half savage race. All their knowledge was professional; and their professional knowledge was practical rather than scientific. Off their own element they were as simple as children. Their deportment was uncouth. There was roughness in their very good nature; and their talk, where it was not made up of nautical phrases, was too commonly made up of oaths and curses. Such were the chiefs in whose rude school were formed those sturdy warriors from whom Smollett, in the next age, drew Lieutenant Bowling and Commodore Trunnion. But it does not appear that there was in the service of any of the Stuarts a single naval officer.

such as, according to the notions of our times, a naval officer ought to be, that is to say, a man versed in the theory and practice of his calling, and steeled against all the dangers of battle and tempest, yet of cultivated mind and polished manners. There were gentlemen and there were seamen in the navy of Charles the Second. But the seamen were not gentlemen; and the gentlemen were not seamen.

The navy could have been maintained in an efficient condition at a much less cost.

33. The English navy at that time might, according to the most exact estimates which have come down to us, have been kept in an efficient state for three hundred and eighty thousand pounds a year. Four hundred thousand pounds a year was the sum actually expended, but expended, as we have seen, to very little purpose. The cost of the French marine was nearly the same; the cost of the Dutch marine considerably more.\*

---

\* My information respecting the condition of the navy, at this time, is chiefly derived from Pepys. His report, presented to Charles the Second in May 1684, has never, I believe, been printed. The manuscript is at Magdalene College, Cambridge. At Magdalene College is also a valuable manuscript containing a detailed account of the maritime establishments of the

**Ordinance.**

34. The charge of the English ordnance in the seventeenth century was, as compared with other military and naval charges, much smaller than at present. At most of the garrisons there were gunners, and here and there, at an important post, an engineer was to be found. But there was no regiment of artillery, no brigade of sappers and miners, no college in which young soldiers could learn the scientific part of war. The difficulty of moving field pieces was extreme. When a few years later, William marched from Devonshire to London, the apparatus which he brought with him, though such as had long been in constant use on the Continent, and such as would now be regarded at Woolwich as rude and cumbrous, excited in our ancestors an admiration resembling that

The charge under this head was much smaller than now. There were few engineers and no college for teaching the scientific side of war.

---

country in December 1684. Pepys's "Memoirs relating to the State of the Royal Navy for Ten Years, determined December 1688," and his diary and "correspondence during his mission to Tangier, are in print. I have made large use of them. See also Sheffield's Memoirs, Teonge's Diary, Aubrey's Life of Monk, the Life of Sir Cloudesley Shovel, 1708, Commons' Journals, March 1 and March 20, 1688<sup>g</sup>

The stock of ammunition was only a twelfth of what is now considered necessary.

which the Indians of America felt for the Castilian harquebusses. The stock of gunpowder kept in the English forts and arsenals was boastfully mentioned by patriotic writers as something which might well impress neighbouring nations with awe. It amounted to fourteen or fifteen thousand barrels, about a twelfth of the quantity which it is now thought necessary to have always in store. The expenditure under the head of ordnance was on an average a little above sixty thousand pounds a year.\*

#### Noneffective charge.

The total effective charge of the army, navy and ordnance was £750,000.

35. The whole effective charge of the army, navy, and ordnance, was about seven hundred and fifty thousand pounds. The noneffective charge, which is now a heavy part of our public burdens, can hardly be said to have existed. A very small number of naval officers, who were not employed

---

\* Chamberlayne's *State of England*, 1684; *Commons' Journals*, March 1 and March 20, 1687. In 1833, it was determined, after full enquiry, that a hundred and seventy thousand barrels of gunpowder should constantly be kept in store; and this rule is still observed.

in the public service, drew half pay. No Lieutenant was on the list, nor any Captain who had not commanded a ship of the first or second rate. As the country then possessed only seventeen ships of the first and second rate that had ever been at sea, and as a large proportion of the persons who had commanded such ships had good posts on shore, the expenditure under this head must have been small indeed.\* In the army, half pay was given merely as a special and temporary allowance to a small number of officers belonging to two regiments, which were peculiarly situated.† Greenwich Hospital had not been founded. Chelsea Hospital was building: but the cost of that institution was defrayed partly by a deduction from the pay of the troops, and partly by private subscription. The King promised to contribute only twenty thousand pounds for architectural expenses, and five thousand a year for the mainten-

Few officers received pensions and there were no hospitals for disabled soldiers and sailors. The whole non-effective charge did not exceed £10,000 a year.

---

\* It appears from the records of the Admiralty, that Flag officers were allowed half pay in 1668, Captains of first and second rates not till 1674.

† Warrant in the War Office Records, dated March 26, 1678.

ance of the invalids.\* It was no part of the plan that there should be outpensioners. The whole noneffective charge, military and naval, can scarcely have exceeded ten thousand pounds a year. It now exceeds ten thousand pounds a day.

### Charge of Civil Government.

(1) The crown had to bear only a small portion of the expenses of administration.

36. Of the expense of civil government only a small portion was defrayed by the crown. The great majority of the functionaries whose business was to administer justice and preserve order, either gave their services to the public gratuitously, or were remunerated in a manner which caused no drain on the revenue of the state. The sheriffs, mayors, and aldermen of the towns, the country gentlemen who were in the commission of the peace, the head-boroughs, bailiffs, and petty constables, cost the king nothing. The superior courts of law were chiefly supported by fees.

(2) The only English ambassador resided at

37. Our relations with foreign courts had been put on the most economical foot-

---

\* Evelyn's Diary, Jan. 27, 1682. I have seen a privy seal, dated May 17, 1683, which confirms Evelyn's testimony.

ing. The only diplomatic agent who had the title of Ambassador resided at Constantinople, and was partly supported by the Turkey Company. Even at the court of Versailles England had only an Envoy; and she had not even an Envoy at the Spanish, Swedish, and Danish courts. The whole expense under this head cannot, in the last year of the reign of Charles the Second, have much exceeded twenty thousand pounds.\*

Constantinople and was partly paid by the Turkey Company.

### Great gains of courtiers and ministers.

38. In this frugality there was nothing laudable. Charles was, as usual, niggardly in the wrong place, and munificent in the wrong place. The public service was starved that courtiers might be pampered. The expense of the navy, of the ordnance, of pensions to needy old officers, of missions to foreign courts, must seem small indeed to the present

The sums spent on the King's ministers and favourites were quite extravagant for that age. Gross corruption prevailed in all branches of administration (government).

---

\* James the Second sent Envoys to Spain, Sweden, and Denmark; yet in his reign the diplomatic expenditure was little more than 30,000*l.* a year. See the Commons' Journals, March 20, 1688  $\frac{8}{9}$ , Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684, 1687.



generation. But the personal favourites of the sovereign, his ministers, and the creatures of those ministers, were gorged with public money. Their salaries and pensions, when compared with the incomes of the nobility, the gentry, the commercial and professional men of that age, will appear enormous. The greatest estates in the kingdom then very little exceeded twenty thousand a year. The Duke of Ormond had twenty-two thousand a year.\* The Duke of Buckingham, before his extravagance had impaired his great property, had nineteen thousand six hundred a year.† George Monk, Duke of Albemarle, who had been rewarded for his eminent services with immense grants of crown land, and who had been notorious both for covetousness and for parsimony, left fifteen thousand a year of real estate, and sixty thousand pounds in money which probably yielded seven per cent.‡ These three Dukes were sup-

---

\* Carte's Life of Ormond.

† Pepys's Diary, Feb. 14, 1669.

‡ See the Report of the Bath and Montague case, which was decided by Lord Keeper Somers, in December, 1693.

posed to be three of the very richest subjects in England. The Archbishop of Canterbury can hardly have had five thousand a year.\* The average income of a temporal peer was estimated, by the best informed persons, at about three thousand a year, the average income of a baronet at nine hundred a year, the average income of a member of the House of Commons at less than eight hundred a year.† A thousand a year was thought a large revenue for a barrister. Two thousand a year was hardly to be made in the Court of King's Bench, except by the crown lawyers.‡ It is evident, therefore,

\* During three quarters of a year, beginning from Christmas 1689, the revenues of the see of Canterbury were received by an officer appointed by the crown. That officer's accounts are now in the British Museum. (Lansdowne MSS. 885) The gross revenue for the three quarters was not quite four thousand pounds; and the difference between the gross and the net revenue was evidently something considerable.

† King's Natural and Political Conclusions. Davenant on the Balance of Trade. Sir W. Temple says, "The revenues of a House of Commons have seldom exceeded four hundred thousand pounds." *Memoirs*, Third Part.

‡ Langton's Conversations with Chief Justice Hale, 1672.

that an official man would have been well paid if he had received a fourth or fifth part of what would now be an adequate stipend. In fact, however, the stipends of the higher class of official men were as large as at present, and not seldom larger. The Lord Treasurer, for example, had eight thousand a year, and, when the Treasury was in commission, the junior Lords had sixteen hundred a year each. The Paymaster of the Forces had a poundage, amounting to about five thousand a year, on all the money which passed through his hands. The Groom of the Stole had five thousand a year, the Commissioners of the Customs twelve hundred a year each, the Lords of the Bedchamber a thousand a year each.\* The regular salary, however, was the smallest part of the gains of an official man of that age. From the noblemen who held the white staff and the great seal, down to the humblest tidewaiter and gauger, what would now be called gross corruption was practised without disguise

---

\* Common's Journals, April 27, 1689; Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684.

and without reproach. Titles, places, commissions, pardons, were daily sold in market overt by the great dignitaries of the realm; and every clerk in every department imitated, to the best of his power, the evil example.

39. During the last century no prime minister, however powerful, has become rich in office; and several prime ministers have impaired their private fortune in sustaining their public character. In the seventeenth century, a statesman who was at the head of affairs might easily, and without giving scandal, accumulate in no long time an estate amply sufficient to support a dukedom. It is probable that the income of the prime minister, during his tenure of power, far exceeded that of any other subject. The place of Lord Lieutenant of Iréland was supposed, to be worth forty thousand pounds a year.\* The gains of the Chancellor Clarendon, of Arlington, of Lauderdale, and of Danby, were enormous. The sumptuous palace to which the populace of London gave the

High posts in the administration (government) were in those times the shortest roads to wealth. This explains why the statesmen of that age struggled for offices with such violence and stuck to them with such tenacity.

---

\* See the Travels of the Grand Duke Cosmo.

name of Dunkirk House, the stately pavilions, the fishponds, the deer park and the orangery of Euston, the more than Italian luxury of Ham, with its busts, fountains, and aviaries, were among the many signs which indicated what was the shortest road to boundless wealth. That is the true explanation of the unscrupulous violence with which the statesmen of that day struggled for office, of the tenacity with which, in spite of vexations, humiliations and dangers, they clung to it, and of the scandalous compliances to which they stooped in order to retain it. Even in our own age, formidable as is the power of opinion, and high as is the standard of integrity, there would be great risk of a lamentable change in the character of our public men, if the place of First Lord of the Treasury or Secretary of State were worth a hundred thousand pounds a year. Happily for our country the emoluments of the highest class of functionaries have not only not grown in proportion to the general growth of our opulence, but have positively diminished.

**State of agriculture.**

40. The fact that the sum raised in England by taxation has, in a time not exceeding two long lives, been multiplied thirtyfold, is strange, and may at first sight seem appalling. But those who are alarmed by the increase of the public burdens may perhaps be reassured when they have considered the increase of the public resources. In the year 1685, the value of the produce of the soil far exceeded the value of all the other fruits of human industry. Yet agriculture was in what would now be considered as a very rude and imperfect state. The arable land and pasture land were not supposed by the best political arithmeticians of that age to amount to much more than half the area of the kingdom.\* The remainder was believed to consist of moor, forest, and fen. These computations are strongly confirmed by the road books and maps of the seventeenth century. From those books and maps it is clear that many routes which now pass through an endless

(1) Agriculture was the chief source of national wealth. The total arable and pasture land of the country did not amount to more than half its area.

---

\* King's Natural and Political Conclusions. Davenant on the Balance of Trade.

The rest of the country consisted of fens and forests inhabited by wild birds and animals.

succession of orchards, hayfields, and beanfields, then ran through nothing but heath, swamp, and warren.\* In the drawings of English landscapes made in that age for the Grand Duke Cosmo, scarce a hedge-row is to be seen, and numerous tracts, now rich with cultivation, appear as bare as Salisbury Plain.† At Enfield, hardly out of sight of the smoke of the capital, was a region of five and twenty miles in circumference, which contained only three houses and scarcely any inclosed fields. Deer, as free as in an American forest, wandered there by thousands.‡ It is to be remarked, that wild animals of large

---

\* See the *Itinerarium Angliæ*, 1675, by John Ogilby, Cosmographer Royal. He describes great part of the land as wood, fen, heath on both sides, marsh on both sides. In some of his maps the roads through inclosed country are marked by lines, and the roads through unin~~closed~~closed country by dots. The proportion of unin~~closed~~closed country, which, if cultivated, must have been wretchedly cultivated, seems to have been very great. From Abingdon to Gloucester, for example, a distance of forty or fifty miles, there was not a single inclosure, and scarcely one inclosure between Biggleswade and Lincoln.

† Large copies of these highly interesting drawings are in the noble collection bequeathed by Mr. Grenville to the British Museum.

‡ Evelyn's *Diary*, June 2, 1675.

size were then far more numerous than at present. The last wild boars, indeed, which had been preserved for the royal diversion, and had been allowed to ravage the cultivated land with their tusks, had been slaughtered by the exasperated rustics during the license of the civil war. The last wolf that has roamed our island had been slain in Scotland a short time before the close of the reign of Charles the Second. But many breeds, now extinct or rare, both of quadrupeds and birds, were still common. The fox, whose life is, in many counties, held almost as sacred as that of a human being, was considered as a mere nuisance. Oliver Saint John told the Long Parliament that Strafford was to be regarded, not as a stag or a hare, to whom some law was to be given, but as a fox, who was to be snared by any means, and knocked on the head without pity. This illustration would be by no means a happy one, if addressed to country gentlemen of our time: but in Saint John's days there were not seldom great massacres of foxes to which the peasantry, thronged with all the dogs that could be



mustered: traps were set; nets were spread; no quarter was given; and to shoot a female with cub was considered as a feat which merited the gratitude of the neighbourhood. The red deer were then as common in Gloucestershire and Hampshire as they now are among the Grampian Hills. On one occasion Queen Anne, on her way to Portsmouth, saw a herd of no less than five hundred. The wild bull with his white mane was still to be found wandering in a few of the southern forests. The badger made his dark and tortuous hole on the side of every hill where the copsewood grew thick. The wild cats were frequently heard by night wailing round the lodges of the rangers of Whittlebury and Needwood. The yellow-breasted martin was still pursued in Cranbourne Chase for his fur, reputed inferior only to that of the sable. Fen eagles, measuring more than nine feet between the extremities of the wings, preyed on fish along the coast of Norfolk. On all the downs, from the British Channel to Yorkshire, huge bustards strayed in troops of fifty or sixty, and were

often hunted with greyhounds. The marshes of Cambridgeshire and Lincolnshire were covered during some months of every year by immense clouds of cranes. Some of these races the progress of cultivation has extirpated. Of others the numbers are so much diminished that men crowd to gaze at a specimen as at a Bengal tiger, or a Polar bear.\*

41. The progress of this great change (1) Enclosures. can nowhere be more clearly traced than in the Statute Book. The number of inclosure acts passed since King George the Second came to the throne exceeds four thousand. The area inclosed under the authority of those acts exceeds, on a moderate calculation, ten thousand square miles. How many square miles, which were formerly uncultivated or ill cultivated, have, during the same period, been fenced and carefully tilled by the proprietors, without any application to

---

\* See White's *Selborne* ; Bell's *History of British Quadrupeds* ; *Gentleman's Recreation*, 1686 ; Aubrey's *Natural History of Wiltshire*, 1685 ; Morton's *History of Northamptonshire*, 1712 ; Willoughby's *Ornithology*, by Ray, 1678 ; Latham's *General Synopsis of Birds* ; and Sir Thomas Browne's *Account of Birds found in Norfolk*.

the legislature, can only be conjectured. But it seems highly probable that a fourth part of England has been, in the course of a little more than a century, turned from a wild into a garden.

(2) The system of agriculture was defective. The total yield of wheat, barley, rye and other grains was less than ten million quarters but it now considerably exceeds thirty millions.

42. Even in those parts of the kingdom which at the close of the reign of Charles the Second were the best cultivated, the farming, though greatly improved since the civil war, was not such as would now be thought skilful. To this day no effectual steps have been taken by public authority for the purpose of obtaining accurate accounts of the produce of the English soil. The historian must therefore follow, with some misgivings, the guidance of those writers on statistics whose reputation for diligence and fidelity stands highest. At present an average crop\* of wheat, rye, barley, oats, and beans, is supposed considerably to exceed thirty millions of quarters. The crop of wheat would be thought wretched if it did not exceed twelve millions of quarters. According to the computation made in the year 1696 by Gregory King, the whole quantity of

wheat, rye, barley, oats, and beans, then annually grown in the kingdom, was somewhat less than ten millions of quarters. The wheat, which was then cultivated only on the strongest clay, and consumed only by those who were in easy circumstances, he estimated at less than two millions of quarters. Charles Davenant, an acute and well informed though most unprincipled and rancorous politician, differed from King as to some of the items of the account, but came to nearly the same general conclusions.\*

43. The rotation of crops was very imperfectly understood. It was known, indeed, that some vegetables lately introduced into our island, particularly the turnip, afforded excellent nutriment in winter to sheep and oxen: but it was not yet the practice to feed cattle in this manner. It was therefore by no means easy to keep them alive during the season when the grass is scanty. They were killed and salted in great numbers at the beginning of the cold weather; and, during several

(3) The principle of rotation of crops was not properly understood. Cattle were slaughtered in large numbers at the beginning of the cold weather and people had to depend on salted meat during several months.

---

\* King's Natural and Political Conclusions. Davenant on the Balance of Trade.

months, even the gentry tasted scarcely any fresh animal food, except game and river fish, which were consequently much more important articles in housekeeping than at present. It appears from the Northumberland Household Book that, in the reign of Henry the Seventh, fresh meat was never eaten even by the gentlemen attendant on a great Earl, except during the short interval between Midsummer and Michaelmas. But in the course of two centuries an improvement had taken place; and under Charles the Second it was not till the beginning of November that families laid in their stock of salt provisions, then called Martinmas beef.\*

(4) The sheep and cattle were of a comparatively diminutive size;

44. The sheep and the ox of that time were diminutive when compared with the sheep and oxen which are now driven to our markets.† Our native horses, though serviceable, were held in small esteem, and fetched low prices. They were valued, one with another, by the ablest of those who computed the national wealth,

---

\* See the Almanacks of 1684 and 1685.

† See Mr. M'Culloch's Statistical account of the British Empire, part III. chap. i. sec. 6.

at not more than fifty shillings each. Foreign breeds were greatly preferred. Spanish jennets were regarded as the finest chargers, and were imported for purposes of pageantry and war. The coaches of the aristocracy were drawn by grey Flemish mares, which trotted, as it was thought, with a peculiar grace, and endured better than any cattle reared in our island the work of dragging a ponderous equipage over the rugged pavement of London. Neither the modern dray horse nor the modern race horse was then known. At a much later period the ancestors of the gigantic quadrupeds, which all foreigners now class among the chief wonders of London, were brought from the marshes of Walcheren; the ancestors of Childers and Eclipse from the sands of Arabia. Already, however, there was among our nobility and gentry a passion for the amusements of the turf. The importance of improving our studs by an infusion of new blood was strongly felt; and with this view a considerable number of barbs had lately been brought into the country. Two men whose

English horses were of a poor quality and had not reached their present perfection.

authority on such subjects was held in great esteem, the Duke of Newcastle and Sir John Fenwick, pronounced that the meanest hack ever imported from Tangier would produce a finer progeny than could be expected from the best sire of our native breed. They would not readily have believed that a time would come when the princes and nobles of neighbouring lands would be as eager to obtain horses from England as ever the English had been to obtain horses from Barbary.\*

#### Mineral wealth of the country.

(1) The only mineral wealth of the country consisted in the produce of the tin mines of Cornwall amounting to only

45. The increase of vegetable and animal produce, though great, seems small when compared with the increase of our mineral wealth. In 1685 the tin of Cornwall, which had, more than two thousand years before, attracted the Tyrian sails beyond the pillars of Hercules, was still one of

---

\* King and Davenant as before ; The Duke of Newcastle on *Worsemanship* ; *Gentleman's Recreation*, 1686. The "dappled Flanders mares" were marks of greatness in the time of Pope, and even later.

The vulgar proverb, that the grey mare is the better horse, originated, I suspect, in the preference generally given to the grey mares of Flanders over the finest coach horses of England.

the most valuable subterranean productions of the island. The quantity annually extracted from the earth was found to be, some years later, sixteen hundred tons, probably about a third of what it now is.\* But the veins of copper which lie in the same region were, in the time of Charles the Second, altogether neglected, nor did any landowner take them into the account in estimating the value of his property. Cornwall and Wales at present yield annually near fifteen thousand tons of copper, worth near a million and a half sterling; that is to say, worth about twice as much as the annual produce of all English mines of all descriptions in the seventeenth century.† The first bed of rock salt had been discovered not long after the Restoration in Cheshire, but does not appear to have been worked in that age. The salt which was obtained

a third of its present output. The copper mines were not considered worth working. The salt manufactured was of a poor quality.

---

\* See a curious note by Tonkin,\* in Lord De Dunstanville's edition of Carew's Survey of Cornwall.

† Borlase's Natural History of Cornwall, 1758. The quantity of copper now produced, I have taken from parliamentary returns. Davenant, in 1700, estimated the annual produce of all the mines of England at between seven and eight hundred thousand pounds.



by a rude process from brine pits was held in no high estimation. The pans in which the manufacture was carried on exhaled a sulphurous stench; and, when the evaporation was complete, the substance which was left was scarcely fit to be used with food. Physicians attributed the scorbutic and pulmonary complaints which were common among the English to this unwholesome condiment. It was therefore seldom used by the upper and middle classes; and there was a regular and considerable importation from France. At present our springs and mines not only supply our own immense demand, but send annually more than seven hundred millions of pounds of excellent salt to foreign countries.\*

(2) Iron could be manufactured only on a small scale because the use of timber for smelting ores was

46. Far more important has been the improvement of our iron works. Such works had long existed in our island, but had not prospered, and had been regarded with no favourable eye by the government and by the public. It was not then

---

\* Philosophical Transactions, No. 53. Nov. 1669, No. 66, Dec. 1670, No. 103. May 1674, No. 156, Feb. 1683/4.

the practice to employ coal for smelting the ore; and the rapid consumption of wood excited the alarm of politicians. As early as the reign of Elizabeth there had been loud complaints that whole forests were cut down for the purpose of feeding the furnaces: and the parliament had interfered to prohibit the manufacturers from burning timber. The manufacture consequently languished. At the close of the reign of Charles the Second, great part of the iron which was used in the country was imported from abroad; and the whole quantity cast here annually seems not to have exceeded ten thousand tons. At present the trade is thought to be in a depressed state if less than a million of tons are produced in a year.\*

forbidden.  
A large  
part of the  
iron used in  
England  
had to be  
imported  
from abroad.

47. One mineral, perhaps more important than iron itself, remains to be mentioned. Coal, though very little used in any species of manufacture, was already the

(3) The  
output of  
coal mines  
was very  
small.

---

\* Yarranton, *England's Improvement by Sea and Land*, 1677; Porter's *Progress of the Nation*. See also a remarkably perspicuous history, in small compass, of the English iron works, in Mr. M'Culloch's *Statistical Account of the British Empire*.

ordinary fuel in some districts which were fortunate enough to possess large beds, and in the capital, which could easily be supplied by water carriage. It seems reasonable to believe that at least one half of the quantity then extracted from the pits was consumed in London. The consumption of London seemed to the writers of that age enormous, and was often mentioned by them as a proof of the greatness of the imperial city. They scarcely hoped to be believed when they affirmed that two hundred and eighty thousand chaldrons, that is to say, about three hundred and fifty thousand tons, were, in the last year of the reign of Charles the Second, brought to the Thames. At present near three million and a half of tons are required yearly by the metropolis; and the whole annual produce cannot, on the most moderate computation, be estimated at less than thirty millions of tons.\*

---

\* See Chamberlayne's *State of England*, 1684, 1687; *Angliæ Metropolis*, 1691; M'Culloch's *Statistical Account of the British Empire*, Part III., chap. ii. (edition of 1847). In 1845 the quantity of coal brought into London appeared, by the parliamentary returns, to be 3,460,000 tons.

**Increase of rent.**

48. While these great changes have been in progress, the rent of land has, as might be expected, been almost constantly rising. In some districts it has multiplied more than tenfold. In some it has not more than doubled. It has probably, on the average, quadrupled.

The rent of land has on the average quadrupled.

49. Of the rent, a large proportion was divided among the country gentlemen, a class of persons whose position and character it is most important that we should clearly understand; for by their influence and by their passions the fate of the nation was, at several important conjunctures, determined.

A large proportion of the rent was divided among the country gentlemen.

**The country gentlemen.**

50. We should be much mistaken if we pictured to ourselves the squires of the seventeenth century as men bearing a close resemblance to their descendants, the county members and chairmen of quarter sessions with whom we are familiar. The modern country gentleman generally receives a liberal education, passes from a distinguished school to a distinguished,

(1) The country gentlemen of that age were a rude and unlettered class. Their lands yielded only a quarter of their present rents and so they had

neither the means to travel abroad nor frequently to visit the capital.

college, and has every opportunity to become an excellent scholar. He has generally seen something of foreign countries. A considerable part of his life has generally been passed in the capital; and the refinements of the capital follow him into the country. There is perhaps no class of dwellings so pleasing as the rural seats of the English gentry. In the parks and pleasure grounds, nature, dressed yet not disguised by art, wears her most alluring form. In the buildings, good sense and good taste combine to produce a happy union of the comfortable and the graceful. The pictures, the musical instruments, the library, would in any other country be considered as proving the owner to be an eminently polished and accomplished man. A country gentleman who witnessed the Revolution was probably in receipt of about a fourth part of the rent which his acres now yield to his posterity. He was, therefore, as compared with his posterity, a poor man, and was generally under the necessity of residing, with little interruption, on his estate. To travel on the Continent, to maintain an

establishment in London, or even to visit London frequently, were pleasures in which only the great proprietors could indulge. It may be confidently affirmed that of the squires whose names were then in the Commissions of Peace and Lieutenancy not one in twenty went to town once in five years, or had ever in his life wandered so far as Paris. Many lords of manors had received an education differing little from that of their menial servants. The heir of an estate often passed his boyhood and youth at the seat of his family with no better tutors than grooms and gamekeepers, and scarce attained learning enough to sign his name to a *Mittimus*. If he went to school and to college, he generally returned before he was twenty to the seclusion of the old hall, and there, unless his mind were very happily constituted by nature, soon forgot his academical pursuits in rural business and pleasures. His chief serious employment was the care of his property. He examined samples of grain, handled pigs, and, on market days, made bargains over a tankard with drovers and hop merchants. His chief pleasures

Their ways  
of life and  
manners  
were un-  
refined and  
quite  
different  
from those  
of their  
posterity

were commonly derived from field sports and from an unrefined sensuality. His language and pronunciation were such as we should now expect to hear only from the most ignorant clowns. His oaths, coarse jests, and scurrilous terms of abuse, were uttered with the broadest accent of his province. It was easy to discern, from the first words which he spoke, whether he came from Somersetshire or Yorkshire. He troubled himself little about decorating his abode, and, if he attempted decoration, seldom produced anything but deformity. The litter of a farmyard gathered under the windows of his bedchamber, and the cabbages and gooseberry bushes grew close to his hall door. His table was loaded with coarse plenty; and guests were cordially welcomed to it. But, as the habit of drinking to excess was general in the class to which he belonged, and as his fortune did not enable him to intoxicate large assemblies daily with claret or canary, strong beer was the ordinary beverage. The quantity of beer consumed in those days was indeed enormous. For beer then was to the middle and lower classes, not

only all that beer now is, but all that wine, tea, and ardent spirits now are. It was only at great houses, or on great occasions, that foreign drink was placed on the board. The ladies of the house, whose business it had commonly been to cook the repast, retired as soon as the dishes had been devoured, and left the gentlemen to their ale and tobacco. The coarse jollity of the afternoon was often prolonged till the revellers were laid under the table.

51. It was very seldom that the country gentleman caught glimpses of the great world; and what he saw of it tended rather to confuse than to enlighten his understanding. His opinions respecting religion, government, foreign countries and former times, having been derived, not from study, from observation, or from conversation with enlightened companions, but from such traditions as were current in his own small circle, were the opinions of a child. He adhered to them, however, with the obstinacy which is generally found in ignorant men accustomed to be fed with flattery. His animosities were numerous and bitter. He hated Frenchmen and

(2) They were men of narrow and strong prejudices on account of their ignorance and inexperience of the great world.



Italians, Scotchmen and Irishmen, Papists and Presbyterians, Independents and Baptists, Quakers and Jews. Towards London and Londoners he felt an aversion which more than once produced important political effects. His wife and daughter were in tastes and acquirements below a housekeeper or a stillroom maid of the present day. They stitched and spun, brewed gooseberry wine, cured marigolds, and made the crust for the venison pasty.

(3) They had a strong sense of dignity and family pride and had all the virtues and vices of aristocrats.

52. From this description it might be supposed that the English esquire of the seventeenth century did not materially differ from a rustic miller or alehouse keeper of our time. There are, however, some important parts of his character still to be noted, which will greatly modify this estimate. Unlettered as he was and unpolished, he was still in some most important points a gentleman. He was a member of a proud and powerful aristocracy, and was distinguished by many both of the good and of the bad qualities which belong to aristocrats. His family pride was beyond that of a Talbot or a Howard. He knew the genealogies and

coats of arms of all his neighbours, and could tell which of them had assumed supporters without any right, and which of them were so unfortunate as to be great grandsons of aldermen. He was a magistrate, and, as such, administered gratuitously to those who dwelt around him a rude patriarchal justice, which, in spite of innumerable blunders and of occasional acts of tyranny, was yet better than no justice at all. He was an officer of the trainbands; and his military dignity, though it might move the mirth of gallants who had served a campaign in Flanders, raised his character in his own eyes and in the eyes of his neighbours. Nor indeed was his soldiership justly a subject of derision. In every county there were elderly gentlemen who had seen service which was no child's play. One had been knighted by Charles the First, after the battle of Edgehill. Another still wore a patch over the scar which he had received\*at Naseby. A third had defended his old house till Fairfax had blown in the door with a petard. The presence of these old Cavaliers, with their old swords and

Though  
rude and  
uncultured  
they had  
a keen  
sense of  
honour and  
strictly  
observed  
social  
etiquette.

holsters, and with their old stories about Goring and Lunsford, gave to the musters of militia an earnest and warlike aspect which would otherwise have been wanting. Even those country gentlemen who were too young to have themselves exchanged blows with the cuirassiers of the Parliament had, from childhood, been surrounded by the traces of recent war, and fed with stories of the martial exploits of their fathers and uncles. Thus the character of the English esquire of the seventeenth century was compounded of two elements which we are not accustomed to find united. His ignorance and uncouthness, his low tastes and gross phrases, would, in our time, be considered as indicating a nature and a breeding thoroughly plebeian. Yet he was essentially a patrician, and had, in large measure, both the virtues and the vices which flourish among men set from their birth in high place, and accustomed to authority, to observance, and to self-respect. It is not easy for a generation which is accustomed to find chivalrous sentiments only in company with liberal studies and polished manners to image to

itself a man with the deportment, the vocabulary, and the accent of a carter, yet punctilious on matters of genealogy and precedence, and ready to risk his life rather than see a stain cast on the honour of his house. It is however only by thus joining together things seldom or never found together in our own experience, that we can form a just idea of that rustic aristocracy which constituted the main strength of the armies of Charles the First, and which long supported, with strange fidelity, the interest of his descendants.

53. The gross, uneducated, untravelled country gentleman was commonly a Tory : but, though devotedly attached to hereditary monarchy, he had no partiality for courtiers and ministers. He thought, not without reason, that Whitehall was filled with the most corrupt of mankind ; that of the great sums which the House of Commons had voted to the crown since the Restoration part had been embezzled by cunning politicians, and part squandered on buffoons and foreign courtesans. His stout English heart swelled with indignation at the thought that the government of

(4) Though Tories yet they hated the king's ministers and the corruption that prevailed in the court. With all their complaints about the king's ingratitude they were ready to support his authority in case of need.

his country should be subject to French dictation. Being himself generally an old Cavalier, or the son of an old Cavalier, he reflected with bitter resentment on the ingratitude with which the Stuarts had requited their best friends. Those who heard him grumble at the neglect with which he was treated, and at the profusion with which wealth was lavished on the bastards of Nell Gwynn and Madam Carwell, would have supposed him ripe for rebellion. But all this ill humour lasted only till the throne was really in danger. It was precisely when those whom the sovereign had loaded with wealth and honours shrank from his side that the country gentlemen, so surly and mutinous in the season of his prosperity, rallied round him in a body. Thus, after murmuring twenty years at the misgovernment of Charles the Second, they came to his rescue in his extremity, when his own Secretaries of State and Lords of the Treasury had deserted him, and enabled him to gain a complete victory over the opposition; nor can there be any doubt that they would have shown equal loyalty

They  
deserted  
King  
James II

to his brother James, if James would, even at the last moment, have refrained from outraging their strongest feeling. For there was one institution, and one only, which they prized even more than hereditary monarchy; and that institution was the Church of England. Their love of the Church was not, indeed, the effect of study or meditation. Few among them could have given any reason, drawn from Scripture or ecclesiastical history, for adhering to her doctrines, her ritual, and her polity; nor were they, as a class, by any means strict observers of that code of morality which is common to all Christian sects. But the experience of many ages proves that men may be ready to fight to the death, and to persecute without pity, for a religion whose creed they do not understand, and whose precepts they habitually disobey.\*

because he  
offended  
their  
religious  
feelings  
by his  
attack on  
the Church  
of England.

---

\* My notion of the country gentleman of the seventeenth century has been derived from sources too numerous to be recapitulated. I must leave my description to the judgment of those who have studied the history and the lighter literature of that age.

### The Clergy.

(1) The rural clergy were even fiercer Tories than the gentry. They were a comparatively poorer class.

54. The rural clergy were even more vehement in Toryism than the rural gentry, and were a class scarcely less important. It is to be observed, however, that the individual clergyman, as compared with the individual gentleman, then ranked much lower than in our days. The main support of the Church was derived from the tithe; and the tithe bore to the rent a much smaller ratio than at present. King estimated the whole income of the parochial and collegiate clergy at only four hundred and eighty thousand pounds a year; Davenant at only five hundred and forty-four thousand a year. It is certainly now more than seven times as great as the larger of these two sums. The average rent of the land has not, according to any estimate, increased proportionally. It follows that rectors and vicars must have been, as compared with the neighbouring knights and squires, much poorer in the seventeenth than in the nineteenth century.

(2) The social position of the clergy was

55. The place of the clergyman in society had been completely changed by the Reformation. Before that event, eccle-

siastics had formed the majority of the House of Lords, had, in wealth and splendour, equalled, and sometimes outshone, the greatest of the temporal barons, and had generally held the highest civil offices. The Lord Treasurer was often a Bishop. The Lord Chancellor was almost always so. The Lord Keeper of the Privy Seal and the Master of the Rolls were ordinarily churchmen. Churchmen transacted the most important diplomatic business. Indeed, almost all that large portion of the administration which rude and warlike nobles were incompetent to conduct was considered as especially belonging to divines. Men, therefore, who were averse to the life of camps, and who were, at the same time, desirous to rise in the state, ordinarily received the tonsure. Among them were sons of all the most illustrious families, and near kinsmen of the throne, Scroops and Nevilles, Bouchiers, Staffords, and Poles. To the religious houses belonged the rents of immense domains, and all that large portion of the tithe which is now in the hands of laymen. Down to the middle of the

disastrously  
 affected  
 by the  
 Reforma-  
 tion.



reign of Henry the Eighth, therefore, no line of life bore so inviting an aspect to ambitious and covetous natures as the priesthood. Then came a violent revolution. The abolition of the monasteries deprived the Church at once of the greater part of her wealth, and of her predominance in the Upper House of Parliament. There was no longer an Abbot of Glastonbury or an Abbot of Reading seated among the peers, and possessed of revenues equal to those of a powerful Earl. The princely splendour of William of Wykeham and of William of Waynflete had disappeared. The scarlet hat of the Cardinal, the silver cross of the Legate, were no more. The clergy had also lost the ascendancy which is the natural reward of superior mental cultivation. Once the circumstance that a man could read had raised a presumption that he was in orders. But, in an age which produced such laymen as William Cecil and Nicholas Bacon, Roger Ascham and Thomas Smith, Walter Mildmay and Francis Walsingham, there was no reason for calling away prelates from their

dioceses to negotiate treaties, to superintend the finances, or to administer justice. The spiritual character not only ceased to be a qualification for high civil office, but began to be regarded as a disqualification. Those worldly motives, therefore, which had formerly induced so many able, aspiring, and high born youths to assume the ecclesiastical habit, ceased to operate. Not one parish in two hundred then afforded what a man of family considered as a maintenance. There were still indeed prizes in the Church: but they were few; and even the highest were mean, when compared with the glory which had once surrounded the princes of the hierarchy. The state kept by Parker and Grindal seemed beggarly to those who remembered the imperial pomp of Wolsey, his palaces, which had become the favourite abodes of royalty, Whitehall and Hampton Court, the three sumptuous tables daily spread in his refectory, the forty-four gorgeous copes in his chapel, his running footmen in rich liveries, and his body guards with gilded poleaxes. Thus the sacerdotal office lost its attraction,

for the higher classes. During the century which followed the accession of Elizabeth, scarce a single person of noble descent took orders. At the close of the reign of Charles the Second, two sons of peers were Bishops; four or five sons of peers were priests, and held valuable preferment: but these rare exceptions did not take away the reproach which lay on the body. The clergy were regarded as, on the whole, a plebeian class. And, indeed, for one who made the figure of a gentleman, ten were mere menial servants. A large proportion of those divines who had no benefices, or whose benefices were too small to afford a comfortable revenue, lived in the houses of laymen. It had long been evident that this practice tended to degrade the priestly character. Laud had exerted himself to effect a change; and Charles the First had repeatedly issued positive orders that none but men of high rank should presume to keep domestic chaplains.\* But these injunctions had become obsolete. Indeed, during the domination of the Puritans,

They  
were on  
the whole  
regarded  
as a poor  
and plebeian

---

\* See Heylin's *Cyprianus Anglicus*.

many of the ejected ministers of the Church of England could obtain bread and shelter only by attaching themselves to the households of royalist gentlemen; and the habits which had been formed in those times of trouble continued long after the re-establishment of monarchy and episcopacy. In the mansions of men of liberal sentiments and cultivated understandings, the chaplain was doubtless treated with urbanity and kindness. His conversation, his literary assistance, his spiritual advice, were considered as an ample return for his food, his lodging, and his stipend. But this was not the general feeling of the country gentlemen. The coarse and ignorant squire who thought that it belonged to his dignity to have grace said every day at his table by an ecclesiastic in full canonicals, found means to reconcile dignity with economy. A young Levite—such was the phrase then in use—might be had for his board, a small garret, and ten pounds a year, and might not only perform his own professional functions, might not only be the most patient of butts,

class and the domestic chaplains attached to the houses of the gentry were regarded as little better than menials.

and of listeners, might not only be always ready in fine weather for bowls, and in rainy weather for shovelboard, but might also save the expense of a gardener, or of a groom. Sometimes the reverend man nailed up the apricots, and sometimes he curried the coach horses. He cast up the farrier's bills. He walked ten miles with a message or a parcel. He was permitted to dine with the family; but he was expected to content himself with the plainest fare. He might fill himself with the corned beef and the carrots: but, as soon as the tarts and the cheesecakes made their appearance, he quitted his seat, and stood aloof till he was summoned to return thanks for the repast, from a great part of which he had been excluded.\*

(3) No girl  
of a res-  
pectable  
family  
would have  
a clergyman  
for her

56. Perhaps, after some years of service, he was presented to a living sufficient to support him: but he often found it necessary to purchase his pre-

---

\* Eachard, *Causes of the Contempt of the Clergy*; Oldham, *Satire addressed to a Friend about to leave the University*; Tatler, 255, 258. That the English clergy were a lowborn class, is remarked in the *Travels of the Grand Duke Cosmo*. Appendix A.

ferment by a species of Simony, which furnished an inexhaustible subject of pleasantries to three or four generations of scoffers. With his cure he was expected to take a wife. The wife had ordinarily been in the patron's service; and it was well if she was not suspected of standing too high in the patron's favour. Indeed, the nature of the matrimonial connections which the clergymen of that age were in the habit of forming is the most certain indication of the place which the order held in the social system. An Oxonian, writing a few months after the death of Charles the Second, complained bitterly, not only that the country attorney and the country apothecary looked down with disdain on the country clergyman, but that one of the lessons most earnestly inculcated on every girl of honourable family was to give no encouragement to a lover in orders, and that, if any young lady forgot this precept, she was almost as much disgraced as by an illicit amour.\* Claren-

husband and so he had to seek a wife from among the humbler classes.

---

\* "A causidico, medicastro, ipsaque artificum faragine, ecclesiæ rector aut vicarius contemnitur et fit ludibrio. Gentis et familiæ nitor sacris ordinibus pollutus."

don, who assuredly bore no ill will to the Church, mentions it as a sign of the confusion of ranks which the great rebellion had produced, that some damsels of noble families had bestowed themselves on divines.\* A waiting woman was generally considered as the most suitable helpmate for a parson. Queen Elizabeth, as head of the Church, had given what seemed to be a formal sanction to this prejudice, by issuing special orders that no clergyman should presume to marry a servant girl, without the consent of the master or mistress.† During several generations accordingly the relation between priests and handmaidens was a theme for endless jest; nor would it be easy to find, in the comedy of the seventeenth century, a single instance of a clergyman who wins a spouse above

---

censetur: *foeminisque natalitio insignibus unicum inculcatur sæpius præceptum, ne modestiæ naufragium faciant, aut, (quod idem auribus tam delicatulis sonat,) ne clerico se puptas dari patiantur.*" *Angliæ Notitia*, by T. Wood, of New College, Oxford, 1686.

\* Clarendon's *Life*, ii. 21.

† See the Injunctions of 1559, in Bishop Sparrow's Collection. Jeremy Collier, in his *Essay on Pride*, speaks of this injunction with a bitterness which proves that his own pride had not been effectually tamed.

the rank of a cook.\* Even so late as the time of George the Second, the keenest of all observers of life and manners, himself a priest, remarked that, in a great household, the chaplain was the resource of a lady's maid whose character had been blown upon, and who was therefore forced to give up hopes of catching the steward.†

57. In general the divine who quitted his chaplainship for a benefice and a wife found that he had only exchanged one class of vexations for another. Not one living in fifty enabled the incumbent to bring up a family comfortably. As children multiplied and grew, the household of the priest became more and more beggarly. Holes appeared more and more plainly in the thatch of his personage and in his single cassock. Often it was only by toiling on his glebe, by feeding swine, and by loading dungcarts, that he could obtain daily bread; nor did his utmost exertions always prevent the bailiffs from

(4) On account of the poor income of his living the clergyman had to work hard on his fields. Intellectual culture was quite impossible under such circumstances.

---

\* Roger and Abigail in Fletcher's *Scornful Lady*, Bull and the Nurse in Vanbrugh's *Relapse*, Smirk and Susan in Shadwell's *Lancashire Witches*, are instances.

† Swift's *Directions to Servants*.



taking his concordance and his inkstand in execution. It was a white day on which he was admitted into the kitchen of a great house, and regaled by the servants with cold meat and ale. His children were brought up like the children of the neighbouring peasantry. His boys followed the plough; and his girls went out to service. Study he found impossible: for the advowson of his living would hardly have sold for a sum sufficient to purchase a good theological library; and he might be considered as unusually lucky if he had ten or twelve dogeared volumes among the pots and pans on his shelves. Even a keen and strong intellect might be expected to rust in so unfavourable a situation.

(5) The above description applied only to the rural clergy. Clergymen, distinguished for learning and culture, were to be found at the Universities

58. Assuredly there was at that time no lack in the English Church of ministers distinguished by abilities and learning. But it is to be observed that these ministers were not scattered among the rural population. They were brought together at a few places where the means of acquiring knowledge were abundant, and where the opportunities of vigorous intellectual exer-

cise were frequent.\* At such places were to be found divines qualified by parts, by eloquence, by wide knowledge of literature, of science, and of life, to defend their Church victoriously against heretics and sceptics, to command the attention of frivolous and worldly congregations, to guide the deliberations of senates, and to make religion respectable, even in the most dissolute of courts. Some laboured to fathom the abysses of metaphysical theology; some were deeply versed in biblical criticism; and some threw light on the darkest parts of ecclesiastical history. Some proved themselves consummate masters of logic. Some cultivated rhetoric with such assiduity and success that their discourses are still justly valued as models of style. These eminent men were to be found, with scarce a single exception, at the Universities, at the great Cathedrals, or in the capital. Barrow had lately died at Cambridge; and Pearson had gone thence to the episcopal bench. Cutworth and

and in the capital.

---

\* This distinction between country clergy and town clergy is strongly marked by Eachard, and cannot but be observed by every person who has studied the ecclesiastical history of that age.

Henry More were still living there. South and Pococke, Jane and Aldrich, were at Oxford. Prideaux was in the close of Norwich, and Whitby in the close of Salisbury. But it was chiefly by the London clergy, who were always spoken of as a class apart, that the fame of their profession for learning and eloquence was upheld. The principal pulpits of the metropolis were occupied about this time by a crowd of distinguished men, from among whom was selected a large proportion of the rulers of the Church. Sherlock preached at the Temple, Tillotson at Lincoln's Inn, Wake and Jeremy Collier at Gray's Inn, Burnet at the Rolls, Stillingfleet at St. Paul's Cathedral, Patrick at St. Paul's, Covent Garden, Fowler at St. Giles's, Cripplegate, Sharp at St. Giles's in the Fields, Tenison at St. Martin's, Sprat at St. Margaret's, Beveridge at St. Peter's in Cornhill. Of these twelve men, all of high note in ecclesiastical history, ten became Bishops, and four Archbishops. Meanwhile almost the only important theological works which came forth from a rural parsonage were those of George Bull,

afterwards Bishop of St. David's; and Bull never would have produced those works, had he not inherited an estate, by the sale of which he was enabled to collect a library, such as probably no other country clergyman in England possessed.\*

59. Thus the Anglican priesthood was divided into two sections, which, in acquirements, in manners, and in social position, differed widely from each other. One section, trained for cities and courts, comprised men familiar with all ancient and modern learning; men able to encounter Hobbes or Bossuet at all the weapons of controversy; men who could, in their sermons, set forth the majesty and beauty of Christianity with such justness of thought, and such energy of language, that the indolent Charles roused himself to listen, and the fastidious Buckingham forgot to sneer; men whose address, politeness, and knowledge of the world qualified them to manage the consciences of the wealthy and noble; men with whom

(6) The Anglican priesthood contained two classes of men—  
(i) one cultured and intelligent in the Universities and London

---

\* Nelson's Life of Bull. As to the extreme difficulty which the country clergy found in procuring books, see the Life of Thomas Bray, the founder of the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel.

Halifax loved to discuss the interests of empires, and from whom Dryden was not ashamed to own that he had learned to write.\* The other section was destined to ruder and humbler service. It was dispersed over the country, and consisted chiefly of persons not at all wealthier, and not much more refined, than small farmers or upper servants. Yet it was in these rustic priests, who derived but a scanty subsistence from their tithe sheaves and tithe pigs, and who had not the smallest chance of ever attaining high professional honours, that the professional spirit was strongest. Among those divines who were the boast of the Universities and the delight of the capital, and who had attained, or might reasonably expect to attain, opulence and lordly rank, a party, respectable in numbers, and more respectable in character, learned towards constitutional principles of government, lived on friendly terms with Presbyterians, Independents,

\* "I have frequently heard him (Dryden) own with pleasure, that if he had any talent for English prose it was owing to his having often read the writings of the great Archbishop Tillotson." Congreve's *Dedication of Dryden's Plays*.

and Baptists, would gladly have seen a full toleration granted to all Protestant sects, and would even have consented to make alterations in the Liturgy, for the purpose of conciliating honest and candid Non-conformists. But such latitudinarianism was held in horror by the country parson. He was, indeed, prouder of his ragged gown than his superiors of their lawn and of their scarlet hoods. The very consciousness that there was little in his worldly circumstances to distinguish him from the villagers to whom he preached led him to hold immoderately high the dignity of that sacerdotal office which was his single title to reverence. Having lived in seclusion, and having had little opportunity of correcting his opinions by reading or conversation, he held and taught the doctrines of indefeasible hereditary right, of passive obedience, and of nonresistance in all their crude absurdity. Having been long engaged in a petty war against the neighbouring dissenters, he too often hated them for the wrongs which he had done them, and found no fault with the Five Mile Act and the Conventicle Act, except that those

and  
(ii) the other  
rude and  
ignorant  
and fanatical  
and  
dispersed  
through  
the rural  
areas  
where they  
exercised a  
powerful  
influence.

odious laws had not a sharper edge. Whatever influence his office gave him was exerted with passionate zeal on the Tory side; and that influence was immense. It would be a great error to imagine, because the country rector was in general not regarded as a gentleman, because he could not dare to aspire to the hand of one of the young ladies at the manor house, because he was not asked into the parlours of the great, but was left to drink and smoke with grooms and butlers, that the power of the clerical body was smaller than at present. The influence of a class is by no means proportioned to the consideration which the members of that class enjoy in their individual capacity. A Cardinal is a much more exalted personage than a begging friar: but it would be a grievous mistake to suppose that the College of Cardinals has exercised a greater dominion over the public mind of Europe than the Order of Saint Francis. In Ireland, at present, a peer holds a far higher station in society than a Roman Catholic priest: yet there are in Munster and Connaught few counties where a combination of priests would not

carry an election against a combination of peers. In the seventeenth century the pulpit was to a large portion of the population what the periodical press now is. Scarce any of the clowns who came to the parish church ever saw a Gazette or a political pamphlet. Ill informed as their spiritual pastor might be, he was yet better informed than themselves: he had every week an opportunity of haranguing them; and his harangues were never answered. At every important conjuncture, invectives against the Whigs and exhortations to obey the Lord's anointed resounded at once from many thousands of pulpits; and the effect was formidable indeed. Of all the causes which, after the dissolution of the Oxford Parliament, produced the violent reaction against the Exclusionists, the most potent seems to have been the oratory of the country clergy.

### The Yeomanry.

60. The power which the country gentlemen and the country clergymen exercised in the rural districts was in some measure counterbalanced by the power of the yeomanry, an eminently manly and

These were petty landed proprietors who did not claim to be gentlemen.



They made up more than one-seventh of the entire population and counter-balanced to some extent the power of the country gentlemen and the clergy.

truehearted race. The petty proprietors who cultivated their own fields with their own hands, and enjoyed a modest competence, without affecting to have scutcheons and crests, or aspiring to sit on the bench of justice, then formed a much more important part of the nation than at present. If we may trust the best statistical writers of that age, not less than a hundred and sixty thousand proprietors, who with their families must have made up more than a seventh of the whole population, derived their subsistence from little freehold estates. The average income of these small landholders, an income made up of rent, profit, and wages, was estimated at between sixty and seventy pounds a year. It was computed that the number of persons who tilled their own land was greater than the number of those who farmed the land of others.\* A large portion of the yeomanry had, from the time of the Reformation, leaned towards Puritanism, had, in the civil war, taken the side of the Parliament, had, after the

---

\* I have taken Davenant's estimate, which is a little lower than King's.

Restoration, persisted in hearing Presbyterian and Independent preachers, had, at elections, strenuously supported the Exclusionists, and had continued, even after the discovery of the Rye House plot and the proscription of the Whig leaders, to regard Popery and arbitrary power with unmitigated hostility.

### Growth of the towns.

61. Great as has been the change in the rural life of England since the Revolution, the change which has come to pass in the cities is still more amazing. At present a sixth part of the nation is crowded into provincial towns of more than thirty thousand inhabitants. In the reign of Charles the Second no provincial town in the kingdom contained thirty thousand inhabitants; and only four provincial towns contained so many as ten thousand inhabitants.

In the time of Charles II only four provincial towns had a population of ten thousand.

### Bristol.

62. Next to the capital, but next at an immense distance, stood Bristol, then the first English seaport, and Norwich;

(1) The largest towns next to London were Bristol

the port and  
Norwich the  
manufac-  
turing  
town.

then the first English manufacturing town. Both have since that time been far outstripped by younger rivals; yet both have made great positive advances. The population of Bristol has quadrupled. The population of Norwich has more than doubled.

(2) Bristol was the largest port of England and the centre of trade with the American plantations (colonies). It was a town of narrow streets with a population of about 29,000 inhabitants.

**63.** Pepys, who visited Bristol eight years after the Restoration, was struck by the splendour of the city. But his standard was not high; for he noted down as a wonder the circumstance that, in Bristol, a man might look round him and see nothing but houses. It seems that, in no other place with which he was acquainted, except London, did the buildings completely shut out the woods and fields. Large as Bristol might then appear, it occupied but a very small portion of the area on which it now stands. A few churches of eminent beauty rose out of a labyrinth of narrow lanes built upon vaults of no great solidity. If a coach or a cart entered those alleys, there was danger that it would be wedged between the houses, and danger also that it would break in the cellars. Goods were therefore conveyed

about the town almost exclusively in trucks drawn by dogs; and the richest inhabitants exhibited their wealth, not by riding in gilded carriages, but by walking the streets with trains of servants in rich liveries, and by keeping tables loaded with good cheer. The pomp of the christenings and burials far exceeded what was seen at any other place in England. The hospitality of the city was widely renowned, and especially the collations with which the sugar refiners regaled their visitors. The repast was dressed in the furnace, and was accompanied by a rich brewage made of the best Spanish wine, and celebrated over the whole kingdom as Bristol milk. This luxury was supported by a thriving trade with the North American plantations and with the West Indies. The passion for colonial traffic was so strong that there was scarce a small shopkeeper in Bristol who had not a venture on board of some ship bound for Virginia or the Antilles. Some of these ventures indeed were not of the most honourable kind. There was, in the Transatlantic possessions of the crown a.

great demand for labour ; and this demand was partly supplied by a system of crimping and kidnapping at the principal English seaports. Nowhere was this system found in such active and extensive operation as at Bristol. Even the first magistrates of that city were not ashamed to enrich themselves by so odious a commerce. The number of houses appears, from the returns of the hearth money, to have been, in the year 1685, just five thousand three hundred. We can hardly suppose the number of persons in a house to have been greater than in the City of London ; and in the City of London we learn from the best authority that there were then fifty-five persons to ten houses. The population of Bristol must therefore have been about twenty-nine thousand souls.\*

---

\* Evelyn's Diary, June 27, 1654 ; Pepys's Diary, June 13. 1668 ; Roger North's *Lives of Lord Keeper Guildford, and of Sir Dudley North* ; Petty's *Political Arithmetic*. I have taken Petty's facts, but, in drawing inferences from them, I have been guided by King and Davenant, who, though not abler men than he, had the advantage of coming after him. As to the kidnapping for which Bristol was infamous, see North's *Life of Guildford*, 121, 216, and the harangue of Jeffeys on the subject, in the

**Norwich.**

64. Norwich was the capital of a large and fruitful province. It was the residence of a Bishop and of a chapter. It was the chief seat of the chief manufacture of the realm. Some men distinguished by learning and science had recently dwelt there; and no place in the kingdom, except the capital and the Universities, had more attractions for the curious. The library, the museum, the aviary, and the botanical garden of Sir Thomas Browne, were thought by Fellows of the Royal Society well worthy of a long pilgrimage. Norwich had also a court in miniature. In the heart of the city stood an old palace of the Dukes of Norfolk, said to be the largest town house in the kingdom out of London. In this mansion, to which were annexed a tennis court, a bowling green, and a wilderness, stretching along the banks of the Wansum, the noble family of Howard fre-

Norwich was the chief seat of the principal manufacture of the country. It was the residence of a bishop and contained the princely seat of the Dukes of Norfolk. The town was besides famous for Sir T. Browne's library. The population was about twenty-nine thousand persons.

---

Impartial History of his Life and Death, printed with the Bloody Assizes. His style was, as usual, coarse; but I cannot reckon the reprimand which he gave to the magistrates of Bristol among his crimes.

quently resided, and kept a state resembling that of petty sovereigns. Drink was served to guests in goblets of pure gold. The very tongs and shovels were of silver. Pictures by Italian masters adorned the walls. The cabinets were filled with a fine collection of gems purchased by that Earl of Arundel whose marbles are now among the ornaments of Oxford. Here, in the year 1671, Charles and his court were sumptuously entertained. Here, too, all comers were annually welcomed, from Christmas to Twelfth Night. Ale flowed in oceans for the populace. Three coaches, one of which had been built at a cost of five hundred pounds to contain fourteen persons, were sent every afternoon round the city to bring ladies to the festivities; and the dances were always followed by a luxurious banquet. When the Duke of Norfolk came to Norwich, he was greeted like a King returning to his capital. The bells of the Cathedral and of Saint Peter Mancroft were rung: the guns of the Castle were fired; and the Mayor and Aldermen waited on their illustrious fellow

citizen with complimentary addresses. In the year 1693 the population of Norwich was found, by actual enumeration, to be between twenty-eight and twenty-nine thousand souls.\*

### Other county towns.

65. Far below Norwich, but still high in dignity and importance, were some other ancient capitals of shires. In that age it was seldom that a country gentleman went up with his family to London. The county town was his metropolis. He sometimes made it his residence during part of the year. At all events, he was often attracted thither by business and pleasure, by assizes, quarter sessions, elections, musters of militia, festivals, and races. There were the halls where the judges, robed in scarlet and escorted by javelins and trumpets, opened the King's commission twice a year. There were the markets at which the corn, the cattle,

(1) The other towns were greatly inferior to the above two. They had still some importance as the metropolis of the country gentlemen. They were the seats of the local courts of justice and were the centres of local trade.

---

\* Fuller's Worthies; Evelyn's Diary, Oct. 17. 1671; Journal of E. Browne, son of Sir Thomas Browne, Jan. 166 $\frac{3}{4}$ ; Blomefield's History of Norfolk; History of the City and County of Norwich, 2 vols. 1768.



the wool, and the hops of the surrounding country were exposed to sale. There were the great fairs to which merchants came down from London, and where the rural dealer laid in his annual stores of sugar, stationery, cutlery, and muslin. There were the shops at which the best families of the neighbourhood bought grocery and millinery. Some of these places derived dignity from interesting historical recollections, from cathedrals decorated by all the art and magnificence of the middle ages, from palaces where a long succession of prelates had dwelt, from closes surrounded by the venerable abodes of deans and canons, and from castles which had in the old time repelled the Nevilles or De Veres, and which bore more recent traces of the vengeance of Rupert or of Cromwell.

(2) The more important of the provincial towns enumerated. Their populations were ten thousand or less.

66. Conspicuous amongst these interesting cities were York, the capital of the north, and Exeter, the capital of the west. Neither can have contained much more than ten thousand inhabitants. Worcester, the queen of the cider land, had about eight thousand; Nottingham

probably as many. Gloucester, renowned for that resolute defence which had been fatal to Charles the First, had certainly between four and five thousand; Derby not quite four thousand. Shrewsbury was the chief place of an extensive and fertile district. The court of the marches of Wales was held there. In the language of the gentry many miles round the Wrekin, to go to Shrewsbury was to go to town. The provincial wits and beauties imitated, as well as they could, the fashions of Saint James's Park, in the walks along the side of the Severn. The inhabitants were about seven thousand.\*

---

\* The population of York appears, from the return of baptisms and burials, in Drake's History, to have been about 13,000 in 1730. Exeter had only 17,000 inhabitants in 1801. The population of Worcester was numbered just before the siege in 1646. See Nash's History of Worcestershire. I have made allowance for the increase which must be supposed to have taken place in forty years. In 1740, the population of Nottingham was found, by enumeration, to be just 10,000. See Dering's History. The population of Gloucester may readily be inferred from the number of houses which King found in the returns of hearth money, and from the number of births and burials which is given in Atkyns's History. The population of Derby was 4000 in 1712. See Wolley's MS. History, quoted in Lyson's

(3) The growth of population of these towns though great has not been equal to that of some younger towns of which no mention is to be found in previous history.

67. The population of every one of these places has, since the Revolution, much more than doubled. The population of some has multiplied sevenfold. The streets have been almost entirely rebuilt. Slate has succeeded to thatch, and brick to timber. The pavements and the lamps, the display of wealth in the principal shops, and the luxurious neatness of the dwellings occupied by the gentry would, in the seventeenth century, have seemed miraculous. Yet is the relative importance of the old capitals of counties by no means what it was. Younger towns, towns which are rarely or never mentioned in our early history and which sent no representatives to our early Parliaments, have, within the memory of persons still living, grown to a greatness which this generation contemplates with wonder and pride, not unaccompanied by awe and anxiety.

---

Magna Britannia. The population of Shrewsbury was ascertained, in 1695, by actual enumeration. As to the gaieties of Shrewsbury, see Farquhar's Recruiting Officer. Farquhar's description is borne out by a ballad in the Pepysian Library, of which the burden is "Shrewsbury for me."

**Manchester.**

68. The most eminent of these towns were indeed known in the seventeenth century as respectable seats of industry. Nay, their rapid progress and their vast opulence were then sometimes described in language which seems ludicrous to a man who has seen their present grandeur. One of the most populous and prosperous among them was Manchester. It had been required by the Protector to send one representative to his Parliament, and was mentioned by writers of the time of Charles the Second as a busy and opulent place. Cotton had, during half a century, been brought thither from Cyprus and Smyrna; but the manufacture was in its infancy. Whitney had not yet taught how the raw material might be furnished in quantities almost fabulous. Arkwright had yet not taught how it might be worked up with a speed and precision which seem magical. The whole annual import did not, at the end of the seventeenth century, amount to two millions of pounds, a quantity which would now hardly supply the demand of forty-eight hours. That won-

Manchester was the seat of the cotton industry then in its infancy. It was a mean ill-built town with a population under 6,000.

derful emporium, which in population and wealth far surpasses capitals so much renowned as Berlin, Madrid, and Lisbon, was then a mean and ill built market town, containing under six thousand people. It then had not a single press. It now supports a hundred printing establishments. It then had not a single coach. It now supports twenty coachmakers.\*

### Leeds.

Leeds was the chief seat of woollen manufacture in Yorkshire. It had a thriving trade and enjoyed municipal privileges.

**69.** Leeds was already the chief seat of the woollen manufactures of Yorkshire : but the elderly inhabitants could still remember the time when the first brick house, then and long after called the Red House, was built. They boasted loudly of their increasing wealth, and of the immense sales of cloth which took place in the open air on the bridge. Hundreds,

---

\* Blome's *Britannia*, 1673; Aikin's *Country round Manchester*; *Manchester Directory*, 1845; Baines, *History of the Cotton Manufacture*. The best information which I have been able to find, touching the population of Manchester in the seventeenth century, is contained in a paper drawn up by the Reverend R. Parkinson, and published in the *Journal of the Statistical Society* for October, 1842.

nay thousands of pounds, had been paid down in the course of one busy market day. The rising importance of Leeds had attracted the notice of successive governments. Charles the First had granted municipal privileges to the town. Oliver had invited it to send one member to the House of Commons. But from the returns of the hearth money it seems certain that the whole population of the borough, an extensive district which contains many hamlets, did not, in the reign of Charles the Second, exceed seven thousand souls. In 1841 there were more than a hundred and fifty thousand.\*

The population did not exceed seven thousand inhabitants.

### Sheffield.

70. About a day's journey south of Leeds, on the verge of a wild moorland tract, lay an ancient manor, now rich with cultivation, then barren and uninclosed, which was known by the name of Hallamshire. Iron abounded there; and, from a very early period, the rude whittles fabri-

Hallamshire, situated on the border of a wild moor, was famous for its whittles from early times. In it grew

---

\* Thoresby's *Ducatus Leodensis*; Whitaker's *Loidis and Elmete*; Wardell's *Municipal History of the Borough of Leeds*.

up the  
prosperous  
town of  
Sheffield  
whose  
cutlery  
is now  
famous  
all over  
the world.

cated there had been sold all over the kingdom. They had indeed been mentioned by Geoffrey Chaucer in one of his Canterbury Tales. But the manufacture appears to have made little progress during the three centuries which followed his time. This languor may perhaps be explained by the fact that the trade was, during almost the whole of this long period, subject to such regulations as the lord and his court leet thought fit to impose. The more delicate kinds of cutlery were either made in the capital, or brought from the Continent. It was not indeed till the reign of George the First that the English surgeons ceased to import from France those exquisitely fine blades which are required for operations on the human frame. Most of the Hallamshire forges were collected in a market town which had sprung up near the castle of the proprietor, and which, in the reign of James the First, had been a singularly miserable place, containing about two thousand inhabitants, of whom a third were half starved and half naked beggars. It seems certain from the parochial regis-

ters that the population did not amount to four thousand at the end of the reign of Charles the Second. The effects of a species of toil singularly unfavourable to the health and vigour of the human frame were at once discerned by every traveller. A large proportion of the people had distorted limbs. This is that Sheffield which now, with its dependencies, contains a hundred and twenty thousand souls, and which sends forth its admirable knives, razors, and lancets to the farthest ends of the world.\*

### Birmingham.

71. Birmingham had not been thought of sufficient importance to send a member to Oliver's Parliament. Yet the manufacturers of Birmingham were already a busy and thriving race. They boasted that their hardware was highly esteemed, not indeed as now, at Pekin and Lima, at Bokhara and Timbuctoo, but in London, and even as far off as Ireland. They had acquired a less honourable reputation as coiners of bad money. In allu-

Birmingham was known already in London and Ireland for its hardware: manufacture of guns had not yet begun and button-making was in its infancy.

---

\* Hunter's History of Hallamshire.



sion to their spurious groats, the Tory party had fixed on demagogues, who hypocritically affected zeal against Popery, the nickname of Birminghams. Yet in 1685 the population, which is now little less than two hundred thousand, did not amount to four thousand. Birmingham buttons were just beginning to be known : of Birmingham guns nobody had yet heard ; and the place whence, two generations later, the magnificent editions of Baskerville went forth to astonish all the librarians of Europe, did not contain a single regular shop where a Bible or an almanack could be bought. On market days a bookseller named Michael Johnson, the father of the great Samuel Johnson, came over from Lichfield, and opened a stall during a few hours. This supply of literature was long found adequate to the demand.\*

---

\* Blome's *Britannia*, 1673 ; Dugdale's *Warwickshire* ; North's *Examen*, 321 ; Preface to *Absalom and Archithophel* ; Hutton's *History of Birmingham* ; Boswell's *Life of Johnson*. In 1690 the burials at Birmingham were 150, the baptisms 125. I think it probable that the annual mortality was little less than one in twenty-five. In London it was considerably greater. A historian of Nottingham, half a century later, boasted of the extra-

**Liverpool.**

72. These four chief seats of our great manufactures deserve especial mention. It would be tedious to enumerate all the populous and opulent hives of industry which, a hundred and fifty years ago, were hamlets without a parish church, or desolate moors, inhabited only by grouse and wild deer. Nor has the change been less signal in those outlets by which the products of English looms and forges are poured forth over the whole world. At present Liverpool contains about three hundred thousand inhabitants. The shipping registered at her port amounts to between four and five hundred thousand tons. Into her custom house has been repeatedly paid in one year a sum more than thrice as great as the whole income of the English crown in 1685. The receipts of her post office, even since the great reduction of the duty, exceed the sum which the postage of the whole kingdom yielded to the Duke of York. Her endless

The above four towns were the chief seats of manufacture in those days; many industrial towns now famous were then mere hamlets (small villages).

---

ordinary salubrity of his town, where the annual mortality was one in thirty. See Dering's History of Nottingham. ♀

Liverpool was then rising into importance and carried on a profitable trade with Ireland and the sugar colonies.

docks, quays, and warehouses are among the wonders of the world. Yet even those docks and quays and warehouses seem hardly to suffice for the gigantic trade of the Mersey; and already a rival city is growing fast on the opposite shore. In the days of Charles the Second Liverpool was described as a rising town which had recently made great advances, and which maintained a profitable intercourse with Ireland and with the sugar colonies. The customs had multiplied eightfold within sixteen years, and amounted to what was then considered as the immense sum of fifteen thousand pounds annually. But the population can hardly have exceeded four thousand: the shipping was about fourteen hundred tons, less than the tonnage of a single modern Indiaman of the first class; and the whole number of seamen belonging to the port cannot be estimated at more than two hundred.\*

---

\* Blome's *Britannia*; Gregson's *Antiquities of the County Palatine and Duchy of Lancaster*, Part II; Petition from Liverpool in the Privy Council Book, May 10, 1686. In 1690 the burials at Liverpool were 151, the baptisms 120. In 1844 the net receipt of the customs at Liverpool was 4,365,526*l.* 1*s.* 8*d.*

**Watering places : Cheltenham, Brighton.**

73. Such has been the progress of those towns where wealth is created and accumulated. Not less rapid has been the progress of towns of a very different kind, towns in which wealth, created and accumulated elsewhere, is expended for purposes of health and recreation. Some of the most remarkable of these towns have sprung into existence since the time of the Stuarts. Cheltenham is now a greater city than any which the kingdom contained in the seventeenth century, London alone excepted. But in the seventeenth century, and at the beginning of the eighteenth, Cheltenham was mentioned by local historians merely as a rural parish lying under the Cotswold Hills, and affording good ground, both for tillage and pasture. Corn grew and cattle browsed over the space now covered by that gay succession of streets and villas.\* Brighton was described as a place which had once been thriving, which had possessed many small fishing barks, and which had, when at the

(1) Cheltenham now so populous was in the 17th century a rural parish affording good ground for tillage and pasture.

---

\* Atkyns's Gloucestershire.

(2) Brighton had once been a thriving town with a population of over 2000 but was fast sinking into decay on account of the encroachment of the sea.

height of prosperity, contained above two thousand inhabitants, but which was sinking fast into decay. The sea was gradually gaining on the buildings, which at length almost entirely disappeared. Ninety years ago the ruins of an old fort were to be seen lying among the pebbles and seaweed on the beach; and ancient men could still point out the traces of foundations on a spot where a street of more than a hundred huts had been swallowed up by the waves. So desolate was the place after this calamity, that the vicarage was thought scarcely worth having. A few poor fishermen, however, still continued to dry their nets on those cliffs, on which now a town, more than twice as large and populous as the Bristol of the Stuarts, presents, mile after mile, its gay and fantastic front to the sea.\*

#### Buxton. Tunbridge Wells.

(3) Buxton, was the resort of the gentry of Derbyshire and the

74. England, however, was not, in the seventeenth century, destitute of watering places. The gentry of Derbyshire and of the neighbouring counties:

---

\* Magna Britannia; Grose's Antiquities; New  
•Brighthelmstone Directory, 1770.

repaired to Buxton, where they were crowded into low wooden sheds, and regaled with oatcake, and with a viand which the hosts called mutton, but which the guests strongly suspected to be dog.\* Tunbridge Wells, lying within a day's journey of the capital, and in one of the richest and most highly civilised parts of the kingdom, had much greater attractions. At present we see there a town which would, a hundred and sixty years ago, have ranked, in population, fourth or fifth among the towns of England. The brilliancy of the shops and the luxury of the private dwellings far surpasses anything that England could then show. When the court, soon after the Restoration, visited Tunbridge Wells, there was no town : but, within a mile of the spring, rustic cottages, somewhat cleaner and neater than the ordinary cottages of that time, were scattered over the heath. Some of these cabins were moveable, and were carried on sledges from one part of the common to another. To these huts men

neighbouring counties.

(4) Tun-

bridge

Wells

within a

day's

journey from

London had

greater

attractions.

---

\* Tour in Derbyshire. by Thomas Browne, son of Sir Thomas.

of fashion, wearied with the din and smoke of London, sometimes came in the summer to breathe fresh air, and to catch a glimpse of rural life. During the season a kind of fair was daily held near the fountain. The wives and daughters of the Kentish farmers came from the neighbouring villages with cream, cherries, wheatears, and quails. To chaffer with them, to flirt with them, to praise their straw hats and tight heels, was a refreshing pastime to voluptuaries sick of the airs of actresses and maids of honour. Milliners, toymen, and jewellers came down from London, and opened a bazaar under the trees. In one booth the politician might find his coffee and the London Gazette; in another were gamblers playing deep at basset; and, on fine evenings, the fiddles were in attendance, and there were morris dances on the elastic turf of the bowling green. In 1685 a subscription had just been raised among those who frequented the wells for building a church, which the Tories, who then domineered everywhere, insisted on dedicating to Saint Charles the Martyr.\*

---

\* *Mémoires de Grammont*; *Hasted's History of Kent*;

† *Tunbridge Wells, a Comedy*, 1678; *Causton's Tun-*

**Bath.**

75. But at the head of the English watering places, without a rival, was Bath. The springs of that city had been renowned from the days of the Romans. It had been, during many centuries, the seat of a Bishop. The sick repaired thither from every part of the realm. The King sometimes held his court there. Nevertheless, Bath was then a maze of only four or five hundred houses, crowded within an old wall in the vicinity of the Avon. Pictures of what were considered as the finest of those houses are still extant, and greatly resemble the lowest rag shops and pot-houses of Ratcliffe Highway. Even then, indeed, travellers complained of the narrowness and meanness of the streets. That beautiful city which charms even eyes familiar with the masterpieces of Bramante and Palladio, and which the genius of Anstey and of Smollett, of Frances Burney and of Jane Austen, has made classic ground, had not begun to exist. Milsom Street itself was an open

(5) Bath was the greatest of English watering places. It was the seat of a Bishop and the King too sometimes held his court there.



Yet this was a small town containing about 500 houses crowded within the old wall and wanting in modern comforts and luxuries.

field lying far beyond the walls; and hedgerows intersected the space which is now covered by the Crescent and the Circus. The poor patients to whom the waters had been recommended lay on straw in a place which, to use the language of a contemporary physician, was a covert rather than a lodging. As to the comforts and luxuries which were to be found in the interior of the houses of Bath by the fashionable visitors who resorted thither in search of health or amusement, we possess information more complete and minute than can generally be obtained on such subjects. A writer who published an account of that city about sixty years after the Revolution has accurately described the changes which had taken place within his own recollection. He assures us that, in his younger days, the gentlemen who visited the springs slept in rooms hardly as good as the garrets which he lived to see occupied by footmen. The floors of the dining rooms were uncarpeted, and were coloured brown with a wash made of soot and small beer, in order to hide the dirt. Not

a wainscot was painted. Not a hearth or a chimneypiece was of marble. A slab of common freestone and fire irons which had cost from three to four shillings were thought sufficient for any fireplace. The best apartments were hung with coarse woollen stuff, and were furnished with rushbottomed chairs. Readers who take an interest in the progress of civilisation and of the useful arts will be grateful to the humble topographer who has recorded these facts, and will perhaps wish that historians of far higher pretensions had sometimes spared a few pages from military evolutions and political intrigues, for the purpose of letting us know how the parlours and bedchambers of our ancestors looked.\*

---

\* See Wood's *History of Bath*, 1749; Evelyn's *Diary*, June 27, 1654; Pepys's *Diary*, June 12, 1668; Stukeley's *Itinerarium Curiosum*; Collinson's *Somersetshire*; Dr. Pierce's *History and Memoirs of the Bath*, 1713, Book I, chap. viii. obs. 2, 1684. I have consulted several old maps and pictures of Bath, particularly one curious map which is surrounded by views of the principal buildings. It bears the date of 1717.

**London.**

The position of London in England with respect to other towns was far higher than at present. It was the most populous town in Europe.

**76.** The position of London, relatively to the other towns of the empire, was, in the time of Charles the Second, far higher than at present. For at present the population of London is little more than six times the population of Manchester or of Liverpool. In the days of Charles the Second the population of London was more than seventeen times the population of Bristol or of Norwich. It may be doubted whether any other instance can be mentioned of a great kingdom in which the first city was more than seventeen times as large as the second. There is reason to believe that, in 1685, London had been, during about half a century, the most populous capital in Europe. The inhabitants, who are now at least nineteen hundred thousand, were then probably little more than half a million.\* London had in the world only one commercial rival, now long outstripped, the mighty and opulent Amsterdam. English writers boasted of the forest of masts and yardarms which covered the

---

\* According to King, 530,000. (1848.) In 1851 the population of London exceeded 2,300,000. (1857.)

river from the Bridge to the Tower, and of the stupendous sums which were collected at the Custom House in Thames Street. There is, indeed, no doubt that the trade of the metropolis then bore a far greater proportion than at present to the whole trade of the country; yet to our generation the honest vaunting of our ancestors must appear almost ludicrous. The shipping which they thought incredibly great appears not to have exceeded seventy thousand tons. This was, indeed, then more than a third of the whole tonnage of the kingdom, but is now less than a fourth of the tonnage of Newcastle, and is nearly equalled by the tonnage of the steam vessels of the Thames. The customs of London amounted, in 1685, to about three hundred and thirty thousand pounds a year. In our time the net duty paid annually, at the same place, exceeds ten millions.\*

The shipping of London (though less than a quarter of that of Newcastle now) roused the wonder of the writers of the age.

---

\* Macpherson's History of Commerce; Chalmers's Estimate; Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684. The tonnage of the steamers belonging to the port of London was, at the end of 1847, about 60,000 tons. The customs of the port, from 1842 to 1845, very nearly averaged 11,000,000*l*.

In 1685 London was only the nucleus of the present city. It did not extend to the borders of Middlesex and into the heart of Kent and Surrey as it does now.

77. Whoever examines the maps of London which were published towards the close of the reign of Charles the Second will see that only the nucleus of the present capital then existed. The town did not, as now, fade by imperceptible degrees into the country. No long avenues of villas, embowered in lilacs and laburnums, extended from the great centre of wealth and civilisation almost to the boundaries of Middlesex and far into the heart of Kent and Surrey. In the east, no part of the immense line of warehouses and artificial lakes which now spreads from the Tower to Blackwall had even been projected. On the west, scarcely one of those stately piles of building which are inhabited by the noble and wealthy was in existence; and Chelsea, which is now peopled by more than forty thousand human beings, was a quiet country village with about a thousand inhabitants.\* On the north, cattle fed, and sportsmen wandered with dogs and guns, over the site of the borough of Marylebone, and over far the greater part of the

---

\* Lyson's *Environs of London*. The baptisms at Chelsea, between 1680 and 1690, were only forty-two a year.

space now covered by the boroughs of Finsbury and of the Tower Hamlets. Islington was almost a solitude; and poets loved to contrast its silence and repose with the din and turmoil of the monster London.\* On the south the capital is now connected with its suburb by several bridges, not inferior in magnificence and solidity to the noblest works of the Cæsars. In 1685, a single line of irregular arches, overhung by piles of mean and crazy houses, and garnished, after a fashion worthy of the naked barbarians of Dahomy, with scores of mouldering heads, impeded the navigation of the river.

### The City.

78. Of the metropolis, the City, properly so called, was the most important division. At the time of the Restoration it had been built, for the most part, of wood and plaster; the few bricks that were used were ill baked; the booths where goods were exposed to sale projected far into the streets, and were overhung by the upper stories. A few specimens

The City (the business quarter) was the most important part of London. The buildings, constructed after the Great Fire, were superior to the houses destroyed by it.

---

\* Cowley, Discourse of Solitude.

of this architecture may still be seen in those districts which were not reached by the great fire. That fire had, in a few days, covered a space of little less than a square mile with the ruins of eighty-nine churches and of thirteen thousand houses. But the City had risen again with a celerity which had excited the admiration of neighbouring countries. Unfortunately, the old lines of the streets had been to a great extent preserved; and those lines, originally traced in an age when even princesses performed their journeys on horseback, were often too narrow to allow wheeled carriages to pass each other with ease, and were therefore ill adapted for the residence of wealthy persons in an age when a coach and six was a fashionable luxury. The style of building was, however, far superior to that of the City which had perished. The ordinary material was brick, of much better quality than had formerly been used. On the sites of the ancient parish churches had arisen a multitude of new domes, towers, and spires which bore the mark of the fertile genius of Wren. In every place save one

the traces of the great devastation had been completely effaced. But the crowds of workmen, the scaffolds and the masses of hewn stone were still to be seen where the noblest of Protestant temples was slowly rising on the ruins of the old Cathedral of St. Paul.\*

79. The whole character of the City has, since that time, undergone a complete change. At present the bankers, the merchants, and the chief shopkeepers repair thither on six mornings of every week for the transaction of business: but they reside in other quarters of the metropolis, or at suburban country seats surrounded by shrubberies and flower gardens. This revolution in private habits has produced a political revolution of no small importance. The City is no longer regarded by the wealthiest traders with that

The City is now merely the place of business of the great bankers and merchants who have their homes in the suburbs.

---

\* The fullest and most trustworthy information about the state of the buildings of London at this time is to be derived from the maps and drawings in the British Museum and in the Pepysian Library. The badness of the bricks in the old buildings of London is particularly mentioned in the *Travels of the Grand Duke Cosmo*. There is an account of the works at St. Paul's in *Ward's London Spy*. I am almost ashamed to quote such nauseous balderdash; but I have been forced to descend even lower, if possible, in search of materials.



attachment which every man naturally feels for his home. It is no longer associated in their minds with domestic affections and endearments. The fireside, the nursery, the social table, the quiet bed are not there. Lombard Street and Threadneedle Street are merely places where men toil and accumulate. They go elsewhere to enjoy and to expend. On a Sunday, or in an evening after the hours of business, some courts and alleys, which a few hours before had been alive with hurrying feet and anxious faces, are as silent as the glades of a forest. The chiefs of the mercantile interest are no longer citizens. They avoid, they almost contemn, municipal honours and duties. Those honours and duties are abandoned to men who, though useful and highly respectable, seldom belong to the princely commercial houses of which the names are renowned throughout the world.

In the 17th century the City was not merely the counting house of the great merchants but their home.

**80.** In the seventeenth century the City was the merchant's residence. Those mansions of the great old burghers which still exist have been turned into counting houses and warehouses: but it is evident

that they were originally not inferior in magnificence to the dwellings which were then inhabited by the nobility. They sometimes stand in retired and gloomy courts, and are accessible only by inconvenient passages: but their dimensions are ample, and their aspect stately. The entrances are decorated with richly carved pillars and canopies. The staircases and landing places are not wanting in grandeur. The floors are sometimes of wood, tessellated after the fashion of France. The palace of Sir Robert Clayton, in the Old Jewry, contained a superb banqueting room wainscoted with cedar, and adorned with battles of gods and giants in fresco.\* Sir Dudley North expended for thousand pounds, a sum which would then have been important to a Duke, on the rich furniture of his reception rooms in Basinghall Street.† In such abodes, under the last Stuarts, the heads of the great firms lived splendidly and hospitably. To their dwelling place they were bound by the strongest ties of interest and affection.

They were proud of the City and jealously guarded her honour and rights.

---

\* Evelyn's Diary, Sept. 20. 1672.

† Roger North's Life of Sir Dudley North.

There they had passed their youth, had made their friendships, had courted their wives, had seen their children grow up, had laid the remains of their parents in the earth, and expected that their own remains would be laid. That intense patriotism which is peculiar to the members of societies congregated within a narrow space was, in such circumstances, strongly developed. London was, to the Londoner, what Athens was to the Athenian of the age of Pericles, what Florence was to the Florentine of the fifteenth century. The citizen was proud of the grandeur of his city, punctilious about her claims to respect, ambitious of her offices, and zealous for her franchises.

The cancellation of the old charter by the King still rankled bitterly in the minds of the Londoners. The officers of the new corporation of London were Tories though the Whig citizens excelled them in wealth and number.

81. At the close of the reign of Charles the Second the pride of the Londoners was smarting from a cruel mortification. The old charter had been taken away; and the magistracy had been remodelled. All the civic functionaries were Tories: and the Whigs, though in numbers and in wealth superior to their opponents, found themselves excluded from every local dignity. Nevertheless, the external splen-

dour of the municipal government was not diminished, nay, was rather increased by this change. For, under the administration of some Puritans who had lately borne rule, the ancient fame of the City for good cheer had declined: but under the new magistrates, who belonged to a more festive party, and at whose boards guests of rank and fashion from beyond Temple Bar were often seen, the Guildhall and the halls of the great companies were enlivened by many sumptuous banquets. During these repasts, odes, composed by the poet laureate of the corporation, in praise of the King, the Duke, and the Mayor, were sung to music. The drinking was deep, the shouting loud. An observant Tory, who had often shared in these revels, has remarked that the practice of huzzaing after drinking healths dates from this joyous period.\*

82. The magnificence displayed by the first civic magistrate was almost regal. The gilded coach, indeed, which is now

The City exercised a very powerful influence in the

---

\* North's Examen. This most amusing writer has preserved a specimen of the sublime raptures in which the Pindar of the City indulged:—

“ The worshipful Sir John Moor!  
After age that name adore!”

politics of  
the country  
by reason  
of its wealth  
and military  
resources.  
It had the  
power of  
making and  
unmaking  
kings.

annually admired by the crowd, was not yet a part of his state. On great occasions he appeared on horseback, attended by a long cavalcade inferior in magnificence only to that which, before a coronation, escorted the sovereign from the Tower to Westminster. The Lord Mayor was never seen in public without his rich robe, his hood of black velvet, his gold chain, his jewel, and a great attendance of harbingers and guards.\* Nor did the world find anything ludicrous in the pomp which constantly surrounded him. For it was not more than proportioned to the place which, as wielding the strength and representing the dignity of the City of London, he was entitled to occupy in the state. That City, being then not only without equal in the country, but without second, had, during five and forty years, exercised almost as great an influence on the politics of England as Paris has, in our own time, exercised on the politics of France. In intelligence London was greatly in advance of every other part of

\* Chamberlayne's *State of England*, 1684; *Anglia Metropolis*, 1690; Seymour's *London*, 1734.

the kingdom. A government, supported and trusted by London, could in a day obtain such pecuniary means as it would have taken months to collect from the rest of the island. Nor were the military resources of the capital to be despised. The power which the Lord Lieutenants exercised in other parts of the kingdom was in London intrusted to a Commission of eminent citizens. Under the orders of this Commission were twelve regiments of foot and two regiments of horse. An army of drapers' apprentices and journey-men tailors, with common councilmen for captains and aldermen for colonels, might not indeed have been able to stand its ground against regular troops; but there were then very few regular troops in the kingdom. A town, therefore, which could send forth, at an hour's notice, twenty thousand men, abounding in natural courage, provided with tolerable weapons, and not altogether untinctured with martial discipline, could not but be a valuable ally and a formidable enemy. It was not forgotten that Hampden and Pym had been protected from lawless tyranny by the

London trainbands ; that, in the great crisis of the civil war, the London trainbands had marched to raise the siege of Gloucester ; or that, in the movement against the military tyrants which followed the downfall of Richard Cromwell, the London trainbands had borne a signal part. In truth, it is no exaggeration to say that, but for the hostility of the City, Charles the First would never have been vanquished, and that, without the help of the City, Charles the Second could scarcely have been restored.

These considerations led some intriguing politicians to reside in the City. Shaftesbury lived in Aldersgate Street and Buckingham in Dowgate.

83. These considerations may serve to explain why, in spite of that attraction which had, during a long course of years, gradually drawn the aristocracy westward, a few men of high rank had continued, till a very recent period, to dwell in the vicinity of the Exchange and of the Guildhall. Shaftesbury and Buckingham, while engaged in bitter and unscrupulous opposition to the government, had thought that they could nowhere carry on their intrigues so conveniently or so securely as under the protection of the City magistrates and the City militia. Shaftesbury had therefore

lived in Aldersgate Street, at a house which may still easily be known by pilasters and wreaths, the graceful work of Inigo. Buckingham had ordered his mansion near Charing Cross, once the abode of the Archbishops of York, to be pulled down; and, while streets and alleys which are still named after him were rising on that site, chose to reside in Dowgate.\*

#### Fashionable part of the capital.

84. These, however, were rare exceptions. Almost all the noble families of England had long migrated beyond the walls. The district where most of their town houses stood lies between the City and the regions which are now considered as fashionable. A few great men still retained their hereditary hotels between the Strand and the river. The stately dwellings on the south and west of Lincoln's Inn Fields, the Piazza of Covent Garden, Southampton Square, which is now called Bloomsbury Square, and King's Square in Soho Fields, which is now called Soho

Most of the noble families had their houses in the fashionable quarters beyond the City walls.

---

\* North's Examen, 116. Wood, Ath. Ox. Shaftesbury. The Duke of B.'s Litany.



The favourite spots were on the south and west of Lincoln's Inn Fields, the Piazza of Covent Garden, Bloomsbury Square and Soho Square.

Square, were among the favourite spots. Foreign princes were carried to see Bloomsbury Square, as one of the wonders of England.\* Soho Square, which had just been built, was to our ancestors a subject of pride with which their posterity will hardly sympathize. Monmouth Square had been the name while the fortunes of the Duke of Monmouth flourished; and on the southern side towered his mansion. The front, though ungraceful, was lofty and richly adorned. The walls of the principal apartments were finely sculptured with fruit, foliage, and armorial bearings, and were hung with embroidered satin.† Every trace of this magnificence has long disappeared; and no aristocratical mansion is to be found in that once aristocratical quarter. A little way north from Holborn, and on the verge of the pastures and cornfields, rose two celebrated palaces, each with an ample garden. One of them, then called Southampton House, and subsequently Bedford House, was re-

---

\* Travels of the Grand Duke Cosmo.

† Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684; Pennant's London; Smith's Life of Nollekens.

moved about fifty years ago to make room for a new city, which now covers, with its squares, streets, and churches, a vast area, renowned in the seventeenth century for peaches and snipes. The other, Montague House, celebrated for its frescoes and furniture, was, a few months after the death of Charles the Second, burned to the ground, and was speedily succeeded by a more magnificent Montague House, which, having been long the repository of such various and precious treasures of art, science, and learning as were scarce ever before assembled under a single roof, has just given place to an edifice more magnificent still.\*

85. Nearer to the court, on a space called Saint James's Fields, had just been built Saint James's Square and Jermyn Street. Saint James's Church had recently been opened for the accommodation of the inhabitants of this new quarter.† Golden Square, which was in the next generation inhabited by lords and ministers of state, had not yet been begun. Indeed the only

St. James's  
Square and  
Jermyn  
Street lay  
nearer the  
court.

---

\* Evelyn's Diary, Oct. 10. 1683, Jan. 19. 1685

† Stat. 1 Jac. II. c. 22. Evelyn's Diary, Dec. 7. 1684.

dwellingings to be seen on the north of Piccadilly were three or four isolated and almost rural mansions, of which the most celebrated was the costly pile erected by Clarendon, and nicknamed Dunkirk House. It had been purchased after its founder's downfall by the Duke of Albemarle. The Clarendon Hotel and Albemarle Street still preserve the memory of the site.

The fashionable quarter of Regent Street was then a solitude.

86. He who then rambled to what is now the gayest and most crowded part of Regent Street found himself in a solitude, and was sometimes so fortunate as to have a shot at a woodcock.\* On the north the Oxford road ran between hedges. Three or four hundred yards to the south were the garden walls of a few great houses which were considered as quite out of town. On the west was a meadow renowned for a spring from which, long afterwards, Conduit Street was named. On the east was a field not to be passed without a shudder by any Londoner of that age. There, as in a place far from the

---

\* Old General Oglethorpe, who died in 1785, used to boast that he had shot birds here in Anne's reign. See Pennant's *London*, and the *Gentleman's Magazine* for July, 1785.

haunts of men, had been dug, twenty years before, when the great plague was raging, a pit into which the dead carts had nightly shot corpses by scores. It was popularly believed that the earth was deeply tainted with infection, and could not be disturbed without imminent risk to human life. No foundations were laid there till two generations had passed without any return of the pestilence, and till the ghastly spot had long been surrounded by buildings.\*

87. We should greatly err if we were to suppose that any of the streets and squares then bore the same aspect as at present. The great majority of the houses, indeed, have, since that time, been wholly, or in great part, rebuilt. If the most fashionable parts of the capital could be placed before us, such as they then were, we should be disgusted by their squalid appearance, and poisoned by their noisome atmosphere. In Covent Garden a filthy and noisy market was held close to the dwellings of the great. Fruit women

The majority of the houses have since been wholly or partly rebuilt. Even the most fashionable quarters of that age would now appear to be dirty and squalid.

---

\* The pest field will be seen in maps of London as late as the end of George the First's reign.

screamed, carters fought, cabbage stalks and rotten apples accumulated in heaps at the thresholds of the Countess of Berkshire and of the Bishop of Durham.\*

The centre of Lincoln's Inn Fields was an open space where the rabble congregated every evening to witness rustic sports.

88. The centre of Lincoln's Inn Fields was an open space where the rabble congregated every evening, within a few yards of Cardigan House and Winchester House, to hear mountebanks harangue, to see bears dance, and to set dogs at oxen. Rubbish was shot in every part of the area. Horses were exercised there. The beggars were as noisy and importunate as in the worst governed cities of the Continent. A Lincoln's Inn mummer was a proverb. The whole fraternity knew the arms and liveries of every charitably disposed grandee in the neighbourhood, and, as soon as his lordship's coach and six appeared, came hopping and crawling in crowds to persecute him. These disorders lasted, in spite of many accidents, and of some legal proceedings, till, in the reign

---

\* See a very curious plan of Covent Garden made about 1690, and engraved for Smith's History of Westminster. See also Hogarth's Morning, painted while some of the houses in the Piazza were still occupied by people of fashion.

of George the Second, Sir Joseph Jekyll, Master of the Rolls, was knocked down and nearly killed in the middle of the square. Then at length palisades were set up, and a pleasant garden laid out.\*

89. Saint James's Square was a receptacle for all the offal and cinders, for all the dead cats and dead dogs of Westminster. At one time a cudgel player kept the ring there. At another time an impudent squatter settled himself there, and built a shed for rubbish under the windows of the gilded saloons in which the first magnates of the realm, Norfolks, Ormonds, Kents, and Pembrokes, gave banquets and balls. It was not till these nuisances had lasted through a whole generation, and till much

St. James's Square was a receptacle for all the offal and rubbish of Westminster.

---

\* London Spy; Tom Brown's Comical View of London and Westminster; Turner's Propositions for the employing of the Poor, 1678; Daily Courant and Daily Journal of June, 7. 1733; Case of Michael v. Allestree, in 1676, 2 Levinz. p. 172. Michael had been run over by two horses which Allestree was breaking in in Lincoln's Inn Fields. The declaration set forth that the defendant "porta deux chivals ungovernable en un coach, et im-provide, incaute, et absque debita consideratione ineptitudinis loci la eux drive pur eux faire tractable et apt pur un coach, quels chivals. pur ceo que, per leur ferocite, ne poient estre rule, curre sur le plaintiff et le noie."

had been written about them, that the inhabitants applied to Parliament for permission to put up rails, and to plant trees.\*

The streets were unspeakably dirty and the pavements detestable. No care was taken for proper drainage and so the gutters became roaring torrents after a shower.

90. When such was the state of the region inhabited by the most luxurious portion of society, we may easily believe that the great body of the population suffered what would now be considered as insupportable grievances. The pavement was detestable; all foreigners cried shame upon it. The drainage was so bad that in rainy weather the gutters soon became torrents. Several facetious poets have commemorated the fury with which these black rivulets roared down Snow Hill and Ludgate Hill, bearing to Fleet Ditch a vast tribute of animal and vegetable filth from the stalls of butchers and greengrocers. This flood was profusely thrown to right and left by coaches and carts. To keep as far from

---

\* Stat. 12 Geo. I. c. 25; Commons' Journals, Feb. 25. March 2. 1722<sup>5</sup>/<sub>8</sub>; London Gardener, 1712; Evening Post, March 23. 1731. I have not been able to find this number of the Evening Post; I therefore quote it on the faith of Mr. Malcolm, who mentions it in his History of London.

the carriage road as possible was therefore the wish of every pedestrian. The mild and timid gave the wall. The bold and athletic took it. If two roisterers met, they cocked their hats in each other's faces, and pushed each other about till the weaker was shoved towards the kennel. If he was a mere bully he sneaked off, muttering that he should find a time. If he was pugnacious, the encounter probably ended in a duel behind Montague House.\*

91. The houses were not numbered. There would indeed have been little advantage in numbering them; for of the coachmen, chairmen porters, and errand boys of London, a very small proportion could read. It was necessary to use marks which the most ignorant could understand. The shops were therefore distinguished by painted signs, which gave a gay and grotesque aspect to the streets. The walk from Charing Cross to White-chapel lay through an endless succession of Saracens' Heads, Royal Oaks, Blue

The houses were not numbered and the shops were known by painted signs.

---

\* Lettres sur les Anglois, written early in the reign of William the Third; Swift's City Shower; Gay's Trivia. Johnson used to relate a curious conversation which he had with his mother about giving and taking the wall. ●



Bears, and Golden Lambs, which disappeared when they were no longer required for the direction of the common people.

### Police of London.

The streets were not lighted and so it was not merely difficult but dangerous to walk there in the dark. They were infested by thieves and robbers and roisterers belonging to the upper classes.

92. When the evening closed in, the difficulty and danger of walking about London became serious indeed. The garret windows were opened, and pails were emptied, with little regard to those who were passing below. Falls, bruises, and broken bones were of constant occurrence. For, till the last year of the reign of Charles the Second, most of the streets were left in profound darkness. Thieves and robbers plied their trade with impunity: yet they were hardly so terrible to peaceable citizens as another class of ruffians. It was a favourite amusement of dissolute young gentlemen to swagger by night about the town, breaking windows, upsetting sedans, beating quiet men, and offering rude caresses to pretty women. Several dynasties of these tyrants had; since the Restoration, domineered over the streets. The Muns and Tityre

Tus had given place to the Hectors, and the Hectors had been recently succeeded by the Scourers. At a later period arose the Nicker, the Hawcubite, and the yet more dreaded name of Mohawk.\* The machinery for keeping the peace was utterly contemptible. There was an Act of Common Council which provided that more than a thousand watchmen should be constantly on the alert in the city, from sunset to sunrise, and that every inhabitant should take his turn of duty. But this Act was negligently executed. Few of those who were summoned left their homes; and those few generally found it

\* Oldham's Imitation of the 3rd Satire of Juvenal. 1682; Shadwell's Scourers, 1690. Many other authorities will readily occur to all who are acquainted with the popular literature of that and the succeeding generation. It may be suspected that some of the Tityre Tus, like good Cavaliers, broke Milton's windows shortly after the Restoration. I am confident that he was thinking of those pests of London when he dictated the noble lines,—

“And in luxurious cities, when the noise  
Of riot ascends above their loftiest towers,  
And injury and outrage, and when night  
Darkens the streets, then wander forth the sons  
Of Belial, flown with insolence and wine.”

more agreeable to tipple in alehouses than to pace the streets.\*

### Lighting of London.

Street-lighting commenced in the last year of the reign of Charles II.

93. It ought to be noticed that, in the last year of the reign of Charles the Second, began a great change in the police of London, a change which has perhaps added as much to the happiness of the body of the people as revolutions of much greater fame. An ingenious projector, named Edward Heming, obtained letters patent conveying to him, for a term of years, the exclusive right of lighting up London. He undertook, for a moderate consideration, to place a light before every tenth door, on moonless nights, from Michaelmas to Lady Day, and from six to twelve of the clock. Those who now see the capital all the year round, from dusk, to dawn, blazing with a splendour compared with which the illuminations for La Hogue and Blenheim would have looked pale, may perhaps smile to think of Heming's lanterns, which glimmered

---

\* Seymour's London.

feebly before one house in ten during a small part of one night in three. But such was not the feeling of his contemporaries. His scheme was enthusiastically applauded, and furiously attacked. The friends of improvement extolled him as the greatest of all the benefactors of his city. What, they asked, were the boasted inventions of Archimedes, when compared with the achievement of the man who had turned the nocturnal shades into noon day? In spite of these eloquent eulogies the cause of darkness was not left undefended. There were fools in that age who opposed the introduction of what was called the new light as strenuously as fools in our age have opposed the introduction of vaccination and railroads, as strenuously as the fools of an age anterior to the dawn of history doubtless opposed the introduction of the plough and of alphabetical writing. Many years after the date of Heming's patent there were extensive districts in which no lamp was seen.\*

---

\* *Angliæ Metropolis*, 1690, Sect. 17. entitled. "Of the new lights." Seymour's London.

**Whitefriars.**

Originally it provided an asylum for insolvent debtors but in course of time it became a nest of the worst criminals of the country.

94. We may easily imagine what, in such times, must have been the state of the quarters of London which were peopled by the outcasts of society. Among those quarters one had attained a scandalous pre-eminence. On the confines of the City and the Temple had been founded, in the thirteenth century, a House of Carmelite Friars, distinguished by their white hoods. The precinct of this house had, before the Reformation, been a sanctuary for criminals, and still retained the privilege of protecting debtors from arrest. Insolvents consequently were to be found in every dwelling, from cellar to garret. Of these a large proportion were knaves and libertines, and were followed to their asylum by women more abandoned than themselves. The civil power was unable to keep order in a district swarming with such inhabitants; and thus Whitefriars became the favourite resort of all who wished to be emancipated from the restraints of the law. Though the immunities legally belonging to the place extended only to cases of debt, cheats,

false witnesses, forgers, and highwaymen found refuge there. For amidst a rabble so desperate no peace officer's life was in safety. At the cry of "Rescue," bullies with swords and cudgels, and termagant hags with spits and broomsticks, poured forth by hundreds; and the intruder was fortunate if he escaped back into Fleet Street, hustled, stripped, and pumped upon. Even the warrant of the Chief Justice of England could not be executed without the help of a company of musketeers. Such relics of the barbarism of the darkest ages were to be found within a short walk of the chambers where Somers was studying history and law, of the chapel where Tillotson was preaching, of the coffee house where Dryden was passing judgment on poems and plays, and of the hall where the Royal Society was examining the astronomical system of Isaac Newton.\*

---

\* Stowe's Survey of London; Shadwell's Squire of Alsatia; Ward's London Spy, Stat. 8 & 9 Gul. III. cap. 27.

**The Court.**

The influence of the Palace declined after the Revolution when offices and honours were bestowed by the ministers and not the King.

**95.** Each of the two cities which made up the capital of England had its own centre of attraction. In the metropolis of commerce the point of convergence was the Exchange; in the metropolis of fashion the Palace. But the Palace did not retain its influence so long as the Exchange. The Revolution completely altered the relations between the court and the higher classes of society. It was by degrees discovered that the King, in his individual capacity, had very little to give; that coronets and garters, bishoprics and embassies, lordships of the Treasury and tellerships of the Exchequer, nay, even charges in the royal stud and bed-chamber, were really bestowed, not by him, but by his advisers. Every ambitious and covetous man perceived that he would consult his own interest far better by acquiring the dominion of a Cornish borough, and by rendering good service to the ministry during a critical session, than by becoming the companion, or even the minion, of his prince. It was therefore in the antechambers, not of George

the First and of George the Second, but of Walpole and of Pelham, that the daily crowd of courtiers was to be found. It is also to be remarked that the same revolution, which made it impossible that our Kings should use the patronage of the state merely for the purpose of gratifying their personal predilections, gave us several Kings unfitted by their education and habits to be gracious and affable hosts. They had been born and bred on the Continent. They never felt themselves at home in our island. If they spoke our language, they spoke it inelegantly and with effort. Our national character they never fully understood. Our national manners they hardly attempted to acquire. The most important part of their duty they performed better than any ruler who had preceded them: for they governed strictly according to law: but they could not be the first gentlemen of the realm, the heads of polite society. If ever they unbent, it was in a very small circle where hardly an English face was to be seen; and they were never so happy as when they could escape for a summer to their

The change, introduced by the Revolution, was completed during the reign of the first two Georges.



native land. They had indeed their days of reception for our nobility and gentry; but the reception was mere matter of form, and became at last as solemn a ceremony as a funeral.

In the time of King Charles II the Palace was the centre of fashion and political intrigue.

**96.** Not such was the court of Charles the Second. Whitehall, when he dwelt there, was the focus of political intrigue and of fashionable gaiety. Half the jobbing and half the flirting of the metropolis went on under his roof. Whoever could make himself agreeable to the prince, or could secure the good offices of the mistress, might hope to rise in the world without rendering any service to the government, without being even known by sight to any minister of state. This courtier got a frigate, and that a company; a third, the pardon of a rich offender; a fourth, a lease of crown land on easy terms. If the King notified his pleasure that a briefless lawyer should be made a judge, or that a libertine baronet should be made a peer, the gravest counsellors, after a little murmuring, submitted.\* Interest,

---

\* See Sir Roger North's account of the way in which Wright was made a judge, and Clarendon's account of the way in which Sir George Savile was made a peer.

therefore, drew a constant press of suitors to the gates of the palace; and those gates always stood wide. The King kept open house every day, and all day long, for the good society of London, the extreme Whigs only excepted. Hardly any gentleman had any difficulty in making his way to the royal presence. The levee was exactly what the word imports. Some men of quality came every morning to stand round their master, to chat with him while his wig was combed and his cravat tied, and to accompany him in his early walk through the Park. All persons who had been properly introduced might, without any special invitation, go to see him dine, sup, dance, and play at hazard, and might have the pleasure of hearing him tell stories, which indeed he told remarkably well, about his flight from Worcester, and about the misery which he had endured when he was a state prisoner in the hands of the canting meddling preachers of Scotland. Bystanders whom His Majesty recognised often came in for a courteous word. This proved a far more successful kingcraft than any that his father or grand-

It was crowded with candidates for favours who wanted to make themselves agreeable to the King and his mistresses.

father had practised. It was not easy for the most austere republican of the school of Marvel to resist the fascination of so much good humour and affability: and many a veteran Cavalier, in whose heart the remembrance of unrequited sacrifices and services had been festering during twenty years, was compensated in one moment for wounds and sequestrations by his sovereign's kind nod, and "God bless you, my old friend!"

The Palace was the centre of news and visitors crowded to it to obtain news at the fountain-head.

97. Whitehall naturally became the chief staple of news. Whenever there was a rumour that anything important had happened or was about to happen, people hastened thither to obtain intelligence from the fountain head. The galleries presented the appearance of a modern club room at an anxious time. They were full of people inquiring whether the Dutch mail was in, what tidings the express from France had brought, whether John Sobiesky had beaten the Turks, whether the Doge of Genoa was really at Paris. These were matters about which it was safe to talk aloud. But there were subjects concerning which information was asked and

given in whispers. Had Halifax got the better of Rochester? Was there to be a Parliament? Was the Duke of York really going to Scotland? Had Monmouth really been summoned from the Hague? Men tried to read the countenance of every minister as he went through the throng to and from the royal closet. All sorts of auguries were drawn from the tone in which His Majesty spoke to the Lord President, or from the laugh with which His Majesty honoured a jest of the Lord Privy Seal; and in a few hours the hopes and fears inspired by such slight indications had spread to all the coffee houses from St. James's to the Tower.\*

### The coffee houses.

98. The coffee-house must not be dismissed with a cursory mention. It might indeed at that time have been not

These were the chief organs for the expres-

---

\* The sources from which I have drawn my information about the state of the court are too numerous to recapitulate. Among them are the Despatches of Barillon, Van Citters, Ronquillo, and Adda, the Travels of the Grand Duke Cosmo, the Diaries of Pepys, Evelyn, and Teonge, and the Memoirs of Grammont and Reresby.

sion of  
public  
opinion.

improperly called a most important political institution. No Parliament had sat for years. The municipal council of the City had ceased to speak the sense of the citizens. Public meetings, harangues, resolutions, and the rest of the modern machinery of agitation had not yet come into fashion. Nothing resembling the modern newspaper existed. In such circumstances the coffee houses were the chief organs through which the public opinion of the metropolis vented itself.

The  
coffee house  
was the  
Londoner's  
home and

**99.** The first of these establishments had been set up, in the time of the Commonwealth, by a Turkey merchant, who had acquired among the Mahometans a taste for their favourite beverage. The convenience of being able to make appointments in any part of the town, and of being able to pass evenings socially at a very small charge, was so great that the fashion spread fast. Every man of the upper or middle class went daily to his coffee house to learn the news and to discuss it. Every coffee house had one or more orators to whose eloquence the crowd listened with admiration, and who soon

became, what the journalists of our own time have been called, a fourth Estate of the realm. The court had long seen with uneasiness the growth of this new power in the state. An attempt had been made, during Danby's administration, to close the coffee houses. But men of all parties missed their usual places of resort so much that there was an universal outcry. The government did not venture, in opposition to a feeling so strong and general, to enforce a regulation of which the legality might well be questioned. Since that time ten years had elapsed, and during those years the number and influence of the coffee houses had been constantly increasing. Foreigners remarked that the coffee house was that which especially distinguished London from all other cities; that the coffee house was the Londoner's home, and that those who wished to find a gentleman commonly asked, not whether he lived in Fleet Street or Chancery Lane, but whether he frequented the Grecian or the Rainbow. Nobody was excluded from these places who laid down his penny at the bar. Yet every rank and profession,

men of  
different  
classes and  
opinion  
had their  
different  
coffee  
houses.

and every shade of religious and political opinion, had its own head-quarters. There were houses near St. James's Park where fops congregated, their heads and shoulders covered with black or flaxen wigs, not less ample than those which are now worn by the Chancellor and by the Speaker of the House of Commons. The wig came from Paris; and so did the rest of the fine gentleman's ornaments, his embroidered coat, his fringed gloves, and the tassel which upheld his pantaloons. The conversation was in that dialect which, long after it had ceased to be spoken in fashionable circles, continued, in the mouth of Lord Foppington, to excite the mirth of theatres.\* The atmosphere was like that of a perfumer's shop. Tobacco in any other form than that of richly scented snuff was held in abomination. If any clown, ignorant of the usages of the house, called for a pipe, the sneers of the whole

---

\* The chief peculiarity of this dialect was that, in a large class of words, the O was pronounced like A. Thus stork was pronounced stark. See Vanbrugh's *Relapse*. Lord Sunderland was a great master of this court tune, as Roger North calls it; and Titus Oates affected it in the hope of passing for a fine gentleman. *Examen*, 77. 254.

assembly and the short answers of the waiters soon convinced him that he had better go somewhere else. Nor, indeed, would he have had far to go. For, in general, the coffee rooms reeked with tobacco like a guardroom; and strangers sometimes expressed their surprise that so many people should leave their own fire-sides to sit in the midst of eternal fog and stench. Nowhere was the smoking more constant than at Will's. That celebrated house, situated between Covent Garden and Bow Street, was sacred to polite letters. There the talk was about poetical justice and the unities of place and time. There was a faction for Perrault and the moderns, a faction for Boileau and the ancients. One group debated whether *Paradise Lost* ought not to have been in rhyme. To another an envious poetaster demonstrated that *Venice Preserved* ought to have been hooted from the stage. Under no roof was a greater variety of figures to be seen, Earls in stars and garters, clergymen in cassocks and bands, pert Templars, sheepish lads from the Universities, translators and index makers in ragged coats.



of frieze. The great press was to get near the chair where John Dryden sate. In winter that chair was always in the warmest nook by the fire; in summer it stood in the balcony. To bow to him, and to hear his opinion of Racine's last tragedy or of Bossu's treatise on epic poetry, was thought a privilege. A pinch from his snuff-box was an honour sufficient to turn the head of a young enthusiast. There were coffee houses where the first medical men might be consulted. Doctor John Radcliffe, who, in the year 1685, rose to the largest practice in London, came daily, at the hour when the Exchange was full, from his house in Bow Street, then a fashionable part of the capital, to Garraway's, and was to be found, surrounded by surgeons and apothecaries, at a particular table. There were Puritan coffee houses where no oath was heard, and where lankhaired men discussed election and reprobation through their noses; Jew coffee houses where dark-eyed money changers from Venice and from Amsterdam greeted each other; and Popish coffee houses where, as good Protestants believed, Jesuits planned, over

their cups, another great fire, and cast silver bullets to shoot the King.\*

### **Difference between Londoners and rustic Englishmen.**

100. These gregarious habits had no small share in forming the character of the Londoner of that age. He was, indeed, a different being from the rustic Englishman. There was not then the intercourse which now exists between the two classes. Only very great men were in the habit of dividing the year between town and country. Few esquires came to the capital thrice in their lives. Nor was it yet the practice of all citizens in easy circumstances to breathe the fresh air of the fields and woods during some weeks of every summer. A cockney, in a rural village, was stared at as much as if he had intruded

There was little intercourse between the town and the country. A cockney (Londoner) was seldom seen in a village.

---

\* Lettres sur les Anglois; Tom Brown's Tour; Ward's London Spy; The Character of a Coffee House, 1673; Rules and Orders of the Coffee House, 1674; Coffee Houses vindicated, 1675; A Satyr against Coffee; North's Examen, 138; Life of Guildford, 152; Life of Sir Dudley North 149; Life of Dr. Radcliffe, published by Curll in 1715. The liveliest description of Will's is in the City and Country Mouse. There is a remarkable passage about the influence of the coffee house orators in Halstead's Succinct Genealogies, printed in 1685.

A country gentleman could easily be recognised in London by his strange ways and dress; he could easily be marked out by cheats and bullies as the proper victim of their tricks.

into a Kraal of Hottentots. On the other hand, when the lord of a Lincolnshire or Shropshire manor appeared in Fleet Street, he was as easily distinguished from the resident population as a Turk or a Lascar. His dress, his gait, his accent, the manner in which he stared at the shops, stumbled into the gutters, ran against the porters, and stood under the waterspouts, marked him out as an excellent subject for the operations of swindlers and banterers. Bullies jostled him into the kennel. Hackney coachmen splashed him from head to foot. Thieves explored with perfect security the huge pockets of his horseman's coat, while he stood entranced by the splendour of the Lord Mayor's show. Moneydroppers, sore from the cart's tail, introduced themselves to him, and appeared to him the most honest friendly gentlemen that he had ever seen. Painted women, the refuse of Lewkner Lane and Whetstone Park, passed themselves on him for countesses and maids of honour. If he asked his way to Saint James's, his informants sent him to Mile End. If he went into a shop, he was

instantly discerned to be a fit purchaser of everything that nobody else would buy, of secondhand embroidery, copper rings, and watches that would not go. If he rambled into any fashionable coffee house, he became a mark for the insolent derision of fops and the grave waggery of Templars. Enraged and mortified, he soon returned to his mansion, and there, in the homage of his tenants, and the conversation of his boon companions, found consolation for the vexations and humiliations which he had undergone. There he once more felt himself a great man; and he saw nothing above him except when at the assizes he took his seat on the bench near the Judge, or when at the muster of the militia he saluted the Lord Lieutenant.

#### Difficulty of travelling.

101. The chief cause which made the fusion of the different elements of society so imperfect was the extreme difficulty which our ancestors found in passing from place to place. Of all inventions, the alphabet and the printing press alone excepted, those inventions which abridge distance have done most for the civilisation

The imperfect fusion (mixture) between the people of the town and the country was mainly due to the difficulties of travelling.

of our species. Every improvement of the means of locomotion benefits mankind morally and intellectually as well as materially, and not only facilitates the interchange of the various productions of nature and art, but tends to remove national and provincial antipathies, and to bind together all the branches of the great human family. In the seventeenth century the inhabitants of London were, for almost every practical purpose, farther from Reading than they now are from Edinburgh, and farther from Edinburgh than they now are from Vienna.

The principle of the steam-engine was not quite unknown in those times.

**102.** The subjects of Charles the Second were not, it is true, quite unacquainted with that principle which has, in our own time, produced an unprecedented revolution in human affairs, which has enabled navies to advance in the face of wind and tide, and battalions, attended by all their baggage and artillery, to traverse kingdoms at a pace equal to that of the fleetest race horse. The Marquess of Worcester had recently observed the expansive power of moisture rarefied by heat. After many experiments he had succeeded in constructing a rude

steam engine, which he called a fire water work, and which he pronounced to be an admirable and most forcible instrument of propulsion.\* But the Marquess was suspected to be a madman, and known to be a Papist. His inventions, therefore, found no favourable reception. His fire water work might, perhaps, furnish matter for conversation at a meeting of the Royal Society, but was not applied to any practical purpose. There were no railways, except a few made of timber, from the mouths of the Northumbrian coal pits to the banks of the Tyne.† There was very little internal communication by water. A few attempts had been made to deepen and embank the natural streams, but with slender success. Hardly a single navigable canal had been even projected. The English of that day were in the habit of talking with mingled admiration and despair of the immense trench by which Lewis the Fourteenth had made a junction between the Atlantic and the Mediterranean. They little thought that their country would, in the course of a few

No canals  
were in  
existence to  
facilitate  
communica-  
tion.

---

\* Century of Inventions, 1663. No. 68.

† North's Life of Guildford, 136.

generations, be intersected, at the cost of private adventurers, by artificial rivers making up more than four times the length of the Thames, the Severn, and the Trent together.

**Badness of the roads ; conveyances for men  
and for transport of goods.**

Highways  
were the  
only means  
of communi-  
cation and  
transport.  
The roads  
were ill-  
kept and  
were in  
places  
positively  
dangerous.

103. It was by the highways that both travellers and goods generally passed from place to place. And those highways appear to have been far worse than might have been expected from the degree of wealth and civilisation which the nation had even then attained. On the best lines of communication the ruts were deep, the descents precipitous, and the way often such as it was hardly possible to distinguish, in the dusk, from the uninclosed heath and fen which lay on both sides. Ralph Thoresby, the antiquary, was in danger of losing his way on the great North road, between Barnby Moor and Tuxford, and actually lost his way between Doncaster and York.\* Pepys and his wife, travelling in their own coach, lost their way between Newbury and Reading.

---

\* Thoresby's Diary, Oct. 21. 1680. Aug. 3. 1712.

In the course of the same tour they lost their way near Salisbury, and were in danger of having to pass the night on the plain.\* It was only in fine weather that the whole breadth of the road was available for wheeled vehicles. Often the mud lay deep on the right and the left; and only a narrow track of firm ground rose above the quagmire.† At such times obstructions and quarrels were frequent, and the path was sometimes blocked up during a long time by carriers, neither of whom would break the way. It happened, almost every day, that coaches stuck fast, until a team of cattle could be procured from some neighbouring farm, to tug them out of the slough. But in bad seasons the traveller had to encounter inconveniences still more serious. Thoresby, who was in the habit of travelling between Leeds and the capital, has recorded, in his Diary, such a series of perils and disasters as might suffice for a journey to the Frozen Ocean or to the Desert of Sahara. On one occasion he learned that the floods were out between Ware and London, that passengers had to

In bad seasons the roads would be flooded

---

\* Pepys's Diary, June 12, and 16, 1668.

† Ibid. Feb. 28, 1660.



and become quite impracticable. The badness of the roads prevented the produce of the fields from reaching the markets.

swim for their lives, and that a higgler had perished in the attempt to cross. In consequence of these tidings he turned out of the high road, and was conducted across some meadows, where it was necessary for him to ride to the saddle skirts in water.\* In the course of another journey he narrowly escaped being swept away by an inundation of the Trent. He was afterwards detained at Stamford four days, on account of the state of the roads, and then ventured to proceed only because fourteen members of the House of Commons, who were going up in a body to Parliament, with guides and numerous attendants, took him into their company.† On the roads of Derbyshire travellers were in constant fear for their necks, and were frequently compelled to alight and lead their beasts.‡ The great route through Wales to Holyhead was in such a state that, in 1685, a viceroy, going to Ireland, was five hours in travelling fourteen miles,

\* Thoresby's Diary, May 17, 1695.

† Ibid. Dec. 27, 1708.

‡ Tour in Derbyshire, by J. Browne, son of Sir Thomas Browne, 1662. Cotton's Angler, 1676.

from Saint Asaph to Conway. Between Conway and Beaumaris he was forced to walk great part of the way; and his lady was carried in a litter. His coach was, with great difficulty, and by the help of many hands, brought after him entire. In general, carriages were taken to pieces at Conway, and borne, on the shoulders of stout Welsh peasants, to the Menai Straits.\* In some parts of Kent and Sussex none but the strongest horses could, in winter, get through the bog, in which, at every step, they sank deep. The markets were often inaccessible during several months. It is said that the fruits of the earth were sometimes suffered to rot in one place, while in another place, distant only a few miles, the supply fell far short of the demand. The wheeled carriages were, in this district, generally pulled by oxen.† When Prince George of Denmark visited the stately mansion of Petworth in wet weather, he was six hours in going nine miles; and it was necessary

\* Correspondence of Henry Earl of Clarendon, Dec. 30 1685, Jan. 1, 1686.

† Postlethwaite's Dict., Roads. History of Hawkhurst, in the *Bibliotheca Topographica Britannica*. •

that a body of sturdy hinds should be on each side of his coach, in order to prop it. Of the carriages which conveyed his retinue several were upset and injured. A letter from one of his gentlemen in waiting has been preserved, in which the unfortunate courtier complains that, during fourteen hours, he never once alighted, except when his coach was overturned or stuck fast in the mud.\*

The badness of the roads was due to the defective state of the law. The burden of keeping the road in repair was thrown on the parish through which it passed.

**104.** One chief cause of the badness of the roads seems to have been the defective state of the law. Every parish was bound to repair the highways which passed through it. The peasantry were forced to give their gratuitous labour six days in the year. If this was not sufficient, hired labour was employed, and the expense was met by a parochial rate. That a route connecting two great towns, which have a large and thriving trade with each other, should be maintained at the cost of the rural population scattered between them is obviously unjust; and this injustice was peculiarly glaring in the case of the great North road, which traversed very poor and

---

\* Annals of Queen Anne, 1703. Appendix, No. 3.

thinly inhabited districts, and joined very rich and populous districts. Indeed it was not in the power of the parishes of Huntingdonshire to mend a highway worn by the constant traffic between the West Riding of Yorkshire and London. Soon after the Restoration this grievance attracted the notice of Parliament; and an act, the first of our many turnpike acts, was passed, imposing a small toll on travellers and goods, for the purpose of keeping some parts of this important line of communication in good repair.\* This innovation, however, excited many murmurs; and the other great avenues to the capital were long left under the old system. A change was at length effected, but not without much difficulty. For unjust and absurd taxation to which men are accustomed is often borne far more willingly than the most reasonable impost which is new. It was not till many toll bars had been violently pulled down, till the troops had in many districts been forced to act against the people, and till much blood had been shed,

A turnpike act was passed levying a toll on travellers and goods for the repair of the roads.

---

\* 15 Car. II. c.

that a good system was introduced.\* By slow degrees reason triumphed over prejudice; and our island is now crossed in every direction by near thirty thousand miles of turnpike road.

Goods were generally carried by means of stage waggons. The heavy expense of carriage served as a prohibitory tax on many useful articles.

105. On the best highways heavy articles were, in the time of Charles the Second, generally conveyed from place to place by state waggons. In the straw of these vehicles nestled a crowd of passengers, who could not afford to travel by coach or on horseback, and who were prevented by infirmity, or by the weight of their luggage, from going on foot. The expense of transmitting heavy goods in this way was enormous. From London to Birmingham the charge was seven pounds a ton; from London to Exeter twelve pounds a ton.† This was about fifteen pence a ton for every mile, more by a third than was afterwards charged on turnpike roads, and fifteen times what is now

---

\* The evils of the old system are strikingly set forth in many petitions which appear in the Commons' Journal of 172<sup>5</sup>/<sub>6</sub>. How fierce an opposition was offered to the new system may be learned from the Gentleman's Magazine of 1749.

† Postlethwaite's Dict., Roads.

demanding by railway companies. The cost of conveyance amounted to a prohibitory tax on many useful articles. Coal in particular was never seen except in the districts where it was produced, or in the districts to which it could be carried by sea, and was indeed always known in the South of England by the name of sea coal.

106. On byroads, and generally throughout the country north of York and west of Exeter, goods were carried by long trains of packhorses. These strong and patient beasts, the breed of which is now extinct, were attended by a class of men who seem to have borne much resemblance to the Spanish muleteers. A traveller of humble condition often found it convenient to perform a journey mounted on a pack-saddle between two baskets, under the care of these hardy guides. The expense of this mode of conveyance was small. But the caravan moved at a foot's pace; and in winter the cold was often insupportable.\*

On by-roads and in the extreme north and west goods were carried on the backs of packhorses.

---

\* Loidis and Elmete. Marshall's Rural Economy of England. In 1739 Roderic Random came from Scotland to Newcastle on a packhorse.

Rich men travelled in their own carriages drawn by at least four horses. Six horses were often used on account of the badness of the roads.

107. The rich commonly travelled in their own carriages, with at least four horses. Cotton, the facetious poet, attempted to go from London to the Peak with a single pair, but found at Saint Albans that the journey would be insupportably tedious, and altered his plan.\* A coach and six is in our time never seen, except as part of some pageant. The frequent mention therefore of such equipages in old books is likely to mislead us. We attribute to magnificence what was really the effect of a very disagreeable necessity. People, in the time of Charles the Second, travelled with six horses, because with a smaller number there was great danger of sticking fast in the mire. Nor were even six horses always sufficient. Vanbrugh, in the succeeding generation, described with great humour the way in which a country gentleman, newly chosen a member of Parliament, went up to London. On that occasion all the exertions of six beasts, two of which had been taken from the plough, could not save the family coach from being imbedded in a quagmire.

---

\* Cotton's Epistle to J. Bradshaw.

**Stage coaches.**

108. Public carriages had recently been much improved. During the years which immediately followed the Restoration, a diligence ran between London and Oxford in two days. The passengers slept at Beaconsfield. At length, in the spring of 1669, a great and daring innovation was attempted. It was announced that a vehicle, described as the Flying Coach, would perform the whole journey between sunrise and sunset. This spirited undertaking was solemnly considered and sanctioned by the Heads of the University, and appears to have excited the same sort of interest which is excited in our own time by the opening of a new railway. The Vicechancellor, by a notice affixed in all public places, prescribed the hour and place of departure. The success of the experiment was complete. At six in the morning the carriage began to move from before the ancient front of All Souls College: and at seven in the evening the adventurous gentlemen who had run the first risk were safely deposited at their inn

The stage coach which ran from London to Oxford in two days was in 1669 replaced by the Flying Coach which covered the distance in 12 hours.



Within a few years the Flying Coach service was established between London and the provincial towns.

in London.\* The emulation of the sister University was moved; and soon a diligence was set up which in one day carried passengers from Cambridge to the capital. At the close of the reign of Charles the Second, flying carriages ran thrice a week from London to the chief towns. But no stage coach, indeed no stage waggon, appears to have proceeded further north than York, or further west than Exeter. The ordinary day's journey of a flying coach was about fifty miles in the summer; but in winter, when the ways were bad and the nights long, little more than thirty. The Chester coach, the York coach, and the Exeter coach generally reached London in four days during the fine season, but at Christmas not till the sixth day. The passengers, six in number, were all seated in the carriage. For accidents were so frequent that it would have been most perilous to mount the roof. The ordinary fare was about twopence halfpenny

---

\* Anthony a Wood's *Life of himself*.

a mile in summer, and somewhat more in winter.\*

109. This mode of travelling, which by Englishmen of the present day would be regarded as insufferably slow, seemed to our ancestors wonderfully and indeed alarmingly rapid. In a work published a few months before the death of Charles the Second, the flying coaches are extolled as far superior to any similar vehicles ever known in the world. Their velocity is the subject of special commendation, and is triumphantly contrasted with the sluggish pace of the continental posts. But with boasts like these was mingled the sound of complaint and invective. The interests of large classes had been unfavourably affected by the establishment of the new diligences; and, as usual, many persons were, from mere stupidity and obstinacy, disposed to clamour against the innovation, simply because it was an innovation. It was vehemently argued that this mode of conveyance would be fatal to the breed of horses and to the noble art of horseman-

The Flying Coaches were the swiftest conveyances of the age.

---

\* Chamberlayne's *State of England*, 1684. See also the list of stage coaches and waggons at the end of the book, entitled *Angliæ Metropolis*, 1690.

Various objections were raised against them from interested quarters.

ship; that the Thames, which had long been an important nursery of seamen, would cease to be the chief thoroughfare from London up to Windsor and down to Gravesend; that saddlers and spurriers would be ruined by hundreds; that numerous inns, at which mounted travellers had been in the habit of stopping, would be deserted, and would no longer pay any rent; that the new carriages were too hot in summer and too cold in winter; that the passengers were grievously annoyed by invalids and crying children; that the coach sometimes reached the inn so late that it was impossible to get supper, and sometimes started so early that it was impossible to get breakfast. On these grounds it was gravely recommended that no public carriage should be permitted to have more than four horses, to start oftener than once a week, or to go more than thirty miles a day. It was hoped that, if this regulation were adopted, all except the sick and the lame would return to the old mode of travelling. Petitions embodying such opinions as these were presented to the king in council from several com-

panies of the City of London, from several provincial towns, and from the justices of several counties. We smile at these things. It is not impossible that our descendants, when they read the history of the opposition offered by cupidity and prejudice to the improvements of the nineteenth century, may smile in their turn.\*

110. In spite of the attractions of the flying coaches, it was still usual for men who enjoyed health and vigour, and who were not encumbered by much baggage, to perform long journeys on horseback. If the traveller wished to move expeditiously he rode post. Fresh saddle horses and guides were to be procured at convenient distances along all the great lines of road. The charge was threepence a mile for each horse, and fourpence a stage for the guide. In this manner, when the ways were good, it was possible to travel, for a considerable time, as rapidly as by

Healthy men not encumbered with baggage usually travelled on horseback.

\* John Cresset's Reasons for suppressing Stage Coaches, 1672 These reasons were afterwards inserted in a tract, entitled "The Grand Concern of England explained, 1673." Cresset's attack on stage coaches called forth some answers which I have consulted.

Post-  
chaises had  
not yet  
come into  
use.

any conveyance known in England, till vehicles were propelled by steam. There were as yet no post chaises; nor could those who rode in their own coaches ordinarily procure a change of horses. The King, however, and the great officers of state were able to command relays. Thus Charles commonly went in one day from Whitehall to Newmarket, a distance of about fifty-five miles through a level country; and this was thought by his subjects a proof of great activity. Evelyn performed the same journey in company with the Lord Treasurer Clifford. The coach was drawn by six horses, which were changed at Bishop Stortford and again at Chesterford. The travellers reached Newmarket at night. Such a mode of conveyance seems to have been considered as a rare luxury confined to princes and ministers.\*

### Highwaymen.

Men had  
to travel  
well armed  
and in  
company

111. Whatever might be the way in which a journey was performed, the travellers, unless they were numerous and

\* Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684. North's Examen, 105. Evelyn's Diary, Oct. 9 10, 1671.

well armed, ran considerable risk of being stopped and plundered. The mounted highwayman, a marauder known to our generation only from books, was to be found on every main road. The waste tracts which lay on the great routes near London were especially haunted by plunderers of this class. Hounslow Heath, on the great Western Road, and Finchley Common, on the great Northern Road, were perhaps the most celebrated of these spots. The Cambridge scholars trembled when they approached Epping Forest, even in broad daylight. Seamen who had just been paid off at Chatham were often compelled to deliver their purses on Gadshill, celebrated near a hundred years earlier by the greatest of poets as the scene of the depredations of Poin and Falstaff. The public authorities seem to have been often at a loss how to deal with the plunderers. At one time it was announced in the Gazette that several persons, who were strongly suspected of being highwaymen, but against whom there was not sufficient evidence, would be paraded at Newgate in riding dresses : their horses would

for fear of highwaymen. These highwaymen most infested the waste tracts round London. The innkeepers were suspected to be in league with them.

also be shown: and all gentlemen who had been robbed were invited to inspect this singular exhibition. On another occasion a pardon was publicly offered to a robber if he would give up some rough diamonds, of immense value, which he had taken when he stopped the Harwich mail. A short time after appeared another proclamation, warning the inn-keepers that the eye of the government was upon them. Their criminal connivance, it was affirmed, enabled banditti to infest the roads with impunity. That these suspicions were not without foundation, is proved by the dying speeches of some penitent robbers of that age, who appear to have received from the inn-keepers services much resembling those which Farquhar's Boniface rendered to Gibbet.\*

The  
robbers  
(highway-  
men) were  
generally

112. It was necessary to the success and even to the safety of the highwayman that he should be a bold and skilful rider,

\* See the London Gazette, May 14, 1677, August 4, 1687, Dec. 5, 1687. The last confession of Augustin King, who was the son of an eminent divine, and had been educated at Cambridge, but was hanged at Colchester in March 1688, is highly curious.

and that his manners and appearance should be such as suited the master of a fine horse. He therefore held an aristocratical position in the community of thieves, appeared at fashionable coffee houses and gaming houses, and betted with men of quality on the race ground.\* Sometimes, indeed, he was a man of good family and education. A romantic interest therefore attached, and perhaps still attaches, to the names of freebooters of this class. The vulgar eagerly drank in tales of their ferocity and audacity, of their occasional acts of generosity and good nature, of their amours, of their miraculous escapes, of their desperate struggles, and of their manly bearing at the bar and in the cart. Thus it was related of William Nevison, the great robber of Yorkshire, that he levied a quarterly tribute on all the northern drovers, and, in return, not only spared them himself, but protected them against all other thieves; that he de-

skilful  
riders and  
of polished  
manners.  
Some of  
them  
belonged to  
good  
families  
and were  
men of  
education.

---

\* *Aimwell*. Pray sir, han't I seen your face at Will's coffee house?

*Gibbet*. Yes, sir, and at White's too.—*Béaux' Stratagem*.



manded purses in the most courteous manner; that he gave largely to the poor what he had taken from the rich; that his life was once spared by the royal clemency, but that he again tempted his fate, and at length died, in 1685, on the gallows of York.\* It was related how Claude Duval, the French page of the Duke of Richmond, took to the road, became captain of a formidable gang, and had the honour to be named first in a royal proclamation against notorious offenders; how at the head of his troop he stopped a lady's coach, in which there was a booty of four hundred pounds; how he took only one hundred, and suffered the fair owner to ransom the rest by dancing a coranto with him on the heath; how his vivacious gallantry stole away the hearts of all women; how his dexterity at sword and

---

\* Gent's History of York. Another marauder of the same description, named Biss, was hanged at Salisbury in 1695. In a ballad which is in the Pepysian Library, he is represented as defending himself thus before the Judge :

“What say you now, my honoured Lord,  
What harm was there in this?  
Rich, wealthy misers were abhorred  
By brave, freehearted Biss.”

pistol made him a terror to all men; how, at length, in the year 1670, he was seized when overcome by wine; how dames of high rank visited him in prison, and with tears interceded for his life; how the King would have granted a pardon, but for the interference of Judge Morton, the terror of highwaymen, who threatened to resign his office unless the law were carried into full effect; and how, after the execution, the corpse lay in state with all the pomp of scutcheons, wax lights, black hangings and mutes, till the same cruel Judge, who had intercepted the mercy of the crown, sent officers to disturb the obsequies.\* In these anecdotes there is doubtless a large mixture of fable; but they are not on that account unworthy of being recorded; for it is both an authentic and an important fact that such tales, whether false or true, were heard by our ancestors with eagerness and faith.

#### Inns.

113. All the various dangers by which the traveller was beset were greatly

English  
inns were  
famous  
from early

---

\* Pope's Memoirs of Duval, published immediately after the execution. Oates's *Εἰκὼν βασιλική*, Part I.

times and were superior to those of the Continent of Europe. An Englishman never felt more at home than in an inn.

increased by darkness. He was therefore commonly desirous of having the shelter of a roof during the night ; and such shelter it was not difficult to obtain. From a very early period the inns of England had been renowned. Our first great poet had described the excellent accommodation which they afforded to the pilgrims of the fourteenth century. Nine and twenty persons, with their horses, found room in the wide chambers and stables of the Tabard in Southwark. The food was of the best, and the wines such as drew the company on to drink largely. Two hundred years later, under the reign of Elizabeth, William Harrison gave a lively description of the plenty and comfort of the great hostelries. The Continent of Europe, he said, could show nothing like them. There were some in which two or three hundred people, with their horses, could without difficulty be lodged and fed. The bedding, the tapestry, above all, the abundance of clean and fine linen was matter of wonder. Valuable plate was often set on the tables. Nay, there were signs which had cost thirty or forty pounds. In the seventeenth

century England abounded with excellent inns of every rank. The traveller sometimes, in a small village, lighted on a public house such as Walton has described, where the brick floor was swept clean, where the walls were stuck round with ballads, where the sheets smelt of lavender, and where a blazing fire, a cup of good ale, and a dish of trouts fresh from the neighbouring brook, were to be procured at small charge. At the larger houses of entertainment were to be found beds hung with silk, choice cookery, and claret equal to the best which was drunk in London.\* The innkeepers too, it was said, were not like other innkeepers. On the Continent the landlord was the tyrant of those who crossed the threshold. In England he was a servant. Never was an Englishman more at home than when he took his ease in his inn. Even men of fortune, who might in their own mansions have enjoyed every luxury, were often in the habit of passing

\* See the prologue to the *Canterbury Tales*, Harrison's *Historical Description of the Island of Great Britain*, and Pepys's account of his tour in the summer of 1668. The excellence of the English inns is noticed in the *Travels of the Grand Duke Cosmo*.

their evenings in the parlour of some neighbouring house of public entertainment. They seem to have thought that comfort and freedom could in no other place be enjoyed in equal perfection. This feeling continued during many generations to be a national peculiarity. The liberty and jollity of inns long furnished matter to our novelists and dramatists. Johnson declared that a tavern chair was the throne of human felicity; and Shenstone gently complained that no private roof, however friendly, gave the wanderer so warm a welcome as that which was to be found at an inn.

English  
inns decayed  
as a result  
of the  
modern im-  
proved  
means of  
travelling.

**114.** Many conveniences, which were unknown at Hampton Court and Whitehall in the seventeenth century, are to be found in our modern hotels. Yet on the whole it is certain that the improvement of our houses of public entertainment has by no means kept pace with the improvement of our roads and of our conveyances. Nor is this strange; for it is evident that, all other circumstances being supposed equal, the inns will be best where the means of locomotion are worst. The quicker the

rate of travelling, the less important is it that there should be numerous agreeable resting places for the traveller. A hundred and sixty years ago a person who came up to the capital from a remote county generally required twelve or fifteen meals, and lodging for five or six nights by the way. If he were a great man, he expected the meals and lodging to be comfortable, and even luxurious. At present we fly from York or Exeter to London by the light of a single winter's day. At present, therefore, a traveller seldom interrupts his journey merely for the sake of rest and refreshment. The consequence is that hundreds of excellent inns have fallen into utter decay. In a short time no good houses of that description will be found, except at places where strangers are likely to be detained by business or pleasure.

### **The Post Office.**

**115.** The mode in which correspondence was carried on between distant places may excite the scorn of the present generation; yet it was such as might have moved the admiration and envy of the polished

On most lines of roads the mails were carried on alternate days and in the more inaccessible

parts only  
once a week.  
The bags  
were carried  
on horse-  
back day  
and night  
at the rate  
of 5 miles  
an hour.

nations of antiquity, or of the contemporaries of Raleigh and Cecil. A rude and imperfect establishment of posts for the conveyance of letters had been set up by Charles the First, and had been swept away by the civil war. Under the Commonwealth the design was resumed. At the Restoration the proceeds of the Post Office, after all expenses had been paid, were settled on the Duke of York. On most lines of road the mails went out and came in only on the alternate days. In Cornwall, in the fens of Lincolnshire, and among the hills and lakes of Cumberland, letters were received only once a week. During a royal progress a daily post was despatched from the capital to the place where the court sojourned. There was also daily communication between London and the Downs; and the same privilege was sometimes extended to Tunbridge Wells and Bath at the seasons when those places were crowded by the great. The bags were carried on horseback day and night at the rate of about five miles an hour.\*

\* Stat. 12 Car. II. c. 35. Chamberlayne's State of England, 1684. Angliæ Metropolis, 1690. London

<sup>t</sup> Gazette, June 22, 1685, August 15, 1687.

116. The revenue of this establishment was not derived solely from the charge for the transmission of letters. The Post Office alone was entitled to furnish post horses; and, from the care with which this monopoly was guarded, we may infer that it was found profitable.\* If, indeed, a traveller had waited half an hour without being supplied, he might hire a horse wherever he could.

The Post Office had the monopoly of supplying travellers with horses.

117. To facilitate correspondence between one part of London and another was not originally one of the objects of the Post Office. But, in the reign of Charles the Second, an enterprising citizen of London, William Dockwray, set up, at great expense, a penny post, which delivered letters and parcels six or eight times a day in the busy and crowded streets near the Exchange, and four times a day in the outskirts of the capital. This improvement was, as usual, strenuously resisted. The porters complained that their interests were attacked, and tore down the placards in which the scheme was announced to the public. The excitement caused by God-

The Post Office did not carry letters from one part of London to another. A penny post was established for this purpose by a private citizen.

---

\* London Gazette, Sept. 14, 1685.



frey's death, and by the discovery of Coleman's papers, was then at the height. A cry was therefore raised that the penny post was a Popish contrivance. The great Doctor Oates, it was affirmed, had hinted a suspicion that the Jesuits were at the bottom of the scheme, and that the bags, if examined, would be found full of treason.\* The utility of the enterprise was, however, so great and obvious that all opposition proved fruitless. As soon as it became clear that the speculation would be lucrative, the Duke of York complained of it as an infraction of his monopoly, and the courts of law decided in his favour.†

The net  
revenue of  
the Post  
Office grew  
in Charles  
II's reign  
from  
£20,000 to  
£50,000.

**118.** The revenue of the Post Office was from the first constantly increasing. In the year of the Restoration a committee of the House of Commons, after strict inquiry, had estimated the net receipt at about twenty thousand pounds. At the close of the reign of Charles the Second, the net receipt was little short of fifty thousand pounds; and this was then

\* Smith's Current Intelligence, March 30, and April 3, 1680.

† Angliæ Metropolis, 1690.

thought a stupendous sum. The gross receipt was about seventy thousand pounds. The charge for conveying a single letter was twopence for eighty miles, and threepence for a longer distance. The postage increased in proportion to the weight of the packet.\* At present a single letter is carried to the extremity of Scotland or of Ireland for a penny; and the monopoly of post horses has long ceased to exist. Yet the gross annual receipts of the department amount to more than eighteen hundred thousand pounds, and the net receipts to more than seven hundred thousand pounds. It is, therefore, scarcely possible to doubt that the number of letters now conveyed by mail is seventy times the number which was so conveyed at the time of the accession of James the Second.

#### **Newspapers and Newsletters.**

**119.** No part of the load which the old mails carried out was more important than the newsletters. In 1685 nothing

No daily newspaper existed at the time. The law did not

---

\* Commons' Journals, Sept. 4, 1660, March 1, 1688<sup>8</sup>  
Chamberlayne, 1684. Davenant on the Public Revenue, Discourse IV.

permit any  
unauthorised  
publication  
of political  
news.

like the London daily paper of our time existed, or could exist. Neither the necessary capital nor the necessary skill was to be found. Freedom too was wanting, a want as fatal as that of either capital or skill. The press was not indeed at that moment under a general censorship. The licensing act, which had been passed soon after Restoration, had expired in 1679. Any person might therefore print, at his own risk, a history, a sermon, or a poem, without the previous approbation of any public officer; but the Judges were unanimously of opinion that this liberty did not extend to Gazettes, and that, by the common law of England, no man, not authorised by the crown, had a right to publish political news.\* While the Whig party was still formidable, the government thought it expedient occasionally to connive at the violation of this rule. During the great battle of the Exclusion Bill, many newspapers were suffered to appear, the Protestant Intelligence, the Current Intelligence, the Domestic Intelligence,

---

\* London Gazette, May 5 and 17, 1680.

the True News, the London Mercury.\* London Gazette appeared on Mondays and Thursdays. None of these was published oftener than twice a week. None exceeded in size a single small leaf. The quantity of matter which one of them contained in a year was not more than is often found in two numbers of the Times. After the defeat of the Whigs it was no longer necessary for the King to be sparing in the use of that which all his Judges had pronounced to be his undoubted prerogative. At the close of his reign no newspaper was suffered to appear without his allowance: and his allowance was given exclusively to the London Gazette. The London Gazette came out only on Mondays and Thursdays. The contents generally were a royal proclamation, two or three Tory addresses, notices of two or three promotions, an account of a skirmish between the imperial troops and the Janissaries on the Danube, a description of a highwayman, an announcement of a grand cock-fight between two persons of honour, and an advertisement offering a reward for a

\* There is a very curious, and, I should think, unique collection of these papers in the British Museum.

The coffee  
houses  
served as  
newspapers  
in London.

strayed dog. The whole made up two pages of moderate size. Whatever was communicated respecting matters of the highest moment was communicated in the most meagre and formal style. Sometimes, indeed, when the government was disposed to gratify the public curiosity respecting an important transaction, a broadside was put forth giving fuller details than could be found in the Gazette : but neither the Gazette nor any supplementary broadside printed by authority ever contained any intelligence which it did not suit the purposes of the court to publish. The most important parliamentary debates, the most important state trials, recorded in our history, were passed over in profound silence.\* In the capital the coffee houses supplied in some measure the place of a journal. Thither the Londoners flocked, as the Athenians of old flocked to the market place, to hear whether there was any news. There men might learn how brutally a Whig had been

\* For example, there is not a word in the Gazette about the important parliamentary proceedings of Nov. 1685, or about the trial and acquittal of the seven Bishops.

treated the day before in Westminster Hall, what horrible accounts the letters from Edinburgh gave of the torturing of Covenanters, how grossly the Navy Board had cheated the crown in the victualling of the fleet, and what grave charges the Lord Privy Seal had brought against the Treasury in the matter of the hearth money. But people who lived at a distance from the great theatre of political contention could be kept regularly informed of what was passing there only by means of newsletters. To prepare such letters became a calling in London, as it now is among the natives of India. The newswriter rambled from coffee room to coffee room, collecting reports, squeezed himself into the Sessions House at the Old Bailey if there was an interesting trial, nay, perhaps obtained admission to the gallery of Whitehall, and noticed how the King and Duke looked. In this way he gathered materials for weekly epistles destined to enlighten some county town or some bench of rustic magistrates. Such were the sources from which the inhabitants of the largest provincial cities, and

People who lived in the country depended for news on newsletters.

the great body of the gentry and clergy, learned almost all that they knew of the history of their own time. We must suppose that at Cambridge there were as many persons curious to know what was passing in the world as at almost any place in the kingdom, out of London. Yet at Cambridge, during a great part of the reign of Charles the Second, the Doctors of Laws and the Masters of Arts had no regular supply of news except through the London Gazette. At length the services of one of the collectors of intelligence in the capital were employed. That was a memorable day on which the first newsletter from London was laid on the table of the only coffee room in Cambridge.\* At the seat of a man of fortune in the country the newsletter was impatiently expected. Within a week after it had arrived it had been thumbed by twenty families. It furnished the neighbouring squires with matter for talk over their October, and the neighbouring rectors with topics for sharp sermons against Whig-

\* Roger North's *Life of Dr. John North*. On the subject of newsletters, see the *Examen*, 133.

gery or Popery. Many of these curious journals might doubtless still be detected by a diligent search in the archives of old families. Some are to be found in our public libraries: and one series, which is not the least valuable part of the literary treasures collected by Sir James Mackintosh, will be occasionally quoted in the course of this work.\*

120. It is scarcely necessary to say that there were then no provincial newspapers. Indeed, except in the capital and at the two Universities, there was scarcely a printer in the kingdom. The only press in England north of Trent appears to have been at York.†

There was practically no printing house except at the capital and the Universities

\* I take this opportunity of expressing my warm gratitude to the family of my dear and honoured friend Sir James Mackintosh for confiding to me the materials collected by him at a time when he meditated a work similar to that which I have undertaken. I have never seen, and I do not believe that there anywhere exists, within the same compass, so noble a collection of extracts from public and private archives. The judgment with which Sir James, in great masses of the rudest ore of history, selected what was valuable, and rejected what was worthless, can be fully appreciated only by one who has toiled after him in the same mine.

† Life of Thomas Gent. A complete list of all printing houses in 1724 will be found in Nichols's Literary Anecdotes of the eighteenth century. There had



**The Observer.**

The London Gazette published only news without any comment. The Observer published comment without news. It was a violent Tory paper edited by Roger Lestrangle.

**121.** It was not only by means of the London Gazette that the government undertook to furnish political instruction to the people. That journal contained a scanty supply of news without comment. Another journal, published under the patronage of the court, consisted of comment without news. This paper, called the *Observer*, was edited by an Old Tory pamphleteer named Roger Lestrangle. Lestrangle was by no means deficient in readiness and shrewdness; and his diction, though coarse, and disfigured by a mean and flippant jargon which then passed for wit in the green room and the tavern, was not without keenness and vigour. But his nature, at once ferocious and ignoble, showed itself in every line that he penned. When the first *Observers* appeared there was some excuse for his acrimony. For the Whigs were then powerful; and he had to contend against numerous adver-

---

then been a great increase within a few years in the number of presses; and yet there were thirty-four counties in which there was no printer, one of those counties being Lancashire.

saries, whose unscrupulous violence might seem to justify unsparing retaliation. But in 1685 all opposition had been crushed. A generous spirit would have disdained to insult a party which could not reply, and to aggravate the misery of prisoners, of exiles, of bereaved families: but from the malice of Lestrangle the grave was no hiding place, and the house of mourning no sanctuary. In the last month of the reign of Charles the Second, William Jenkyn, an aged dissenting pastor of great note, who had been cruelly persecuted for no crime but that of worshipping God according to the fashion generally followed throughout Protestant Europe, died of hardships and privations in Newgate. The outbreak of popular sympathy could not be repressed. The corpse was followed to the grave by a train of a hundred and fifty coaches. Even courtiers 'looked sad. Even the unthinking King showed some signs of concern. Lestrangle alone set up a howl of savage exultation, laughed at the weak compassion of the Trimmers, proclaimed that the blasphemous old impostor had

met with a most righteous punishment, and vowed to wage war, not only to the death, but after death, with all the mock saints and martyrs.\* Such was the spirit of the paper which was at this time the oracle of the Tory party, and especially of the parochial clergy.

### Scarcity of books in country places.

Newspapers and news-letters constituted the only literature available to the country gentlemen and clergy.

122. Literature which could be carried by the post bag then formed the greater part of the intellectual nutriment ruminated by the country divines and country justices. The difficulty and expense of conveying large packets from place to place was so great, that an extensive work was longer in making its way from Paternoster Row to Devonshire or Lancashire than it now is in reaching Kentucky. How scantily a rural parsonage was then furnished, even with books the most necessary to a theologian, has already been remarked. The houses of the gentry were not more plentifully supplied. Few knights of the shire had

---

\* *Observer*, Jan. 29 and 31, 1685. Calamy's *Life of Baxter*. *Non-conformist Memorial*.

libraries so good as may now perpetually be found in a servants' hall, or in the back parlour of a small shopkeeper. An esquire passed among his neighbours for a great scholar, if Hudibras and Baker's Chronicle, Tarlton's Jests and the Seven Champions of Christendom, lay in his hall window among the fishing rods and fowling pieces. No circulating library, no book society, then existed even in the capital: but in the capital those students who could not afford to purchase largely had a resource. The shops of the great booksellers, near Saint Paul's Churchyard, were crowded every day and all day long with readers; and a known customer was often permitted to carry a volume home. In the country there was no such accommodation; and every man was under the necessity of buying whatever he wished to read.\*

Country gentlemen had very few books in their libraries. and no circulating libraries existed even in the capital.

\* Cotton seems, from his Angler, to have found room for his whole library in his hall window; and Cotton was a man of letters. Even when Franklin first visited London in 1724, circulating libraries were unknown there. The crowd at the booksellers' shops in Little Britain is mentioned by Roger North in his life of his brother John.

**Female education.**

Female education was sadly neglected and even ladies of good families could not write a single line in correct English.

**123.** As to the lady of the manor and her daughters, their literary stores generally consisted of a prayer book and a receipt book. But in truth they lost little by living in rural seclusion. For, even in the highest ranks, and in those situations which afforded the greatest facilities for mental improvement, the English women of that generation were decidedly worse educated than they have been at any other time since the revival of learning. At an earlier period they had studied the masterpieces of ancient genius. In the present day they seldom bestow much attention on the dead languages; but they are familiar with the tongue of Pascal and Molière, with the tongue of Dante and Tasso, with the tongue of Goethe and Schiller; nor is there any purer or more graceful English than that which accomplished women now speak and write. But, during the latter part of the seventeenth century, the culture of the female mind seems to have been almost entirely neglected. If a damsel had the least smattering of literature she was

regarded as a prodigy. Ladies highly born, highly bred, and naturally quick witted, were unable to write a line in their mother tongue without solecisms and faults of spelling such as a charity girl would now be ashamed to commit.\*

124. The explanation may easily be found. Extravagant licentiousness, the natural effect of extravagant austerity, was now the mode: and licentiousness had produced its ordinary effect, the moral and intellectual degradation of women. To their personal beauty, it was the fashion to pay rude and impudent homage. But the admiration and desire which they inspired were seldom mingled with respect, with affection, or with any chivalrous sentiment. The qualities which fit them to be companions, advisers, confidential friends, rather repelled than attracted the

The licentious manners of the age resulted in the moral and intellectual degradation of women.

\* One instance will suffice. Queen Mary had good natural abilities, had been educated by a Bishop, was fond of history and poetry, and was regarded by very eminent men as a superior woman. There is, in the library at the Hague, a superb English Bible which was delivered to her when she was crowned in Westminster Abbey. In the title page are these words in her own hand, "This book was given the King and I, at our coronation, Marie R."

libertines of Whitehall. In that court a maid of honour, who dressed in such a manner as to do full justice to a white bosom, who ogled significantly, who danced voluptuously, who excelled in pert repartee, who was not ashamed to romp with Lords of the Bedchamber and Captains of the Guards, to sing sly verses with sly expression, or to put on a page's dress for a frolic, was more likely to be followed and admired, more likely to be honoured with royal attentions, more likely to win a rich and noble husband than Jane Grey or Lucy Hutchinson would have been. In such circumstances the standard of female attainments was necessarily low; and it was more dangerous to be above that standard than to be beneath it. Extreme ignorance and frivolity were thought less unbecoming in a lady than the slightest tincture of pedantry. Of the too celebrated women whose faces we still admire on the walls of Hampton Court, few indeed were in the habit of reading anything more valuable than acrostics, lampoons, and translations of the Clelia and the Grand Cyrus.

**Literary attainments of gentlemen.**

**125.** The literary acquirements, even of the accomplished gentlemen of that generation, seem to have been somewhat less solid and profound than at an earlier or a later period. Greek learning, at least, did not flourish among us in the days of Charles the Second, as it had flourished before the civil war, or as it again flourished long after the Revolution. There were undoubtedly scholars to whom the whole Greek literature, from Homer to Photius, was familiar: but such scholars were to be found almost exclusively among the clergy resident at the Universities, and even at the Universities were few, and were not fully appreciated. At Cambridge it was not thought by any means necessary that a divine should be able to read the Gospels in the original.\* Nor was the standard at Oxford higher. When, in the reign of William the Third, Christ Church rose up as one man to

Greek learning did not flourish in that age and few clergymen could read the gospel in the original.

\* Roger North tells us that his brother John, who was Greek professor at Cambridge, complained bitterly of the general neglect of the Greek tongue among the academical clergy.



defend the genuineness of the Epistles of Phalaris, that great college, then considered as the first seat of philology in the kingdom, could not muster such a stock of Attic learning as is now possessed by several youths at every great public school. It may easily be supposed that a dead language, neglected at the Universities, was not much studied by men of the world. In a former age the poetry and eloquence of Greece had been the delight of Raleigh and Falkland. In a later age the poetry and eloquence of Greece were the delight of Pitt and Fox, of Windham and Grenville. But during the latter part of the seventeenth century there was in England scarcely one eminent statesman who could read with enjoyment a page of Sophocles or Plato.

There  
was no  
want of  
good Latin  
scholars.

**126.** Good Latin scholars were numerous. The language of Rome, indeed, had not altogether lost its imperial character, and was still, in many parts of Europe, almost indispensable to a traveller or a negotiator. To speak it well was therefore a much more common accomplishment than in our time; and neither

Oxford nor Cambridge wanted poets who, on a great occasion, could lay at the foot of the throne happy imitations of the verses in which Virgil and Ovid had celebrated the greatness of Augustus.

### **Influence of French literature.**

127. Yet even the Latin was giving way to a younger rival. France united at that time almost every species of ascendancy. Her military glory was at the height. She had vanquished mighty coalitions. She had dictated treaties. She had subjugated great cities and provinces. She had forced the Castilian pride to yield her the precedence. She had summoned Italian princes to prostrate themselves at her footstool. Her authority was supreme in all matters of good breeding, from a duel to a minuet. She determined how a gentleman's coat must be cut, how long his peruke must be, whether his heels must be high or low, and whether the lace on his hat must be broad or narrow. In literature she gave law to the world. The fame of her great writers filled Europe. No other country could produce

French was fast replacing Latin as the language of fashionable society and diplomacy in Europe.

Acquaintance with French was regarded as a mark of good breeding and culture.

a tragic poet equal to Racine, a comic poet equal to Molière, a trifler so agreeable as La Fontaine, a rhetorician so skilful as Bossuet. The literary glory of Italy and of Spain had set; that of Germany had not yet dawned. The genius, therefore, of the eminent men who adorned Paris shone forth with a splendour which was set off to full advantage by contrast. France, indeed, had at that time an empire over mankind, such as even the Roman Republic never attained. For, when Rome was politically dominant, she was in arts and letters the humble pupil of Greece. France had, over the surrounding countries, at once the ascendancy which Rome had over Greece, and the ascendancy which Greece had over Rome. French was fast becoming the universal language, the language of fashionable society, the language of diplomacy. At several courts princes and nobles spoke it more accurately and politely than their mother tongue. In our island there was less of this servility than on the Continent. Neither our good nor our bad qualities were those of imitators. Yet even here

homage was paid, awkwardly indeed and sullenly, to the literary supremacy of our neighbours. The melodious Tuscan, so familiar to the gallants and ladies of the court of Elizabeth, sank into contempt. A gentleman who quoted Horace or Terence was considered in good company as a pompous pedant. But to garnish his conversation with scraps of French was the best proof which he could give of his parts and attainments.\* New canons of criticism, new models of style came into fashion. The quaint ingenuity which had deformed the verses of Donne, and had been a blemish on those of Cowley, disappeared from our poetry. Our prose became less majestic, less artfully involved, less variously musical than that of an earlier age, but more lucid, more easy, and better fitted for controversy and narrative. In these changes it is impossible not to recognise the influence of French precept and of French example. Great

English  
prose under  
the influence  
of French  
became  
lucid  
and  
easy.

Butler, in a satire of great asperity, says,

"For, though to smatter words of Greek  
And Latin be the rhetoric  
Of pedants counted, and vainglorious,  
To smatter French is meritorious."

masters of our language, in their most dignified compositions, affected to use French words, when English words, quite as expressive and melodious, were at hand:\* and from France was imported the tragedy in rhyme, an exotic which, in our soil, drooped, and speedily died.

**Immorality of the polite literature of England.**

The immoral tone of the literature of the age was a blot on the national character of the English people.

**128.** It would have been well if our writers had also copied the decorum which their great French contemporaries, with few exceptions, preserved; for the profligacy of the English plays, satires, songs, and novels of that age is a deep blot on our national fame. The evil may easily be traced to its source. The wits and the Puritans had never been on friendly terms. There was no sympathy between the two classes. They looked on the whole system of human life from different points and in different lights. The earnest of each was the jest of the other.

\* The most offensive instance which I remember is in a poem on the coronation of Charles the Second by Dryden, who certainly could not plead poverty as an excuse for borrowing words from any foreign tongue:—

• "Hither in summer evenings you repair  
To taste the fraicheur of the cooler air."

The pleasure of each were the torments of the other. To the stern precisian even the innocent sport of the fancy seemed a crime. To light and festive natures the solemnity of the zealous brethren furnished copious matter of ridicule. From the Reformation to the civil war, almost every writer, gifted with a fine sense of the ludicrous, had taken some opportunity of assailing the straighthaired, snuffling, whining saints, who christened their children out of the Book of Nehemiah, who groaned in spirit at the sight of Jack in the Green, and who thought it impious to taste plum porridge on Christmas day. At length a time came when the laughers began to look grave in their turn. The rigid, ungainly zealots, after having furnished much good sport during two generations, rose up in arms, conquered, ruled, and, grimly smiling, trod down under their feet the whole crowd of mockers. The wounds inflicted by gay and petulant malice were retaliated with the gloomy and implacable malice peculiar to bigots who mistake their own rancour for virtue. The theatres were closed. The players

The Puritans  
had oppressed the  
wits and  
after their  
fall from  
power the  
wits gave  
no quarter  
to the old  
Puritan  
enemies.

were flogged. The press was put under the guardianship of austere licensers. The Muses were banished from their own favourite haunts, Cambridge and Oxford. Cowley, Crashaw, and Cleveland were ejected from their fellowships. The young candidate for academical honours was no longer required to write Ovidian epistles or Virgilian pastorals, but was strictly interrogated by a synod of lowering Supralapsarians as to the day and hour when he experienced the new birth. Such a system was of course fruitful of hypocrites. Under sober clothing and under visages composed to the expression of austerity lay hid during several years the intense desire of license and of revenge. At length that desire was gratified. The Restoration emancipated thousands of minds from a yoke which had become insupportable. The old fight recommenced, but with an animosity altogether new. It was now not a sportive combat, but a war to the death. The Roundhead had no better quarter to expect from those whom he had persecuted than a cruel slavedriver can expect from insurgent

slaves still bearing the marks of his collars and his scourges.

129. The war between wit and Puritanism soon became a war between wit and morality. The hostility excited by a grotesque caricature of virtue did not spare virtue herself. Whatever the canting Roundhead had regarded with reverence was insulted. Whatever he had proscribed was favoured. Because he had been scrupulous about trifles, all scruples were treated with derision. Because he had covered his failings with the mask of devotion, men were encouraged to obtrude with Cynic impudence all their most scandalous vices on the public eye. Because he had punished illicit love with barbarous severity, virgin purity and conjugal fidelity were to be made a jest. To that sanctimonious jargon which was his Shibboleth, was opposed another jargon not less absurd and much more odious. As he never opened his mouth except in scriptural phrase, the new breed of wits and fine gentlemen never opened their mouths without uttering ribaldry of which a porter would now be ashamed, and

The war between the wits and the Puritans turned into a war between wit and morality. The wits (the enemies of the Puritans) took pleasure in ridiculing virtue and holiness themselves.



without calling on their Maker to curse them, sink them, confound them, blast them, and damn them.

The  
shameless  
immorality  
of the  
writings of  
some of  
the poets  
of the age  
carried its  
own  
remedy;

130. It is not strange, therefore, that our polite literature, when it revived with the revival of the old civil and ecclesiastical polity, should have been profoundly immoral. A few eminent men, who belonged to an earlier and better age, were exempt from the general contagion. The verse of Waller still breathed the sentiments which had animated a more chivalrous generation. Cowley, distinguished as a loyalist and as a man of letters, raised his voice courageously against the immorality which disgraced both letters and loyalty. A mightier poet, tried at once by pain, danger, poverty, obloquy and blindness, meditated, undisturbed by the obscene tumult which raged all around him, a song so sublime and so holy that it would not have misbecome the lips of those ethereal Virtues whom he saw, with that inner eye which no calamity could darken, flinging down on the jasper pavement their crowns of amaranth and gold. The vigorous and

fertile genius of Butler, if it did not altogether escape the prevailing infection, took the disease in a mild form. But these were men whose minds had been trained in a world which had passed away. They gave place in no long time to a younger generation of wits; and of that generation, from Dryden down to Durfey, the common characteristic was hardhearted, shameless, swaggering licentiousness, at once inelegant and inhuman. The influence of these writers was doubtless noxious, yet less noxious than it would have been had they been less depraved. the public quickly grew sick of it. The poison which they administered was so strong that it was, in no long time, rejected with nausea. None of them understood the dangerous art of associating images of unlawful pleasure with all that is endearing and ennobling. None of them was aware that a certain decorum is essential even to voluptuousness, that drapery may be more alluring than exposure, and that the imagination may be far more powerfully moved by delicate hints which impel it to exert itself than by

gross descriptions which it takes in passively.

The most immoral and offensive writings were the dramas of the period. The immorality prevailing in the theatre-house drove away sober-minded people; and the artists (actors and actresses) ministered to the corrupt tastes of the spectators.

131. The spirit of the Antipuritan reaction pervades almost the whole polite literature of the reign of Charles the Second. But the very quintessence of that spirit will be found in the comic drama. The playhouses, shut by the meddling fanatic in the day of his power, were again crowded. To their old attractions new and more powerful attractions had been added. Scenery, dresses, and decorations, such as would now be thought mean or absurd, but such as would have been esteemed incredibly magnificent by those who, early in the seventeenth century, sat on the filthy benches of the Hope, or under the thatched roof of the Rose, dazzled the eyes of the multitude. The fascination of sex was called in to aid the fascination of art: and the young spectator saw, with emotions unknown to the contemporaries of Shakespeare and Jonson, tender and sprightly heroines personated by lovely women. From the day on which the theatres were reopened they became seminaries of vice; and the evil

propagated itself. The profligacy of the representations soon drove away sober people. The frivolous and dissolute who remained required every year stronger and stronger stimulants. Thus the artists corrupted the spectators, and the spectators the artists, till the turpitude of the drama became such as must astonish all who are not aware that extreme relaxation is the natural effect of extreme restraint, and that an age of hypocrisy is, in the regular course of things, followed by an age of impudence.

132. Nothing is more characteristic of the times than the care with which the poets contrived to put all their loosest verses into the mouths of women. The compositions in which the greatest license was taken were the epilogues. They were almost always recited by favourite actresses; and nothing charmed the depraved audience so much as to hear lines grossly indecent repeated by a beautiful girl, who was supposed to have not yet lost her innocence.\*

The loosest (most immoral) verses were put into the mouths of women (actresses).

---

\* Jeremy Collier has censured this odious practice with his usual force and keenness.

The dramas were often indebted for their plots to English and to foreign sources.

The originals suffered moral degradation in the hands of the borrowers.

**133.** Our theatre was indebted in that age for many plots and characters to Spain, to France, and to the old English masters: but whatever our dramatists touched they tainted. In their imitations the houses of Calderon's stately and high-spirited Castilian gentlemen became sties of vice, Shakespeare's Viola a procuress, Molière's Misanthrope a ravisher, Molière's Agnes an adulteress. Nothing could be so pure or so heroic but that it became foul and ignoble by transfusion through those foul and ignoble minds.

The drama was the most profitable branch of polite literature in those times.

**134.** Such was the state of the drama; and the drama was the department of polite literature in which a poet had the best chance of obtaining a subsistence by his pen. The sale of books was so small that a man of the greatest name could expect only a pittance for the copyright of the best performance. There cannot be a stronger instance than the fate of Dryden's last production, the Fables. That volume was published when he was universally admitted to be the chief of living English poets. It contains about twelve thousand lines. The versification is admirable; the

narratives and descriptions full of life. To this day Palamon and Arcite, Cymon and Iphigenia, Theodore and Honoria, are the delight both of critics and of schoolboys. The collection includes Alexander's Feast, the noblest ode in our language. For the copyright Dryden received two hundred and fifty pounds, less than in our days has sometimes been paid for two articles in a review.\* Nor does the bargain seem to have been a hard one. For the book went off slowly; and the second edition was not required until the author had been ten years in his grave. By writing for the theatre it was possible to earn a much larger sum with much less trouble. Southern made seven hundred pounds by one play.† Otway was raised from beggary to temporary affluence by the success of his *Don Carlos*.‡ Shadwell cleared a hundred and thirty pounds by a single representation of the *Squire of Alsatia*.§ The consequence was that every

---

\* The contract will be found in Sir Walter Scott's edition of Dryden.

† See the *Life of Southern*, by Shiels.

‡ See *Rochester's Trial of the Poets*.

§ *Some Account of the English Stage*.

man who had to live by his wit wrote plays, whether he had any internal vocation to write plays or not. It was thus with Dryden. As a satirist he has rivalled Juvenal. As a didactic poet he perhaps might, with care and meditation, have rivalled Lucretius. Of lyric poets he is, if not the 'most sublime, the most brilliant and spirit-stirring. But nature, profuse to him of many rare gifts, had denied him the dramatic faculty. Nevertheless all the energies of his best years were wasted on dramatic composition. He had too much judgment not to be aware that in the power of exhibiting character by means of dialogue he was deficient. That deficiency he did his best to conceal, sometimes by surprising and amusing incidents, sometimes by stately declamation, sometimes by harmonious numbers, sometimes by ribaldry but too well suited to the taste of a profane and licentious pit. Yet he never obtained any theatrical success equal to that which rewarded the exertions of some men far inferior to him in general powers. He thought himself fortunate if he cleared a hundred guineas by a play; a scanty

remuneration, yet apparently larger than he could have earned in any other way by the same quantity of labour.\*

135. The recompense which the wits of that age could obtain from the public was so small, that they were under the necessity of eking out their incomes by levying contributions on the great. Every rich and goodnatured lord was pestered by authors with a mendicancy so importunate, and a flattery so abject, as may in our time seem incredible. The patron to whom a work was inscribed was expected to reward the writer with a purse of gold. The fee paid for the dedication of a book was often much larger than the sum which any publisher would give for the copyright. Books were therefore frequently printed merely that they might be dedicated. This traffic in praise produced the effect which might have been expected. Adulation pushed to the verge, sometimes of nonsense, and sometimes of impiety, was not thought to disgrace a poet. Independence, veracity, self-respect, were things not required by the world from him.

The sale of books being small, authors could not expect more than miserable sums for their works.

Authors dedicated their works to rich Lords for the sake of pecuniary rewards. This practice had a very demoralising effect on the literary men.

In truth, he was in

---

\* Life of Southern, by Shiels.



morals something between a pandar and a beggar.

The wits  
of the age  
were  
bigoted  
Tories and  
betrayed  
in their  
works a  
violent  
hatred  
against the  
Whigs, their  
political  
opponents.

**136.** To the other vices which degraded the literary character was added, towards the close of the reign of Charles the Second, the most savage intemperance of party spirit. The wits, as a class, had been impelled by their old hatred of Puritanism to take the side of the court, and had been found useful allies. Dryden, in particular, had done good service to the government. His *Absalom and Achitophel*, the greatest satire of modern times, had amazed the town, had made its way with unprecedented rapidity even into rural districts, and had, wherever it appeared, bitterly annoyed the Exclusionists, and raised the courage of the Tories. But we must not, in the admiration which we naturally feel for noble diction and versification, forget the great distinctions of good and evil. The spirit by which Dryden and several of his compeers were at this time animated against the Whigs deserves to be called fiendish. The servile Judges and Sheriffs of those evil days could not shed blood so fast as the poets cried out

for it. Calls for more victims, hideous jests on hanging, bitter taunts on those who, having stood by the King in the hour of danger, now advised him to deal mercifully and generously by his vanquished enemies, were publicly recited on the stage, and, that nothing might be wanting to the guilt and the shame, were recited by women, who, having long been taught to discard all modesty, were now taught to discard all compassion.\*

### State of Science in England.

137. It is a remarkable fact that, while the lighter literature of England was thus becoming a nuisance and a national disgrace, the English genius was effecting in science a revolution which will, to the end of time, be reckoned among the highest achievements of the human intellect. Bacon had sown the good seed in a sluggish soil and an ungenial season. He had not expected an early crop, and in his last testament had solemnly bequeathed his

The study of science received a great impetus during this age.

---

\* If any reader thinks my expressions too severe, I would advise him to read Dryden's Epilogue to the Duke of Guise, and to observe that it was spoken by a woman.

fame to the next age. During a whole generation his philosophy had, amidst tumults, wars, and proscriptions, been slowly ripening in a few well constituted minds. While factions were struggling for dominion over each other, a small body of sages had turned away with benevolent disdain from the conflict, and had devoted themselves to the nobler work of extending the dominion of man over matter. As soon as tranquillity was restored, these teachers easily found attentive audience. For the discipline through which the nation had passed had brought the public mind to a temper well fitted for the reception of the Verulamian doctrine. The civil troubles had stimulated the faculties of the educated classes, and had called forth a restless activity and an insatiable curiosity, such as had not before been known among us. Yet the effect of those troubles was that schemes of political and religious reform were generally regarded with suspicion and contempt. During twenty years the chief employment of busy and ingenious men had been to frame constitutions with first magistrates, without first

magistrates, with hereditary senates, with senates appointed by lot, with annual senates, with perpetual senates. In these plans nothing was omitted. All the detail, all the nomenclature, all the ceremonial of the imaginary government was fully set forth, Polemarchs and Phylarchs, Tribes and Galaxies, the Lord Archon and the Lord Strategus. Which ballot boxes were to be green and which red, which balls were to be of gold and which of silver, which magistrates were to wear hats and which black velvet caps with peaks, how the mace was to be carried and when the heralds were to uncover, these, and a hundred more such trifles, were gravely considered and arranged by men of no common capacity and learning.\* But the time for these visions had gone by; and, if any steadfast republican still continued to amuse himself with them, fear of public derision and of a criminal information generally induced him to keep his fancies to himself. It was now unpopular and unsafe to mutter a word against the fundamental laws of the monarchy: but daring

---

\* See particularly Harrington's *Oceana*.

The Royal  
Society  
was found-  
ed in 1660.

and ingenious men might indemnify themselves by treating with disdain what had lately been considered as the fundamental laws of nature. The torrent which had been dammed up in one channel rushed violently into another. The revolutionary spirit, ceasing to operate in politics, began to exert itself with unprecedented vigour and hardihood in every department of physics. The year 1660, the era of the restoration of the old constitution, is also the era from which dates the ascendancy of the new philosophy. In that year the Royal Society, destined to be a chief agent in a long series of glorious and salutary reforms, began to exist.\* In a few months experimental science became all the mode. The transfusion of blood, the ponderation of air, the fixation of mercury, succeeded to that place in the public mind which had been lately occupied by the controversies of the Rota. Dreams of perfect forms of government made way for dreams of wings with which men were to fly from the Tower to the Abbey, and of doublekeeled ships which were never to founder in the

---

\* See Sprat's History of the Royal Society.

fiercest storm. All classes were hurried along by the prevailing sentiment. Cavalier and Roundhead, Churchman and Puritan were for once allied. Divines, jurists, statesmen, nobles, princes, swelled the triumph of the Baconian philosophy. Poets sang with emulous fervour the approach of the golden age. Cowley, in lines weighty with thought and resplendent with wit, urged the chosen seed to take possession of the promised land flowing with milk and honey, that land which their great deliverer and lawgiver had seen, as from the summit of Pisgah, but had not been permitted to enter.\* Dryden, with more zeal than knowledge, joined his voice to the general acclamation, and foretold things which neither he nor anybody else understood. The Royal Society, he predicted, would soon lead us to the extreme verge of the globe, and there delight us with a better view of the moon.† Two able and aspiring prelates,

Scientific investigation interested men of all classes and professions.

---

\* Cowley's Ode to the Royal Society.

† "Then we upon the globe's last verge shall go,

And view the ocean leaning on the sky;

From thence our rolling neighbours we shall know,

And on the lunar world securely pry."

Annus Mirabilis. 164.

Ward, Bishop of Salisbury, and Wilkins, Bishop of Chester, were conspicuous among the leaders of the movement. Its history was eloquently written by a younger divine, who was rising to high distinction in his profession, Thomas Sprat, afterwards Bishop of Rochester. Both Chief Justice Hale and Lord Keeper Guildford stole some hours from the business of their courts to write on hydrostatics. Indeed it was under the immediate directions of Guildford that the first barometers ever exposed to sale in London were constructed.\* Chemistry divided, for a time, with wine and love, with the stage and the gaming table, with the intrigues of a courtier and the intrigues of a demagogue, the attention of the fickle Buckingham. Rupert has the credit of having invented mezzotinto; and from him is named that curious bubble of glass which has long amused children and puzzled philosophers. Charles himself had a laboratory at Whitehall, and was far more active and attentive there than at the council board. It was almost necessary to the

---

\* North's Life of Guildford.

character of a fine gentleman to have something to say about airpumps and telescopes; and even fine ladies, now and then, thought it becoming to affect a taste for science, went in coaches and six to visit the Gresham curiosities, and broke forth into cries of delight at finding that a magnet really attracted a needle, and that a microscope really made a fly look as large as a sparrow.\*

**138.** In this, as in every great stir of the human mind, there was doubtless something which might well move a smile. It is the universal law that whatever pursuit, whatever doctrine, becomes fashionable, shall lose a portion of that dignity which it had possessed while it was confined to a small but earnest minority, and was loved for its own sake alone. It is true that the follies of some persons who, without any real aptitude for science, professed a passion for it, furnished matter of contemptuous mirth to a few malignant satirists who belonged to the preceding generation, and were not dis-

The pursuit of science bore important fruits in different departments of knowledge and arts of life.

---

\* Pepys's Diary, May 30, 1667.



posed to unlearn the law of their youth.\* But it is not less true that the great work of interpreting nature was performed by the English of that age as it had never before been performed in any age by any nation. The spirit of Francis Bacon was abroad, a spirit admirably compounded of audacity and sobriety. There was a strong persuasion that the whole world was full of secrets of high moment to the happiness of man, and that man had, by his Maker, been intrusted with the key which, rightly used, would give access to them. There was at the same time a conviction that in physics it was impossible to arrive at the knowledge of general laws except by the careful observation of particular facts. Deeply impressed with these great truths, the professors of the new philosophy applied themselves to their task, and, before a quarter of a century had expired, they had given ample earnest of what has since been achieved. Already a reform

---

\* Butler was, I think, the only man of real genius who, between the Restoration and the Revolution, showed a bitter enmity to the new philosophy, as it was then called. See the *Satire on the Royal Society and the Elephant in the Moon*.

of agriculture had been commenced. New vegetables were cultivated. New implements of husbandry were employed. New manures were applied to the soil.\* Evelyn had, under the formal sanction of the Royal Society, given instructions to his countrymen in planting. Temple, in his intervals of leisure, had tried many experiments in horticulture, and had proved that many delicate fruits, the natives of more favoured climates, might, with the help of art, be grown on English ground. Medicine, which in France was still in abject bondage, and afforded an inexhaustible subject of just ridicule to Molière, had in England become an experimental and progressive science, and every day made some new advance, in defiance of Hippocrates and Galen. The attention of speculative men had been, for the first time, directed to the important subject of sanitary police. The great plague of 1665 induced them to consider with care the defective architecture, draining, and venti-

---

\* The eagerness with which the agriculturists of that age tried experiments and introduced improvements, is well described by Aubrey. *Natural History of Wiltshire*, 1685.

It exploded  
a number  
of old errors  
like beliefs  
in astrology  
and  
witchcraft.

lation of the capital. The great fire of 1666 afforded an opportunity for effecting extensive improvements. The whole matter was diligently examined by the Royal Society; and to the suggestions of that body must be partly attributed the changes which, though far short of what the public welfare required, yet made a wide difference between the new and the old London, and probably put a final close to the ravages of pestilence in our country.\* At the same time one of the founders of the society, Sir William Petty, created the science of political arithmetic, the humble but indispensable handmaid of political philosophy. No kingdom of nature was left unexplored. To that period belong the chemical discoveries of Boyle, and the earliest botanical researches of Sloane. It was then that Ray made a new classification of birds and fishes, and that the attention of Woodward was first drawn towards fossils and shells. One after another phantoms which had haunted the world through ages of darkness fled before the light. Astrology and alchymy

---

\* Sprat's History of the Royal Society.

became jests. Soon there was scarcely a county in which some of the Quorum did not smile contemptuously when an old woman was brought before them for riding on broomsticks or giving cattle the murrain. But it was in those noblest and most arduous departments of knowledge in which induction and mathematical demonstration co-operate for the discovery of truth, that the English genius won in that age the most memorable triumphs. John Wallis placed the whole system of statics on a new foundation. Edmund Halley investigated the properties of the atmosphere, the ebb and flow of the sea, the laws of magnetism, and the course of the comets; nor did he shrink from toil, peril, and exile in the cause of science. While he, on the rock of Saint Helena, mapped the constellations of the southern hemisphere, our national observatory was rising at Greenwich; and John Flamsteed, the first astronomer royal, was commencing that long series of observations which is never mentioned without respect and gratitude in any part of the globe. But the glory of these men, eminent as they

were, is cast into the shade by the transcendent lustre of one immortal name. In Isaac Newton two kinds of intellectual power, which have little in common, and which are not often found together in a very high degree of vigour, but which nevertheless are equally necessary in the most sublime departments of physics, were united as they have never been united before or since. There may have been minds as happily constituted as his for the cultivation of pure mathematical science; there may have been minds as happily constituted for the cultivation of science purely experimental: but in no other mind have the demonstrative faculty and the inductive faculty coexisted in such supreme excellence and perfect harmony. Perhaps in an age of Scotists and Thomists even his intellect might have run to waste, as many intellects ran to waste which were inferior only to his. Happily the spirit of the age on which his lot was cast, gave the right direction to his mind; and his mind reacted with tenfold force on the spirit of the age. In the year 1685 his fame, though splendid, was only

dawning; but his genius was in the meridian. His great work, that work which effected a revolution in the most important provinces of natural philosophy, had been completed, but was not yet published, and was just about to be submitted to the consideration of the Royal Society.

### State of the fine arts.

139. It is not very easy to explain why the nation which was so far before its neighbours in science should in art have been far behind them all. Yet such was the fact. It is true that in architecture, an art which is half a science, an art in which none but a geometrician can excel, an art which has no standard of grace but what is directly or indirectly dependent on utility, an art of which the creations derive a part, at least, of their majesty from mere bulk, our country could boast of one truly great man, Christopher Wren; and the fire which laid London in ruins had given him an opportunity, unprecedented in modern history, of displaying his powers. The austere beauty of the

The Fine Arts remained in a backward condition. Sir Christopher Wren was the only great architect of the age.

The famous painters and sculptors of the times were all foreigners.

Athenian portico, the gloomy sublimity of the Gothic arcade, he was, like almost all his contemporaries, incapable of emulating, and perhaps incapable of appreciating : but no man, born on our side of the Alps, has imitated with so much success the magnificence of the palacelike churches of Italy. Even the superb Lewis has left to posterity no work which can bear a comparison with Saint Paul's. But at the close of the reign of Charles the Second there was not a single English painter or statuary whose name is now remembered. This sterility is somewhat mysterious ; for painters and statuaries were by no means a despised or an ill paid class. Their social position was at least as high as at present. Their gains, when compared with the wealth of the nation and with the remuneration of other descriptions of intellectual labour, were even larger than at present. Indeed the munificent patronage which was extended to artists drew them to our shores in multitudes. Lely, who has preserved to us the rich curls, the full lips, and the languishing eyes of the frail beauties celebrated by Hamilton, was

a Westphalian. He had died in 1680, having long lived splendidly, having received the honour of knighthood, and having accumulated a good estate out of the fruits of his skill. His noble collection of drawings and pictures was, after his decease, exhibited by the royal permission in the Banqueting House at Whitehall, and was sold by auction for the almost incredible sum of twenty-six thousand pounds, a sum which bore a greater proportion to the fortunes of the rich men of that day than a hundred thousand pounds would bear to the fortunes of the rich men of our time.\* Lely was succeeded by his countryman Godfrey Kneller, who was made first a knight and then a baronet, and who, after keeping up a sumptuous establishment, and after losing much money by unlucky speculations, was still able to bequeath a large fortune to his family. The two Vandelves, natives of Holland, had been tempted by English liberality to settle here, and had produced for the King and

---

\* Walpole's Anecdotes of Painting. London Gazette, May 31, 1683. North's Life of Guildford.



his nobles some of the finest sea pieces in the world. Another Dutchman, Simon Varelst, painted glorious sunflowers and tulips for prices such as had never before been known. Verrio, a Neapolitan, covered ceilings and staircases with Gorgons and Muses, Nymphs and Satyrs, Virtues and Vices, Gods quaffing nectar, and laurelled princes riding in triumph. The income which he derived from his performances enabled him to keep one of the most expensive tables in England. For his pieces at Windsor alone he received seven thousand pounds, a sum then sufficient to make a gentleman of moderate wishes perfectly easy for life, a sum greatly exceeding all that Dryden, during a literary life of forty years, obtained from the booksellers.\* Verrio's chief assistant and successor, Lewis Laguerre, came from France. The two most celebrated sculptors of that day were also foreigners. Cibber, whose pathetic emblems of Fury and Melancholy still

---

\* The great prices paid to Varelst and Verrio are mentioned in Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting*.

adorn Bedlam, was a Dane. Gibbons, to whose graceful fancy and delicate touch many of our palaces, colleges, and churches owe their finest decorations, was a Dutchman. Even the designs for the coin were made by French medallists. Indeed, it was not till the reign of George the Second that our country could glory in a great painter; and George the Third was on the throne before she had reason to be proud of any of her sculptors.

#### State of the common people.

140. It is time that this description of the England which Charles the Second governed should draw to a close. Yet one subject of the highest moment still remains untouched. Nothing has as yet been said of the great body of the people, of those who held the ploughs, who tended the oxen, who toiled at the looms of Norwich and squared the Portland stone for Saint Paul's. Nor can very much be said. The most numerous class is precisely the class respecting which we have the most meagre information. In those times philanthropists did not yet regard it as a sacred

Very little information is available on this head. There is, however, no reason to suppose that their condition was better than that of their descendants of the modern times.

duty, nor had demagogues yet found it a lucrative trade, to expatiate on the distress of the labourer. History was too much occupied with courts and camps to spare a line for the hut of the peasant or for the garret of the mechanic. The press now often sends forth in a day a greater quantity of discussion and declamation about the condition of the working man than was published during the twenty-eight years which elapsed between the Restoration and the Revolution. But it would be a great error to infer from the increase of complaint that there has been any increase of misery.

### **Agricultural wages.**

Data for  
the calculation of  
agricultural  
wages.

141. The great criterion of the state of the common people is the amount of their wages; and, as four fifths of the common people were, in the seventeenth century, employed in agriculture, it is especially important to ascertain what were then the wages of agricultural industry. On this subject we have the means of arriving at conclusions sufficiently exact for our purpose.

142. Sir William Petty, whose mere Sir W. Petty's calculation. assertion carries great weight, informs us that a labourer was by no means in the lowest state who received for a day's work fourpence with food, or eightpence without food. Four shillings a week therefore were, according to Petty's calculation, fair agricultural wages.\*

143. That this calculation was not The rate of wages fixed by the Justices of Warwickshire in 1685. remote from the truth we have abundant proof. About the beginning of the year 1685 the Justices of Warwickshire, in the exercise of a power entrusted to them by an act of Elizabeth, fixed, at their quarter sessions, a scale of wages for the county, and notified that every employer who gave more than the authorised sum, and every working man who received more, would be liable to punishment. The wages of the common agricultural labourer, from March to September, were fixed at the precise sum mentioned by Petty, namely four shillings a week without food. From September to March the wages were to be only three and sixpence a week.†

---

\* Petty's Political Arithmetic.

† Stat. 5 Eliz. c. 4. Archæologia, vol. xi.

The wages of farm-labourers differed in different districts—four shillings a week being the average.

**144.** But in that age, as in ours, the earnings of the peasant were very different in different parts of the kingdom. The wages of Warwickshire were probably about the average, and those of the counties near the Scottish border below it: but there were more favoured districts. In the same year, 1685, a gentleman of Devonshire, named Richard Dunning, published a small tract, in which he described the condition of the poor of that county. That he understood his subject well it is impossible to doubt; for a few months later his work was reprinted, and was, by the magistrates assembled in quarter sessions at Exeter, strongly recommended to the attention of all parochial officers. According to him, the wages of the Devonshire peasant were, without food, about five shillings a week.\*

Wages in Suffolk.

**145.** Still better was the condition of the labourer in the neighbourhood of Bury St. Edmund's. The magistrates of Suffolk met there in the spring of 1682 to fix a rate of wages, and resolved that, where the

---

\* Plain and easy Method showing how the Office of Overseer of the Poor may be managed, by Richard Dunning; 1st edition, 1685; 2nd edition, 1686.

labourer was not boarded, he should have five shillings a week in winter, and six in summer.\*

146. In 1661 the justices at Chelmsford had fixed the wages of the Essex labourer, who was not boarded, at six shillings in winter and seven in summer. This seems to have been the highest remuneration given in the kingdom for agricultural labour between the Restoration and the Revolution; and it is to be observed that, in the year in which this order was made, the necessities of life were immoderately dear. Wheat was at seventy shillings the quarter, which would even now be considered as almost a famine price.†

Wages in  
Essex.

147. These facts are in perfect accordance with another fact which seems to deserve consideration. It is evident that, in a country where no man can be compelled to become a soldier, the ranks of an army cannot be filled if the government offers much less than the wages of common rustic labour. At present the

\* Cullum's History of Hæwsted.

† Ruggles on the Poor.

The ordinary wages of a peasant in those times did not exceed four shillings a week, though in some parts of the kingdom they were a little higher.

pay and beer money of a private in a regiment of the line amount to seven shillings and sevenpence a week. This stipend, coupled with the hope of a pension, does not attract the English youth in sufficient numbers; and it is found necessary to supply the deficiency by enlisting largely from among the poorer population of Munster and Connaught. The pay of the private foot soldier in 1685 was only four shillings and eightpence a week; yet it is certain that the government in that year found no difficulty in obtaining many thousands of English recruits at very short notice. The pay of the private foot soldier in the army of the Commonwealth had been seven shillings a week, that is to say, as much as a corporal received under Charles the Second;\* and seven shillings a week had been found sufficient to fill the ranks with men decidedly superior to the generality of the people. On the whole, therefore, it seems reasonable to conclude that, in the reign of Charles the Second, the ordinary wages of the peasant did not

\* See, in Thurloe's State Papers, the memorandum of the Dutch Deputies, dated August  $\frac{2}{12}$ , 1653.

exceed four shillings a week; but that, in some parts of the kingdom, five shillings, six shillings, and, during the summer months, even seven shillings were paid. At present a district where a labouring man earns only seven shillings a week is thought to be in a state shocking to humanity. The average is very much higher; and, in prosperous counties, the weekly wages of husbandmen amount to twelve, fourteen, and even sixteen shillings.

The weekly wages of a peasant in modern times vary from twelve to sixteen shillings.

#### **Wages of workers in manufactures.**

**148.** The remuneration of workmen employed in manufactures has always been higher than that of the tillers of the soil. In the year 1680, a member of the House of Commons remarked that the high wages paid in this country made it impossible for our textures to maintain a competition with the produce of the Indian looms. An English mechanic, he said, instead of slaving like a native of Bengal for a piece of copper, exacted a shilling a day.\*

The average wages of workmen employed in woollen manufactures amounted to a shilling a day, i.e., six shillings a week.

---

\* The orator was Mr. John Basset, member for Barnstaple. See Smith's *Memoirs of Wool*, chapter



Other evidence is extant, which proves that a shilling a day was the pay to which the English manufacturer then thought himself entitled, but that he was often forced to work for less. The common people of that age were not in the habit of meeting for public discussion, of haranguing, or of petitioning Parliament. No newspaper pleaded their cause. It was in rude rhyme that their love and hatred, their exultation and their distress found utterance. A great part of their history is to be learned only from their ballads. One of the most remarkable of the popular lays chaunted about the streets of Norwich and Leeds in the time of Charles the Second may still be read on the original broadside. It is the vehement and bitter cry of labour against capital. It describes the good old times when every artisan employed in the woollen manufacture lived as well as a farmer. But those times were past. Sixpence a day was now all that could be earned by hard labour at the loom. If the poor complained that they could not live on such a pittance, they were told that they were free to take it or leave

it. For so miserable a recompense were the producers of wealth compelled to toil, rising early and lying down late, while the master clothier, eating, sleeping, and idling, became rich by their exertions. A shilling a day, the poet declares, is what the weaver would have, if justice were done.\* We may therefore conclude that, in the generation which preceded the Revolution, a workman employed in the great staple manufacture of England

\* This ballad is in the British Museum. The precise year is not given; but the Imprimatur of Roger Lestrangle fixes the date sufficiently for my purpose. I will quote some of the lines. The master clothier is introduced speaking as follows :—

“In former ages we used to give,  
So that our workfolks like farmers did live;  
But the times are changed, we will make them know.

\* \* \* \* \*

We will make them to work hard for sixpence a day,  
Though a shilling they deserve if they had their  
just pay;

If at all they murmur and say 'tis too small,  
We bid them choose whether they'll work at all.  
And thus we do gain all our wealth and estate,  
By many poor men that work early and late.  
Then hey for the clothing trade! It goes on brave;  
We scorn for to toyl and moyl, nor yet to slave,  
Our workmen do work hard, but we live at ease,  
We go when we will, and we come when we please.”

thought himself fairly paid if he gained six shillings a week.

**Labour of children in factories.**

Child-labour was employed on a large scale in the factories. Even children six years old were employed in such work.

**149.** It may here be noticed that the practice of setting children prematurely to work, a practice which the state, the legitimate protector of those who cannot protect themselves, has, in our time, wisely and humanely interdicted, prevailed in the seventeenth century to an extent which, when compared with the extent of the manufacturing system, seems almost incredible. At Norwich, the chief seat of the clothing trade, a little creature of six years old was thought fit for labour. Several writers of that time, and among them some who were considered as eminently benevolent, mention, with exultation, the fact that in that single city boys and girls of very tender age created wealth exceeding what was necessary for their own subsistence by twelve thousand pounds a year.\* The more carefully we

\* Chamberlayne's *State of England*; Petty's *Political Arithmetic*, chapter viii; Dunning's *Plain and Easy Method*; Firmin's *Proposition for the Employing of the Poor*. It ought to be observed that Firmin was an eminent philanthropist.

examine the history of the past, the more reason shall we find to dissent from those who imagine that our age has been fruitful of new social evils. The truth is that the evils are, with scarcely an exception, old. That which is new is the intelligence which discerns and the humanity which remedies them.

#### **Wages of different classes of artisans.**

150. When we pass from the weavers of cloth to a different class of artisans, our inquiries will still lead us to nearly the same conclusions. During several generations, the Commissioners of Greenwich Hospital have kept a register of the wages paid to different classes of workmen who have been employed in the repairs of the building. From this valuable record it appears that, in the course of a hundred and twenty years, the daily earnings of the bricklayer have risen from half a crown to four and tenpence, those of the mason from half a crown to five and threepence, those of the carpenter from half a crown to five and fivepence, and those of the

The wages rates preserved in the records of the Greenwich Hospital.

plumber from three shillings to five and sixpence.

**Condition of the labouring classes of those times compared with that of the present.**

The wages of 1685, estimated in money, were not more than half of what they are now, but the prices of most of the necessities of life were more than half of what they are at present.

151. It seems clear, therefore, that the wages of labour, estimated in money, were, in 1685, not more than half of what they now are; and there were few articles important to the working man of which the price was not, in 1685, more than half of what it now is. Beer was undoubtedly much cheaper in that age than at present. Meat was also cheaper, but was still so dear that hundreds of thousands of families scarcely knew the taste of it.\* In the cost of wheat there has been very little change. The average price of the quarter, during the last twelve years of Charles the Second, was fifty shillings. Bread, therefore, such as is now given to the inmates of a workhouse, was then seldom seen, even on the trencher of a yeoman or of a

\* King in his Natural and Political Conclusions roughly estimated the common people of England at 880,000 families. Of these families 440,000, according to him, ate animal food twice a week. The remaining 440,000 ate it not at all, or at most not oftener than once a week.

shopkeeper. The great majority of the nation lived almost entirely on rye, barley, and oats.

**152.** The produce of tropical countries, the produce of the mines, the produce of machinery, was positively dearer than at present. Among the commodities for which the labourer would have had to pay higher in 1685 than his posterity pay in 1848 were sugar, salt, coals, candles, soap, shoes, stockings, and generally all articles of clothing and all articles of bedding. It may be added, that the old coats and blankets would have been, not only more costly, but less serviceable than the modern fabrics.

The produce of the tropical countries, of mines and of machinery was much dearer than now.

### Number of paupers.

**153.** It must be remembered that those labourers who were able to maintain themselves and their families by means of wages were not the most necessitous members of the community. Beneath them lay a large class which could not subsist without some aid from the parish. There can hardly be a more important test of the condition of the common people

In the Restoration period about a fifth part of the population depended on the parish for subsistence.

than the ratio which this class bears to the whole society. At present the men, women, and children who receive relief appear from the official returns to be, in bad years, one tenth of the inhabitants of England, and, in good years, one thirteenth. Gregory King estimated them in his time at more than a fifth; and this estimate, which all our respect for his authority will scarcely prevent us from calling extravagant, was pronounced by Davenant eminently judicious.

The poor rate was the heaviest tax borne by Englishmen of those days; and pauperism was not a less serious social evil than now.

154. We are not quite without the means of forming an estimate for ourselves. The poor rate was undoubtedly the heaviest tax borne by our ancestors in those days. It was computed, in the reign of Charles the Second, at near seven hundred thousand pounds a year, much more than the produce either of the exercise or of the customs, and little less than half the entire revenue of the crown. The poor rate went on increasing rapidly, and appears to have risen in a short time to between eight and nine hundred thousand a year, that is to say, to one sixth of what it now is. The population was then less

than a third of what it now is. The minimum of wages, estimated in money, was half of what it now is; and we can therefore hardly suppose that the average allowance made to a pauper can have been more than half of what it now is. It seems to follow that the proportion of the English people which received parochial relief then must have been larger than the proportion which receives relief now. It is good to speak on such questions with diffidence: but it has certainly never yet been proved that pauperism was a less heavy burden or a less serious social evil during the last quarter of the seventeenth century than it is in our own time.\*

---

\* Fourteenth Report of the Poor Law Commissioners, Appendix B. No. 2. Appendix C. No. 1, 1848. Of the two estimates of the poor rate mentioned in the text one was formed by Arthur Moore, the other, some years later, by Richard Dunning. Moore's estimate will be found in Davenant's *Essay on Ways and Means*; Dunning's in Sir Frederic Eden's valuable work on the poor. King and Davenant estimate the paupers and beggars in 1696 at the incredible number of 1,330,000 out of a population of 5,500,000. In 1846 the number of persons who received relief appears from the official returns to have been only 1,332,089 out of a population of about 17,000,000. It ought also to be observed that,



**Benefits derived by the common people from the progress of civilisation.**

The  
progress of  
civilisation  
in England  
—its dis-  
advantages

**155.** In one respect it must be admitted that the progress of civilisation has diminished the physical comforts of a portion of the poorest class. It has already been mentioned that, before the Revolution, many thousands of square miles, now inclosed and cultivated, were marsh, forest, and heath. Of this wild land much was, by law, common, and much of what was not common by law was worth so little that the proprietors suffered it to be common in fact. In such a tract, squatters and trespassers were tolerated to an extent now unknown. The peasant who dwelt there could, at little or no charge, procure occasionally some palatable addition to his hard fare, and provide himself with fuel for the winter. He kept a flock of geese on what is now an orchard rich with apple blossoms. He snared wild fowl on the fen which has

in the official returns, a pauper is very likely to be reckoned more than once.

I would advise the reader to consult De Foe's pamphlet entitled "Giving Alms no Charity," and the Greenwich tables which will be found in Mr. McCulloch's Commercial Dictionary under the head Prices.

long since been drained and divided into corn fields and turnip fields. He cut turf among the furze bushes on the moor which is now a meadow bright with clover and renowned for butter and cheese. The progress of agriculture and the increase of population necessarily deprived him of these privileges. But against this disadvantage a long list of advantages is to be set off. Of the blessings which civilisation and philosophy bring with them a large proportion is common to all ranks, and would, if withdrawn, be missed as painfully by the labourer as by the peer. The market place which the rustic can now reach with his cart in an hour was, a hundred and sixty years ago, a day's journey from him. The street which now affords to the artisan, during the whole night, a secure, a convenient, and a brilliantly lighted walk was, a hundred and sixty years ago, so dark after sunset that he would not have been able to see his hand, so ill paved that he would have run constant risk of breaking his neck, and so ill watched that he would have been in imminent danger of being knocked down

and plundered of his small earnings. Every bricklayer who falls from a scaffold, every sweeper of a crossing who is run over by a carriage, may now have his wounds dressed and his limbs set with a skill such as, a hundred and sixty years ago, all the wealth of a great lord like Ormond, or of a merchant prince like Clayton, could not have purchased. Some frightful diseases have been extirpated by science; and some have been banished by police. The term of human life has been lengthened over the whole kingdom, and especially in the towns. The year 1685 was not accounted sickly; yet in the year 1685 more than one in twenty-three of the inhabitants of the capital died.\* At present only one inhabitant of the capital in forty dies annually. The difference in salubrity between the London of the nineteenth century and the London of the seventeenth century is very far greater than the difference between London in an ordinary season and London in the cholera.

The progress of civilisation has

**156.** Still more important is the benefit which all orders of society, and

---

\* The deaths were 23,222.—Petty's Political Arithmetic.

especially the lower orders, have derived from the mollifying influence of civilisation on the national character. The ground-work of that character has indeed been the same through many generations, in the sense in which the ground-work of the character of an individual may be said to be the same when he is a rude and thoughtless schoolboy and when he is a refined and accomplished man. It is pleasing to reflect that the public mind of England has softened while it has ripened, and that we have, in the course of ages, become, not only a wiser, but also a kinder people. There is scarcely a page of the history or lighter literature of the seventeenth century which does not contain some proof that our ancestors were less humane than their posterity. The discipline of workshops, of schools, of private families, though not more efficient than at present, was infinitely harsher. Masters, well born and bred, were in the habit of beating their servants. Pedagogues knew no way of imparting knowledge but by beating their pupils. Husbands, of decent station, were not ashamed to beat their wives. The im-

exercised a softening influence on the national character.

placability of hostile factions was such as we can scarcely conceive. Whigs were disposed to murmur because Stafford was suffered to die without seeing his bowels burned before his face. Tories reviled and insulted Russell as his coach passed from the Tower to the scaffold in Lincoln's Inn Fields.\* As little mercy was shown by the populace to sufferers of a humbler rank. If an offender was put into the pillory, it was well if he escaped with life from the shower of brickbats and paving stones.† If he was tied to the cart's tail, the crowd pressed round him, imploring the hangman to give it the fellow well, and make him howl.‡ Gentlemen arranged parties of pleasure to Bridewell on court days, for the purpose of seeing the wretched women who beat hemp there whipped.§ A man pressed to death for refusing to plead, a woman burned for coining, excited less sympathy than is now felt for a galled horse or an overdriven ox. Fights com-

---

\* Burnet, i. 560.

† Muggleton's Acts of the Witnesses of the Spirit.

‡ Tom Brown describes such a scene in lines which I do not venture to quote.

§ Ward's London Spy.

pared with which a boxing match is a refined and humane spectacle were among the favourite diversions of a large part of the town. Multitudes assembled to see gladiators hack each other to pieces with deadly weapons, and shouted with delight when one of the combatants lost a finger or an eye. The prisons were hells on earth, seminaries of every crime and of every disease. At the assizes the lean and yellow culprits brought with them from their cells to the dock an atmosphere of stench and pestilence which sometimes avenged them signally on bench, bar, and jury. But on all this misery society looked with profound indifference. Nowhere could be found that sensitive and restless compassion which has, in our time, extended a powerful protection to the factory child, to the Hindoo widow, to the negro slave, which pries into the stores and watercasks of every emigrant ship, which winces at every lash laid on the back of a drunken soldier, which will not suffer the thief in the hulks to be ill fed or overworked, and which has repeatedly endeavoured to save the life even of the murderer. It is true

People are  
now kinder,  
more  
humane than  
before.

that compassion ought, like all other feelings, to be under the government of reason, and has, for want of such government, produced some ridiculous and some deplorable effects. But the more we study the annals of the past the more shall we rejoice that we live in a merciful age, in an age in which cruelty is abhorred, and in which pain, even when deserved, is inflicted reluctantly and from a sense of duty. Every class doubtless has gained largely by this great moral change: but the class which has gained most is the poorest, the most dependent, and the most defenceless.

**Delusion which leads men to exaggerate the happiness of preceding generations.**

Men think highly of the happiness of their ancestors because they are discontented with their own condition.

**157.** The general effect of the evidence which has been submitted to the reader seems hardly to admit of doubt. Yet, in spite of evidence, many will still imagine to themselves the England of the Stuarts as a more pleasant country than the England in which we live. It may at first sight seem strange that society, while constantly moving forward with eager

speed, should be constantly looking backward with tender regret. But these two propensities, inconsistent as they may appear, can easily be resolved into the same principle. Both spring from our impatience of the state in which we actually are. That impatience, while it stimulates us to surpass preceding generations, disposes us to overrate their happiness. It is, in some sense, unreasonable and ungrateful in us to be constantly discontented with a condition which is constantly improving. But, in truth, there is constant improvement precisely because there is constant discontent. If we were perfectly satisfied with the present, we should cease to contrive, to labour, and to save with a view to the future. And it is natural that, being dissatisfied with the present, we should form a too favourable estimate of the past.

This discontent is an incentive in progress.

**158.** In truth we are under a deception similar to that which misleads the traveller in the Arabian desert. Beneath the caravan all is dry and bare: but far in advance, and far in the rear, is the semblance of refreshing waters. The pilgrims hasten forward and find nothing but sand

Every age exaggerates the happiness of the past age.



The  
England of  
the 19th  
century will  
appear in  
the eyes of  
the 20th as  
an age of  
happiness  
and virtue.

where, an hour before, they had seen a lake. They turn their eyes and see a lake where, an hour before, they were toiling through sand. A similar illusion seems to haunt nations through every stage of the long progress from poverty and barbarism to the highest degrees of opulence and civilisation. But, if we resolutely chase the mirage backward, we shall find it recede before us into the regions of fabulous antiquity. It is now the fashion to place the golden age of England in times when noblemen were destitute of comforts the want of which would be intolerable to a modern footman, when farmers and shopkeepers breakfasted on loaves the very sight of which would raise a riot in a modern workhouse, when men died faster in the purest country air than they now die in the most pestilential lanes of our towns, and when men died faster in the lanes of our towns than they now die on the coast of Guiana. We too shall, in our turn, be outstripped, and in our turn be envied. It may well be, in the twentieth century, that the peasant of Dorsetshire may think himself miserably paid with fifteen shillings

a week; that the carpenter at Greenwich may receive ten shillings a day; that labouring men may be as little used to dine without meat as they now are to eat rye bread; that sanitary police and medical discoveries may have added several more years to the average length of human life; that numerous comforts and luxuries which are now unknown, or confined to a few, may be within the reach of every diligent and thrifty working man. And yet it may then be the mode to assert that the increase of wealth and the progress of science have benefited the few at the expense of the many, and to talk of the reign of Queen Victoria as the time when England was truly merry England, when all classes were bound together by brotherly sympathy, when the rich did not grind the faces of the poor, and when the poor did not envy the splendour of the rich.

---



# NOTES



# NOTES

**Macaulay's idea of History**—See *Introduction*, pages xviii-xix.

**Macaulay's History of England, its composition and publication**—See *Introduction*, pages xxxi-xxxii.

**Chapter III of the History of England, its merits and defects**—See *Introduction*, pages xxxiii-xxxv.

Macaulay's *History of England* commences with the accession of King James II, in 1685. This event is described in Chapter IV. *The previous three chapters may, therefore, be regarded as an introduction*, intended to enable the reader to follow the story that begins in the next. Chapter I contains a brief summary of the events of English History from the earliest times to the Restoration (the restoration of Charles II to the English throne in 1660). Chapter II contains a description of the chief events of the reign of King Charles II. *Chapter III is the most interesting chapter in the whole book and contains a detailed description of England in the latter part of the 17th century.* The writing of this chapter imposed on Macaulay very hard labour. As he himself stated, "My third chapter, which is the most difficult part of my task, is done, and I think, not ill done."

**N.B.** *The student is advised to read the brief, connected account of English History from early times to King Charles II's reign, given in the Introduction (pages xxxvii-xliv) before beginning the study of Macaulay's Text.*

*The footnotes are Macaulay's own footnotes. Also the thick-type headings, in connection with the Text, are from his own 'Table of Contents' to his book.*

**Paragraph 1.** The object of this chapter is to describe the condition of England at the time of King Charles II's death when the crown passed to his brother, James II. This description, though imperfect, will correct some false notions

which might otherwise make Macaulay's main historical narrative from the reign of King James I (in subsequent chapters) 'unintelligible or uninteresting'.

*This chapter*—Chapter III of Macaulay's *History of England*.

*State*—condition. *In which England was*—Macaulay's History was not intended to be a mere record of battles and sieges or of rise and fall of political parties. It was to contain a detailed account of the condition of the people—of their government and taxation, of army and navy, of their agriculture, industries, towns, travelling, books and literature, of their ways, manners of life, fashions and dress.

The following passage in the first chapter of his work clearly defines his object. "I should very imperfectly execute the task which I have undertaken if I were merely to treat of battles and sieges, of the rise and fall of administrations, of intrigues in the palace, and of debates in the Parliament. It will be my endeavour to relate the history of the people as well as the history of the government, to trace the progress of the useful and ornamental arts, to describe the rise of religious sects and the changes of literary taste, to portray the manners of successive generations and not to pass by with neglect even the revolutions which have taken place in dress, furniture, repasts and public amusements. I shall cheerfully bear the reproach of having descended below the dignity of history, if I can succeed in placing before the English of the nineteenth century a true picture of the life of their ancestors."

*At the time*—i.e. in 1685 when Charles II died. It should be noticed that the description, which follows, is not of England of 1685 only, but of the whole reign of Charles II. *The crown*—i.e., the crown of England.

*When the crown etc.*—i.e., when Charles II was succeeded by his brother, James II, as King of England. *Charles the Second*—son of Charles I, King of England. After his father's (Charles I's) execution in 1649, the Commonwealth (a republic) was established in England, and Charles II wandered as an exile in Europe until he was restored to his father's throne in 1660. King Charles II died in February, 1685. *His brother*—i.e., James, Duke of York, who became King of England under the title of James II. As King Charles II died leaving no legitimate children, he was succeeded by his brother.

*Composed*—formed; prepared. *Scanty*—meagre; insufficient. *Dispersed materials*—scattered documents or sources. *Imperfect*—incomplete; fragmentary.

*Such a description, composed.....imperfect*—**Expl.** Macaulay means to say that his account of England cannot certainly be regarded as complete or exhaustive, (1) first because there are very few books which throw light on the subject, and (2) secondly because he had to collect his information from widely scattered sources.

*Yet—i.e., though incomplete. False notions*—wrong ideas. *Subsequent narrative*—record of the succeeding events, *i.e.,* the events of English history from the accession of King James II as described in the subsequent chapters of Macaulay's history.

*Unintelligible*—difficult to understand ; obscure. *Uninstructive*—incapable of imparting any lesson or wisdom. *Which would make the subsequent etc.—i.e.,* unless we start with a fairly accurate idea of the state of England at the accession of King James II, we shall neither be able to follow the course of the succeeding historical events nor understand the lessons that they teach.

**Paragraph 2.** Human affairs in this world tend towards progress in spite of misgovernment and natural disasters. This is due to the progress of experimental science and also the wish of every human being to improve his own condition. The history of England has been one of continual progress—this has been caused by the favourable position of the country and the character of the people. England at the date of this work of Macaulay (1848) was quite different from the England of 1685. But for a few striking landmarks and old buildings, the country seemed to be utterly changed in appearance.

*Would study with profit.....ancestors*—intend to draw wise lessons from the study of English history. *Ancestors*—forefathers, *i.e.,* Englishmen of the past ages. *Our ancestors*—Macaulay is an Englishman and by 'our ancestors' he refers to the Englishmen of past ages. *Must be constantly on our guard*—must always be careful. *Delusion*—error ; wrong idea. *Well known*—famous. *Families—i.e.,* historic and distinguished families ; families of note and distinction that played important parts in the history of England ; Macaulay is thinking of families like those of the Howards, etc. *Places*—towns. Macaulay points out later on that famous modern towns, like Manchester, Liverpool and others, were no better than mean-looking villages



in the 17th century. *Offices*—positions of trust and authority. *The country of which we read*—i.e., England of the 17th century that forms the subject of this history. *That in which we live*—i.e., England of the middle of the 19th century, the period in which Macaulay lived and wrote.

*We must be constantly on our guard.....live*—**Expl.** Macaulay means to say that some of the distinguished families, who played important parts in the 17th century, still occupy honoured positions in England and English society; the names of the different towns and districts and also the names of high government posts remain the same. In spite of the continuity of these names—names of well-known families, places and offices—we should remember that England has, during the last 150 years, undergone a wholesale change and that the England of Macaulay's time (the middle of the nineteenth century) is a country essentially different from the England of the 17th century.

*Experimental science*—science like Physics or Chemistry that is based on experiment. *Tendency*—movement. *Perfection*—growth; development. *In every experimental.....perfection etc.*—**Expl.** Sciences, like Physics and Chemistry, that are based on experiment, never remain stationary. They are continually advancing with the discovery of new truths. The old theories are being constantly revised in the light of new facts, discovered by means of observation and experiment.

*Ameliorate*—improve. *Condition*—circumstances; lot. *These two principles—viz.,* the progress of science and desire of men to improve their condition in life. *Sufficed*—been sufficient. *Counteracted*—checked; hindered. *Great public calamities*—severe misfortunes or disasters affecting societies or nations. Macaulay is perhaps thinking of the Plague and the Great Fire of London which caused great loss and suffering to the people. *Bad institutions*—unwise social and political systems. *Carry civilisation rapidly forward*—lead to the quick advance of civilisation; help the onward march of progress. \*

*Misfortune*—disaster or calamity. *Misgovernment*—bad government. *Will do so much*—will have so much influence. *Wretched*—miserable. *Constant progress of physical knowledge*—uninterrupted advance of scientific knowledge. *Physical*

*knowledge*—i.e., scientific knowledge ; knowledge of physics or natural philosophy ; science dealing with the causes and connections of natural phenomena. *Constant effort*—ceaseless endeavour. *Better himself*—improve his condition. *Prosperous*—rich and happy.

*No ordinary misfortune.....prosperous*—**Expl.** *Macaulay has a strong faith in progress.* He believes that in the course of centuries, men are developing, becoming more and more happy and prosperous. The progress of science and men's unceasing efforts to improve their condition will make a nation rich and happy in spite of severe disasters and misgovernment that tend to make it miserable.

*Profuse expenditure*—wasteful method of government. Macaulay is thinking of the extravagance of King Charles II, and the wasteful expenditure of his government. *Heavy taxation*—burdensome taxes, levied on the people to meet the extravagant costs of government. *Absurd*—stupid.

*Commercial restrictions*—regulations that check the free development of commerce between nations by subjecting it (this commerce) to unwise artificial restraints. In former times the European governments used to place heavy duties (taxes) on imports from foreign countries. Such taxes were some of the 'commercial restrictions' checking the trade with foreign countries. **N.B.** Adam Smith, the celebrated British economist, preached the doctrine of Free Trade (unchecked by taxes on imports from foreign countries) in his *Wealth of Nations*, published in 1776. He proved in this book that freedom of trade is good for all countries concerned in it. Under the influence of Adam Smith, England adopted the policy of Free Trade and abolished 'absurd commercial restrictions'. Macaulay was writing when the influence of Adam Smith was at its highest. Free Trade is not accepted by the United States, by France and Germany—and is being now questioned even in England, once its stronghold.

*Corrupt*—unjust ; unscrupulous. *Tribunals*—courts of justice. **N.B.** Macaulay is thinking of the unjust trial and execution of Russell and Sidney, the Whig leaders in the reign of King Charles II. He might also be thinking of the notorious judge Jeffreys who passed cruel sentences on people who were

believed to be implicated in Monmouth's rebellion in the reign of James II. In those days judges could be removed from their offices by the King at his will. So their decisions in state-trials were often corruptly (unjustly) influenced by the royal wishes.

*Disastrous*—ruinous. *Disastrous wars*—Macaulay is thinking of the two unsuccessful English wars against the Dutch in the reign of King Charles II. In the course of one of these wars, the Dutch sailed up the Medway and destroyed a number of English men-of-war. *Seditions*—treasonable movements. *Persecutions*—cruel harassment. The Whigs were cruelly persecuted after the discovery of the Rye House Plot in the reign of King Charles II. *Conflagrations*—fires. The Great Fire of London occurred in 1666. *Inundations*—floods. *Capital*—wealth. Strictly speaking, wealth, employed to assist in production of wealth (in agriculture, mining, manufacture, trade, etc.), is called capital. *Fast*—quickly. *Exertions*—labours. *Private citizens*—individuals composing a society or a nation.

*It has often been found.....create it*—**Expl.** Nations are often seen to grow rich and prosperous in spite of misgovernment, ruinous wars and severe natural calamities. This is because the losses, caused by these, are more than compensated by the productive labour of the citizens of the nation, engaged in agriculture, industries and trade. **N.B.** Macaulay is a Whig in politics; and he is repeating here his cheerful Whig belief in progress—his belief in the progress of nations in wealth and prosperity, in spite of misgovernment and natural calamities like fires and floods etc. Modern critics of Macaulay accuse him of shallowness in having this uncritical faith in progress.

*Land*—country. i.e., England. *National wealth*—total wealth in the possession of the nation. It is hard to define and measure it. Possibly Macaulay means by it the aggregate of individual incomes accruing from rent, interest, profits and wages. **N.B.** Prof. Bowley points out that in England this aggregate has further increased between three and fourfold since 1850. *Six centuries*—six hundred years. Macaulay probably calculates this period from the signing of the Magna Carta by King John in 1215. *Uninterruptedly*—without check or interruption; unceasingly. *Increasing*—growing.

*The Tudors*—the dynasty of English Kings founded by Richmond Tudor, who, by defeating Richard III, became King of England in 1485 under the title of Henry VII. This dynasty included the following Kings and Queens of England :—Henry VII (1485—1509), Henry VIII (1509—1547), Edward VI (1547—1553), Mary (1553—1558) and Elizabeth (1558—1603). See *Introduction—A short synopsis of English History* (pages xxxvii—xliv).

*The Plantagenets*—The dynasty of English Kings, founded by Henry II in 1154. The following Kings of England belonged to this family :—Henry II (1154—1189), Richard I (1189—1199), John (1199—1216), Henry III (1216—1272), Edward I (1272—1307), Edward II (1307—1327), Edward III (1327—1377), Richard II (1377—1399). The family was so named because Geoffrey of Anjou, Henry II's father, bore the *planta genista* or the broom-plant as his cognisance. See *Introduction—A short synopsis of English History*. *The Stuarts*—the family of English Kings that began with James I in 1603. The following were the English Kings of this dynasty :—James I (1603—1625), Charles I (1625—1649), Charles II (1660—1685), James II (1685—1689). *Than under the Tudors*—It will appear from the above notes that James I, the first of the Stuart Kings, succeeded Elizabeth, the last of the Tudors.

*Battles and sieges*—The reference is to the events of the Civil War in the reign of King Charles I. The war between this King and the Parliament continued for six years and ended in the complete victory of the latter. *Confiscations*—forfeitures; sequestrations. Many of the partisans of King Charles I were deprived of their property during the period of the Commonwealth (the republic) that was established in England after the Civil War. *The Restoration*—This is the name given in English history to the return of King Charles II to the English throne in 1660 and the re-establishment of monarchy in England. *Day of the Restoration*—Charles II entered London on 29th May, 1660.

*Long Parliament*—This is the name commonly given to the English Parliament which met in 1640. It continued, to sit through the remaining years of Charles I's reign, through the Commonwealth and the Protectorate and was dissolved in

1660. *The day when the Long Parliament met*—i.e., 3rd Nov., 1640. It was dissolved on 16th March, 1660. *Maladministration*—misgovernment. *Extravagance*—wasteful expenditure. The reference is to the huge sums spent by Charles II on his favourites and mistresses. *Public bankruptcy*—insolvency of the government; failure of the government to pay its debts. The reference is to the *Stop of the Exchequer* in 1672. The goldsmiths, who acted as bankers in those days, had lent the government of King Charles II £ 1,400,000. In 1672 Charles II refused to pay the principal and arbitrarily reduced the interest from 12 to 6 per cent. Many of the goldsmiths were rendered bankrupt by this fraud of the King.

*Two costly and unsuccessful wars*—The reference is to the two English wars with the Dutch—one from 1665—67 and the other from 1672—74. *Costly*—expensive. The English Parliament voted the large sum of £2,500,000 to meet the expenses of the first war, and the expenses of the second war were met by the *Stop of the Exchequer* by which the goldsmiths were defrauded out of £1,400,000 that they had lent to the government. *Unsuccessful*—because these wars did not result in any gain for England. The wars were useless so far as England was concerned though they involved very heavy expenditure.

*Pestilence*—i.e., the Great Plague that devastated London in 1665. It raged for six months and is said to have carried off one hundred thousand persons. *Fire*—The Great Fire which happened in London in September, 1666. It burned for three days and destroyed the greater part of the city. *It was greater*—because the national wealth had gone on increasing. *Day of the death of Charles II*—6th February, 1685. *Progress*—growth of wealth. *Many ages*—several centuries.

*About the middle of the eighteenth century*—The reference is to the improvements in England as regards agriculture and cattle-breeding and the improved machines for spinning and weaving, invented by Hargreaves, Arkwright, Crompton and Cartwright about this time. The invention of Watt's steam-engine in 1785 greatly helped the growth of English manufactures. The conquest of some of the richest provinces of India by the East India Company about this time greatly assisted the development of English trade and manufactures.

*Portentously*—in a strange and wonderful manner. *Proceeded*—continued. *Accelerated*—increased. *Velocity*—quickness; rapidity. *This progress, having continued etc.*—**Expl.** The wealth of England was growing during the last few centuries, but since the middle of the 18th century, the increase has been marvellous, and in the 19th century, the growth has continued even more rapidly.

*In consequence partly of*—to some extent due to. *Geographical*—i.e., England being an island cut off from the mainland by the seas around her. *Moral position*—national character. *In consequence.....position*—partly due to the insular position of England and partly due to the character of her people. *Generation*—ages. *Exempt*—free. *Evils*—dangers; calamities like war and revolution. *Elsewhere*—in other countries. *Impeded*—checked; hindered. *Destroyed the fruits of industry*—like war that by laying waste the country destroys the crops that the peasant has grown by his labour.

*The Continent*—the mainland of Europe as distinguished from the islands (especially England). *Moscow*—the old capital of Russia. It was occupied by Napoleon in 1812 during his Russian campaign. The Russians, unable to meet Napoleon in the field, set fire to the town as they retreated. On this Napoleon being unable to obtain supplies for his army, had to retreat from Moscow. *Lisbon*—the capital of Portugal; it was occupied by a French army under Junot in 1808. It was with a view to afford assistance to Portugal that an English army under Wellesley (afterwards Duke of Wellington) was sent to the Peninsula. *Theatre*—scene. *Bloody*—deadly. *Devastating*—desolating; ravaging. *Hostile standard*—enemy flag. *Trophy*—anything captured from the enemy as a memorial of victory as arms or flags.

*While every part.....trophy*—**Expl.** In this sentence Macaulay points out the great advantages the England derived from her position as an island, surrounded by seas on all sides. This position saved England from the horrors of war that desolated the continent of Europe. During the Napoleonic wars in the opening years of the 19th century, the whole of Europe from Moscow in the north to Lisbon in the south suffered from French invasions that resulted in terrible

loss of life and property. But no victorious French army was ever able to reach the shores of England—England being protected by the sea and her famous navy; and consequently the only French flags, that were seen in England, were those captured by the English armies from the French in the continent of Europe and preserved in England as memorials of victory.

*Revolutions*—sudden and violent changes of government. *Have taken place all around us*—have occurred in most of the continental countries. The reference is to the French Revolution of 1789 that overturned the old monarchy of France and changed it into a republic. At a later period, the revolutionary movement spread to a number of other countries in Europe. Between 1820 and 1848 there were revolutions in France, Spain, Portugal, Naples, Greece, etc. But England remained free from revolutions.

*Subverted*—overturned. *Violence*—force. *During a hundred years*—Evidently Macaulay calculates this period from the Young Pretender's invasion in 1745 when a rebellion took place in Britain in his favour. After that for a hundred years there was no rebellion ('insurrection') in England till when Macaulay was writing his history. The first volume of Macaulay's History appeared in 1848. *Tumult*—disorder; riot. *Insurrection*—rebellion. *Borne down*—overcome. *Popular fury*—violence of the mob. Macaulay is thinking of the French Revolution that began with a riot of the Parisian mob. *Regal tyranny*—despotism of the king.

*The law has.....tyranny*—The affairs of England have always been administered according to law, and the law of the country has not been altered either by the violence of the people or by the despotic measures of the King. *Public credit*—reputation or good name of the government that it will pay its debts and fulfil its engagements. *Sacred*—inviolable. *Public credit has been held sacred*—The government of England never refused to pay its debts and the due interest and scrupulously fulfilled the engagements that it made. *Pure*—unsullied; uninfluenced by fear or favour.

*The administration, etc.*—The courts of justice have decided cases strictly according to their merits without bias or prejudice.

*In times which might, etc.*—*e. g.*, during the reign of King James II (1685—1689). *Evil times*—periods of tyranny and oppression. *Ample*—large. *Measure*—extent or degree. *Civil freedom*—political freedom. *Religious freedom*—freedom to worship God in the way one desires. *Civil and religious freedom*—freedom enjoyed by citizens against the tyranny of the government and also the freedom of worshipping God according to their conscience.

*Even in times which might, etc.*—Even in the dark periods of English history, periods of oppression and high-handed tyranny, Englishmen have, in comparison with the other nations of the world, enjoyed a large share of political and religious freedom. *Entire confidence*—fullest assurance. *State*—government. *Diligence*—industry. *Hoarded*—amassed; saved. *Self-denial*—forbearing to gratify one's desires. *Hoarded by self-denial*—A man is able to make a saving out of his income by checking his love of pleasure or self-indulgence. If he practised no self-denial, he would spend his whole income on present enjoyments, *e. g.*, luxuries, etc.,—and would save nothing. *Every man has felt entire.....self-denial*—**Expl.** The protection of a man in the enjoyment of his property is one of the primary duties of the government. Failure to perform this duty means anarchy. Whatever might have been the form of government, Englishmen had the fullest conviction that the rights of private property would be carefully guarded by the government.

*Benignant*—kind; favourable. *Flourished*—progressed; developed. *Applied*—turned. *Practical purposes*—useful ends. *Applied to practical purposes*—turned to serve some useful ends in life. The railway, steam-ship, telegraph, synthetic dyes may be mentioned as some of the illustrations of the application of science to practical and useful purposes. *On a scale*—to an extent. *Never before known*—*i. e.*, in an unprecedented manner. *Consequence*—result. *History of the old world*—history of ancient societies like those of the ancient Greeks and Romans. *Furnishes*—presents. *Paralled*—counterpart. *To which the history.....parallel*—The like of which cannot be seen in the history of any ancient society or nation.

*Taken place*—occurred. *The consequence is.....country*—**Expl.** Macaulay means to say that by reason of the peace and liberty



that England has enjoyed for a long time, she has made marvellous progress in every direction. It has been so great that she seems to be a different country altogether from the England of past ages ; and no instance of such change can be found in the history of any nation of ancient times.

*The England of 1685*—England as she was in 1685, the year of Charles II's death. *Magical process*—strange, marvellous means ; miracle. *Set before our eyes*—presented before our view. *Landscape*—natural scene ; a portion of land with all its objects that one can comprehend in a single view. *We should not etc.*—i.e., the very face of the country has completely altered since then. *One building etc.*—because the houses have been re-built and are utterly changed in character ; the mean-looking cottages of 1685 have given place to stately buildings. *Country gentleman*—village landlord. *Fields*—lands that belonged to him. *Would not recognise etc.*—because the fields are now utterly changed in character and appearance.

*His own street*—i.e., the street in which he lived. *Would not recognise etc.*—because the streets are changed in appearance and are bordered with new and more imposing houses. *But the great features of nature*—except some striking landmarks like hills and rivers. These are enumerated below. *Massive*—solidly built. *Durable*—enduring ; lasting for ages. *Works of human art*—houses built by man ; here, these refer to some of the old castles and churches as Macaulay points out below. *Snowdon, Windermere etc.*—These are the great features of nature referred to above. *Snowdon*—a mountain in North Wales, 3560 feet high. It is the highest peak in England. (See Map.) *Windermere*—a lake in Westmorland. It is the largest lake in England being one mile in width and over ten miles in length. (See Map.) *Cheddar Cliffs*—a pass in the Mendip Hills in Somersetshire. *Beachy Head*—a promontory on the coast of Sussex ; it consists of a chalk cliff about 600 ft. high and is the loftiest headland on the south coast of England. *Here and there*—at some places.

*A Norman minster etc.*—These are the works of human art referred to above. *Norman*—pertaining to Normandy, a province in the north of France. It was conquered by the Scandinavians in the 10th century who founded here a powerful kingdom. William the Conqueror, Duke of Normandy,

conquered England in 1066. The Normans built many famous castles and churches in England. *Minster*—properly a church belonging to a monastery ; hence used to mean any large church. The word should be distinguished from *minister*. A *Norman minster*—a church of the Norman style of architecture, that arose in the 10th century. The characteristics of this style of architecture are massiveness and simplicity, semi-circular arches and heavy round columns. *A castle which etc.*—an old mediæval castle that existed at the time of the Wars of the Roses in England. *Wars of the Roses*—the famous civil war between the rival families of York and Lancaster for the possession of the English throne. The wars began in 1455 in the reign of Henry VI and ended with the death of Richard III on the field of Bosworth in 1485. This civil war was so named because a red rose formed the badge of the Lancastrians and a white rose that of the Yorkists. The rivalry between the two houses ended by the marriage of Henry VII, the Lancastrian candidate, with the Princess Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV, the Yorkist king.

*Rich*—fertile. *Meadow*—pasture-land or land where grass is grown for hay. *Intersected*—divided. *Hedgerows*—rows of trees or shrubs planted for enclosure or separation of fields ; বেড়া বান্ধিবার বৃক্ষশ্রেণী । *Dotted with*—containing at different spots ; diversified. *Pleasant*—agreeable. *Country seats*—country houses used as a place of retirement from the city. *Would appear as*—i.e., were in those times. *Moors*—extensive wastes. *Overgrown*—covered. *Furze*—gorse ; a prickly shrub with yellow flowers that grows wild on English fields. *Fens*—marshes ; low lands covered with water. *Abandoned to wild ducks*—i.e., where the human face was seldom seen and which was therefore haunted by the wild ducks.

*Straggling huts*—cottages scattered here and there. *Built of wood*—The houses of the English common people were generally made of wood in the 17th century. It was for this reason that the Fire of London proved so destructive in 1666. *Thatch*—straw or rushes used for making the roofs of buildings ; ( খড়ের ছাউনী ). *Manufacturing towns*—e.g., Manchester. *Seaports*—e.g., Liverpool. *Renowned to the farthest etc.*—whose names are known to the most distant corners of the earth. *The capital*—the

seat of the government of the country, *i.e.*, London. *Shrink to dimensions*—be reduced to a size. *Not much exceeding*—being not much larger than. *Suburb*—an outlying part of a city ; a place immediately adjacent to a city ; ( *মহরভলী* ). *Present suburb etc.—i.e.*, Southwark on the south of the Thames in Surrey.

*The capital itself etc.*—London that has now expanded on all sides was in the 17th century not much larger in area than Southwark, its modern suburb, south of the Thames. *Not less strange*—equally surprising. *Garb*—costume ; style or fashion of dress. *Manners*—ways ; habits and customs. *Equipages*—carriages ; conveyances. *Not less strange to us etc.—i.e.*, the change in the ways and fashions of the people has been as striking as in the appearance of the country. *Such a change—viz.*, change in the dress and manners of a people. *Seems to be at least etc.*—deserves as much to be recorded by historians. *Dynasty*—line or family of kings. *Ministry*—a body of officers, chosen by the king to carry on the administration. **N.B.** The Prime Minister of England is the real executive head of the government. He resigns his office when he ceases to enjoy the confidence of Parliament—when he is not supported by a majority of votes in the House of Commons ; the King then chooses another man as Prime Minister who is likely to enjoy the confidence of Parliament and will be supported by a majority of votes of the House of Commons. The new Prime Minister then selects suitable members of his party to be the heads of the different branches of administration. *Parliament* (specially, the House of Commons) *represents the nation ; the Prime Minister and other Ministers are responsible to Parliament*—this is the *essence of English democratic government*.

*Such a change in the state, etc.*—For Macaulay's conception of history, see notes on Paragraph 1.

**Paragraph 3.** The population of England in 1685 cannot be accurately known, because the system of periodically numbering the people had not come into use. Men seemed to have very vague ideas on the subject.

*Inquirer*—investigator ; historical student. *Correct notion*—accurate idea. *Community*—society ; body of people in a state. *Of how many persons, etc.—i.e.*, the number of the population.

*Ascertained*—known; determined. *With perfect accuracy*—precisely; quite correctly. *Great state* powerful kingdom or nation. *Adopted*—followed; practised. *Periodically numbering the people*—taking the census of the population at regular intervals. The first official census was taken in England in 1801. Since then the enumeration of the people has taken place every ten years. In France and Germany, the census is taken every five years. *Conjecture*—opinion based on imperfect evidence; guess; surmise.

*All men were left to conjecture for themselves*—As there was no reliable evidence by which men could arrive at a correct idea on the subject of population, their opinions could be only rough guess-work. *Conjectured*—formed their guesses. *Without examining facts*—without a study of the facts by which one could arrive at a tolerably correct opinion on the subject. *Under the influence, etc.*—i.e., inclined either to over-estimate the population or to under-estimate it unduly. *Prejudices*—unreasonable bias against anything. *Ludicrously absurd*—ridiculously wrong. *As containing several, etc.*—This was an absurd exaggeration of the population of London in 1685. *Confidently asserted*—stated with strong assurance.

*Elapsed*—passed. *Between the accession, etc.*—Charles I succeeded to the throne of England in 1625 and the Restoration took place in 1660. *Ravages*—destructive effects. *Were recent*—i.e., the city had not yet the time to recoup the losses caused by the Plague and the Fire. Macaulay in support of his statement refers in the footnote to a book composed in 1671, i.e., only 5 years after the Great Fire.

---

[Page 7, Footnote—*Bills of Mortality*—an official statement of the number of deaths in a place or district within a given time. *Captain John Graunt* (1620—1674)—a statistician; was appointed an original member of the Royal Society after his publication of "Natural and Political Observations upon the Bills of Mortality" 1661. *Sir William Petty* (1623—87)—a political economist. He executed for the Commonwealth a survey of Ireland and was knighted and made an original member of the Royal Society in 1662. He published a number of economic treatises including an improved edition of Graunt's Observations on Bills of Mortality.

*Comprehend*—include. *Full*—complete; not less than. *Which do spend etc.*—i.e., who live. *Great Britain's Beauty*—the name of an anonymous poem on the splendour of the Royal Exchange.]

*Disgusted by these exaggerations*—sick of such extravagant estimates of the population. *Ran violently into the opposite extreme*—i.e., greatly minimised the population; grossly underestimated the population. *Isaac Vossius* (1618—89)—a famous Dutch scholar who held the office of the royal librarian at Stockholm from 1649 to 1652. He was invited to England by Dr John Pearson in 1670 when the D. C. L. of Oxford was conferred on him. He was the cannon of Windsor 1673—1689. He wrote a number of books on subjects of classical literature.

*Undoubted parts*—admitted talents. *Strenuously*—strongly; zealously. *Maintained*—held; asserted. *Taken together*—the population of all these three countries combined.

**Paragraph 4.** There are some means for arriving at a correct idea on the subject. Three estimates exist which, though independent of each other, point to the same conclusion.

*We are not, however, left without the means etc.*—i.e., some means are available etc. *Wild blunders*—absurd errors. *Into which some minds were hurried*—which some people recklessly committed. *National vanity*—that led them to over-estimate the population with a view to magnify the country's greatness. *Morbid*—unhealthy. *Paradox*—a principle or statement that is opposed to the accepted opinion. *By a morbid etc.*—i.e., by greatly minimising the population out of a mere love of contradiction. *Extant*—in existence.

*Computations*—estimates; accounts. *To be entitled etc.*—to deserve careful attention. *They are entirely etc.*—These estimates are in no way connected with each other; they were made by different men and the calculations were based on different materials. *They proceed on different principles*—The manner of calculation is different. *There is little difference etc.*—They agree closely in the conclusions.

**Paragraph 5.** According to Gregory King's calculations, based on the collection of hearth money, the population of England in 1690 was about five millions and a half.

*Gregory King* (1648-1712)—herald, genealogist and statesman. He held the office of the registrar of the College of

Arms from 1684 to 1694. His *Natural and Political Observation and Conclusions upon the State and Condition of England* was published in 1696.

*Herald*—an officer, who, in Europe, in the Middle Ages, was entrusted with the care of the genealogies, of the rights and privileges of the noble families and especially of armorial bearings. *Lancaster herald*—i.e., a member of the Heralds' College. The Heralds' College or the College of Arms is an old corporation, founded in 1483 by Richard III, King of England. It consists of the three Kings-at-Arms and the Chester, Lancaster, Richmond, Somerset, York and Windsor heralds together with the Earl Marshal. This institution has, from the Middle Ages, the charge of the armorial bearings of the persons of noble families, privileged to bear them, as well as of genealogies and kindred subjects. *Political arithmetician*—one versed in statistics relating to the condition of a country. *Returned*—officially reported. *Who made the last collection etc.*—because the tax was abolished in 1689—the first year of the reign of William III, King of England. *Hearth money*—a tax on hearths or chimneys, levied from the time of the Norman Conquest. It received parliamentary sanction in the reign of Charles II, every hearth in houses paying church and poor rates being taxed at two shillings. The tax was abolished in the first year of the reign of William III. *The basis of his calculations etc.*—Gregory King calculated the population of the country from the number of hearths as reported by the collectors of the tax on them. *Conclusion*—inference.

**Paragraph 6.** The population of England must have been five million and two hundred thousand according to the reports of the strength of the different religious sects in the reign of William III.

---

[Page 8, Footnote—*Treatise*—book. As the author wrote it—i.e., in its original form. *Garbled*—mutilated; not given in full but in parts only. *Davenant* (1656—1714)—an English political economist. He was a member of the Parliament for a number of years and was the secretary to the commission appointed to treat for the union with Scotland. He wrote a number of treatises on economical questions. *Chalmers* (1759—1834)—a miscellaneous writer and an editor of the works of English authors.]

*King William the Third*—son-in-law of King James II of England. On the expulsion of his father-in-law from the throne William and his wife, Mary, were made joint sovereigns of England. He reigned from 1689 to 1702 and was one of the wisest English Kings. *Ascertain*—find out; determine. *Comparative strength etc.*—relative positions of the different churches as regards the numbers of their followers. *Strength*—numbers. *Religious sects*—different sects of the Christian religion, viz., the Anglican, the Roman Catholic and the Non-conformist Englishmen, though Christians, belonged to different sects, and the different sects or churches were not very friendly towards one other about this time. (As we have sects, viz., Shakti ( शक्ति ) and Vaishnav ( वैष्णव ) among the Hindus, so there are religious sects among the Christians). *Instituted*—made. *Reports* on the number of the members of the different sects. *Dioceses*—ecclesiastical districts. A *diocese* is a district over which a bishop exercises his ecclesiastical authority. *Realm*—country. *The number of his English subjects*—i.e., the number of the inhabitants of England.

**Paragraph 7.** Finlaison's opinion, based on an examination of the parochial registers, is that the population of England at the close of the 17th century was a little under five million and two hundred thousand.

*Finlaison* (1783—1860)—statistician and the first president of the Institution of Actuaries; he introduced important reforms in the victualling department of the admiralty and wrote a book on "*Life Annuities*". *Actuary*—an official whose business is to calculate for insurance companies, the risks and premiums for life, fire and other insurances. *Eminent skill*—distinguished ability. *Parochial*—pertaining to a parish, i.e., the area (a village or group of villages) committed to the care of one vicar or clergyman. *Parochial registers*—parish registers, i.e., the books in which the births, marriages and deaths in a parish are recorded. *Test*—examination. *Statistical science*—the science which deals with the collection and classification

---

[Page 9, Footnote—*Reckoning*—computing; calculating. *By sects*—according to the number of followers of the different religious sects. *Gulliver* the hero of Swift's famous satiric novel, "*Gulliver's Travels*." *Brobdingnag*—the land of giants, visited by Gulliver in course of his travels. *Odd arithmetic*—strange or curious method of calculation.]

of facts respecting the condition of the people in a country. *Subjected the ancient parochial registers etc.*—examined the records of births and deaths in the different parishes of England in the light of the most approved principles of statistics, discovered in modern times. *Opinion*—view *Close—end* *Was a little under*—was to some extent below. *Souls*—persons.

**Paragraph 8.** It may be concluded from the above estimates that the population of England, during the reign of James II, was between five million and five million and a half. England had then at most less than a third of her present population.

*Estimates*—calculations ; computations. *Framed without concert* prepared independently of each other. *Concert*—co-operation or connection. *Sets of materials*—groups of facts. *Confidence*—assurance *Pronounce*—state. *On the very highest supposition*—at the highest calculation.

*Present population*—Macaulay speaks of the census figures of 1841 that immediately preceded the publication of his History in 1848. The figures of the Census of 1851 were available to him for the notes in his final edition. In 1841, the population of England numbered about 16 millions and in 1851 it numbered about 18 millions. *Less than three times the population etc.*—The population of London was over one million nine hundred thousand in 1841 ; it rose to over 2 million and three hundred thousand in 1851. *Gigantic capital*—the huge city of London.

**Paragraph 9.** The increase of population has been much greater in the north of England than in the south. The backward condition of the northern districts in the past was due to physical and moral causes. There life and property were unsafe and people lived in a state of constant preparation for attack. The rude manners of the people indicated the lawless conditions under which they lived.

*Shires*—districts into which Great Britain is divided ; counties. *But generally much greater etc.*—The rate of the increase of population in the northern districts has been much greater than in the southern. *Beyond*—on the other side of, i.e., to the north of. *Trent*—a river in England, that rises in



Staffordshire and flowing through Derbyshire, Nottinghamshire and Lincolnshire falls into the Humber. (See Map.) *State of barbarism*—savage condition. *Physical and moral causes*—the nature of the country and the character of the people. *Moral causes*—i.e., the character of the people. *Concurred*—united. *That region*—i.e., the northern part of the country.

*Physical and moral causes....region*—**Expl.** This is Macaulay's explanation why the northern districts of England remained in a savage condition down to the 18th century. He means to say that the backward condition of these districts was due partly to the nature of the country (its unfertile soil and unfavourable climate) and partly to the lawlessness prevailing there, due to constant attacks by Scottish robbers.

*Air*—atmosphere ; climate. *Inclement*—not soft ; severe. *Was generally such etc.*—was of a poor quality and so crops could be grown only by means of clever and diligent cultivation. *Tract*—region. *Theatre of war*—scene of war ; a place where war is waged. *There could be little skill.....war*—People were not likely to cultivate their lands with skill and industry in a region that would often be devastated by war. *Nominal*—existing only in name ; not real. *Desolated*—ravaged. *Bands of Scottish marauders*—armed parties of Scotch robbers. *Which was often the theatre of war etc*—Macaulay here refers to the fact that wars between England and Scotland were of frequent occurrence before the union of the two crowns in 1603. Even when the two countries were nominally at peace with each other, the lawless spirits on either side of the border would lead plundering raids into the other, killing men and carrying off corn and cattle. ✓

*The union of the two British crowns*—The crown of England and Scotland were united when James VI, King of Scotland, became also the King of England in 1603 under the title of James I. Thenceforward both England and Scotland were ruled by one sovereign. The two countries continued to have their separate Parliaments until these were united in 1707. *Middlesex*—the English county (district) on the Thames in which London is situated. It is situated in the heart of England and is the centre of her culture and civilisation. (See Map.) *Northumberland*—the northernmost county in England situated close to the borders of Scotland. (See Map of England.)

*Massachusetts*—one of the New England states, bordering on the Atlantic with Boston as its capital. It is one of the most progressive of the United States of America and played a leading part during the War of American Independence. *Settlements*—new colonies. *Squatters*—properly, men who unlawfully settle on land that does not belong to them. Macaulay is referring to the rough and rude European colonists who settled in the western portions of the United States.

**N. B.** In undeveloped countries, like the United States in the past or Australia at present, the word 'squatters' is used of men who settle under legal permission on government land before acquiring a title. As America was peopled by colonists from Europe, the earliest settlements were situated on the eastern sea-board—the Atlantic coast. The country to their west remained covered with forests. With the growth of population and arrival of fresh settlers, the settlements were gradually pushed westwards until they covered the whole breadth of the Continent from the Atlantic on the east to the Pacific on the west. In Macaulay's days, the new settlements in the United States to the far west were in a comparatively undeveloped condition. They were greatly inferior to the New England states like Massachusetts in progress and culture. However, civilisation has made rapid progress in the western states of the United States since Macaulay wrote.

*Far to the west of the Mississippi*—i.e., the new settlements in the United States situated in the far west like Utah, Nevada and Colorado. *Mississippi*—with its affluent, the Missouri, is the largest river in North America. It falls into the Gulf of Mexico and flowing from the north to the south divides the United States into two almost equal parts. *Administer—dispense. Administer a rude justice etc.*—decide cases in a way so that, roughly speaking, justice may be done and employ violent means (e.g., the rifle or the dagger) for the enforcement of their decisions; execute justice in a rough and primitive manner by shooting and stabbing the supposed offenders.

*Before the union of the two British crowns etc.*—Macaulay means to say that even after the accession of King James VI of Scotland to the English throne as James I, the northern districts of England continued to be in a very backward condition. The difference between the condition of semi-barbarous Northumberland at the northern extremity of England and civilised Middlesex in the centre of that country, was as great as that between the barbarous condition of the settlements, planted to the far west of the Mississippi and the civilised state of Massachusetts in the United States of America.

*Traces*—marks. *Slaughter*—destruction of life; massacre. *Pillage*—plunder; rapine. *Distinctly perceptible*—clearly visible. *Tweed*—a river in the south of Scotland; it separates Berwickshire from the English county of Northumberland. (See Map of England.)

*Lawless manners*—as opposed to peaceful and industrious habits. *In the reign of Charles the Second etc.*—Macaulay means to say that even as late as the reign of King Charles II the effects of the wars and murderous raids were clearly visible far to the south of the Tweed. The fields remained uncultivated, and the inhabitants of the region, instead of being peaceful and industrious, were lawless and violent in their ways.

*Mossstroopers*—This was the name commonly given to the robbers who formerly infested the border country between England and Scotland. They were so called because they trooped or rode through the mosses (or the bogs) of the border country along paths known to themselves only. *Calling*—profession. *Whole*—entire. *Drive away whole herds of cattle*—They would not steal an ox or two, but the entire herd; this is a feat possible only in a very lawless country. *Whos? calling was to plunder etc.*—who lived not by pursuits of peaceful industry but by robbery and plunder. *Enact*—pass. *Of great severity*—i.e., very strict and rigorous. *For the prevention of these outrages*—to put a stop to these serious crimes.

*Cumberland*—English county to the west of Northumberland on the border of Scotland. (See Map of England.) *Authorised*—empowered. *Raise*—levy. *Bands of armed men*—i.e., companies of soldiers. *For the defence of property and order*—i.e., to protect the people against the robbers and to maintain peace. *Provision*—arrangement. *These levies*—these troops. *Local taxation*—The expenditure for these troops was to be met by a tax, levied for the purpose, on the inhabitants of this district only (as distinguished from the general revenues of the country). *Parishes*—A parish is an area (a village or group of villages, etc.) in the charge of a parson or a vicar; it is also an administrative unit with its own officers and regulations as regards the poor, taxes, etc. *Required*—directed. *Bloodhounds*—a breed of large and powerful dogs possessed of remarkable acuteness of smell. They are used for tracking criminals and for recovering game that has escaped wounded.

from the hunter. *Freebooters*—robbers. *Hunting the freebooters*—tracking (pursuing) the robbers. The habits of the moss-troopers, how they escaped by secret paths, known only to themselves and how they were tracked by bloodhounds, are referred to by Scott in his description of Deloraine in his *Lay of the Last Minstrel*.

“A stark moss-trooping Scot was he,  
As e’er couched Border lance by knee ;  
Through Solway sands, through Tarras moss,  
Blindfold, he knew the paths to cross ;  
By wily turns, by desperate bounds.  
Had baffled Percy’s best blood-hounds ;  
In Eske or Liddel fords were none,  
But he would ride them, one by one.”

*Lay of the Last Minstrel*, l. 215-22.

*Many old men who were etc.*—This would show that the dogs were common towards the close of the 17th century. *Ferocious*—savage. *Auxiliaries*—allies, *i.e.*, the dogs. *Track*—pursue. *Retreats*—hiding places ; shelters. *Morasses*—bogs ; marshes. *The geography of that wild country*—the particulars of that rugged and desolate region. *Imperfectly*—insufficiently ; not fully. *George the Third*—the third King of England of the Hanoverian dynasty. He reigned from 1760 to 1820. *Fells*—barren hills ; highlands not fit for cultivation. *Borrowdale*—a romantic valley in Cumberland famous for its graphite mines. *Ravenglas*—at the mouth of the Esk in Cumberland ; it is believed to have been an old Roman port. *From Borrowdale to Ravenglas*—The distance between these two places is about 18 miles. *Was still a secret carefully kept by the dalesmen*—*i.e.*, the path was known only to the local inhabitants. *Dalesmen*—inhabitants of dales or valleys ; the word is particularly applied to the inhabitants of the valleys in the north of England. *Escaped from the pursuit etc.*—avoided capture and punishment for their crimes by flying along that road.

*Seats*—houses. *Fortified*—secured by surrounding walls, ditches and other works for defence against a hostile attack. *Penned*—confined in enclosures. *Overhanging*—impending or hanging overhead. *Battlements*—indented parapets used in old fortifications. The openings or embrasures, as they were—

called, were useful for defence because guns and other missiles could be discharged through them on the besiegers. *Residence*—dwelling-house of the owner of the cattle. *Peel*—a name for strong, small towers or forts common on the Scotch borders. *Inmates*—those who dwelt in the houses; residents. *Arms*—weapons. *Slept with arms etc.*—because they feared an attack at any hour of the night when they might require the weapons for defending themselves and their property. *Were in readiness*—were kept ready on the roofs.

*Crush*—bruise or beat down under a heavy weight; pound down. *Scald*—burn with a hot liquid; গরম জল দ্বারা দগ্ধ করা।

*Venture*—dare. *Assail*—attack. *The little garrison*—i.e., the inmates of the house. A *garrison* is properly a body of troops stationed in a fort. Macaulay means to say that every house was a fort in that lawless country and its inmates constituted the garrison for defending it against attacks. *Making his will*—i.e., making a declaration according to law as to how his property should be disposed of after his death. *No traveller ventured...will*—**Expl.** This sentence briefly but in a very vivid manner describes the dangerous condition of the northern parts of England in King Charles II's reign. The fact that the man made his will before he set out on the journey implies that he did not hope to return alive. [The student may remember in this connection that in the past it was for similar reasons the custom of the people of this country to make their wills when they set out to visit distant shrines.]

*On circuit*—when journeying from one place to another for the trial of cases. In England the more serious cases are

[Page 12, Footnote—*Gray* (1716-1771)—a famous English poet, author of the well-known poem '*Elegy written in a Country Church-yard*.' He wrote an account of his tour through the Lake District which he visited in 1769. His description of the country, referred to by Macaulay, is as follows:—"There is a little path winding (from Borrowdale) over the Fells and for some weeks in the year passable only to the dalesmen; but the mountains know well that these innocent people will not reveal the mysteries of their ancient kingdom, the reign of Chaos and Old Night. Only I learned that this dreadful road, dividing again, leads, one branch to Ravenglas and the other to Hawkshead." *Journal*—diary. *The Lakes*—the Lake country in the north of England, where the famous English lakes, the Windermere and the others are situated. It has become famous in English literature for having been the residence of the poets, Southey, Coleridge and Wordsworth.]

tried at the assize courts. These are the periodical sessions, held by the judges of the superior courts who travel on circuit for the trial of these cases in every county. *Attorneys*—legal agents qualified to act for parties in legal proceedings; solicitors. *Serving men*—attendants; the menial staff attached to a court. *Newcastle*—the chief town of Northumberland. (See Map.) *Carlisle*—the chief town of Cumberland. (See Map.) *Escorted*—guarded. *A strong guard*—a powerful body of soldiers or of armed men. *Sheriff*—the chief officer appointed by a king for the execution of the laws and the preservation of the peace of a county (district).

*Provisions*—stocks or stores of food. *A wilderness*—a barren and desolate region. *Which afforded no supplies*—where food and other necessities of life could not be procured. *Caravade*—procession of horsemen; the reference is to the judge and his attendants who marched on horseback. *Halted*—stopped. *Immense*—of huge size. *Halted to dine etc.*—As no inn or human dwelling stood on the road, the travellers had to take their meals under the shade of a tree.

*Is not yet forgotten*—is still remembered and pointed out by the inhabitants. *Irregular vigour*—extreme severity. *Criminal justice was administered*—Criminals were punished. *Shocked*—struck with surprise and horror. *Tranquil districts*—peaceful regions.

*The irregular vigour etc.*—Persons, who lived in the more peaceful parts of the country, were horrified at the very severe punishments, inflicted on the criminals. *Juries*—bodies of men selected to assist the judge in the trial of cases by their opinions on the question of facts. No man can in English law be punished unless a jury of his countrymen pronounce him guilty.

*Animated*—inspired; actuated. *A sense of common danger*—The jurymen, being the inhabitants of the district, had reasons to fear that they themselves might be the next victims of the crime with which the offender before them was charged. This fear led them to pronounce the verdict of guilty without a careful examination of evidence. *Convicted*—declared guilty. *House-breakers*—those who break into a house for the commission of theft or any other crime. *Cattle stealers*—The

stealing of cattle was one of the commonest crimes in the district. *Promptitude*—quickness. *Court martial*—a court consisting of military or naval officers for the trial of offences against military or naval law.

*Mutiny*—revolt of a body of soldiers or sailors against discipline or the lawful commands of a superior officer. *The promptitude of a court martial etc.*—A mutiny is a very serious offence because if it be not checked at once it will lead to the collapse of the whole army. So the courts martial, which try soldiers, accused of this offence, can neither afford to be lenient nor be very elaborate in the examination of the evidence or the legal aspects of the case. Their first care is to inflict punishment on the culprits in order that discipline may be quickly restored. *The convicts etc.*—The offenders were ordered to be hanged in large numbers. Before the reform of criminal law in England in the 19th century, persons, convicted of theft or robbery, were punished with death. *Hurried*—indicating the rough and ready manner in which the cases were tried. *By scores*—by twenty men at a time, *i.e.*, in large numbers. *Gallows*—a frame consisting of two upright posts and a cross beam on the top on which criminals are hanged ; (फाँसीकाढ ) ।

*This generation*—*i.e.*, people now living. *Sportsman*—hunter. *Wandered*—rambled ; roamed. *Game*—animals and birds hunted by sportsmen. *Wandered in pursuit of game*—The country, being mostly uninhabited, would naturally be full of game. *The Tyne*—A river that rises in the Cheviot hills and flows through Durham and Northumberland into the sea. *Heaths*—desolate tracts of land overgrown with wild shrubs. *Keeldar Castle*—a castle near the sources of the North Tyne. Originally the stronghold of a Border chief, it passed into the possession of the Duke of Northumberland who resided here for sport during the shooting season. Sir Walter Scott, the poet, visited the Duke in 1827 and gives the following account of the people who lived in its neighbourhood : “He (the Duke of Northumberland) tells me his people in Keeldar were all quite wild the first time his father went up to shoot there. The women had no other dress than a bed gown and a petticoat. The men were savage and could hardly be brought to rise from the heath either from sullenness or fear. They sang a wild tune,

the burden of which was 'Ourina, Ourina, Ourina'. The females sang, the men danced round, and at a certain point of the tune they drew their dirks which they always wore."

*Scarcely less savage than*—almost as wild or primitive. *Indians*—i.e., the Red Indians, the aboriginal inhabitants of America. *California*—situated on the Pacific Ocean. It is the westernmost of the United States of America. It may be mentioned as one of the settlements to the far west of the Mississippi to which Macaulay refers in an earlier part of this paragraph. *Half naked*—partially nude. *Chaunting*—singing. *Wild*—rude and irregular. *Measure*—tune; air. *Brandished*—flourished; moved and raised in various directions.

*Dirk*—a kind of dagger formerly much used by the Highlanders. *War dance*—a dance held by some savage races before going to war. Among the Red Indians of North America it is begun by some powerful chief and whoever joins in it enlists himself thereby as a member of the expedition. For the dress of the women and the other particulars, mentioned in this passage, see the passage from Scott's *Journal*, quoted above. *A race scarcely less savage etc.*—The people, who lived round Keeldar Castle, were in a state of utter barbarism like the Red Indians on the western borders of the United States of America. ✓

**Paragraph 10.** The establishment of peace in the northern parts of England led to the development of industry and the arts of life. The discovery of rich coal mines and the establishment of factories attracted population to the north. The increase of population in Lancashire has been much greater than in the southern counties.

*Border*—the frontier of England that lies just to the south of Scotland. *Train*—properly a body of attendants; a retinue; hence the consequences that follow an event. *In the train of*

[Page 13, Footnote—*Guildford*—Francis North, first Baron of Guildford (1637—85); he qualified himself for the bar in 1661; was appointed attorney-general in 1673; held the office of Chief Justice of Common Pleas from 1675 to 1682; was promoted to the office of Lord Chancellor in 1682 and was created Baron Guildford in the following year. *Hutchinson* (1732—1814)—topographer; published histories of Durham and Cumberland and a *View of Northumberland*.]



*peace etc.*—i.e., the establishment of peace was followed by industries and manufactures. *Arts of life*—useful arts; manufacture of things useful to life. *The regions north of the Trent possessed etc.*—The reference is to the coal mines of Northumberland, Cumberland, Durham, Yorkshire and Lancashire. *Coal beds*—layers or seams of coal. *Precious*—valuable.

*Peru*—A country in South America bordering on the Pacific Ocean. It was conquered by Pizarro, the Spanish general, on behalf of Charles V, the Emperor of Spain. Peru contains a number of silver mines; gold is found only in small quantities in the Andes region. *Gold mines of Peru*—Spain got great wealth by her conquest of South America in the 16th century. Immense quantities of gold and silver poured into Spain from her territories in South America, and extravagant stories were current in Europe about the fabulous mineral wealth of these countries.

*The regions north of the Trent possessed.....Peru—Expl.* The northern districts possessed rich coal mines. These coal mines brought about the development of large manufacturing industries in northern England; and thus they proved a source of much greater wealth than the mines of precious metals in Peru which were believed to be fabulously rich in former times.

*In the neighbourhood of these beds*—close to these coal mines. *Profitably*—in a manner likely to yield profit; lucratively. *Carried on*—conducted. *Almost every manufacture etc.*—The improved steam-engine, invented by Watt towards the close of the 18th century, greatly helped the growth of manufactures. As the engines, used in manufacturing factories, were worked by coal, it was evidently advantageous to establish the factories near the coal mines. The principal English manufacturing industries are (1) cotton goods, (2) iron goods and (3) woollen goods. All these industries are carried on close to the coal-fields. (1) Cotton manufacture is carried on upon the Lancashire field; (2) iron-smelting is carried on

---

[Page 14, Footnote.—*Sir Walter Scott* (1771–1832)—the famous English poet and novelist. *Lockhart* (1794–1854)—son-in-law of Sir Walter Scott. He is a well-known English writer, his greatest work being *Scott's Life*.]

near the Northumberland, Durham and Lancashire field and (3) woollen goods are manufactured on the Yorkshire field.

*Constant stream*—continual flow. *Emigrants*—people who leave one country or district to settle in another. *Roll*—move. *A constant stream etc.*—People from the south of England continually began to move northwards towards the manufacturing districts. Gardiner describes this migration in the following words : “Coal, however, existed in many parts of the north ; the steam-engine followed coal, manufactures followed the steam-engine and population followed manufactures.”

*Returns*—census figures. *Archiepiscopal province of York*—the part of the country subject to the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of York. Salmon points out that this province included in 1685 the sees of Durham, Chester, Carlisle and Sodor and Man. *Revolution*—This is the name commonly given to the famous event of English history in 1688-9 when James II was expelled from the throne and William of Orange and his wife Mary (James II's daughter) were made sovereigns. *Lancashire*—the great centre of the English cotton industry. Most English Cotton Mills are in Lancashire. *Increased nine-fold*—grown nine times. *Norfolk*—an English county on the east coast of England. (See Map of England.) *Suffolk*—an English county on the east coast immediately to the south of Norfolk. (See Map of England.) *Northampton*—an inland county in the centre of England. (See Map of England.) *Hardly*—scarcely.

**Paragraph 11.** More accurate details are available about taxation. England had a comparatively small revenue at the time of Charles II's death. It was little more than three-fourths of that of the United Provinces and hardly one-fifth of the revenue of France.

*Confidence*—assurance. *Precision*—accuracy. *When Charles the Second died—i.e.*, in 1685. *Resources*—wealth ; available means. *Which she even then possessed*—though these were considerably less than they are at present. *Were raised—i.e.*, by taxation. *Constantly increasing*—always growing. *United Provinces*—This was the name commonly given to the Independent Dutch Republic, formed in 1579, consisting of the seven states—Holland, Zealand, Utrecht, Gelderland, Friesland,

Groningen, Overissel. Its independence was practically admitted by Spain when Philip III concluded a truce with them in 1609. Their independence was formally recognised by Spain in 1648.

**Paragraph 12.** The most important head of revenue was the excise. It produced £585,000 clear of all deductions. The customs amounted to £530,000. The tax on chimneys, though less productive, was very unpopular on account of the harsh manner of its collection.

*Head*—item. *Receipt*—income. *Excise*—a tax or duty on certain articles, manufactured in the country. Now it is generally imposed on luxuries or intoxicants, like tobacco, ale and wines. *Clear of all deductions*—i.e., after meeting the expenses of collection; net. Note that the Excise revenue of the United Kingdom amounted to over thirty-five million and seven hundred thousand pounds in 1907-08. *Net*—clear; free from all deductions. *Proceeds*—income. *Customs*—duties (or taxes) imposed on goods imported into a country or exported from it. *In the same year*—i.e., in 1685 *Five hundred and thirty thousand pounds*—Note that the revenue from customs amounted to thirty-two million and five hundred thousand pounds in 1907-08.

*Burdens*—taxes. *Did not lie very heavy on the nation*—were not felt to be oppressive. *Chimneys*—fire-places or hearths. *Tax on chimneys*—i.e., hearth money. See notes on Paragraph 5. *Productive*—remunerative. *Raised far louder murmurs*—caused much greater discontent. *Excited*—created; produced. *Imposts*—taxes. *Direct impost*—taxes like the Income-tax paid by a man direct to the state. As a rule these taxes are more unpopular than the indirect ones (e.g., the taxes imposed as excise and customs duties). **N.B.** Customs and excise taxes are called indirect taxes. For example, a trader imports a commodity from a foreign country and pays the customs tax on it; and because of the tax he has paid, the trader will charge a higher price from the consumer (the purchaser)—so the consumer pays the tax ultimately, but as he does not pay directly to the government, the customs tax is called an indirect tax on the consumer. *Is almost always out of proportion to*—is generally much greater than. *Quantity of money*—amount of

revenue. Which they bring into the Exchequer—which they produce. *Exchequer*—the department of state having charge of the collection and expenditure of the government revenue; treasury.

*Peculiarly*—particularly. *Odious*—hateful. *Levied*—imposed. *Domiciliary*—pertaining to a domicile or a dwelling-house. *Domiciliary visit*—a visit to a private dwelling for the purpose of search or inspection. The domiciliary visits were necessary to ascertain the number of chimneys in the house so that the tax might be correctly assessed. *Impatient*—intolerant. *Degree*—extent. *Faintly*—feebly. *Conceive*—imagine. *Of such visits the English etc.*—The people of the other countries of the world have no idea how deeply Englishmen hate to have their homes inspected by the officers of the state.

*Householders*—persons occupying houses with their families. *Frequently*—often. *To the day*—exactly on the day when it became payable. *When this happened*—i.e., when they failed to pay the hearth money in time. *Distrained*—distressed; seized as a security for the payment of the tax. *Farmed*—leased or let. **N.B.** The government did not collect the taxes by its own officers, but leased the right of collecting them to a middleman in return for a sum received in the lump. Anything that the middleman (or tax-farmer) could collect in excess of the sum he had to pay to the government represented his own profit and so he collected the tax with the greatest harshness.

*Creditors*—persons to whom money is due. *Proverbially*—by way of a proverb; commonly. *Rapacious*—grasping; extortionate. *A farmer of taxes*—a person who has got from the government the lease to collect a tax on condition of paying the government a fixed sum of money. *A farmer of taxes.....*...*rapacious*—**Expl.** Everybody knows that middlemen, who have obtained a lease from the government for the collection of taxes, collect them in the most cruel and harsh manner. Macaulay is referring to the chimney tax in England in King Charles II's time, and its harsh collection by the tax farmers.

**N.B.** Macaulay is evidently thinking also of the publicans of the Bible. Among the ancient Jews, they were an inferior class of farmers of taxes who became objects of

universal hatred on account of their cruel exactions. The word 'publican' thus came to be used by Christ as almost a synonym for a sinner.

*Collectors*—officers who collected the taxes. *Loudly*—openly. *Unpopular duty*—unpleasant task, viz., the collection of taxes. *With harshness and insolence*—in a cruel and insulting manner. *Threshold*—the piece of timber that lies under a door; hence door; gate. *Wail*—cry; lament. *Earthenware*—vessels made of baked clay like plates, cups etc.; crockery. These perhaps constituted the only property of the poor cottagers that could be distrained by the tax-gatherers.

*Nay, the single bed of a poor family etc.*—As Macaulay explains in the footnote, he obtained his materials for this description of the tax-gatherers from the popular verses on the subject that happen to be available. *Annual receipt*—yearly income.

**Paragraph 13.** The revenue under the above heads, added to the income from the minor sources, amounted to a total of £1,400,000. Whatever could be saved by curtailing the expenses of government belonged to the King's privy purse.

[Page 17. Footnote—*Pepysian Library*—Library of Samuel Pepys (1633—1703), the author of the famous *Diary*. He left his valuable library to Magdalene College, Cambridge, of which he had been a student. His "Diary" too remained there in cipher until 1825 when it was deciphered by John Smith. *Ballads*—popular songs. *Chimney money*—tax formerly levied on each chimney in a house. *Specimen*—sample. *Chimney man*—collector of the tax on chimneys. *Espied*—saw. *Nooks*—corners; hidden spots. *Pipkins*—small boilers; kettles, saucepans etc. *There is not one dame etc.*—If you search the nation you will find that nine-tenths of the women will pronounce a curse or two on the gatherers of the chimney tax when you speak of them.

*Like plundering etc.*—They would force their way into houses like soldiers looting a place. *Make a distress on*—seize. *The goods*—property. *Distractedly*—piteously; madly. *This*—i.e., the piteous cries of children. *Nothing*—in no way. *Abated*—lessened. *Insolent pride*—arrogance and insolence. *British Museum*—a famous public institution in London containing the largest collection of books, manuscripts and works of art.

*Doggerel verses*—mean, undignified poems. *In the same spirit*—i.e., full of hatred against the chimney men. *It*—i.e., the chimney tax. *For cruelty to tear etc.*—i.e., on account of the cruel seizure of his solitary bed. *Wearied head*—i.e., head full of cares and anxiety. *Liberal*—generous.

Page 18, Footnote—*Master*—Head; Principal. *Gave me access to*—gave me the permission to use.]

The profits of the Post Office had been made over to the King's brother, the Duke of York.

*Mentioned*—enumerated above. *Royal domains*—crown lands; estates belonging to the sovereign. *First fruits*—The income of every bishopric (and also inferior spiritual benefice) for the first year was originally paid to the Pope of Rome. After the Reformation it was transferred to the crown. *Tenths*—the tenth part of the annual income of livings of the clergy; this was originally paid to the Pope, but was transferred to the crown at the Reformation. (The *tenhs* should be distinguished from the *tithe* *i.e.*, the tenth part of the profits of the land and stock that had to be paid to the clergymen for their maintenance). *Surrendered*—made over. *Which had not been surrendered to the Church*—The reference is to the establishment of the fund known as Queen Anne's Bounty in 1704 for increasing the income of the poorer clergy. Its income is derived from first fruits, tenths, private gifts and Parliamentary grants. The administration of this fund is entrusted to a body of governors.

*Duchies of Cornwall and Lancaster*—crown estates; estates belonging to the King. *Forfeitures*—confiscations; the property of a man, proved guilty of treason, is usually forfeited to the crown; the property of a man proved guilty of murder may also be thus forfeited.

*Fines*—sums of money paid by tenants for obtaining or renewing leases. *The crown*—*i.e.*, the King; 'regal power, supreme governing power in a country'—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Fairly*—justly; correctly. *Part was hereditary*—This refers to the revenue derived from the personal estates the King had inherited from his father. At the Restoration, the estates of Charles I that had been sold during the Commonwealth, were taken from those who had acquired them and restored to Charles II.

*He was at liberty etc.*—*i.e.*, no condition was laid down about the manner in which the revenue was to be spent. *Lay out*—spend. *Exactly*—just. *Exactly as he thought fit*—quite according to his own discretion. *Retrenching*—curtailing. *Public departments*—different branches of administration (government). *Privy purse*—the sum allotted for the personal use of the King.

*Whatever he could save etc.*—The student must carefully notice the difference between this arrangement and the system that now prevails. Now a certain sum is allotted for the personal use of the King—this is known as his privy purse or fund for his private expenditure. Besides this, different amounts are voted for the different branches of government (*e.g.*, the army, the navy, the judiciary etc.)—the sums varying according to the needs of each. If the expenditure on any department during a year falls short of the amount voted, it lapses to the government but does not go to increase the privy purse of the King. The great defect of the former arrangement was that the King naturally felt tempted to reduce the expenditure on public departments (*e.g.*, the army, the navy, the judiciary etc.) in order that he might have a larger amount to spend on himself.

*Profits*—income. *Establishment*—department. *Appropriated*—assigned. *Duke of York*—brother of Charles II who became King after him under the title of James II. *The profits of that establishment etc.*—By an Act, passed in 1663, the entire revenue of the Post Office was settled on the Duke of York and his male heirs.

**Paragraph 14.** After Danby's fall from power, the interest on the public loan amounting to £80,000 was never paid. The regular payment of such interest was introduced into England after the Revolution of 1688.

*Was, or rather ought to have been charged*—because this payment was never made though it was due.

*Charged*—debited. *Eighty thousand pounds a year*—The goldsmiths (who were bankers) of London had advanced a loan of £1,400,000 to the government at 12 p.c. interest. Though the rate of interest was arbitrarily reduced to 6, yet over £80,000 a year would be due to the bankers. *Fraudulently detained*—dishonestly withheld. The goldsmiths had advanced the loan in the expectation that the principal and the interest would be paid. But the government dishonestly refused to pay even the interest. The reference is to the *Stop of the Exchequer* in 1672. (See notes on paragraph 2, page 8.)

*Cabal*—properly means a small faction of political or private intriguers. It was specially applied to the unpopular cabinet of ministers of Charles II, formed in 1671, because the initial

letters of the names of the five members (Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley and Lauderdale) composing it formed the word *Cabal*.

"During some years the word *Cabal* was popularly used as synonymous with Cabinet. But it happened by a whimsical coincidence that, in 1671, the Cabinet consisted of five persons the initial letters of whose names made up the word *Cabal*,—Clifford, Arlington, Buckingham, Ashley, and Lauderdale. These ministers were therefore emphatically called the *Cabal*."—Macaulay's *History of England*, Chap. II. It is said that it was probably at Clifford's suggestion that Charles II took this step and for this service Clifford was rewarded with a peerage and the office of the Lord High Treasurer.

*Danby* (1631—1712)—originally Sir Thomas Osborne, was created Earl of Danby in 1674, Marquis of Carmarthen in 1689 and Duke of Leeds in 1694. He was a leading statesman of the Restoration period. He took a prominent part in promoting the marriage of Mary, the daughter of the Duke of York, with William of Orange (afterwards King William III of England) in 1677. On the accession of William III he was appointed Lord President of the Council and was virtually the Prime Minister from 1690 to 1695. The greatest charge against him was the corruption that he practised on an extensive scale. He is said to have reduced bribery to a regular system.

*While Danby was at the head of the finances—i.e., from 1673 to 1678, when Danby held the office of the Lord High Treasurer. Finances—i.e., Exchequer; government revenue and expenditure. Dividends—interest. Though not with the strict punctuality of modern times—though they were not paid exactly at the appointed dates as now. Punctuality—precision as regards time. Those who had succeeded him at the Treasury—After Danby's fall, a new cabinet was formed on a more popular basis with Shaftesbury (Ashley) as Lord President. The Earl of Essex was the first commissioner of Treasury in this administration. Less expert—i.e., not so skilful as Danby in the management of finances. Solicitous—careful. Maintain—keep up. Public faith—honour of the government; good name of the government that it will keep its promise (as regards paying interest on the money borrowed by it etc.). The court—i.e., the King and his ministers. Whigs—the name of one of the two famous political parties in England, that came into use in the reign*



of Charles II. *The Whigs supported the rights of the people and Parliament against the arbitrary power of the King and were the progressive party.* (The Liberal party of England to-day is descended from this old Whig party). *The Tory party was the other principal political party and it supported the King.* (The Conservative party of England to-day is descended from the old Tory party). The Whigs also supported religious toleration for Dissenters (those Protestants who did not follow the Church of England maintained by the government), the Tories were opposed to such religious toleration and were fanatical supporters of the Established Church—the Church of England established by the government of the country. **N.B.** The word 'Whig' was originally a mere nickname, given by opponents and was an abbreviation of *Whigamore*, a name by which the peasants of western Scotland were familiarly known.

*Since the victory won by the court over the Whigs*—The reference is to the strong Tory reaction in England that followed the controversy over the Exclusion Bill and the dissolution of the third Short Parliament in 1681. The King and Tory ministers were victorious over the Whig party. *Not a farthing had been paid*—No interest had been paid by the government of England on the public loan (the money borrowed by the government), *Redress*—relief. *Sufferers*—i.e., the creditors who were made to undergo inconvenience and loss by the dishonesty of the government. *A new dynasty*—a new race of kings. As Macaulay points out in the following lines, this refers to William III, who ascended the English throne in 1689 after the Revolution. *Established*—introduced. *System*—policy.

*Imagine*—suppose. *Device*—plan; scheme. *Exigencies*—emergencies; pressing and unforeseen needs. *Exigencies of the state*—heavy and unforeseen expenses that the government had to incur. *Imported*—i.e., introduced from a foreign country. William III was a Dutchman and he came to England from Holland. *There can be no greater etc.*—It is quite wrong to suppose that William III introduced from Holland into England the practice of incurring loans to meet heavy extraordinary expenses that the government had to undergo. *Funding*—'converting' floating debt into more or less permanent debt at

fixed interest' (*Oxford Dictionary*). 'Funding' secures the repayment of the loan on the due date and also regular payment of interest. *Immemorial antiquity*—properly, times beyond the reach of memory ; hence, very ancient times. *Practice*—custom. *Contract*—incur.

*What the Revolution, etc.*—The Revolution of 1688 (which placed William III on the throne of England) did not for the first time introduce into England the practice of incurring loans to meet the extraordinary expenses of the government. This practice had existed from very early times. The only change was that since the Revolution the English government made honest efforts to repay the loan it had incurred and also to pay the interest at the due date.

**Paragraph 15.** The revenue, though small, was, with occasional subsidies from France, sufficient to meet the expenditure of the English government, because the army expenses were very small. No trace of the costly military establishments of the continental states was to be seen in England.

*Plundering*—robbing, *i.e.*, refusing to pay the interest due on loans. *Public creditor*—people who had lent money to the government. *Occasional*—casual ; periodical. *Help*—*i.e.*, pecuniary help ; subsidy.

*From France*—*i.e.*, from Louis XIV. King of France.

*With occasional help from France*—Louis XIV, King of France, was in those times engaged in extensive schemes of conquest on the continent of Europe. The English Parliament viewed the expansion of his territories with alarm and favoured a policy of war against France. Louis XIV therefore paid heavy subsidies to King Charles II of England in order that he might, to some extent, be independent of the English Parliament as regards money and so not join the enemies of France. *Support*—meet. *The necessary charges of the government*—the expenses necessary for carrying on the government.

*Wasteful expenditure of the court*—extravagant sums, spent by the King (King Charles II of England) on his favourites and mistresses. Some idea of this extravagance may be formed from the fact that the annual income of the Duchess of

Portsmouth, one of his mistresses, was £ 40,000 and that in one year she received no less than £ 136, 000. *Load*—i.e., heavy expenditure. *Pressed most heavily*—proved a very serious burden. *Finances*—revenues. *Great continental states*—powerful European countries like France, Germany and Spain in those times. *Was here scarcely felt*—was very light in England, i.e., the expenditure on the army was very small in England. *Netherlands*—properly, the Low Countries; the countries now known as Holland and Belgium.

*Henry the Fourth* (1553-1610)—also known as Henry of Navarre. He was the first King of the Bourbon dynasty of France. France was then distracted by a civil war between the French Protestants and the Catholics in which the latter were helped by Spain. As Henry IV had been a Protestant before his accession, he had to fight with the Catholic League before he could firmly establish himself on the throne of France. Henry IV was one of the ablest and most popular Kings of France. *Philip the Second* (1527-1598)—King of Spain, succeeded his father the Emperor Charles V to the throne. He was engaged in numerous wars—the best known of these being the wars waged in the Netherlands and his attempt to invade England with the Spanish Armada. *Kept up*—maintained.

*Bastions and ravelins*—i.e., fortifications. *Bastions*—military works, angular in shape, projecting from the ramparts of a fort. *Ravelins*—detached military works, triangular in form with two embankments. *Constructed*—built. *On principles*—i.e., according to plans. *Parma* (1546-92)—Alexander Farnese, Duke of Parma, was a famous Italian general in the service of Spain. He commanded the Spanish army in the Netherlands and reduced the southern provinces. He was one of the best generals of his age.

*Spinola*—a famous general who commanded Spanish armies in the Netherlands and in Germany during the Thirty Years' War. He died in 1630

*Bastions and ravelins*.....*Spinola*—*Expl.* In connection with his description of the armies and military establishments of the continental states of Europe towards the end of the 17th century, Macaulay says that forts were built in large numbers in these countries. He adds that these forts were built on

improved plans and on principles of which Parma and Spinola, the best generals of the preceding age, were ignorant.

*Stores*—huge quantities. *Artillery*—cannon. *Ammunition*—gun-powder and shot. *Accumulated*—stored. *Richelieu*—Cardinal Duc de Richelieu (1585—1642) was an eminent French statesman who was the minister of Louis XIII for 18 years. He was practically the master of France during the greater period of his ministry. He shattered the power of the Austrian empire then supreme in Europe and made France the foremost country in the Continent.

*Prodigies*—miracles; marvels. *Worker of prodigies*—a man who could perform wonders. France was weak and disunited when Richelieu assumed office as the King's minister. Her very existence was threatened by the most powerful empire in Europe. Richelieu by his wise statesmanship was able to make France the leading power in Europe. *Pronounced*—considered. *Fabulous*—incredible; not to be believed.

*League*—a distance equivalent to three English miles. *Challenged*—questioned or asked for the pass-word like a man who has to pass military lines. *Sentinels*—sentries; soldiers on guard. *Drawbridge*—a bridge by which the moat (ditch) surrounding a castle or any other fortified place could be crossed. It was so constructed that it could be drawn up or let down at pleasure. *Martial sight or sound*—viz., fortifications and military music. *Calling*—a profession to which men were trained and which they pursued for their whole lives.

*In our island.....a calling*—**Expl.** Macaulay means to say that the defence of England was not entrusted to a regular professional army but to the militia. The soldiers of the regular army adopted war as the profession of their lives: but the case was different with the members of the militia—they followed peaceful professions and received training in the art of war for only a few days in a year. In other countries of Europe, the defence of the nation against foreign enemies was entrusted to an army of regular soldiers who were soldiers by profession. This was the case in France, Germany and Spain. But this was not the case in England—in England the defence of the nation was entrusted to members of the civil population following peaceful professions (landlord, lawyers, bakers,

butchers, tailors, tapsters, etc.) who had military training for only a few days in the year and formed the national militia.

*Majority of Englishmen*—most Englishmen. *Who were under twenty-five years of age*—i.e., who were born after 1660. The standing army, maintained in England during the Commonwealth, was disbanded at the time of the Restoration. *Regular*—professional. *Cities*—like Gloucester and Bristol. *Civil war*—the war between King Charles I and the Parliament. *Valiantly*—bravely. *Repelled hostile armies*—driven back the attacks of besieging forces. *Hostile*—enemy. *Sustaining*—standing successfully against; withstanding. Macaulay is evidently thinking of the siege of Gloucester during the Civil War. In 1643 Charles I laid siege to this town but was compelled to raise it later on because of the re-inforcements that reached the besieged garrison from London.

*The gates stood open etc.*—N.B. Note that in former times most cities in England were fortified and were protected by walls and ditches. The gates were carefully closed at night and were opened in the morning. *Ditches*—moats running round the cities. *Ramparts*—embankments of earth round a fortified place able to withstand cannon shot. *Suffered*—permitted. *Fall into decay*—crumble to pieces. *Repaired*—mended. *Townfolk*—citizens. *Only that the townfolk etc.*—i.e., their original military purpose was forgotten and they were converted into walks where the citizens might enjoy themselves in the evening. *Keep*—the strongest and securest part of an ancient castle which was used as the residence of the lord during a siege; hence a castle or stronghold. *Old baronial keeps*—castles of the feudal nobles. *Shattered*—destroyed.

*Fairfax* (1612-1671)—commander-in-chief of the Parliamentary army during the Civil War; he defeated King Charles I at Naseby in 1645. *Oliver Cromwell* (1599-1658)—the most celebrated of the generals of the Parliamentary army who fought against King Charles I of England. He won battle after battle over the King's armies and after Charles I's execution was chosen Lord Protector of England. As Lord Protector he ruled the country ably till his death. *Lay in heaps of ruin*—The castles were not re-built but remained in a ruinous condition.

*Overgrown with*—i.e., covered with. *Ivy*—a wild creeper that generally grows on decaying houses.

*Of the old baronial keeps etc.*—The castles of many of the English nobles, who had sided with King Charles I during the Civil War, were destroyed by the guns of the Parliamentary army. They were at that time mere masses of ruins covered with the ivy. *Remained*—had escaped destruction and remained intact.

*Martial character*—warlike nature. *Had lost their martial character*—had ceased to have any importance from the military point of view. *Rural palaces*—palaces situated in rural areas (villages); country seats. *Aristocracy*—nobility. *Moats*—ditches. *Turned into preserves etc.*—converted into lakes for rearing fishes. *Preserves*—places where games and fish are reared. *Carp and pike*—fresh-water fishes highly valued as food. *Mounds*—i.e., the ramparts. *Fragrant shrubs*—plants bearing sweet-smelling flowers. *Spiral*—winding. *Summer house*—a cottage in a park to be used as a pleasure resort in summer. *Adorned with mirrors and paintings*—i.e., very luxuriously furnished.

*Capes*—headlands. *Inland hills*—hills situated at a distance from the sea. *Posts*—upright pieces of timber.

*Surmounted by*—bearing on their tops. *Barrels*—casks. *Once*—in former times. *Pitch*—an oily substance obtained from tar; আলকাঁত্র। *Watchmen*—guards. *Seasons*—times. *Seasons of dangers*—i.e., times of foreign invasion. *Spanish sail*—i.e., Spanish ship; the reference is to the invasion of England by the Armada (a vast fleet of Spanish ships) in 1588. It is said that the news of the approach of the Armada was communicated by means of beacon fires to the distant inland counties of England within a very short time after the fleet was sighted from the coast. *Discovered*—sighted. *Channel*—i.e., the English Channel—the strait separating England from France. *Moss-troopers*—See notes on paragraph 9. *Had crossed the Tweed*—i.e.,

---

[Page 21, Footnote—*Marlborough*—in Wiltshire; the centre of an agricultural district. *Stukeley* (1687-1765)—an antiquary and a friend of Sir Isaac Newton; published among other writings "*Itinerarium Curiosum*" in 1729.]

led the plundering raid into England. *Signal fires*—beacon-fires; fires lighted to warn the inhabitants of the neighbouring villages of the approach of the enemy.

**N. B.** In those days tar-barrels were placed on the tops of hills or other elevations at convenient distances. When the approach of the enemy was sighted, the barrel nearest the post of observation was set on fire. This served as a signal to the observers at the next post who lighted their barrel. In this way the alarm was communicated all over the country within a short time. Scott refers to the lighting of these beacon-fires in his *Lay of the Last Minstrel* when the Scottish borders were invaded by an English army :

"The ready page, with hurried hand,  
Awaked the need-fire's slumbering brand,  
And ruddy blush'd the heaven :  
For a sheet of flame, from the turret high  
Wav'd like a blood-flag on the sky,  
All flaring and uneven ;  
And soon a score of fires, I ween,  
From height, and hill, and cliff, were seen ;  
Each with warlike tidings fraught ;  
Each from each the signal caught ;  
Each after each they glanc'd to sight,  
As stars arise upon the night."

—*Lay of the Last Minstrel*, III. 373-84.

*Blazing*—burning brightly. *Were rising in arms*—were preparing themselves to resist the invaders. *Elapsed*—passed. *Beacons*—signal fires; bale-fires. *But many years had etc.*—i.e., there had not been any invasion of the country or any fear of such invasion for a very long time. *Regarded*—viewed. *Curious relics*—strange memorials. *Ancient manners*—old ways and customs. *Parts of a machinery etc.*—measures necessary for the defence of the country against invaders.

---

[Page 22, Footnote—*Chamberlayne* (1616—1703)—an English author; published in "1669 Anglice Notitie" or the Present State of England. He published the 20th edition of this book in 1702. After his death the book was continued by his son John Chamberlayne.]

**Paragraph 16.** ✓ The only English army recognized by law and maintained in England was the militia. Two Acts of Parliament, passed after the Restoration, required persons to maintain a horseman or a foot-soldier according to their property qualifications. The whole army was estimated at one hundred and thirty thousand men.

*Recognised*—acknowledged; allowed. *Militia*—the body of citizens enrolled for military instruction and discipline for the defence of the country. The members of the militia were not professional soldiers; they were citizens following peaceful professions and having military training for a few days in the year and forming an army for the defence of the nation.

*The only army which etc.*—According to the law of England (English constitutional law), the King was not allowed to maintain a standing army, *i.e.*, a permanent army of professional soldiers. The only army allowed was the militia.

*Force*—army. *Remodelled*—re-constituted; newly fashioned. *Possessed five hundred etc.*—enjoyed an income of £500 from landed property. *Personal estate*—as opposed to landed or real estate; movables including money, precious stones, furniture and all objects of property not of a landed nature. *Bound*—required by law. *Provide*—furnish. *Equip*—provide with arms. *Charge* expense. *Was charged etc.*—was required to furnish a foot-soldier armed with a pike or musket. *In like manner*—similarly. *Pikeman*—a foot-soldier armed with a pike. A *pike* was a weapon of war with which foot-soldiers were armed; it consisted of a long wooden staff with a pointed steel head.

*Smaller proprietors*—persons with smaller property qualifications; poorer citizens. *Joined together in a kind of society*—united into a body or community. *Our language*—English language. *Afford*—furnish. *Special*—particular. *Name*—word. *For which our language etc.*—There is no special English word for such a society. *An Athenian*—a citizen of Athens in ancient Greece. *Syntelesia*—a body of citizens who equipped a warship in ancient Athens at their joint expense. *An Athenian etc.*—according to the old Athenian constitution such a body of citizens was called a Syntelesia. *Means*—pecuniary resources. *Cavalry*—horse-soldiers. *Infantry*—foot-soldiers. *Maintained*—kept up. *Was popularly estimated at*—was commonly understood to number.



✓ **Paragraph 17.** The King was the Captain General of the army (the militia) in England. The period of drilling and inspection was fourteen days a year. The crown had to pay only for the maintenance of the trainbands when called out for active service.

*The ancient constitution of the realm*—the old law of the country setting forth the rights of the King and the people. *Recent*—The declaration was made after the Restoration. *Solemn acknowledgment*—declaration made after serious deliberation. *Both Houses of Parliament*—viz. the House of Lords and the House of Commons. *Sole*—only. *Captain General*—commander-in-chief. *The King was etc.*—After the Restoration (of Charles II in 1660) the Cavalier Parliament of Charles II declared “the sole, supreme government, command and disposition of the militia to be the undoubted rights of his majesty and his royal predecessors ”

*Lord Lieutenants*—of counties (districts) are the representatives of the King to manage their military concerns. *Their Deputies*—i.e., the assistants of the Lord Lieutenants. *Held the command under him*—were subordinate to him in authority. *Appointed*—fixed. *Drilling*—training. *The time occupied by such meetings*—the period of such training. *Justices of the Peace*—local judges or magistrates, appointed to keep the peace of a district and to try petty cases. *Authorised*—empowered. *Inflict*—impose. *Slight*—not severe; trifling. *Penalties*—punishments. *Breaches of discipline*—acts of insubordination or of disobedience of authority. *Breaches*—violations. *The Justices of the Peace etc.*—This shews that the discipline of the militia was not of a high order. In modern armies any breach of discipline on the part of a soldier is regarded as a very serious offence for which he is suitably punished. In those days it was considered a light offence and punished very mildly. *Ordinary cost*—the usual expenses of the militia in times of peace. *No part was paid etc.*—No part of this expense was met from the general revenues of the country.

*Trainbands*—i.e., trained bands; companies or regiments of the militia. **N.B.** “There was no standing army in England but the men of military age were mustered every year in each county, the fittest of them being selected to be drilled for a short time, at the expiration of which they were sent home to

pursue their ordinary avocations. These drilled men were liable to be called out to defend their country against riots or invasion, and when they were together, were formed into regiments, called trained bands. *All the trained bands in the country were spoken of as the militia.*"—Gardiner.

*Called out against an enemy*—summoned for active service ; summoned to fight against an enemy. *Their subsistence*—the cost of their maintenance. *Charge*—burden. *General revenue*—income of the government arising from the taxes in general. *Became a charge etc.*—i.e., no special tax was imposed for the purpose and the costs were met from the income arising from the taxes in general. *Utmost rigour*—extreme severity. *Martial law*—(as distinguished from civil law is) the law laid down for the control of the army. It is very strict in its operation so that proper discipline may be maintained in the army.

**Paragraph 18.** Good judges had a low opinion of the imperfectly trained men that composed the English militia, they considered the militia much less efficient than a standing army for the purpose of national defence against foreign invasion. Though a standing army maintained by a king might prove dangerous to the liberties of the English nation, yet thoughtful patriots thought it quite unsafe to depend on such a badly trained and badly organised militia for the defence of the country's independence. The existing system (i.e., the militia) was, however, very popular with both the English political parties especially the Tory noblemen and gentlemen. The Tory country gentlemen were proud of their military ranks and detested a standing army on account of the excesses committed by them during the Commonwealth.

*There were those*—i.e., there were some men. *Looked on—viewed.* *With no friendly eye*—unfavourably. *Who had travelled on the Continent*—and so had occasions to see the well-disciplined armies of the continental states, viz., France, Spain, Germany, etc. *Marvelled*—wondered. *Stern precision*—strict discipline ; exact regularity. *Moved and spoke*—paced the rounds as they mounted guard and uttered words of challenge. *Citadels*—fortresses. *Vauban* (1633—1707)—a famous French military engineer of the time of Louis XIV. He introduced great improvements in the methods of fortification and

provided France with a new series of forts. He is said to have conducted 53 sieges and taken part in 140 battles.

*Mighty*—powerful. *Poured*—marched in large numbers. *Along all the roads of Germany*—because many of the German states, like Bavaria, sent troops to assist the Austrians against the Turks. *Chase*—drive. *The Ottoman*—(from Othman or Osman, the name of the Sultan, who founded the Turkish Empire in Asia)—the Turk. *Vienna*—the capital of Austria.

*The mighty armies which poured..... Vienna*—The reference is to the siege of Vienna by the Turks under Kara Mustapha in 1683. The Turkish army 200,000 strong was completely defeated by Sobieski, King of Poland, assisted by Charles, King of Lorraine, and troops from Bavaria and Saxony.

*Dazzled*—utterly taken by surprise. *Well ordered pomp*—excellent discipline and smartness of uniform. *Household troops*—troops appointed to attend and guard the sovereign or his residence. *Lewis* (1638–1715)—Louis XIV, the greatest King of the Bourbon dynasty. He raised France to the height of her power and was besides a great patron of arts and literature. *Sneered at*—expressed their contempt; derided. *The peasants of Devonshire and Yorkshire*—i.e., the ill-trained soldiers of the militia. N. B. Devonshire and Yorkshire are two English counties (districts). (See Map of England.)

*Marched and wheeled etc.*—i.e., performed the different military movements. *Ported pikes*—held the pikes diagonally across their bodies, the butts held downwards and the points slanting upwards to the left. *The enemies of..... of England*—those who hated the political and religious liberty that the people of England enjoyed and supported the arbitrary power of the King. *Looked with aversion on*—viewed with disfavour; extremely disliked. *A force*—i.e., the ill-disciplined English militia. *Without extreme risk*—with the most uncertain chances of success. *Employed etc.*—used for the purpose of destroying the liberties of the English nation and their Protestant religion. *Missed*—omitted. *Throwing*

*ridicule on*—sneering at ; expressing their contempt for. *Rustic soldiery*—army composed of peasants.

*The enemies of the liberties.....rustic soldiery*—**Expl.** In connection with his description of the English militia, Macaulay says that this militia was greatly disliked by those who supported the despotic authority of the King and were opposed to the liberties of the English nation and their Protestant religion. The reason of this dislike is clear. These persons scornfully criticised the imperfect training and discipline of the English militia ; but their dislike was really due to other causes. *The English Militia was a citizen army*—it consisted of citizens ordinarily following peaceful occupations and with a training of only a few days in the year, serving as the defence of the nation when required. Such an army of citizens was naturally eager to defend the liberties of the citizens and their Protestant religion—and it could not be used by the King to destroy the Protestant religion and the freedom of the people.

*Enlightened patriots*—intelligent and well-informed Englishmen who had the good of their country at heart. *Contrasted*—noticed the difference between. *Rude levies*—i.e., ill-trained armies (of England). *Battalions*—i.e., well-disciplined troops (of France). *Which, in time of war etc.*—which might invade the shores of England within a very short time. Macaulay is thinking of the difference between the well-trained French armies and the ill-disciplined English armies of this period.

[Page 25, Footnote—*Dryden* (1631-1700)—a famous English poet and dramatist and author of a very large number of works in prose and verse. Originally a Parliamentarian, he went over to the Royalists (the King's party) and adopted the Roman Catholic religion. *Cymon and Iphigenia*—a tale from Boccaccio versified into English by Dryden. *Keeness*—shrewdness ; clearness of judgment. *Energy*—vigour. *Sentiments*—views ; feelings. *Had been fashionable*—had been common. *Sycophants*—base flatterers ; those who wanted to win the favour of King James II by preaching political and religious opinions agreeable to him. *Kings*—echoes. *Raw*—ill-trained ; undisciplined. *Mouths without hands*—i.e., useless mouths ; men who only consume food but can do nothing. *Maintained at vast expense*—kept up at a great cost. *A charge*—a heavy burden. *A weak defence*—because it cannot be expected to protect the country against the enemy. *A blustering band*—a crowd of swaggering and boastful men. *And ever but in time of need at hand*—They are nowhere to be found in times of danger or when their services are necessary. *Drawn up in rank and file*—drawn up in battle array. *Of seeming arms etc.*—pretending to perform a small feat of arms. *The business of the day*—the chief task of the day being to get drunk.]

In case of a war, breaking out between England and France, the French army might be expected to invade England within a short time after the declaration of it. *Kent or Sussex*—English counties on the southern coast nearest to France. (See Map of England.) *Were forced to acknowledge*—had to admit. *As it might be*—though it might prove. *Keep up*—maintain. *Permanent military establishment*—standing army of professional soldiers (as distinguished from a militia or citizen army). *Stake*—risk. *Result of a contest*—issue of a battle. *Contest*—battle. *Ploughmen*—i.e., peasants who composed the English militia. *Officered*—commanded. *Justices of the Peace*—country gentlemen who discharged the functions of the local magistrates. These gentlemen, though ignorant of the art of war, were officers commanding the militia. *Veteran warriors*—experienced and seasoned soldiers. *Marshals of France*—French military officers of the highest rank. France was the leading military power of Europe in those times and consequently the French generals were held in the highest esteem. [*marshal*, *n.* general officer of highest rank in some foreign armies (*Oxford Dictionary*).]

*Enlightened patriots*.....*Marshals of France*—**Expl.** The clear superiority of the well-trained French army to the ill-trained English militia was a subject of anxiety for thoughtful Englishmen. These thoughtful Englishmen knew that a powerful standing army of professional soldiers, under the control of the King, might be used by him to destroy the liberties of the English nation—but a militia of English peasants and citizens would refuse to do this work for the King. So a standing army had its danger. But the militia had also its greater danger—for it was quite unsafe to depend for the defence of England and its independence on this ill-trained militia of undisciplined English peasants, led by officers ignorant of the science of war, against an invading French army of experienced and well-trained soldiers, commanded by the best generals of France.

*To express such opinions*—i.e., to speak ill of the militia. *Reserve*—caution. *Institution*—established system. *Eminently*—extremely. *Reflection*—censure; reproach. *Thrown*—cast. *Excited the indignation of*—deeply offended; made very angry.

*Both the great parties in the state*—the two great political parties, *viz.*, the Whigs and the Tories. *That party which was etc.*—i.e., the

Tories. *Distinguished*—characterised. *Peculiar zeal*—deep enthusiasm. *Anglican Church*—Church of England; the form of Protestant worship that is by law established in England. During this period in England, there were a small number of Roman Catholic Christians and the great majority were Protestant Christians; and among the Protestant Christians there were many sects—(1) Christians belonging to the Anglican Church, (2) Puritans and Dissenters, etc. **N. B.** The Tories were the firm supporters of the King's authority and the form of worship prescribed by the Church of England.

*The array of the counties*—i.e., the militia of the country. **N. B.** The districts of England are known as the counties. *Exclusively*—entirely. *Tory*—one of the two famous English political parties of the time; it was the name of the party that strongly supported the King and the Church of England. **N. B.** The term 'Tory' first came into use during the controversy over the Exclusion Bill, introduced into the Parliament in 1679. The word, properly meaning an Irish robber, was used by the Whigs as a nickname for their political opponents who strongly supported the authority of the King. See note on 'Whigs' in paragraph 14.

*Military rank*—as officers of the militia. *The service to which they belonged*—the militia of which they were officers. *Were perfectly aware*—knew very well. *Whatever was said etc.*—The condemnation of the militia was an indirect argument in support of a standing army. *Standing army*—a permanent army of professional soldiers (as distinguished from a militia). *One such army*—The New Model Army, formed by the Parliamentary leaders in 1645 during the Civil War in England between King Charles I and the Parliament. This army received for the first time regular pay and may be regarded as the earliest instance in English history of a standing army. *Held dominion in England*—ruled England. The period of the Commonwealth (or Republic) in English history that followed the execution of King Charles I in 1649 may justly be considered to have been one of military rule. In 1655 military rule was openly established in England. The country was divided into eleven districts, each being placed under a Major-General with arbitrary powers for maintaining order.

*The King had been murdered*—The reference is to the execution of King Charles I in 1649, after a trial before a court of justice, composed of a number of members of the House of Commons. In the eyes of the Tories the trial had been a mockery and the execution nothing short of a murder. *Degraded*—humiliated; robbed of their powers and privileges. The firmest supporters of the King were to be found amongst the nobles and the country gentlemen of England. So after the victory of the Parliamentary army over the King, the nobles had to suffer severely at the hands of their opponents. Some had their estates confiscated and others were heavily fined. In the *Instrument of Government* establishing the Protectorate in England (a sort of republic with the Lord Protector at its head) in 1653, provision was made for only a single House of Parliament from which all Royalists were excluded.

*Landed gentry*—country gentlemen; landholders; ভূমিদারগণ। *Plundered*—robbed. The Major-Generals were ordered to levy arbitrarily on the Royalists (the King's supporters) a tax amounting to ten per cent of their incomes. *The Church*—i.e., the Church of England; the Church of England is an Episcopal Church, governed by bishops. *Persecuted*—cruelly harassed. Cromwell and his soldiers being *Independents* (i.e., Puritans of an extreme type as regards their form of Christianity) bitterly hated the Episcopal Church and sternly suppressed this form of public worship. *Rural grandee*—a nobleman or country gentleman living in the country; পল্লীগ্রামের ভূমিদার। *Who could not tell etc.*—who could not give an account how he himself or his father had been oppressed and insulted by the Parliamentary army.

*There was scarce a rural grandee.....soldiers*—**Expl.** Almost all English nobles and country gentlemen, residing in rural areas (villages), had bitter memories of the injuries and insults they or their fathers had endured from the Parliamentary army. **N.B.** It must be remembered that most English nobles and country gentlemen had supported the King against the Parliament in the Civil War in King Charles I's reign. And the Parliament triumphed over the King and oppressed his supporters, the nobles and country gentlemen.

*Cavalier*—the name commonly given to an adherent (supporter) of King Charles I as distinguished from a Round-head (*i.e.*, an adherent of Parliament). *Manor house*—A manor was land in the immediate possession of a lord or nobleman for the use of his family; *manor house* is therefore the house belonging to a manor. *Blown up*—destroyed by gun-powder. During the Civil War, many castles and houses of the nobles were besieged and damaged by the Parliamentary army.

*Elms*—a species of English timber tree. *Hereditary elms*—the elm trees that had grown on his estate for generations. *Hewn down*—ruthlessly cut down. The trees had either been forcibly appropriated by the Parliamentary army for its own use or they had been cut down so that they might not obstruct the fire of the besiegers against the castle. *His parish church*—church belonging to his parish or village. *Defaced*—mutilated. *Scutcheons*—coats of arms; armorial bearings.

*Headless statues of his ancestry*—mutilated statues of his forefathers on their tombs. N.B. In former times rich and influential men were often buried within a church, and their statues (sculptured figures) were erected on their tombs. The soldiers of the Parliament army were staunch Puritans; they destroyed these figures out of Puritanic religious zeal, because the presence of these figures in a church struck them as being idolatrous. *Oliver's*—*i.e.*, Oliver Cromwell's (See notes on paragraph 15.) *Redcoats*—soldiers (because a red coat was the uniform of a British soldier in former times). *Had stabled their horses etc.*—Cromwell being a Puritan had the greatest contempt for the Anglican Churches and did not scruple to turn them to low uses. It is recorded of him that during one of his expeditions he actually stabled his horses in a Cathedral.

*A third could never.....horses there*—**Expl.** In this sentence Macaulay gives one of the reasons why in the time of King Charles II the Tory noblemen and country gentlemen in England, deeply hated a standing army. Their deep hatred was based on the bitter memory of the cruel wrongs they or their fathers had suffered from a standing army of professional soldiers—the New Model Army of Cromwell. They had supported the King and had been defeated by the Parliamentary army under Oliver Cromwell. Some of these noblemen and



country gentlemen had their manor houses blown up by this standing army of professional soldiers; and some had their hereditary elms cut down by these soldiers; and there were others, who, when they went to church, were reminded by the mutilated statues of their ancestors there that Oliver Cromwell's soldiers had, in the days of the Civil War, used these churches as stables and had badly damaged the statues there—out of a fanatical hatred of idolatry. All this kept alive in their minds the painful memory of the excesses and wrongs, committed by a standing army.

*Consequence*—result. *Royalists*—supporters of the authority of the King. *The last persons*—the most unlikely people. *Means*—i.e., money-grants from Parliament. *Hiring*—engaging. *Regular troops*—professional soldiers. *Were the last persons whom etc.*—i.e., as members of Parliament were most unwilling to vote any grant in the Parliament for the maintenance of a standing army.

**Paragraph 19.** King Charles II felt that he would not be secure on his throne without a standing army. He kept up a body of guards to which he made gradual additions with the increase of revenue. After the abandonment of Tangier, its garrison was brought over to England.

*He felt that without some better protection etc.*—In January 1661, a party of fanatics rose in insurrection in London under Venner. The rising was easily put down. But it gave an excuse to Charles II, who was then paying off the old army to retain two regiments, one of horse and one of foot besides a third that was in garrison at Dunkirk. *Trainbands*—See notes on paragraph 17. *Beef-eaters*—yeomen of the royal guard of England. N.B. "**Beef-eater**, a term now applied jocularly to certain functionaries belonging to the Yeomen of the Guard who, ever since the time of Henry VII.....haved formed part of the train of royalty attending the sovereign at royal banquets and otherstate occasions"—(Chambers's *Encyclopædia*).

*Person*—i.e., life. *Secure*—safe. *Vicinity*—neighbourhood. *A great city*—i.e., London. *Swarming with*—full of. *Fifth Monarchy men*—were a fanatical sect which proclaimed about 1645 that the Millennium was near at hand when Christ would come to establish the rule of saints on earth, the fanatics

believing themselves to be the saints. They were dispersed by Cromwell in 1653. They rose again in insurrection in 1661—the insurrection was, however, quickly suppressed and some of the rebels were executed. The five monarchies refer to the prophecy in the *Book of Daniel* in the Bible—the previous four were the Assyrian, Persian, Grecian and the Roman. The fifth monarchy was believed to be the Millennium when Jesus Christ would appear on the earth and rule over it for a thousand years with his saints.

*Who had just been disbanded*—The army of Cromwell, commanded by General Monk after Cromwell's death, was paid off and discharged shortly after the Restoration (restoration of King Charles II to the throne). *Disbanded*—dismissed from military service. *Profuse*—extravagant in spending money. *Careless and profuse as he was*—though he was thoughtless and extravagant. *Contrived*—managed.

*Spare from his pleasures*—save from the expenditure on his enjoyments. **N.B.** It is notorious that King Charles II spent extravagant sums on his mistresses. *Keep up*—maintain. *A body of guards*—a number of soldiers for his own protection. *His revenues increased*—because the income from the customs and excise naturally grew with the increase of trade. *Occasional murmurs*—objections made from time to time. *To make gradual additions etc.*—to increase by degrees the strength of the standing army. *Considerable addition*—large addition. *Close*—end. *Costly*—expensive. *Pestilential*—unhealthy. *Settlement*—newly acquired possession. *Tangier*—a town in Morocco on the Strait of Gibraltar. It was ceded to England when King Charles II married Catharine of Braganza, the Portugese princess, in 1662. The occupation of this place led to frequent fighting with the Moors. On account of the heavy expense it involved, the fort was dismantled in 1684 and abandoned to the Moors who fortified it anew. *Abandoned*—left. *The barbarians who dwelt around it*—the uncivilised races of the neighbourhood, i.e., the Moors. *The garrison*—the soldiers who were in charge of the fort.

**Paragraph 20.** These were the small beginnings of the great English army which in after-times won victories\* in different parts of the world. The Life Guards had the charge

of the safety of the King and the royal family. They enjoyed special privileges and were recruited from young men of good families. The Blues were quartered near the capital. A troop of dragoons was stationed near Berwick.

*Germ*—origin ; beginning. *Great and renowned army*—i.e., the powerful and famous British army. *Present century*—i.e., the 19th century. Macaulay was writing in the 19th century. *Triumphant*—victorious. *Madrid*—the capital of Spain. During the Peninsular War, the Duke of Wellington with an English army, after defeating the French at Salamanca, entered Madrid in triumph in 1812. *Paris*—the capital of France. After Napoleon's defeat at the battle of Waterloo in 1815, Paris was occupied by the Duke of Wellington with an English army. *Canton*—a town in the south of China. The reference is to the first war with China in 1839. Canton was not actually occupied but was powerfully blockaded by the British in 1840 when the Chinese came to terms. *Candahar*—one of the chief towns of Afghanistan. It was occupied by the British army in 1839 during the First Afghan War. *The Life Guards*—In England, the body of troops, known as the Guards, now consists of three regiments of horse and four of foot. The cavalry regiments are known as the 1st and 2nd Life Guards and the Royal Horse Guards. In Macaulay's times the 1st and 2nd Life Guards were evidently the only two cavalry regiments in this section of the British army, known as the Guards. *Distributed*—divided. *Troops*—A *troop* includes a number of cavalry soldiers (and is the unit of a cavalry regiment corresponding to the company of an infantry).

*Carabineers*—soldiers armed with carabines. A *carabine* or *carbine* is a short, light musket with which mounted soldiers are armed. *Exclusive of*—besides ; not taking into the account. *Corps* (pron. kór)—a body of troops. *Confined*—entrusted.

*Had a very peculiar character*—enjoyed special privileges. *Privates*—common soldiers. *Designated*—described ; styled. *Commissions*—A commission is a certificate from the King conferring military or naval rank on a man. *Had held commissions etc.*—had been commissioned officers in the Royalist army during the war between King Charles I and the Parliament. (Officers from the Lieutenant upwards are called commissioned officers).

*Their pay was far higher*—Macaulay says in a following paragraph that the pay of a private in these regiments was 4s. a day. *The most favoured etc.*—the regiment enjoying the greatest privileges in modern times. *In that age*—in those times when incomes were much smaller than now. *Respectable provision*—i.e., decent income ; competence. *Country squire*—country gentleman ; পল্লীশ্রামের জমিদার। *The younger son etc.*—Such a son could not in law inherit the property of his father and had accordingly to be satisfied with a modest allowance. **N.B.** According to the law of England, the eldest son gets the father's landed property and not the younger sons. So the younger sons had to seek their fortunes elsewhere and would be glad to have a decent income by enlisting as soldiers of the Life Guards. *Rich housings*—costly saddle-cloths. *Cuirasses*—breast-plates ; pieces of defensive armour.

*Buff coat*—a close outer garment with short sleeves. It was made of buffalo leather or other similar material and was worn by the soldiers of the 17th century as a defensive covering. *Ribands*—another form of *ribbons* ; fillets or long, narrow strips of silk, used for purposes of decoration ; ( ফিতা ). *Gold lace*—long narrow strips woven of silk and gold thread ; ( জরি ). *Splendid appearance*—brilliant figure. *St. James's Park*—a famous public park in London close to St. James's Palace.

*Grenadier*—originally a soldier who threw grenades, a sort of old-fashioned bombs ; afterwards a body of tall soldiers, distinguished by a particular dress attached to each regiment. *Dragoons*—so named from the figure of a *dragon* on the muzzles of the carbines, carried by such soldiers ; originally a soldier serving both on horse and foot ; now a horse-soldier. *Came from a lower class*—were recruited from men of humbler stations in life. *Lower pay*—Salmon notices that the pay of the grenadiers was 2s. 6d. a day. *Each troop*—i.e., each troop of Life Guards. *Household cavalry*—horse-soldiers, appointed to protect the sovereign or his residence. *Distinguished*—characterised. *Cloaks*—loose outer garments worn over other parts of dress. *Quartered*—stationed. *Lay*—was posted or stationed. *Designated*—described ; named. *On the English establishment*—i.e., in the English army.

*Returned from Tangier*—on its abandonment in 1683. *Did not form part of any regiment*—i.e., formed an independent unit by itself. *Berwick*—a town on the river Tweed in Northumberland. *For the purpose of keeping the peace among*—i.e. to check the lawlessness of. *The border*—the districts lying immediately to the north and south of the boundary line separating England from Scotland. Macaulay has described how this country was often the scene of lawlessness and violence in former times.

*Peculiarly qualified*—specially suited. *He has since etc.*—i.e., in modern times a dragoon is only a cavalry soldier. *Accurately*—correctly. *Montecuculi* (1608-81)—a famous Italian general in the service of the Emperor of Germany. He fought with distinguished skill in the Thirty Years' War and wrote an excellent work on the military art. *A foot soldier who etc.*—a foot soldier who rode on horseback to arrive quickly on the scene of operations; such regiments are now called "mounted infantry." *Military service.....performed*—fighting was to be done.

**Paragraph 21.** The regiments of household infantry did duty near Whitehall and St. James's Palace. There being no barracks in those times, the soldiers lived in alehouses.

*Household infantry*—See notes on *household cavalry* in the previous paragraph. *Coldstream Guards*—This had been originally one of Monk's regiments that passed into the service of the King after the Restoration. *Did duty*—kept guard. *Whitehall and St. James's Palace*—the two royal palaces in London. *Barracks*—buildings for the residence of soldiers. *The Petition of Right*—a statement of the rights of English citizens that Charles I agreed, in 1628, not to violate and which since then became the law of the land. It laid down that there was to be no more martial law or enforced billeting, no forced loans or taxes imposed without a Parliamentary grant, or imprisonment without showing cause. Charles II confirmed the Petition of Right at the time of the Restoration. *Quartered*—billeted; lodged. *Redcoats*—See notes on paragraph 18. *Filled*—occupied. *Alehouses*—houses where ale is sold. *Westminster*—the famous district in London to the west of the City. It contains the royal palaces, the Houses of Parliament, the

Westminster Abbey and the Government offices. *Strand*—the quarter of London lying between Westminster and the City.

**Paragraph 22.** There were five other regiments of foot. The admiral's Regiment was intended for service on board the fleet. Two had distinguished themselves on the Continent—one under Gustavus and the other under Maurice of Nassau.

*The Admiral's Regiment*—As Macaulay himself explains, these troops were intended to serve on board the fleet. They do not now form a part of the army but they belong to the navy and are called marines. *Destined to service*—intended for fighting. *Rank*—are held or regarded. *Line*—the regular infantry of an army as distinguished from the guards, cavalry, artillery, etc. *Brigade*—a division of troops drawn from several regiments or battalions. *Sustained*—maintained; upheld. *On the Continent*—in the wars on the mainland of Europe. *Valour*—courage. *Which had long sustained etc.*—These regiments had fought in the wars of Europe and had, by their courageous conduct, proved the bravery of the English soldiers.

*The great Gustavus*—Gustavus Adolphus (1594—1632), the warlike King of Sweden who fought in the Thirty Years' War to rescue the Protestants of Germany from the tyranny of the monarchs of Austria. He was killed in the moment of victory at the battle of Lutzen. *Conspicuous*—striking; prominent. *Borne a conspicuous part*—rendered very important service. *In the deliverance etc.*—in freeing the Protestants of northern Germany from the oppression of the Catholic powers. *Flesh coloured*—of the colour of the flesh or human body; carnation-coloured. *Facings*—the decorated collar and cuffs of a military jacket; these are commonly different in colour from that of the jacket. *Bufs*—Buff is a shade of colour between yellow and pink. The regiment was named the Bufs from their carnation-coloured facings of their uniform.

*Maurice of Nassau* (1567—1625) son of William the Silent, Prince of Orange and great uncle of William III, King of England. By his courage and brilliant statesmanship, he was able to drive the Spaniards out of the Netherlands and establish the independence of the United Provinces. *Not less bravely*—i.e., with equal courage. *Deliverance of the Netherlands*—from Spanish tyranny. *Gallant bands*—brave regiments. *Vicissitudes*—revolutions and changes of fortune. *Recalled from foreign*

*service*—summoned home. *Foreign service*—service under governments other than that of one's native country.

**Paragraph 23.** The remaining two regiments had just returned from Tangier. A few unregimented units garrisoned important stations near the English sea-coast.

*Just returned from Tangier*—See notes on Paragraph 19. *Licentious*—dissolute ; immoral. *Contracted*—formed. *In a long course etc.*—having been engaged for a long time in fighting against uncivilised races. *Moors*—the inhabitants of northern Africa. *Bringing with them cruel and licentious habits etc.*—Colonel Kirke, governor of Tangier, was, after the abandonment of the settlement, placed in charge of the old Tangier regiment that bore the figure of a Paschal Lamb on its standard. The regiment was present in the battle of Sedgemoor and were guilty of the greatest cruelty in hunting down the rebels. Hence they were named in derision 'Kirke's Lambs'. *Regimented*—organised into regiments. *Lay in garrison*—were stationed. *Tilbury Fort*—a strong fort on the Thames 20 miles to the east of London. *Portsmouth*—a garrison town on the south coast of England opposite the Isle of Wight. (See Map of England.) *Plymouth*—a sea-port on the south coast of England in Devonshire. (See Map of England.)

**Paragraph 24.** The pike was giving place to the musket and at the end of King Charles II's reign, most of the foot-soldiers were armed with muskets, though there were some pikemen among them. The dragoon, when fighting on foot, was armed like a musketeer.

*Arms*—weapons. *The pike*—See notes on paragraph 18. *Had been gradually giving place to the musket*—The musket was replacing the pike. *Musket*—a sort of gun ; the fire-arm with which foot-soldiers were formerly armed. *Intermixture*—admixture ; additional element. *There was a large etc.*—a large number of pikemen mixed with the musketeers. *Was occasionally instructed*—was trained at times. *Each class of troops etc.—i.e.*, the musketeer was taught the use of the pike and the pikeman of the musket. *Close fight*—fight in close quarters ; hand-to-hand fight. *Provided*—furnished ; armed. *Bayonet*—a pointed weapon like a dagger fitted on the muzzle of a ffile or musket. N.B. It was named from Bayonne where it was first made about 1660. It was originally fitted into the

gun-barrel, but General Mackay, in 1689, introduced the socket-bayonet which allows the gun to be fired with the bayonet fixed.

*Formidable*—terrible ; dreadful. *An instrument of destruction*—a deadly weapon. *Inserted*—fixed. *Muzzle*—open end of a gun through which the ball is discharged. *Action*—fight ; battle. *Unfixed*—unscrewed. *Unfixed his bayonet in order to fire*—as the bayonet was screwed into the muzzle of a musket, it could not be fired before the bayonet was removed. *Fixed*—screwed. *To charge*—to make a rush.

*The bayonet seems not to have etc.*—Macaulay is here alluding to the reasons that led to the defeat of the English army at the hands of the Highlanders in the battle of Killiecrankie. The following is Gardiner's account of the event:—"On July 27, 1689 he (Dundee) drew up his force on the flat ground at the head of the pass of Killiecrankie. William's general, Mackay, toiled up the steep hillside to attack him. His soldiers had been supplied with bayonets, a new French invention, to make each soldier a pikeman as well as a musketeer. The invention had not yet been perfected, and the bayonets had to be fixed in the muzzles of the guns. When Mackay's men reached the top, exhausted by the climb and the summer heat, they fired their shots, and then seeing the Highlanders rushing upon them, fumbled with their bayonets. Before they could get them fixed, the Highlanders, with their flashing broadswords, were upon them. Dundee had been killed by the first fire, but his men swept the lowland soldiers down the pass, leaping lightly over the rocks, and slaying as they went."

**Paragraph 25.** The total strength of the English standing army in 1685 was 7000 foot and 1700 horse costing £290,000 a year. The daily pay of the privates ranged from four shillings to eightpence. Discipline was extremely lax because the common law of the country made no difference in time of peace between an ordinary citizen and a soldier.

*Regular army*—the standing army (the permanent and professional army) as opposed to the militia. *All ranks included*—inclusive of privates and officers of different grades. *Charge*—cost. *Military establishment*—i.e., army. *Private*—See notes on paragraph 20. *Lax*—not strict. *Could not be otherwise*—considering the state of the law at the time the discipline was



bound to be lax. *The common law of England—N.B.* "It was founded on the old popular law of the nation.....It consists of *written laws or statutes*, and of *unwritten laws or customs*; though the term 'common law' was generally used in more restricted sense to describe the system of customary law grounded on the recorded decisions of successive judges, as opposed to the "written" or statute law—(*W. S. Holdsworth*). *Courts martial*—These courts administer the military law (*i.e.*, the rules framed for the control of the military force of the state in times of peace and war. (See notes on paragraph 9.)

*The common law.....courts martial—Expl.* The common law of England has come down from ancient times. And in ancient times England had no standing army; so then England had no necessity for courts martial and the old common law knew nothing of courts martial. The laws on the subject of courts martial were for the first time laid down in the reign of King William III, some years after the definite establishment of the standing army in England. They were passed by Parliament and being passed by Parliament constituted the "Statute law" of the country as distinguished from the common law.

*Distinction—difference. In time of peace—*Notice this. The law as it existed provided for the severe punishment of the soldiers in time of war. (See paragraph 17.) *Any other subject—i.e.*, any ordinary citizen. *Loyal Parliament*—Parliament loyal to the King and desirous of maintaining royal authority undiminished. *Mutiny Bill*—a bill which provides for the discipline, regulation and payment of the army. The bill was passed into law in 1689 for six months only. Since then it has been renewed from year to year; this periodical renewal is one of the indirect means by which the English Parliament maintains its control over the army. *Knocking down*—striking down. *Colonel*—the officer in command of a regiment. *Incurred*—became liable to; brought down on himself. *Penalties*—punishment. *Assault*—the attempt to do violence or hurt to another. *Battery*—unlawful beating of another. *Assault and battery*—the usual technical term for the offence of doing violence to another.

*Refusing to obey orders*—Refusal to carry out the lawful orders of the superior officers is a very serious crime on the

part of a soldier. *On guard*—i.e., when doing duty as a sentinel. *Sleeping on guard*—is serious negligence of duty for a soldier. *Deserting his colours*—running away from military service; leaving the service without due notice. *Colours*—flag of a regiment. Negligence of duties and desertion are very serious crimes for soldiers according to military law.

*Incurred no legal etc.*—These were not regarded as crimes at all in common law. *Military punishments*—punishments for breaches of military discipline. *Inflicted*—imposed. *Sparingly*—on rare occasions. *In such a manner etc.*—i.e., in a secret manner. *Courts of Westminster Hall*—the highest courts of justice in England. The King's Bench was in these times the highest court of common law in England. *Westminster Hall*—adjoining the Houses of Parliament. Law courts were established there as early as the reign of King John. It now forms a gigantic hallway leading to the Houses of Parliament.

**Paragraph 26.** The liberties of Englishmen could not be destroyed by the King with the help of such a weak army. Also no help could be expected from the armies in Scotland and Ireland, because they had enough to do in keeping down the malcontents in these countries. There was a reserve of six excellent regiments in the Netherlands that the King had the right to recall whenever he required their services.

*Such an army as has been described*—a small and ill-disciplined army as described above. *Enslave*—take away political freedom; subvert the liberties of. *Five millions of Englishmen*—This was the strength of the population of England in those times. *Suppress*—check; put down. *Insurrection*—rebellion. *Trainbands of the City*—the name commonly given to the London militia. *The City*—the business quarter of London to the east of Westminster. The district formed a separate corporation with the Lord Mayor as its head. *Insurgents*—rebels. *Rising*—rebellion. *His other dominions*—the other countries over which he ruled, viz., Scotland and Ireland. *Supported*—maintained. *Separate military establishments*—different armies of their own. *Were not more than sufficient*—i.e., had just the strength necessary. *Keep down*—keep in check.

*Puritan*—a member of the party of extreme Protestant reformers who want greater strictness in religion and morality

and simpler forms of worship and religious organisation than those found in the Church of England (the religious organisation maintained by the government in England) and the Church of Scotland.

**N.B.** Among Christians in Europe, two important sects are the Protestants and the Roman Catholics (a third sect being known as the Greek Church)—as we have among Hindus Shaktas (শাক্ত), Vaishnavas (বৈষ্ণব) and other sects.

Formerly the Roman Catholic form of Christianity with the Pope of Rome as its head was almost universal throughout Europe; then came the Protestant Reformation leading to the establishment of the Protestant form of Christianity in many countries, and Protestantism was established in England in the reigns of King Henry VIII, and also Queen Elizabeth. The Puritans were extreme Protestant reformers who thought that the reform of the Church in England under King Henry VIII and Queen Elizabeth was incomplete and unsatisfactory; they wanted more strictness in religion and morals, simpler forms of religious worship and organisation, and were opposed to the system of Church government by bishops.

*Malecontents*—disaffected citizens; persons who were disloyal to the King. (The modern spelling is *malcontents*.) **N.B.** Macaulay refers to the rising of the Scotch Covenanters in 1679. They were defeated by the Duke of Monmouth at Bothwell Bridge and the rebellion was put down. *Popish*—a term contemptuously used by the Protestants of the Roman Catholics. *Popish malecontents of the latter*—the disaffected Catholics of Ireland. The people of Ireland were mostly Catholics and bitterly hated the English. They were always ready to rise against the government they hated.

*Resource*—resort; means at one's disposal. *Must not be left unnoticed*—should be mentioned. *Their native prince*—i.e., the King of England. *Reserved*—retained. *Recalling them*—summoning them to his aid. *Against a foreign etc.*—in case of an invasion or rebellion. James II sent for these troops on the occasion of Monmouth's rebellion and the three Scotch regiments actually arrived in England. They were stationed in the neighbourhood of London till the end of the campaign against Monmouth. *He could not have etc.*—because the law, as it existed at the time, would not have permitted it.

**Paragraph 27.** There was nothing to prevent the King from making England the greatest of the naval powers. The navy was popular both with the Whigs and Tories. No danger to the national liberties was feared from it and Parliament never grudged any expenditure to increase its strength and efficiency.

*Jealousy*—fear and suspicion. *If the jealousy of etc.*—Parliament viewed with suspicion the growth of the army because they feared that if it was allowed to become too powerful, the King might use the army to destroy the liberties of the nation. *Formidable*—very powerful. *Impediment*—hindrance ; objection. *The first of maritime powers*—the country with the finest navy and thus most powerful on the sea. *Whigs*—These represented the popular party and wanted to increase the power of Parliament at the expense of royal authority. *Tories*—They wanted that the King's authority should remain undiminished. *Applaud*—praise ; eagerly support. *Step*—measure. *Tending to increase*—intended to add to. *Efficiency*—effectiveness : power. *That force—i.e., the navy.*

*While it was the best protection.....enemies*—while it securely defended the country against invaders from foreign countries. *Was powerless etc.*—could not endanger the political liberties of Englishmen. *Exploits*—heroic deeds ; noble achievements. *Achieved*—performed. *Within the memory of that generation*—remembered by men then living. *English princes—i.e., Charles I and his son.* *All the greatest exploits etc.*—The famous victories of the English army during the Civil War between the King and Parliament were still fresh in the minds of men then living. These had been won over Englishmen and over King Charles I and Prince Charles (who subsequently became King Charles II). *The victories of our sailors had been won over foreign foes*—The English sailors had fought against and won their victories over enemies belonging to foreign countries. *Averted*—warded off ; prevented. *Havoc*—destruction. *Rapine*—plunder. *Soil*—country. *Averted havoc etc.*—defended the country against foreign invaders and saved Englishmen from being slain and plundered by them.

*By at least half the nation—viz., the Royalists, the supporters of King Charles I in his war against Parliament.* *The battle of Naseby*—fought on 14th June, 1645. In this battle the  
S. P.—5.

Royalist army was completely defeated by the Parliamentary army under Generals Fairfax and Cromwell. This battle decided the issue of the Civil War. *Naseby*—is a village in Northamptonshire. *Horror*—fear and hatred. *Battle of Dunbar*—fought on 3rd Sept., 1650. In this battle the Scotch who had taken up the cause of King Charles II were completely defeated by Cromwell. *Chequered by*—mixed with. *Painful feelings*—feelings of regret, because this battle was a cruel blow to the Royalist cause. *Armada*—the name of the powerful Spanish fleet sent by Philip II against England in 1588. The Armada comprised 130 large vessels and the British fleet had only 80. But in spite of this difference in numbers the Armada was defeated by the British on account of the unfavourable weather to which the Armada was exposed and the excellent tactics of the British fleet. *Encounters*—battles. *Blake*—Robert Blake (1599-1657), a famous English naval commander who distinguished himself by defeating the Dutch and the Spaniards in several naval battles. *Hollanders*—Dutch. *Recollected*—remembered. *Exultation*—joy. *Unmixed exultation*—joy and pride unmixed with any regret. *The Restoration*—the restoration of King Charles II to the throne of England. *The Commons*—i.e., the House of Commons. According to the English constitution, grants of money can be voted only by the House of Commons. **N.B.** When the Government in England requires money to meet its expenses, it can get this money only if it is voted by the House of Commons (which represents the nation). Thus the English nation through the House of Commons, exercises a very powerful check upon the Government.

*Discontented*—dissatisfied with the King and his Government. *Parsimonious*—niggardly; not inclined to sanction extra expenditure. *Bountiful*—generous. *Profusion*—extravagance. *Concerned*—affected. *Where the interest, etc.*—in matters on which the strength and the efficiency of the navy depended. *Danby*—See notes on paragraph 14. *It had been represented etc.*—i.e., in 1677. *Unfit for sea*—not in a sea-worthy condition; not able to undertake a voyage. *In no giving mood*—not disposed to vote grants of money. *Was at that time in no giving mood, etc.*—The relations between the crown and Parliament happened to be strained by the introduction of the Non-resistance Bill in 1675. Parliament refused supplies when

the King prorogued it for 15 months. The grant was voted in 1677 when Parliament met after the prorogation. *Men of war*—warships.

**Paragraph 28.** The strength of the navy of England did not improve in spite of such liberal grants by Parliament. This was mainly due to the extreme corruption that prevailed. From the testimony of competent witnesses it appears that the English navy had then sunk into a miserable condition of decay.

*The liberality of the nation*—the large grant of money voted by Parliament for the navy. *Fruitless*—vain; useless. *Vices*—i.e., corruption and maladministration. *Looked well*—appeared large and formidable. *First rates*—first-class ships. War vessels used to be divided into different classes or orders according to size, armament, etc. *Were less*—i.e., were inferior in size and in the power of the guns. *Would now rank*—would now be considered or classed. *Frigate*—warship next in size and equipment (guns, etc.) to a ship of the line. In Macaulay's time a frigate carried one full battery deck. *Efficient*—effective; serviceable.

*Potentate*—ruler; monarch. *It existed only on paper*—The actual condition of the navy was very much worse than what was described in official documents. Some of the vessels (ships) named in the list, had no existence at all and those that existed were in a bad and unserviceable condition. *Terminated*—ended. *Sunk into degradation and decay*—been reduced to a wretched and ruinous condition. *Degradation*—deterioration. *Incredible*—unbelievable. *Certified*—testified; proved. *Independent*—i.e., the witnesses had no connection with each other. *Concurring evidence*—evidence pointing to the same conclusion; views agreeing with each other. *Authority*—claim to respect and esteem. *Beyond exception*—unquestionable; that which cannot be criticised or questioned.

*When the reign of Charles.....beyond exception*—**Expl.** The English navy had reached a miserable and wretched condition at the end of King Charles II's reign. This is proved by the absolutely reliable evidence of some competent witnesses who examined the matter independently of one another. If we had not such convincing proof, it would be difficult for us

to believe that the English fleet could have ever decayed and deteriorated so far.

*Pepys* (1633-1703)—Secretary to the Admiralty during the reigns of King Charles II and King James II. His chief claim to fame lies in his *Diary* which contains interesting pictures of his age. *English Admiralty*—the government department that manages the affairs of the English navy. *Drew up*—prepared. *The year 1681*—i.e., one year before the death of Charles II. *A memorial on the state of his department*—an account describing the state of the English navy. *A few months later*—Bonrepaux visited England in 1685. *Bonrepaux*—was originally a clerk in the department of French marine. He was sent to England in 1685 charged with some important missions. One of these was to ascertain and report the state of the English fleet and dockyards.

*The ablest man in the French Admiralty*—In Chapter VI of his History, Macaulay describes Bonrepaux as an able officer in France, who had raised himself from a humble position by intelligence and industry. *Especial purpose*—particular object. *Ascertaining*—finding out. *Maritime strength*—naval power. *Laid*—placed; submitted. *The result of his inquiries*—the conclusions he had reached as the result of his investigations. *Lewis*—Louis XIV, King of France.

*The two reports*—viz., those of Pepys and Bonrepaux. *Are to the same effect*—agree in their conclusions. *Declared*—stated. *Disorder*—confusion. *Miserable condition*—wretched state. *Marine*—navy. *Acknowledged*—admitted. *With shame and envy*—The superiority of the French navy filled the English government with shame and roused their jealousy.

*Whitehall*—the favourite London palace of the Stuart Kings of England. *Shipping*—ships in general; the collective body of vessels belonging to a country. *Dockyards*—yards or places of storage for naval stores and timber for shipbuilding. *Guarantee*—security. *Meddle*—interfere. *The disputes of Europe*—the quarrels among the nations and the governments of Europe. Louis XIV was at this time the King of France. Louis's great object was to extend the territories of France at the expense of other countries. Evidently it was his interest that England should not join the ranks of his enemies. To secure this

purpose he paid heavy subsidies of money to King Charles II of England. Bonrepaux reported that Louis need have no fear that England would oppose his wars of conquest—the English navy was in such a wretched condition that England could not afford to take part in any continental war.

*The naval administration.....indolence*—The affairs of the navy were managed in an extremely extravagant manner and the officers in charge of this department were dishonest, incompetent and idle. *Was a prodigy of wastefulness*—was enormously extravagant *Estimate*—a statement of the probable expenditure for any work calculated beforehand. *Could be trusted*—could be relied on, because the estimates were dishonest and extravagant. *No contract was, etc.*—No work was done according to the promised agreement. This was extremely dishonest. *No check was enforced*—No control was exercised over the expenditure of money. etc. There was dishonesty here also.

*Recent liberality of Parliament—viz.,* the grant of six hundred thousand pounds for the building of new ships. *Which had never been out of harbour—i.e.,* which had never sailed in the open sea (*i.e.,* undertaken a voyage). *A harbour* is a portion of the sea enclosed by land (or by artificial mounds) where ships can remain safe during a storm. *Wretched timber*—worthless wood. *More unfit to go to sea*—more unseaworthy. *Hulls*—A hull is the frame or body of a ship without the masts, yards, etc. *Battered*—damaged; shattered. *Thirty years before—i.e.,* in the wars against the Dutch and the Spaniards.

[Page 38, Footnote—*Despatch*—letter; it generally means an official letter of importance. *Transcribed*—copied. *Mr. Fox* (1749—1806) a famous English statesman and orator. *Archives*—public records. *Peace of Amiens*—concluded between England and Napoleon in 1802. *Materials*—documents. *Brought together*—collected. *That great man*—Fox. *Lady Holland* (1770—1845)—the talented wife of the third baron Holland. She was a vivacious hostess and presided over the Whig circle at Holland House. *Lord Holland* (1773—1840)—the nephew and friend of Charles James Fox; he took a prominent part in the politics of his age. *Troubles which have lately agitated Paris*—The reference is to the riots and insurrections in Paris in 1848 that led to the abdication of Louis Philippe and the election of Louis Napoleon as the President of the French Republic. *Liberality*—generosity. *Functionaries*—officers. *Extracts*—passages. *Supplying some chasms*—filling up some breaks. Supplying information on points on which Fox's collection is silent.]



*Broadsides*—discharge of all the guns on one side of a ship at a time. *Rotten*—worthless.

*They would go down, etc.*—They would sink where they lay anchored in the harbour. *Moorings*—anchorage. *With so little punctuality*—so irregularly and after such long delay. *Usurer*—one who lends money at an extortionate (excessively high) rate of interest. *Tickets*—bills; certificates from persons in authority that the holder has a right to payment of a certain amount. *They were glad to find some etc.*—that is, they would sell a bill for 10 shillings for 6 shillings received in cash. *Commanders*—naval officers. *To whom large arrears were due*—to whom large sums due for past services remained unpaid. *Importuning*—eagerly soliciting. *Morsel*—scrap: small piece.

**Paragraph 29.** The ships were commanded by generals who had fought on land but had never been bred to the sea. No complete separation had yet been made by any nation between the army and the navy. The conquerors of some of the most famous naval battles had been distinguished generals on land.

*Who had not been bred to the sea*—who had not received a naval training; who had not been taught the art of a seaman. *Abuse*—evil. *State*—government. *Ancient or modern*—past or present. *Complete separation between etc.*—thorough-going division of duties between the army and the navy. *No state, ancient or modern etc.*—i.e., in all states, past or present, soldiers had to serve on land and also in the navy and the sailors on the sea and also in the army. *Of the old world*—i.e., of ancient times. *The great civilised nations of antiquity*—i.e., the ancient Greeks and the ancient Romans, the most progressive nations of ancient times.

*Cimon*—a famous Athenian who defeated the Persians on land and sea. He was placed in charge of the Athenian fleet and vigorously carried on the war against the Persians. After winning a brilliant victory over the Persian fleet in 466 (B. C.), he landed his troops and defeated the Persian army with great slaughter. He died in 449 when besieging a city in Cyprus. *Lysander*—a famous Spartan general who defeated the Athenians on land and sea. He brought the Peloponnesian war to a close by completely defeating the Athenian fleet in

405 (B.C.). He entered Athens in triumph in the following year.

*Pompey*—(B. C. 106—48) a famous Roman general and statesman who won great victories both on land and sea. He was one of the best Roman generals of his age and besides displayed great skill as a naval commander in the war against the pirates in 67 B. C. *Agrippa* (B.C. 63—12)—friend of the emperor Octavius and a distinguished Roman, who successfully commanded both armies and navies.

*By sea*—on sea. *Impulse*—impetus: forward movement. *Nautical science*—science of navigation or seamanship. *Which nautical science etc.*—The reference is to the progress made in the art of navigation towards the end of the 15th century. Maps and sea-charts were first made in England in 1419. Columbus discovered America in 1492 and Vasco da Gama reached India by rounding the Cape of Good Hope in 1498.

*Material improvement*—important or substantial progress. *Division of labour*—the principle by which different occupations and duties are assigned to different classes of workers to ensure great skill and efficiency. In every country we have division of labour, more or less advanced—the weavers do weaving work, the carpenters do carpentering, the doctors perform their medical duties, every occupation has its separate class of workers. *Any new division of labour*—In earlier times, a general would command armies and also navies; but if a new division of labour had been introduced, a general who commanded armies would not be allowed to command navies—there would be separate commanders for armies and navies. *Nor had the impulse which.....labour*—**Expl.** The art of navigation had made great progress towards the end of the 15th century. Therefore it would have been better if commanders of navies were specially trained for the work and had the navy as their only occupation—then they would have been highly efficient in their work. But yet no distinction was made between services in the army and the navy. In spite of these improvements in the art of navigation, distinguished generals who had commanded armies on land, continued to be placed in charge of fleets for commanding them on the sea.

*Flodden*—in Northumberland. A great battle was fought here between the English and the Scotch in which the latter

were defeated with great slaughter. King James IV of Scotland with his leading nobles was slain in this battle. *Wing*—division. *Victorious army*—i.e., the English army. *Admiral*—"commander-in-chief of a country's navy"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Admiral of England*—The reference is to Lord Thomas Howard, eldest son of the Duke of Norfolk, who held the office of the Lord Admiral of the English fleet at the time. He led the vanguard and not the right wing at Flodden. **N.B.** Here is an example of a naval commander commanding an army on land.

*Jarnac and Moncontour*—two battles on land fought in 1569 during the wars between the Protestants and Catholics of France in the reign of Charles IX. The Protestant troops were led by Coligny, the famous French Admiral. **N.B.** Here is another example of a naval commander commanding an army in a battle on land. *Huguenot ranks*—Protestant troops. *Huguenot*—a name commonly given to a French Protestant of the period of the religious wars in France of the 16th century. *Marshalled*—led. *The Admiral of France*—i.e., Coligny, the famous admiral, soldier and statesman (1519-72).

*John of Austria*—commonly known as Don John of Austria half-brother of Philip II of Spain. He served for a time as the governor of the Netherlands and won great fame for himself by defeating the Turkish fleet in the battle of Lepanto (1547-1578). *Lepanto*—the most famous and the most useless of all battles fought between the Cross and the Crescent. In this battle the Turkish fleet was completely defeated by the allied Christian fleets of Spain and Venice under Don John of Austria in Oct., 1571. *Lord Howard of Effingham*—Charles Howard, Baron Howard of Effingham (1536-1624) was the Lord High Admiral of England and held the chief command of the English fleet that defeated the Spanish Armada in 1588. Before his appointment to this high office he had commanded a body of troops on land for the suppression of the rising in the north in 1569.

*Direction*—command. *The marine*—the navy. *To whose direction the marine of England was entrusted*—who was placed in command of the English fleet. *When the Spanish invaders were approaching our shores*—when the Spanish Armada ad-

vanced to attack England. *Shores*—country. *Education of a sailor*—naval training.

*Raleigh*—Sir Walter Raleigh (1552-1618), a soldier, sailor, statesman and scholar was one of the most distinguished figures in English history during the reign of Queen Elizabeth. He had the honour of planting the first English colony in America which he named Virginia after the virgin queen Elizabeth. It is said that he for the first time introduced potato and tobacco from America into Europe. *Highly celebrated as a naval commander*—Raleigh won great fame by commanding navies on the sea; he took a brilliant part in the capture and sack of the Spanish town of Cadiz in 1596 and equally distinguished himself in the Azores in the following year. *Had served during many years as a soldier in France*—Raleigh had joined the Huguenot army of France as a volunteer and fought in the battles of Jarnac and Moncontour in 1569.

*The Netherlands*—Many Englishmen, like Sir Philip Sidney, had fought on the side of the Dutch in their struggles against Spain, but it is not known if Raleigh was one of them. *Ireland*—Raleigh led a company of soldiers in Ireland during the Catholic rebellion of 1580, fomented by Spain and the Pope.

*Blake*—See notes on paragraph 27. *Distinguished himself*—won fame by the display of his skill as a general. *Valiant*—brave. *Inland town*—a town situated at a distance from the sea; the reference is to Taunton in Somersetshire. Blake bravely defended this town against the Royalists in 1645. *Before he humbled etc.*—Blake was given the command of the fleet in the Dutch war of 1652-53; he had never been to sea before 1649 when he was over fifty.

*Humbled the pride of Holland and of Castile*—inflicted a number of humiliating defeats on the Dutch and the Spaniards. He 'humbled the pride of Holland' by defeating all the great Dutch admirals of the age, Tromp, De Witt and De Ruyter, one after another in 1652. He 'humbled the pride of Castile' (Spain) by destroying the Spanish West Indian fleet in 1657. *Castile*—a division of Spain. Formerly it was a kingdom by itself. Here it is used to mean the whole of Spain. The Castilians were a proverbially proud people. *The same system had been followed*—i.e., the old practice was continued. i.e.,

distinguished generals on land were placed in charge of fleets on the sea. *Entrusted to the direction*—placed under the command.

*Rupert*—Prince Rupert (1619-82) was a nephew of King Charles I of England and son of Frederick V, Elector of Bavaria. During the Civil War between King Charles I and Parliament, he fought gallantly on the side of the King and after Charles I's final defeat, he left England for the Continent. He returned to England after the Restoration and jointly with Monk commanded the English fleet against the Dutch in 1666. On the outbreak of the second Dutch war in 1672, he was appointed general on sea and land. He held the office of the First Lord of the Admiralty from 1673 to 1679. *Monk* (1608-1670)—was one of the most prominent men in England during the periods of the Commonwealth and Restoration. He was a Royalist at the outset but afterwards went over to the side of Parliament and was entrusted with the command of the army in Scotland. After Richard Cromwell's death, he took active steps to bring about the Restoration of King Charles II. He commanded the English fleet in the war against the Dutch. He was defeated off North Foreland in June 1666, but proved victorious in the next battle that was fought a month later. He then entered the Zuyderzee, captured a number of Dutch merchant vessels and burnt a town.

*Hot*—impetuous; not cool and calculating. *Daring*—bold. *Rupert, who was renowned etc.*—Prince Rupert was in charge of the Royalist cavalry during the Civil War. He was engaged in the battles of Edgehill, Marston Moor and Naseby. Though these battles ended disastrously for the Royalist army, Prince Rupert was able to put to flight the division opposed to him by his bold cavalry charges.

*Change her course*—alter the direction in which she (the ship) sailed. *Moved the mirth of his crew*—roused the laughter of the sailors. *Calling out*—shouting the word of command. "*Wheel to the left*"—Turn to the left. This is a word of command given to soldiers on land when they are asked to turn to the left. The correct nautical expression to this effect would be "turn to the port." Monk had been a general on land, and knew the words of command to be given to soldiers on land; he had never before commanded a fleet on the sea and his

utter ignorance of even the nautical words of command roused the laughter of his sailors.

**Paragraph 30.** The separation, introduced between the two services (the army and the navy) in France, was not yet followed in England. Also in England the utmost corruption prevailed in the appointment and promotion of naval officers. Any young man of a good family, recommended by one of the King's mistresses, was put in command of a war-ship, though he had never been on sea before. Some of the men, appointed to such posts, were incapable of proving good officers. The remuneration, received from private merchants for escorting bullion ships, constituted the chief attraction of the naval officers as regards their service in the navy of the government.

*Rapid improvement*—quick development or progress. *Draw a line*—make a distinction; demarcate. *Two professions*—viz., those of a soldier and of a seaman. *Confounded*—wrongly mixed up with each other. *Matter*—business; occupation. *Quite sufficient to occupy etc.*—large and important enough to require the whole attention and energy of one man. *Specially*—particularly. *Landsmen*—men who had lived and worked only on the land—as opposed to 'seamen'. *Distribute high naval commands among landsmen*—appoint landsmen to positions of trust and responsibility in the navy. *Have been put in any important trust*—appointed to any office involving any heavy responsibility.

*Dissolute*—debauched; of loose morals. *Mistresses*—concubines. Charles II was a man of loose morals, had a number of mistresses, the best known being the Duchess of Portsmouth and Nell Gwynn. *Speak a word*—recommend; intercede favourably. *A ship of the line*—a ship of war large enough to have a place in the line of battle; a line-of-battle ship: such a ship was either a three-decker or carried at least seventy-four guns. *Honour*—dignity; glory. **N. B.** The defeat or capture of a vessel of war means dishonour and humiliation for the country. *Hundreds of brave men*—referring to the soldiers and sailors on board the vessel. *Committed to his care*—entrusted to his charge.

*It mattered not*—it was of no importance; it signified nothing. *He had never in his life etc.*—The only voyage he had

undertaken was a pleasure-trip on the river Thames. He had never voyaged on the sea. *The Thames*—the river on which London stands. *Could not keep his feet in a breeze*—could not stand erect on deck when the ship rolled in a wind on the sea. When the surface of the sea is agitated by the wind, the ship rolls from side to side; it is then difficult for a man, not accustomed to voyages, to remain standing on the deck on the ship. In case of violent storms only very expert sailors can keep their feet on the deck.

*Latitude*—the distance north or south of the equator measured along the meridian. It is expressed in degrees and minutes; the latitude of a place indicates how far it is to the north or south of the equator. *Longitude*—distance east or west from a fixed point measured along the equator or any parallel of latitude. Greenwich is commonly taken as the starting point for the calculation of this distance. The knowledge of latitude and longitude is of essential importance to the captain of a ship, because it is by these that the position of a vessel and its course can be determined on the high sea.

*No previous training was thought necessary*—It was not considered necessary that a man should receive some instruction in nautical affairs before he was appointed the captain of a ship. *At most*—i.e., the utmost training required of him. *Trip*—voyage. *Man of war*—war-ship. *Subjected to no discipline*—not trained in habits of obedience. *Marked*—deep; great. *Round of revels and amusements*—series of feasts and enjoyments. *Round*—series: unbroken succession. *Revels*—riotous festivities; merry-makings. *In the intervals of*—during the breaks in the course of. *Feasting, drinking and gambling*—indicates the wild, riotous life of the officers on board their vessels. *Technical phrases*—i.e., nautical terms. (terms relating to navigation). *Technical*—pertaining to an art or profession. Here the art of navigation is being referred to. *The compass*—the mariner's compass. This is an instrument used for navigating a ship and with its help the direction in which the ship is moving on the sea is known. [**Mariner's compass**—"A kind of compass, used in navigation, consisting of two or more parallel magnetic needles, or bundles of needles, permanently attached to a compass card...inclosed in a glass-covered box or bowl"—(Webster's *New International Dictionary*). *Points of the compass*—

direction indicated in the compass card. There are thirty-two directions in the card of the mariner's compass. *Was fully qualified, etc.*—was considered quite competent to be placed in command of a battle-ship. *Threedecker*—a vessel of war carrying guns on three decks, *i.e.* a large war-ship.

*This is no imaginary description*—The above account, shewing the scandalous manner in which men were appointed to the command of war-ships in King Charles II's time, is not fanciful or exaggerated in any way. Affairs were actually managed in this manner. *John Sheffield*—Third Earl of Mulgrave and afterwards the first Duke of Buckingham and Normandy (1648-1721), he served against the Dutch during the reign of Charles II and led an expedition for the relief of Tangier in 1680. He was a literary man of some merit and was the friend of Dryden and Pope. *Volunteered to serve*—offered his services as a volunteer. A *volunteer* is one who enters into military service of his own free will. *Against the Dutch*—in the first Dutch war of the Restoration period. *On board*—*i.e.*, in a ship. *Diverting*—amusing.

*Society*—company. *Libertines*—men given to debauchery; dissolute men. *Rank*—high social position. *Then returned home etc.*—was appointed a captain of cavalry immediately after his return to England. *Was never on the water*—did not undertake any voyage on the sea. *A ship of eighty-four guns*—This must have been a large battle-ship. The minimum number of guns, carried by a battle-ship, was seventy-four. *Reputed*—considered. *Finest*—best.

*Had not in the whole course etc.*—had not during his whole life been three months on the sea. *Specimen*—example; sample. *Naval commands of the highest importance*—appointments to offices of the greatest responsibility in the navy. *Given—made; conferred.* *And a favourable specimen*—Mulgrave's appointment was not the worst of its kind; his selection was in some respects a happy one after all. *Parts*—talents. *For Mulgrave etc.*—Mulgrave's inexperience of the sea constituted his only defect. He possessed natural talents and courage. These rendered him an efficient naval officer when he had acquired the necessary experience.

*Promoted*—raised to high offices. *In the same way*—in the same reckless and irresponsible manner. *Who not only were*



*not...vice*—These men were not good officers and could never be expected to prove such. They did not possess the abilities and the virtues that go to make good officers. It seems that their only claim to promotion to high office was that they had reduced themselves to poverty by their foolish and wicked ways. Really this was a reason that should have prevented them from holding any office under the government. *Whose only.....and vice*—These men had ruined their fortunes and their character by living a life of vice and wickedness. Their poverty and their moral degradation should have been bars to promotion. But in the immoral court of the dissolute King Charles II, such persons were considered to possess proper claims to promotion. **N. B.** The whole suggestion is ironical. *Bait*—properly anything used as a lure to catch fish or other animal ; ( মাছের টোপ ) ; hence attraction ; allurement. *Allured*—attracted. *The service*—i.e., the naval service. *Profit*—remuneration received from the merchants. *Conveying*—carrying ; escorting. *Bullion*—gold and silver in bars and ingots and not in coined form. *Valuable commodities*—costly articles. *The Atlantic and the Mediterranean*—the seas to the west and south of Europe. *Infested*—frequented ; harassed. *Pirates*—sea-robbers.

*Barbary*—the name given to the northern coast of Africa ; Morocco, Algeria, Tunis, Tripoli and Fezzan are commonly known as the Barbary States. The Barbary coasts were notorious for being the nests of pirates till quite recent times. *Precious cargoes*—costly goods or merchandise. *Custody*—care. *To any custody but etc.*—to the keeping and protection of any other vessel except a battle-ship.

*Cleared*—gained ; netted. *Lucrative business*—profitable work. *Neglected*—failed to attend to. *The honour of his flag*—the prestige or dignity of his country. The war vessels carry the flags of the nation, and any humiliating or undignified conduct on the part of the captain reflects discredit on the nation. *Mean submissions*—humiliating surrender. In the pursuit of such profit the captain had to comply servilely with the haughty demands of foreign princes. This was how he sacrificed the honour of his country.

*Direct injunctions*—plain, clear commands. *Lay*—remained inactive. *Chase a Sallee rover*—pursue the vessel of a Barbary

pirate. *Sallee*—a port of Morocco on the western coast. It was a notorious den of pirates in former times. *Ran with dollars to Leghorn*—sailed to Leghorn with a precious cargo of coins. *Dollar*—a coin current in some European countries ; it is the standard coin now in America. *Leghorn*—a port on the western coast of Italy. *His instructions directed him*—his orders required him. *Repair*—proceed. *Lisbon*—the capital of Portugal. *Ran with dollars etc.*—He sailed eastwards without any hesitation to make private profit by helping private merchants when his orders from his official superiors required him to proceed towards the west. This was against all discipline. The discipline of the English navy at this time was wretched in the extreme.

*With impunity*—without suffering any loss or punishment. [**impunity**, *n.*, Exemption from punishment—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *The same interest*—i.e., the powerful influence of some favourite of the King. *Which had placed him etc.*—which had obtained for him the appointment for which he was quite incompetent. *Maintained him there*—kept him in his post; prevented his dismissal or removal for misconduct.

*The same interest.....him there*—**Expl.** Macaulay speaks of the incompetent and disobedient officers of the navy and how they were supported by powerful persons in the court of the King. These officers were not at all qualified for their posts ; yet the strong influence and support of men (or women) at the court had secured them these profitable appointments. They knew also that though they disobeyed the orders of superior officers, they would be backed and protected by their patrons at the court.

*Admiral*—an officer of the highest rank in the navy. *Bearded*—set at defiance; disobeyed. *Corrupt*—dishonest. *Dissolute*—of loose morals ; immoral ; profligate. *Minion*—“a favourite child, servant or animal ; a slave”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Minions of the palace*—unworthy favourites of the King. The word *minion* is always used in a bad sense. *Mutter*—utter indistinct words of complaint or anger ; grumble. *Court martial*—See notes on paragraph 9.

*No Admiral.....court martial*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the scandalous ways of some of the naval officers. These men, though in-

competent were given important commands through the influence of the King's favourites. These incompetent officers did not hesitate openly to disobey the orders of their superior officers for making private profits by helping private merchants. The Admiral, though openly defied by these officers, did not venture to punish them. For he knew that they had powerful friends in the court. All that he did to express his displeasure was to grumble indistinctly that they should be court-martialled for such misconduct. The Admiral did not even dare openly to rebuke and reprimand them. He only uttered a vague threat about court-martial which, he knew, would never be carried out.

*Showed a higher sense of duty*—was more honest and dutiful in his conduct. *Fellows*—comrades; companions. *He soon found that etc.—i.e.*, he quickly discovered that his honesty did not meet with any adequate recognition, *i.e.*, his honest and faithful service was not rewarded with the gift of titles and honours. *Strictly*—scrupulously. *Admiralty*—board of officers in England having authority over naval officers. *Missed a cargo*—failed to convey in his ship some precious merchandise. *Which would have been worth etc.*—by carrying which he could have made a profit of £4000. *Ignoble*—disgraceful. *Ignoble levity*—disgraceful frivolity; lightness of temper of which one should be ashamed. *His pains*—the trouble that he had taken in strictly obeying the orders of the Admiralty.

*He was a great fool for his pains*—He had made a fool of himself by taking the orders of the Admiralty so seriously and strictly adhering to them; it was foolish of him to let slip an opportunity of winning such a large sum; he proved himself a great fool in not availing himself of the excellent opportunity of making such a large profit. **N.B.** It may easily be understood that such a cynical remark on the part of the King was not likely to encourage the officers in honest performance of their duties.

**Paragraph 31.** The greatest indiscipline prevailed throughout the English navy. The Captain despised the Admiral and was in his turn despised by his crew for his ignorance and incompetence. Sometimes duties in a ship were divided between the Captain and the mate. Some of the Captains led the most licentious lives on board their ships.

*Was of a piece*—was of the same sort. *Throughout*—i.e., in every part of the service from the highest to the lowest. *The discipline of the navy etc.*—The greatest want of discipline prevailed through the whole naval service from the highest to the lowest. *Courtly*—elegant; foppish; brought up at and supported by the court. **N.B.** There is a suggestion that the connection these captains had with the court encouraged them to defy the Admiralty. *In turn*—on his part. *His crew*—the sailors who manned his vessel. *It could not be concealed*—it could readily be discovered. *Was inferior in seamanship*—knew less of navigation. *Foremast man*—an expression for a common sailor. *Foremast*—the mast nearest the prow of a ship. *He was inferior etc.*—He knew less of navigation than any common sailor in the vessel. *Idle*—vain. *Old sailors*—experienced seamen; sailors who had grown old in naval service. *Familiar with*—fully acquainted with. *Hurricane*—a very violent storm accompanied by rain and thunder. **N.B.** “Hurricane, a wind-storm of great force and violence, originally as experienced in the West Indies; it is now used to describe similar storms in other regions, except in the East Indies and the Chinese seas, where they are generally known as “typhoons”—*Encyclopædia Britannica*.

*Tropics*—properly the parallels of latitude north and south of the equator within which the sun moves during the year; hence the hot regions near the equator. Hurricanes commonly occur in the East and West Indies, i.e., regions situated within the tropics. *Icebergs*—huge masses of ice floating in the ocean. They sometimes prove very dangerous to ships. A few years ago a large passenger-ship sailing from England to America was wrecked by striking against an iceberg. *Arctic Circle*—Polar region. The Arctic Circle is properly a small circle parallel to the equator at a distance of about twenty-three degrees and a half from the North Pole. “The Arctic Circle is a circle drawn round the North Pole, at a distance from it equal to the obliquity of the ecliptic, or  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ . The corresponding circle round the South Pole is the Antarctic Circle. Within each of these circles there is a period of the year when the sun does not set, and another when he is never seen, this latter being longer, the nearer to the pole.”—Chambers's *Encyclopædia*.

*Whitehall Stairs*—In those days the grounds round the palace of Whitehall extended from the Strand to the bank of the Thames with a flight of stairs leading to the river. *Hampton Court*—a palace in the midst of grounds extending to the Thames situated in the village of Hampton to the west of London. The original palace was built by Cardinal Wolsey and was presented by him to King Henry VIII in 1526 who enlarged it and formed round it a royal deer-park. It continued to be a royal residence down to the time of George II. The palace contains a fine collection of pictures.

*Knew no more of winds and waves*—i.e., knew no more of navigation. *Gilded barge*—well-decorated pleasure-boat.

*It was idle to expect*.....*Hampton Court*—**Expl.** Macaulay speaks of the ridiculously small knowledge of navigation possessed by the court-bred Captains of the English navy at the time of King Charles II. It could not be expected that seamen who had grown old in naval service would promptly obey the orders of a Captain quite ignorant of the art of navigation. These men had sailed their ships in all the different quarters of the earth and had a thorough experience of all the various dangers of navigation from the hurricanes of the tropical seas to the icebergs of the Polar regions. Compared with this the courtly Captain's seamanship was nothing. It was confined to his experience of a short pleasure-trip on the Thames when he accompanied the King and his court in the luxurious state-barge from Whitehall to Hampton Court. He had practically no knowledge of navigation. For the journey by a slow pleasure-boat on the calm waters of a river for a short distance could not give him any idea of the dangers of the sea.

*Novice*—beginner; one who is new in any profession or calling and knows it imperfectly. *Working*—control and management; navigation. *Evidently*—manifestly. *To trust such etc.*—It was apparent that an officer so inexperienced could not be entrusted with the navigation of a ship. *Direction*—charge; control. *Navigation*—management or working of the ship. *Master*—an officer in the Royal Navy who formerly navigated the ship under the direction of the Captain. He is now represented by the navigating lieutenant. *Partition of authority*—division of duties; distribution of power and

responsibility. **N.B.** The Captain commanded the fighting forces of the ship, the Master was in charge of the navigation; this was the partition of authority. *Produced*—gave rise to. *Innumerable inconveniences*—countless difficulties. *Demarcation*—separation; division. *Precision*—accuracy. *The line of demarcation etc.*—The duties of one of these officers could not always be distinguished from the duties of the other. It was hard to determine accurately where the duties of the one began and where they ended; the duties of the two officers could not be clearly and precisely marked out.

*Constant wrangling*—frequent quarrel or dispute. *Confident in proportion to his ignorance*—thinking highly of his own abilities on account of his utter ignorance of his profession. **N.B.** A man who has a thorough knowledge of any art or profession has a correct idea of its difficulties and also of his own limitations. But one who is utterly ignorant of any art or profession makes light of it and believes himself competent to solve the most difficult problem that it may present. Indeed the deeper the ignorance the greater is his confidence. *Lordly*—proud; disdainful; insolent. *Well aware of*—fully knowing. *Disobliging*—displeasing; offending. *The powerful*—i.e., the Captain who had influential friends in the court. *Struggle*—dispute or wrangling. *Yielded against his better judgment*—complied with the orders of his superior officer though it was against his own more correct knowledge; he submitted to the powerful Captain and in so doing went against his own knowledge and judgment which were wiser and better than those of the Captain.

*Well*—fortunate: happy. *Consequence*—result. *It was well if the loss of ship etc.*—The absurd orders, issued by the Captain, meant danger for the ship and the crew. It was, therefore, extremely fortunate if the carrying out of these orders did not result in the loss of the ship and the crew. *Aristocratical*—lordly; high-born. *Least mischievous*—i.e., these men caused the least mischief or injury. *Abandoned*—left. *Direction*—control; management. *Who completely abandoned etc.*—who did not interfere in the least with the work of their subordinates as regards the navigation of the ship; who did not by their ignorant interference in the running of the vessel endanger it. *Thought only of making money*—Their only care was to earn as

much money as they could by privately carrying bullion and precious cargo for merchants. *The way in which these men lived*—their manner of life. *Ostentatious*—full of pomp and grandeur. *Voluptuous*—luxurious and dissolute. *Greedy*—avaricious; grasping. *The way in which etc*—They lived in such splendour and luxury that in spite of their avaricious pursuit of wealth they did not become rich. Though they greedily earned money, they could not be rich, because they were recklessly extravagant. *Gala*—festivity: “festive occasion, fete” (*Oxford Dictionary*.)

*Versailles*—the famous palace of the kings of France, 12 miles to the west of Paris. Originally built by Louis XIII, it was greatly extended and beautified by Louis XIV. It continued to be the favourite residence of the French kings down to the Revolution of 1789. It is now one of the famous places in France and possesses a very large public library. Versailles was, in the reign of Charles II, the centre of fashion and splendour in Europe.

*Plate*—vessels like cups and dishes made of gold or silver. *Ate off plate*—took their meals in vessels made of gold or silver. *Richest*—costliest. *Haram*—the more correct but the less usual form of *harem*; properly the portion of the house reserved for the use of ladies in Mahometan families: used here to mean a number of women kept as mistresses. *Scurvy*—a disease formerly very common among sailors who had to eat salt meat without fresh vegetables. It is characterised by a heavy bleeding of the gums. The disease is believed to be caused by the lack of fresh vegetables in diet. [*scurvy*, *n.* diseased state of blood with swollen gums, livid spots, and prostration, attacking sailors and any who feed on salt meat and lack vegetables—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Raged*—prevailed. *Corpses*—bodies of dead sailors. *Flung out of the port holes*—thrown out into the sea. *Portholes*—openings in the sides of a ship. *While hunger and scurvy etc.*—the Captains lived in a luxurious manner, while the sailors were severely distressed for want of food and were carried off in large numbers by scurvy that prevailed amongst them.

**Paragraph 32.** Mixed with the aristocratic Captains were to be found some officers of the navy who had risen to distinction from the lowest ranks. These men upheld the

honour of the national flag in a dark period of English history and rendered England a service that can never be forgotten. Though eminently skilful in their own profession, these officers were rude and uneducated men.

*Ordinary*—common. *Gentlemen Captains*—Captains of the rank of gentlemen; Captain of polite breeding *Mingled*—mixed. *Happily*—fortunately. *Happily for our country*—It was a fortunate thing for England that such officers were to be found in the navy to uphold the honour of the flag and protect the interests of the country. *Commanders*—superior officers. *Description*—class. *Whose whole life etc.*—who had spent their whole lives on the sea. *Deep*—sea. *Forecastle*—the forepart of a ship where the common sailors (not the officers) live. [*forecastle* (for'ka's'l; *naut.* fak's'l), *n. Naut.* (a) A short upper deck forward, raised like a castle, to command an enemy's decks. *Obs. or Hist.* (b) That part of the upper deck of a vessel forward of the foremast, or of the fore channels. (c) In merchant vessels the forward part of the vessel, where the sailors live, either under the deck or in a compartment partly or wholly raised above the deck"—Websters's *New International Dictionary*]. *Offices*—duties.

*Who had worked and fought etc.*—who had by dint of their merits risen from the lowest ranks of sailors to fame and eminence. *Fought*—(1) who had struggled hard by dint of sheer merit to rise to posts of distinction. The word 'fought' implies that their rise to high office was not smooth, for they had to reckon with the opposition of 'courtly' officers, (2) who had won their promotion by fighting their country's battles successfully against the enemy.

*Eminent*—distinguished. *Sir Christopher Mings* (1625-66)—entered the navy when young and became a Captain in 1653. He led the van in the battle with the Dutch fought off North Foreland in which he was mortally wounded. *Cabin boy*—a boy whose duty is to wait on the officers in the cabin of a ship. A *cabin* is a room in a ship for officers or passengers. *Who fell fighting etc.*—in the battle of North Foreland in 1666.

*Vowing vengeance*—solemnly promising to be revenged on the enemy.



**N. B.** Macaulay here refers to the interesting incident connected with the funeral of Sir Christopher Mings recorded by Pepys in his Diary under the date 13th June, 1666. The coach in which Pepys and Coventry, a Navy Commissioner were driving away from the churchyard after the funeral was surrounded by a party of sailors who had carried Mings' corpse to the grave. They requested Coventry that they might be given a fire-ship so that they might wreak their vengeance on the enemy and show their esteem for the dead commander. *Singular kind of descent*—a strange line of succession; strange, because it was not succession by birth, but succession by service in the same capacity of cabin boy. *Expert sailors*—skillful naval officers.

*Sir John Narborough* (1640-1688)—a famous English admiral: he was admiral and commander-in-chief of the squadron sent against the Barbary pirates in 1674 and 1677. *Sir Cloudesley Shovel* (1650-1707)—a famous English admiral. He took part in the expedition against the Barbary pirates and assisted in taking Gibraltar in 1704. He destroyed the French Mediterranean fleet in 1707 and died of a ship-wreck off the Scilly Isles. *Strong natural sense*—keen natural intelligence or common sense. *Dauntless*—fearless. *England owes a debt etc.*—They rendered England a service that should always be remembered. *Such resolute hearts*—men of such bold character. *Blunders*—stupid errors. *Courtly*—elegant and aristocratic. *The reputation etc.*—The honour and the credit of the navy was maintained. *Many gloomy and perilous years*—the period of darkness and danger in English history. The naval power of England sank to its lowest level during the reigns of Charles II and James II. It was a period of great danger for England too. During the war with the Dutch the enemy sailed up the Thames capturing a number of English ships and London narrowly escaped a bombardment.

*It was by such resolute.....perilous years*—**Expl.** Macaulay speaks of the great and invaluable service rendered to the country during a period of danger and difficulty by naval officers who had risen from the common ranks. The honour and safety of the country were upheld by these brave and skillful officers at a time when it was in grave danger. The attacks of hostile people such as the Dutch threatened to

humble the glory of the English Navy and to expose the country to foreign invasion. The situation had become worse by the lack of proper management by the naval authorities and the inefficiency of 'courtly' gentlemen Captains. It was at this critical time that the officers of the navy, men who by their worth had risen from humble cabin boys to be admirals, showed their wonderful courage and fighting capacity and saved the country.

*Tarpaulin*—properly a piece of canvas covered with tar; hence a hat made of or covered with tarred cloth; and lastly a sailor who generally wears such hats. *Strange*—peculiar; queer. *Half savage race*—rude and uncultivated men ignorant of the refined ways of civilized life. *All their knowledge was professional*—Their knowledge was confined entirely to their profession, *i.e.*, seamanship and navigation. Beyond this they knew nothing. *Was practical rather than scientific*—was derived from practice and long experience and not from a knowledge of the principles on which the practice was based. The science or theory of seamanship they had never learnt at a school. *Off their own element*—beyond their own province or profession, *i.e.*, in matters other than naval. *Simple*—ignorant; innocent. *Deporment*—demeanour; bearing. *Uncouth*—slovenly; rude; awkward. *Roughness*—rudeness; absence of politeness or elegance.

*There was roughness etc.*—Though they were kind and good-natured, yet their manners were rude and unrefined. *Nautical phrases*—language commonly used by seamen or pertaining to the art of navigation. *Made up of*—composed of. *Was too commonly etc.*—was full of curses and oaths more than was desirable. *Oaths and curses*—The use of these is considered bad manners in polite society. *Their talk, where it etc.*—They freely used in their talk technical expressions, used by seamen, and their conversation was too frequently mixed with oaths and curses. If they did not talk this jargon of the sea, they indulged in swearing and cursing. *Chiefs*—naval commanders. *In whose rude school*—under whose rough and hard discipline. *Formed*—trained. *Sturdy warriors*—hardy and brave heroes. *Smollet (1721-1771)*—a famous English novelist and humorist. His novels are famous for inimitable pictures of sea-life. *Next age*—*i.e.*, the 18th century.

*Lieutenant Bowling*—the type of a model sailor in Smollett's *Roderick Random*. *Commodore Trunnion*—a one-eyed naval veteran in Smollett's *Peregrine Pickle*. He is given to strange humours and rides to the church on a horse steering it like a ship. *Commodore*—in the British Navy is an officer in charge of a squadron: 'naval officer above captain and below rear-admiral'—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Such were the chiefs* ..... *Trunnion*—**Expl.** This sentence of Macaulay is in connection with his description of some of the rude, unrefined but brave and capable officers of the British navy. The stout naval heroes given to strange humours like Lieutenant Bowling and Commodore Trunnion whose inimitable pictures were drawn by Smollett in his novels in the 18th century were trained under the rugged discipline of such naval commanders.

**N. B.** The point is this. Naval officers rising from the ranks of cabin boys like Sir John Narborough and Sir Cloudesley Shovel had no refinement. Their manners were rough. But they should not be despised. For they knew their essential work thoroughly well. They had great courage and skill as naval commanders.

*Any of the Stuarts*—any king of the Stuart dynasty. For the names of the Stuart kings, see notes on paragraph 2. *Notions of our times*—modern ideas. *Versed in*—thoroughly acquainted with. *Versed in the theory and practice of his calling*—having a perfect mastery of his profession both on its theoretical and practical sides; well grounded in the scientific principles underlying his profession and at the same time possessing a thorough practical experience. *Steeled*—strengthened; trained to face unmoved. *Tempest*—storm; the dangers of the storm are not the least that a sailor has to undergo. *Of cultivated mind*—possessed of culture and education. *Polished manners*—elegant and refined ways. *There were gentlemen*—referring to the aristocratic Captains. *There were seamen*—referring to the able officers who had risen to distinction from humble ranks.

*But the seamen were not etc.*—**Expl.** Macaulay speaks in a pointed antithetical manner of the difference of the two types of officers in the navy of Charles II. Officers like Sir Christopher Mings who had won their way to distinction from

humble ranks were expert sailors and excellent naval commanders but they had not the manners of gentlemen; they were rude and uncultured men of unrefined manners. The aristocratic officers possessed polite and elegant manners but were inexpert sailors and inefficient naval commanders.

**Paragraph 33.** The English navy could have been maintained in an efficient condition for £380000. The sum of £400000 was actually spent on it yet it, remained in an extremely unsatisfactory condition.

*Exact estimates*—accurate calculations. *Which have come down to us*—which are still in existence; which have been preserved from the records of those days. *Efficient state*—condition for rendering effective service in time of war. *Actually*—really. *To very little purpose*—vainly; unprofitably. *Marine*—navy. *The Dutch marine*—The Dutch were at this time England's powerful rival in maritime activity. *Considerably more*—much larger.

**Paragraph 34.** The cost of English ordnance was relatively much smaller than now because it was insufficiently equipped. There were few engineers and no college for teaching the scientific side of war. The appliances were rude and cumbrous and the stock of articles was absurdly small. Machines for moving field-pieces were not yet introduced and the quantity of gunpowder kept in stock was only a twelfth of what is now considered necessary. The total expenditure on ordnance was a little above £60,000.

*Charge*—cost expenditure. *Ordnance*—large guns or artillery; the word is also used to mean weapons and appliances of war in general. *Compared with other military and naval charges*—relatively to the other expenditure on the army and the navy. The proportion between the expenditure on ordnance and the other expenses on the army and the navy was much less than now. *Garrisons*—fortified places where soldiers were stationed. *Gunners*—soldiers who work guns; artillery men. These are generally privates. *Post*—station. *Engineer*—i.e., military engineer whose duty is to plan and construct offensive and defensive works. Engineers are commissioned officers. *Artillery*—large guns.

*There was no regiment of artillery*—In modern times the artillery, like the infantry and the cavalry, is regarded as a separate arm and is organised into a number of regiments. In those days there were no such separate regiments—a number of guns and gunners being attached to each regiment of cavalry or infantry.

*Sappers*—soldiers employed in building and repairing fortifications and the like. *Miners*—soldiers employed in digging tunnels under the enemy's position for the purpose of blowing it up. *College*—military college like the college at Sandhurst or the Royal Military Academy for engineering and artillery training at Woolwich. *Young soldiers*—cadets. *The scientific part of war*—the scientific principles on which the art of fighting is based. *Moving*—transporting; carrying from one place to another. *Field pieces*—light guns for the use of an army on march. These guns are now mounted on wheels so that they may easily follow the movements of the army. *Extreme*—very great. *A few years later*—i.e., in 1689 at the time of the Revolution. *William*—William III. *From Devonshire to London*—William landed at Torbay in Devonshire whence he marched to London. *Apparatus*—machinery; mechanism. *Though such as etc.*—though such contrivances had long been used by the armies on the Continent and were quite familiar there. *Regarded*—considered. *Woolwich*—a garrison town in Kent containing the principal artillery arsenal in Great Britain. *Rude*—barbarous; uncouth. *Cumbersome*—heavy and inconvenient.

*Our ancestors*—i.e., Englishmen of the 17th century. *The Indians of America*—the aboriginal inhabitants of America. *Castilian harquebusses*—Spanish firearms. *Castilian*—belonging to Castile in Spain; see notes on paragraph 29. *Harquebuss* or *arquebus* was the earliest form of hand-gun or firearm invented in the latter part of the 15th century. It was discharged by a match applied to the touch-hole. The musket was a later improvement of the old arquebus.

*The apparatus which.....harquebusses*—The machinery for the movement of field-guns that William III brought with him into England from Europe had long been in use on the Continent of Europe and was familiarly known there. But such a contrivance had never before been seen in England. Though

it would be considered rude and imperfect when judged by modern standards, yet it made a deep impression on the minds of Englishmen of those times. The impression, produced by this machinery, may be compared to the awe and wonder produced by the firearms of the Spanish invaders on the American savages. **N.B.** The point is that the machinery for moving artillery that existed in England before William III was rude and primitive (like the weapons of Red Indians). The new machinery brought by William III—though well-known on the Continent—struck Englishmen with wonder (as the Spanish guns struck the Red Indians with terror and wonder). Even this improved machinery that so surprised Englishmen of the 17th century falls far below the modern standard, just as Spanish guns that so surprised the Red Indians are rude weapons compared with modern guns.

*Stock*—store; quantity or amount kept ready for use. *Arsenals*—magazines; establishments for the manufacture and storage of arms and military equipment. *Boastfully mentioned*—spoken of or referred to in a vainglorious manner. *Impress the neighbouring etc.*—fill the minds of the surrounding nations with fear and wonder. *Barrels*—casks. *Quantity*—amount. *Store*—stock. *Under the head of ordnance*—on the item of ordnance. *Ordnance*—It will be seen that Macaulay includes under this head the charges of engineers, sappers and miners and ammunition in general. *On an average*—i.e., taking the mean of different years.

**Paragraph 35.** The total effective charge of the army and the navy amounted to £750,000. The noneffective charge amounted to very little. Few of the naval and military officers enjoyed pensions. The hospitals for disabled soldiers and sailors had not yet come into existence. The total noneffective charge did not exceed £10,000 a year.

*Effective charge*—cost of the maintenance of the forces that were actually fit for service (in war etc.) was about seven hundred and fifty thousand pounds. (The total expenditure on the Army and Navy in 1840 was 16 millions; it rose to 65 millions in 1905). *Noneffective charge*—the expenditure on the pensions and allowances of men and officers who have retired from service. *Heavy part*—large portion. *Public burdens*—charges on the revenues of the country. *Can hardly*

*he said etc.*—was almost non-existent. *Who were not employed in the public service*—who had retired after the appointed period of service. *Drew half pay*—enjoyed pensions or allowances after their retirement. The pensions of such officers generally amount to half of their original salaries.

*Lieutenant*—a commissioned officer in the British Navy next in rank to commander. *Was on the list*—i.e., was entitled to a pension. *Captain*—an officer in the navy commanding a ship of war. *A ship of the first etc.*—See notes on paragraph 28. *Ever been at sea*—undertaken a voyage or taken part in war. *Proportion*—number. *Good posts*—situations carrying handsome salaries. *Under this head*—on this item.

*A special and temporary allowance*—pension granted for a period of time under exceptional circumstances. *Peculiarly situated*—occupying special posts or stations.

*Greenwich Hospital*—the famous hospital for disabled sailors at Greenwich about 5 miles to the east of London. The house was designed by Sir Christopher Wren and Charles II had originally intended it for a magnificent palace for himself. At Queen Mary's (William III's wife) desire the house was completed and converted into a hospital for disabled sailors. *Founded*—established. *Chelsea Hospital*—for invalid soldiers was built by Sir Christopher Wren. It was commenced in 1682 and finished in 1690. Chelsea is the south-western district of London. *Was building*—the house was commenced in 1682. *Defrayed*—paid. *Private subscription*—sum realised from private individuals as their contributions for this hospital. *Contributed*—pay. *Architectural expenses*—costs of building the hospital. *The maintenance etc.*—i.e., the recurring expenses of the institution. *Maintenance*—support. *Invalids*—disabled soldiers.

[Page 51, Footnote—*Flag officers*—naval officers in command of a fleet or a squadron : these officers range from the admiral to the commodore.

*Warrant*—written order or instruction. *War Office*—the department of the British government which is presided over by the Secretary of State for War.]

[Page 52, Footnote—*Ecelyn* (1620—1706)—an English author best known for his *Diary* which covers a good part of the reigns of Charles I, Charles II and James II. The book throws valuable light on the history of the period. *Diary*—a register of daily events. The passage in

*It was no part of the plan*—it was not originally designed or contemplated *Outpensioners*—"persons receiving aid from an institution without being lodged in it" (*Oxford Dictionary*): pensioners who live outside the hospital. *It was no part, etc.*—the hospital was intended for the maintenance of those disabled soldiers who would live in it. No man who was not an inmate of it was to receive any support or help. There was no scheme to help the disabled soldiers when they were discharged from the hospitals. **NB** In modern times no such condition is attached to the allowance of the retired soldiers or sailors. They get their stipends regularly at the end of each month wherever they may choose to live.

**Paragraph 36.** The King had to bear only a small portion of the expenses of civil government. The officers entrusted with the task of maintaining order or administering justice either worked without any remuneration or were supported by fees.

*Civil government*—public administration as distinguished from the administration of the military and naval affairs. *Portion*—fraction. *Was defrayed by the crown*—was met from the public revenues administered by the King. *The great majority*—by far the larger number. *Functionaries*—officers; civil servants. *Business*—duty; office. *Administer*—dispense. *Whose business was to administer justice*—i.e., judicial officers whose duty was to try cases. *Preserve*—maintain. *Order*—freedom from disturbance; public tranquillity. The function of the executive officers is to maintain order and prevent breaches of law. *Gave their services to the public*—discharged their duties; performed their work. *Gratuitously*—without any remuneration. *Remunerated*—paid. *Caused no drain etc.*—imposed no burden on the public revenues; no expenditure

Evelyn's Diary referred to by Macaulay is as follows :—"27th Jan. This evening, Sir Stephen Fox acquainted me again with his Majesty's resolution of proceeding in the erection of a Royal Hospital for emerited soldiers on that spot of ground which the Royal Society had sold to his Majesty for £1300, and that he would settle £5000 per annum on it, and build to the value of £20,000, for the relief and reception of four companies, namely, 400 men, to be as in a monastery." *Privy seal*—a seal used by the King in matters of subordinate importance that do not require the use of the Great Seal. *A privy seal*—a public document stamped with the privy seal. *Confirms*—supports. *Testimony*—evidence.]



had to be made out of the public revenues to pay for their services.

*Sheriffs*—See notes on paragraph 9. *Mayor*—the chief officer of a municipal body (*i.e.*, body of citizens elected to administer the affairs of a town). London has a Lord Mayor. Many British towns have Mayors. *Aldermen*—members of a board of municipal officers next in rank to the Mayor. They are sometimes vested with magisterial functions. **N.B.** London has its Aldermen. So also many other British towns. *Were in the commission of peace*—held the offices of Justices of Peace (*i.e.*, local magistrates). They had functions somewhat similar to those of honorary magistrates in India to-day, and they were honorary workers. Justices of Peace are appointed by a commission issued under the Great Seal of the crown. *Headboroughs*—head men of boroughs (something like the Presidents of *Panchayets* and *Union Boards* in our country); formerly the heads of tithings or decennaries consisting of ten families; “(hist.), petty constable”—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Bailiff*—a sheriff's deputy; his duty is to serve writs and processes, to make arrests, summon juries, collect fines, etc.

*Petty constable*—an inferior civil officer subordinate to a high constable; his duty is to maintain order in his parish. The word is also written as *Petit constable*. *Cost the king nothing*—these officers were either honorary or paid from local funds (and not from the funds of the king). *The sheriffs, mayors, and aldermen etc.*—These generally represent the executive officers of the government whose duties are to maintain order, preserve peace in the country and administer justice in petty cases. They may be roughly compared to the honorary magistrates, chairmen and commissioners of municipalities and Presidents and members of the Union Boards of our country.

*Superior courts of law*—*i.e.*, courts presided over by the judges for the trial of civil suits or more serious criminal cases. *Supported*—maintained. *Fees*—*i.e.*, court-fees paid by the parties for the suits tried by the judges. These fees were sufficient to pay the salaries of the judges and of the other officers of the court. **N.B.** The student may be told in this connection that these court-fees constitute a rich source of revenue of the Government of this country.

**Paragraph 37.** The diplomatic service was managed in a most economical manner. The only agent with the title of ambassador resided at Constantinople and was partly paid by the Turkey Company. England was represented by envoys in the other European countries.

*Foreign courts—i.e.* governments of the different countries of Europe. *Our relations with foreign courts—i.e.*, the diplomatic service of England. *Had been put on the most etc.*—had been so arranged as to cost the least. *Footing—basis.* *Diplomatic agent*—minister or official agent to represent England in foreign countries. **NB.** Britain has diplomatic agents of various ranks and powers, the highest in rank being the Ambassador. *Title—rank.* *Ambassador*—a minister of the highest rank who represents his country in a foreign court. *Constantinople*—the capital of Turkey. *Resided at Constantinople*—an ordinary ambassador has permanently to reside in the country where he is sent to represent his sovereign. *Was partly supported*—the expenditure on his salary and establishment was partly borne.

*Turkey Company*—one of the earliest of English chartered companies for carrying on trade with foreign countries. It was incorporated in 1579 for carrying on trade with Turkey and maintained British influence in that country. This company paid the expenses of British embassy sent to Turkey and existed in name till 1825.

*At the court of Versailles*—at the court of the French King Louis XIV. For *Versailles*, see notes on paragraph 31. *Envoy*—an official representative of a nation to a foreign government. An envoy's rank is below that of an ambassador. *Spanish, Swedish, and Danish courts*—governments of Spain, Sweden and Denmark. *Exceeded*—been greater than.

**Paragraph 38.** The public services were economically maintained, but there was extravagance in the payment of the King's favourites, ministers and their creatures. Their salaries and pensions must be considered to have been extravagant when compared with the incomes of the nobles and of the commercial and professional classes of the age. Judged by the modern standard they were certainly high. These fat salaries were further swelled by bribery and corruption which

was practised by all officers from the highest to the lowest openly and shamelessly.

*Frugality*—economy. *Laudable*—praiseworthy. *As usual*—as was always the case with him. *In this.....laudable*—This economy in the cost of administration does not deserve any praise. For it was of little benefit. To keep public servants on poor salaries is to starve them and to make them open to bribery. Besides, the money saved was wasted in giving fat salaries to the King's favourites. *Niggardly*—stingy; miserly. *Wrong*—improper. *Munificent*—generous; liberal.

*Charles.....wrong place*—**Expl.** This is Macaulay's remark on the unwise economy with which Charles II conducted the administration of the country. He condemns Charles by saying that he did not know where to be frugal (economical) and where to spend freely and be generous. Charles II grudged expenditure on the public services so that he might lavish wealth on his favourites which they did not deserve at all.

*Public service*—administration of the country. *Was starved*—was made to suffer for want of sufficient expenditure. *The public service was starved*—The administration of the country suffered because of insufficient expenditure. The officers were paid low salaries which did not attract the best men. They were, therefore, easily bribed. *Courtiers*—favourites. *Pampered*—lit. overfed; gorged; lavishly supplied with wealth; enriched. *Needy*—poor. *Missions*—diplomatic missions; embassies. *Present generation*—men of the present age.

*Personal favourites of the sovereign*—objects of the King's love and favour. (The word *favourite* is generally used in a bad sense and means an unworthy object of favour). These men were loved and favoured by the King not because they had rendered any great service to the state or possessed great talents but simply because their ways pleased the King. *His ministers*—persons appointed by him to manage the affairs of the state. *Creatures*—dependants; favourites. *Gorged*—lit. fed to the full; hence pampered; enriched. *Public money*—money belonging to the public or the state. *Were gorged with public money*—were enriched out of the revenues of the country; the King heaped on them extravagant sums out of the revenues

of the country. *Salaries*—remuneration ; pay. *Pensions*—allowances *The nobility, the gentry*—the nobles and the squires. *The commercial and professional men*—the merchants and the members of the learned professions like doctors, barristers *Enormous*—extravagant. *The greatest estates in the kingdom*—the properties of the largest landowners in England. *The greatest estates etc.*—The income of the property of the biggest landowners of England did not amount to more than £ 20,000 a year.

*Duke of Ormond* (1610–1688)—was one of the greatest English nobles of the age. He held the office of the lord-lieutenant of Ireland for a number of years and defeated the Irish rebels in a number of engagements. He fought for Charles I during the Civil War and after his execution proclaimed Charles II as King. On being defeated by Cromwell he fled to the Continent and attended on Charles II during his exile. After the Restoration he got back his estates and was besides amply rewarded for his faithful services to the royalist cause.

*Duke of Buckingham* (1627–1687)—son of the first Duke of Buckingham, Charles I's favourite. He inherited the immense wealth of his father and was brought up with Charles I's children. He recovered his estates after the Restoration and was one of the influential members of the Cabal Ministry. In 1674 he lost the favour of the court when he joined the popular party. He was restored to court favour in 1683 after which he lived in retirement in Yorkshire. He was a man of dissolute morals but of versatile talents. He was the author of *The Rehearsal*, a drama in which he attacked the dramatists of the age. He was the 'Zimri' of *Dryden's Absalom and Achitophel*.

*Extravagance*—prodigality ; wastefulness. Buckingham was a man of loose and dissolute morals and spent money lavishly on his pleasures. *Impaired*—damaged ; ruined. *George Monk*—See notes on paragraph 29. He was created Duke of Albemarle in 1660 as a reward for his services in bringing about the Restoration. *Eminent services*—extremely valuable help. *Immense grants*—gift of very large estates.

---

Page 54, Footnote—*Carte* (1686–1754)—an English historian : published his "Life of Ormonde" in 1736.

*Crown land*—the estate or other real property belonging to the crown or sovereign. These lands are now usually surrendered to the country at the beginning of each sovereign's reign in return for an allowance fixed for the reign by Parliament. *Notorious*—well-known; this word is generally used in a bad sense. *Covetousness*—avarice; greed. *Parsimony*—miserliness; niggardliness. *Real estate*—heritable property in houses and land. *Fifteen thousand a year of real estate*—landed property yielding an income of fifteen thousand pounds a year. *In money*—in cash. *Which probably etc.*—which possibly produced an income at the rate of seven per cent per annum.

*Supposed*—believed. *The very richest etc.*—the wealthiest men in England. *The Archbishop of Canterbury*—the highest dignitary and officer of the Church of England: he is designated the Primate of all England. *Canterbury*—a town in England: contains a famous cathedral believed to have been founded by St. Augustine in the 6th century. *Can hardly have etc.*—i.e. his income was at most £ 5000 a year.

*A thousand a year*—one thousand pounds a year. *Revenue*—income. *Made*—earned. *Court of King's Bench*—Formerly the highest court of common law in England presided over by the Lord Chief Justice. It was so called because in former

[Page 51. Footnote—*Lord Keeper* an ancient officer of the English sovereign who had the custody of the Great Seal and was authorised to stamp it on public documents. This office is now merged in that of the Lord Chancellor. *Somers*—(1651–1716) a famous English lawyer and statesman; he was one of the advocates for the seven bishops in their celebrated trial of 1688; he became Lord Keeper in 1693 and Lord Chancellor in 1697.

[Page 55. Footnote—*Quarter*—i.e., of a year; a period of time equal to three months. *See*—province; area under the jurisdiction of a bishop or archbishop. *Gross revenue*—total income without the deduction of the expenses of collection. *Net revenue*—revenue free from all deductions. *Levage* mean. *Temporal peer*—secular lord as distinguished from a bishop or spiritual peer. The English peers and bishops are eligible for seat in the House of Lords. The former are called temporal and the latter spiritual peers. *Best informed persons*—most competent judges; men who have studied this subject thoroughly and are qualified to give an authoritative opinion on it. *Baronet*—a rank below that of a baron and above that of a knight. It is the lowest of the hereditary ranks.]

[Page 55. Footnote—*Sir W. Temple* (1628–99)—an English statesman and author. Swift, his secretary, helped him in editing his "Memoirs". *The revenues of a House of Commons*—the total of the incomes of all the members of the House of Commons.]

times the King used to sit there in person. Its jurisdiction was transferred to the High Court of Justice created by the Judicature Acts of 1873 and 1875. *Crown lawyers*—lawyers employed by the crown or the sovereign. Macaulay refers to the Attorney-General and the Solicitor-General, the two highest law officers of the crown.

*Official man*—person occupying an office or situation under the government. *Well paid*—received a sufficient remuneration. *Adequate stipend*—sufficient salary or allowance. Macaulay means to say that in the days of Charles II incomes were much smaller than now; the incomes of the nobles and other landed proprietors and also of the leaders of the bar were only a quarter of or even less than their present incomes. So it would have been no injustice if the salaries of the officials of those times had borne the same ratio to the present scale of salaries. *Higher class of official men*—superior class of officers, *viz.*, the ministers and the heads of the different branches of administration. *And not seldom larger*—often the salaries were higher than now.

*Lord Treasurer*—or Lord High Treasurer was formerly the third great officer of the crown. He had under his charge and government all the King's revenue that was kept in the Exchequer. At present the duties of this officer are discharged by five commissioners called Lords of the Treasury. The Prime Minister is generally the First Lord of the Treasury. *Was in commission*—An office is said to go into commission when the ordinary administration remains in abeyance and the duties of the office are entrusted to some special administrator or body of administrators. *Junior Lords*—the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury other than the Premier. *The Paymaster of the Forces*—an officer whose duty was to pay the salaries of the officers and men. This office has since been abolished. *Poundage*—commission at the rate of certain sum for each pound. *Which passed through his hands*—which was disbursed by him. *Had a poundage etc.*—enjoyed a commission on all the money spent through his office. This commission amounted to £5000 a year.

\* Page 55, Footnote Chief Justice Hale (1609—1676)—one of the greatest of English judges; was appointed Lord Chief Justice of King's Bench in 1671.]

*The Groom of the Stole*—the First Lord of the Bedchamber in the household of English kings. *Groom*—an officer in personal attendance on the king. *Commissioners of the Customs*—officers entrusted with the charge and management of the Customs. Formerly this work was performed by boards throughout the country. Afterwards it was vested in a central board in London, consisting of a chairman, deputy-chairman, commissioner, secretary and other officers.

*The Lords of the Bedchamber*—officers of the royal household under the Groom of the Stole. They all belong to noble families and attend on the King a week each in turn. The Groom of the Stole does not take his turn of duty but attends his majesty on all great occasions.

*Regular salary*—appointed stipend. *Gains*—profits. *The regular salary etc.*—The stipend attached to any post did not constitute the only remuneration of the officer who held it. Indeed it formed only a small fraction of his remuneration; he earned a much larger sum than his salary by bribery and corrupt practices. *White staff*—the badge of the office of the Lord High Treasurer. *Great seal*—the principal seal of a kingdom. In England the great seal remains in the custody of the Lord Chancellor. *Tidewater*—a Custom House officer who watches the landing of goods from merchant vessels in order to secure the payment of duties. *Gauger*—an excise officer whose duty is to measure the contents of casks. *What would now be called gross corruption*—practices that in modern times would be regarded as extremely dishonest. *Without disguise*—openly. *Without reproach*—without being condemned in any way.

*From the noblemen:.....without reproach*—Officials from the highest to the lowest, from the Lord High Treasurer and Lord Chancellor to the humblest Customs House officer and excise-man were guilty of conduct that would now be regarded as extremely dishonest. They openly followed these dishonest practices and none ever thought that such conduct deserved condemnation. *Titles*—ranks in the peerage.

**N. B.** The King has the power of bestowing honour on any man. A rich commoner would often approach a minister and heavily bribe him so that he might persuade the King to make him a peer (a lord).

*Places*—posts : situations. These posts carrying fat salaries would be conferred on candidates who would bribe the ministers. *Commissions*—appointments as military and naval officers. These appointments were formally made by the King and were therefore a source of income to his favourite ministers. Candidates for these commissions would offer them heavy bribes. *Pardons*—for offences committed. The King has the power of pardoning any offence. Rich men who were accused of any serious crime would bribe a minister so that he might obtain for them the King's pardon. *Overt*—open ; public. *Market overt*—in English law is an open market where things are sold publicly.

*The great dignitaries of the realm*—persons of the most exalted rank or position in the country. *Were daily sold in market etc.*—Persons (ministers and others) occupying the highest offices in the government were openly given to corruption and did not scruple to obtain titles, places etc., for persons who would offer them bribes. *Every clerk*—i.e., the humblest officer in the administration. *Imitated*—followed. *To the best of his power*—as far as he could. *The evil example*—the corrupt practices of his superior officers.

**Paragraph 39.** Now-a-days even Prime Ministers cannot become rich ; some impoverish themselves by trying to live up to the dignity of the position. In the 17th century statesmen at the head of the administration became enormously rich within a short time. This is proved by the magnificent palaces that some of Charles II's ministers built for themselves. This explains the reason why the statesmen of those times tried so hard and so unscrupulously to secure public offices and stuck to them tenaciously even after insult and humiliation. High-salaried officers would be a danger even to-day when the standard of personal morality is higher and purer. Fortunately for England the salaries of the highest offices of the administration have declined with the growth of national wealth.

*Last century*—i.e., 18th century. *Prime Minister*—the chief minister. The Prime Minister of Britain is the real head of the executive government, the King being the nominal head. *Has become*—the use of the past tense would have been preferable : such oversight occurs very seldom in Macaulay. *Has become rich in office*—has become rich with the emoluments



of his situation. *Impaired*—damaged; diminished. *Private fortune*—wealth or possessions independent of their office. *Sustaining*—maintaining. *Their public character*—the dignity of their position as the Prime Minister of England. They had to incur expenses from their private incomes in order to maintain the dignity of their position. *Several prime ministers i.e.*,—It is said of the Duke of Newcastle that he died £ 300,000 poorer for his half-century of public life and the younger Pitt, the famous English Prime Minister, died leaving a very large amount of debt. *Was at the head of affairs*—had the control of administration in his hands. *Without giving scandal*—without incurring any reproach or disgrace. *Accumulate*—amass. *In no long time*—quickly. *Estate*—property.

*Amplly sufficient to support etc.*—large enough to enable him to live like a duke. *Dukedom*—the dignity of a duke. A duke is a member of the highest order of nobility in England next to the princes of the blood royal. *Prime minister*—here loosely used to mean the chief minister. In the 17th century there was no officer with the title of prime minister. Walpole, who entered office in 1721 was the first minister who was properly entitled to this title. *Tenure of power*—period of office. *Far exceeded etc.*—was greater than that of any other Englishman. *Place*—office. *Lord Lieutenant of Ireland*—was the representative of the English sovereign in Ireland and exercised supreme administrative authority in that country. *The place of Lord Lieutenant of Ireland etc.*—The income or emoluments of the office of Lord Lieutenant of Ireland amounted to £40,000 a year. *Gains*—emoluments; income.

*Chancellor*—in former times the Chancellor was a high officer of state and the King's most trusted minister. He was the keeper of the great seal and exercised a supervision over all the charters and important public documents. The Lord Chancellor of modern times is a judicial officer of the highest rank being the presiding judge of the Court of Chancery. *Clarendon* (1609—74)—was the ablest minister of Charles I who appointed him Privy Councillor and Chancellor of the Exchequer in 1643. After the Restoration he was the most trusted minister of Charles II who appointed him Lord Chancellor. Subsequently he lost the confidence of his king and was dismissed in 1667. It was

under Clarendon's advice that Dunkirk was sold to France in 1662. The last years of his life were spent in France where he composed his history of the Civil War. His daughter Anne was married to the Duke of York who afterwards became King as James II.

*Arlington* (1618—85)—Henry Bennet, First Earl of Arlington, was one of the members of the Cabal Ministry. After the Restoration he was appointed the keeper of the Privy Purse and afterwards the Secretary of State which office he held from 1662 to 1674. He played a prominent part in arranging the secret treaty of Dover in 1670. *Lauderdale* (1616—82)—John Maitland, the first Duke of Lauderdale, was one of the members of the Cabal Ministry. He had followed Charles II to Worcester in 1651 where he was taken prisoner. After the Restoration he was made Secretary for Scottish affairs which office he held from 1660 to 1680. *Danby*—See notes on paragraph 14.

*Enormous*—prodigious; very large. *Sumptuous*—(properly) expensive; hence luxurious; magnificent. *Populace*—common people. *Dunkirk House*—This was the name given in derision to the splendid town-house built by Clarendon in 1662. Dunkirk was sold this year to Louis XIV for £200,000: this sale was very unpopular with Englishmen and their indignation was directed against Hyde, Charles's minister, who had been created Earl of Clarendon in 1661. It was popularly though wrongly supposed that the house was built with the heavy bribe received by Clarendon from Louis for the sale of Dunkirk. *Dunkirk*—the northernmost port of France. It had been conquered by Cromwell from Spain in 1658. *Stately*—noble-looking; majestic. *Pavilion*—a mass of building in a park or a part of a larger edifice. *Deer park*—deer preserve. A *park* consists of extensive grounds round a house where game is preserved. *Orangery*—properly a plantation of orange trees. But as oranges do not thrive in the cold climate of England, rich men grow these fruits in hot-houses in their gardens where the air is artificially kept warm.

*Euston*—a village in Suffolk. Macaulay refers here to Arlington's country seat situated in this village. His description of the place is based on Evelyn's account who visited it in 1671 and 1677. The following are some of the extracts

from Evelyn's description :—"His (Arlington's) house is a very noble pile, consisting of four pavilions after the French, beside a body of a large house, and, though not built altogether, but formed of additions to an old house, yet with a vast expense made not only capable and roomsome but very magnificent and commodious, as well within as without, nor less splendidly furnished.....The orange-garden is very fine and leads into the garden-house, at the end of which is a hall to eat in, and the conservatory some hundred feet long.....The canal running under my lady's dressing-room chamber-window, is full of carps and fowl, which came and are fed there.....An ascending walk of trees a mile in length reaches to the park-pale which is nine miles in compass and the best for riding and meeting the game that I ever saw. There were now of red and fallow deer almost a thousand, with good covert, but the soil barren and flying sand, in which nothing will grow kindly."

*The more than Italian luxury*—the palace more luxurious and beautiful than what can be seen in Italy. Macaulay refers to the great development of Fine Arts including Architecture in Italy in the 15th and 16th centuries. *Ham*—a hamlet in Surrey on the Thames 11 miles from London. The village contains many elegant seats—the most imposing being Ham House erected in 1610 for Henry Prince of Wales (eldest son of James I). The house passed in 1672 to the Duke of Lauderdale by his marriage with Elizabeth, countess of Dysart, who had inherited it from her father. Evelyn who visited this house in August, 1678, describes it as follows :—"After dinner I walked to Ham, to see the house and garden of the Duke of Lauderdale, which is indeed inferior to few of the best villas in Italy itself; the house furnished like a great Prince's; the parterres, flower-gardens, orangeries, groves, avenues, courts, statues, perspectives, fountains, aviaries, and all this at the banks of the sweetest river in the world, must needs be admirable." *Busts*—pieces of sculpture representing the human figure from the waist upwards. The gardens surrounding the mansions of the rich are generally beautified with such figures. *Aviaries*—large enclosures where birds are kept confined; bird-houses.

*'Were among' the many signs*—were some of the proofs. *Indicated*—shewed. *The shortest road etc.*—the means by which

one could become enormously rich within a short time. *The sumptuous palace.....boundless wealth—Expl.* Macaulay means to say that the best proof of the enormous incomes of the ministers of Charles II was to be found in the princely mansions they built for themselves. Clarendon's London residence that people nicknamed Dunkirk House, Arlington's Euston Hall and Lauderdale's magnificent Ham House built at a great cost and luxuriously fitted up plainly indicated that by occupying high posts in the government one could, within a very short time, become enormously rich. The quickest and shortest way to enrich oneself was to secure high posts in the government, which brought high salaries and illegal gains. *True explanation—real reason. Unscrupulous—unprincipled: dishonest. Violence—fury: vehemence; rage. Struggled for office—strove fiercely to obtain positions of authority in the government. Tenacity—stubbornness. Humiliations—insults. Dangers—many of Charles II's ministers like Clarendon, Arlington and Danby were impeached for misgovernment.*

*Clung—adhered. Scandalous compliances—base submissions: acts of servility. To which they stooped—of which they were guilty. Stooped—lowered themselves: morally degraded themselves by slavishly acquiescing in the King's opinions. Retain it—continue in possession of the office. That is the true.....retain it—Expl.* Macaulay points out that high government appointments in the days of Charles II carried very fat salaries and also a great amount of illegal gains. The prospect of making themselves enormously rich prompted the politicians of the day to seek for and cling to high offices in the government in utter disregard of all moral scruples. The passion for wealth made them blind to all sense of decency and dignity. They sought for offices with vehement desire regardless of all moral principles. They suffered troubles and insults while in office, and even ran the risk of losing the favour of the King or being impeached by the House of Commons (like Clarendon). Yet they stuck to the posts. Often they had most shamefully to submit to the whims of the King and so sacrifice their honesty and personal convictions.

*Formidable—powerful. Opinion—i.e., public opinion; views of the public on the conduct of the ministers. Standard—criterion; test. Integrity—honesty. High as the standard of*

*integrity*—though statesmen are expected to be scrupulously honest in their conduct. *Lamentable*—deplorable. *Public men*—statesmen. *Place*—office. *First Lord of Treasury*—the Prime Minister generally holds the office. See notes on paragraph 38. *Secretary of State*—the designation of the heads of the different departments of administration, e.g., the Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, the Secretary of State for War, the Secretary of State for India etc. *Worth*—i.e., carried a salary of.

*Even in our own age.....pounds a year*—Macaulay means to say that in spite of the higher standard of morality to which public men are required to conform in modern times and in spite of the power of public opinion, the character of ministers would undergo a sad change for the worse, if their offices carried with them princely salaries. They might thereby be tempted to sacrifice their country's interests or the claims of justice if by doing it they could continue to hold their offices. *Emoluments*—salaries; profits. *The highest class of functionaries*—statesmen holding the highest offices in the administration. *Grown*—increased. *In proportion to etc.*—corresponding to the increase of national wealth. *Opulence*—wealth. *Positively*—doubtlessly; certainly. *Diminished*—decreased; grown less. *Happily etc*—with the increase in the wealth of the country, the salaries of the highest officials might have proportionately gone up: but these salaries have been reduced so that they may not be a temptation to unscrupulous men.

**Paragraph 40.** In 1685, though agriculture was the chief source of national wealth, yet it was in a backward and imperfect condition. Not more than half the area of the country could then be used for cultivation or pasture. The rest consisted of fens and forests inhabited by wild birds and beasts that have since become extinct or rare.

*Not exceeding two long lives*—Macaulay refers to the period of 163 years that elapsed between 1685 and 1848 the date of his History. This is a period that is covered by two long human lives. *Multiplied*—increased. *Thirtyfold*—thirty times. *Appalling*—frightful; staggering. *Alarmed*—frightened. *Increase of the public burdens*—growth of the taxes. *Reassured*—comforted; relieved of their fear or anxiety. *Resources*—wealth; pecuniary means. *Public resources*—national wealth. *Increase*

of the public resources—growth of the national wealth. *But those who are etc.*—Macaulay means to say that on account of its enormous growth of national wealth, the country (England) can easily bear the heavy burden of taxation imposed on

*The produce of the soil*—the crops grown on the land. *Far exceeded*—was much greater than. *The other fruits of human industry*—wealth derived from other activities such as manufactures. *In what would now be etc.—i.e.*, the condition of agriculture compared with the present was unskilful and defective. *Rude*—unskilful ; backward. *Imperfect*—defective. *Arable land*—plough land ; land that is tilled for crops. *Pasture land*—grass land ; land where grass is grown for the food of cattle. *Political arithmeticians*—economists ; statisticians. *The area of the kingdom*—The total area of England and Wales including water is about 58,325 square miles.

*Moor*—heath ; an extensive tract of barren waste land ; "tract of open waste ground, esp. if covered with heather"—*Oxford Dictionary*. *Fen*—marsh ; swamp ; lowland partially or wholly covered with water : "low marshy or flooded tract of land"—*Oxford Dictionary*. *Computations*—calculations. *Confirmed*—supported. *Road books*—guide books for roads and distances. *Routes*—roads ; paths. *Endless succession*—continuous series. *Orchards*—ground covered with fruit trees. *Hayfields*—pasture lands : grass lands. *Hay* is grass cut and cured as fodder for cattle. *Beanfields*—lands covered with bean plants. *Bean*—is a sort of leguminous herb ; শিম বা বরবটী জাতীয় গাছ । *Ran*—passed. *Ran through nothing but*—passed entirely through. *Heath*—moor. *Swamp*—low land covered with water ; fen. *Warren*—land allowed to remain uncultivated for the breeding of rabbits. *It is clear that many etc.*—Macaulay means to say that portions of the country that were nothing but swamps and marshes in those times have since been reclaimed and produce valuable crops now.

[Page 59, Footnote—*Balance of Trade*—properly means the equilibrium between the values of the exports and imports of a country ; the expression is also used to mean the amount necessary on one side or other to restore such an equilibrium.]

[Page 60, Footnote—*John Gayly* (1600-1676)—an English author, printer and miscellaneous writer. *Cosmographer*—properly one who describes the

*Drawings*—pictures: sketches. *Grand Duke*—a title of the rulers of some small kingdoms in Europe in former times; a sovereign duke inferior in rank to a king. *Grand Duke Cosmo*—The reference is to Cosmo III, Grand Duke of Tuscany in Italy, who visited England in 1669. An account of his tour was afterwards published, with a number of drawings made by one of his retinue. *Numerous tracts*—many parts of the country. *Now rich with cultivation*—i.e., where corn now grows abundantly. *Bare*—barren; uncultivated. *Salisbury Plain*—an extensive tract of undulating open upland in Wiltshire near the town of Salisbury. Large portions of it are occupied solely as sheep-walks. The famous ancient remains of *Stonehenge* stand on this plain.

*Enfield*—a town in Middlesex ten miles to the north of London. The town now contains a government factory of small arms. *Hardly out of sight of the smoke of the capital*—i.e., not far from the capital; so near that the smoke of London can be seen from it; almost within the sight of London. *A region*—an extensive tract. *Inclosed fields*—fields surrounded by fences. The fences would indicate that the fields have been brought under cultivation. The absence of the inclosed fields indicated that the country remained in wild and natural condition. *As free*—i.e., as utterly wild. *As in an American forest*—Large parts of the continent of America were covered with primitive forests in Macaulay's days. *Wandered*—roamed.

*At Enfield, hardly out of sight, etc.*—This statement is based, as Macaulay points out in the footnote, on an entry in Evelyn's

universe including both earth and heavens; used also to mean a geographer. *Cosmographer Royal*—Ogilby was appointed 'king's cosmographer' after the destruction of his house and bookshop by the fire of London in 1666. *Inclosed country*—land in the possession of private individuals and surrounded by fences and railings to mark them out from the commons. *Abingdon*—in Berkshire, a few miles from Oxford. *Gloucester*—the capital of Gloucestershire, a county in the west of England. *Inggleswade*—a town in Bedfordshire about 40 miles to the north-west of London. *Lincoln*—the capital of Lincolnshire in the east of England; the country in Lincolnshire is flat and is mostly fenny.

*Noble collection*—collection of valuable books and pictures. *Bequeathed*—left by will. *Grenville* (1755-1846)—a well-known English statesman and book-collector. His valuable collection, bequeathed to the British Museum, is known as Grenville Library. The collection includes the first folio Shakespeare.

Diary under June 2, 1675. The entry is recorded under 2nd June, 1676 and not 1675 as Macaulay points out. It runs as follows:—"I went with my Lord Chamberlain to see a garden at Enfield town; thence, to Mr Secretary Coventry's lodge in the Chase. It is a very pretty place, the house commodious. the gardens handsome, and our entertainment very free. there being none but my Lord and myself. That which I most wondered at was, that in the compass of twenty-five miles, yet within fourteen of London, there is not a house, barn, church or building, besides three lodges. To this lodge are three great ponds, and some few inclosures, the rest a solitary desert, yet stored with not less than 3000 deer. These are pretty retreats for gentlemen, especially for those who are studious and lovers of privacy."

*Of large size*—as distinguished from the smaller animals like foxes and rabbits. *Preserved*—saved from destruction. *Royal diversion*—amusement or sport of the king. *Which had been preserved etc.*—i.e., the wild boars were not allowed to become extinct in order that the King might enjoy the pleasure of hunting them. *Had been allowed etc.*—i.e., the inhabitants were forbidden by law to kill these animals. *Ravage*—waste; spoil: ruin. *Tusks*—the long protruding teeth of boars and elephants. *Slaughtered*—killed. *Exasperated rustics*—enraged peasants. *License*—lawlessness. *Civil War*—the war between Charles I and the Parliament.

*The last wild boars etc.*—Macaulay explains in this sentence the way in which wild boars became extinct in England. These animals were preserved by a law so that they might provide an agreeable sport for the kings. Though they caused a great damage to the crops, yet the peasants were by law forbidden to kill them. The enraged peasants taking advantage of the lawless condition of the country during the Civil War slew these animals and thus they became extinct. **N.B.** The last wild boar in England was killed at Chartley in Staffordshire in 1683.

*The last wolf*—i.e., the wolf after whose death this class of animals became extinct in England. *Roamed*—roved in a wild condition. *Our island*—i.e., Great Britain containing both England and Scotland. *Had been slain in Scotland etc.*—Wolf



probably became extinct in England about the end of the 15th century: the last of these animals in Scotland is said to have been shot by Cameron of Lochiel in 1680. *Breeds*—classes: species. *Now extinct*—i.e., that have now died out or disappeared from the country without leaving any survivor. *Quadrupels*—four-footed animals. *Counties*—shires: districts. [*county*, n. Territorial division in Great Britain, chief unit for administrative, judicial and political purposes—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Sacred*—precious: inviolable. *A mere nuisance*—only a noxious pest. *The fox, whose life is, in many.....nuisance*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this remark in connection with his description of England in 1685. In modern times with the spread of agriculture and the reclamation of the wild and waste lands, foxes have become comparatively rare in England. The few that are still to be found in that country are carefully protected from being killed by the peasants. For if these few foxes were killed by them, there would be an end of fox-hunting as a sport for English nobles and gentlemen. *But in the 17th century foxes were very plentiful* as a large part of the country remained in a wild condition. These animals were then considered as mere pests on account of the ravages they caused and were sought to be destroyed by all means.

*Oliver Saint John* (1598-1673)—was a famous English barrister who afterwards rose to be the chief-justice. He defended Hampden in the case brought against him for his refusal to pay the ship-money. He entered the Long Parliament in 1640 and took active steps to have the Bill of Attainder passed against Strafford. *Long Parliament*—See notes on paragraph 2.

*Strafford* (1593-1641)—Thomas Wentworth, Earl of Strafford. was a distinguished statesman and the ablest minister of Charles I. He became very unpopular for his policy of "Thorough" i.e., his advocacy of sweeping measures for asserting the King's authority. He was impeached by Parliament on a variety of charges, was found guilty and executed in 1641.

*To whom some law was to be given*—which are to be hunted according to the rules of fair sport. These rules require that these animals should be given a fair start and are to be

hunted only during a particular season of the year. *Snared*—trapped. *Knocked on the head*—killed. *Without pity*—without any consideration or mercy.

*Oliver St. John.....without pity*—**Expl.** Macaulay refers to a speech of Oliver St. John (made in the Long Parliament about 1641) to prove that foxes were killed without mercy. (Oliver St. John was supporting the impeachment of Strafford on charges of tyranny etc. Strafford was a cruel tyrant who deserved no pity, no merciful relaxation of the rigour of the law. In this connection St. John compared Strafford to a fox. For in his time the foxes were regarded as extremely mischievous wild animals, to be killed without mercy at all times and in all possible ways. They existed in large numbers and caused great losses to the agricultural population. On the other hand, stags and hares were regarded as beasts of the chase; and they were thought to deserve some consideration and were hunted under restrictions provided by the laws of game-hunting ('to whom some law was given').

**N.B.** The attitude towards foxes changed materially in the course of years. In Oliver St. John's days foxes were very plentiful and were regarded as mere nuisances to be killed mercilessly in all times and under all circumstances. But in Macaulay's own days foxes were scarce; they had ceased to give serious trouble to the agriculturists by damaging their crops etc.; and they were treated as animals of the chase to be hunted under strict rules and regulations—not to be killed indiscriminately by every body.

*Illustration*—example; comparison. *Happy*—suitable; appropriate. *Country gentlemen*—English landed proprietors living in the rural areas (something like the *moffusil zemindars* of Bengal). These gentlemen are very fond of fox-hunting. In English society, the term 'gentleman' is applied to everyone above the rank of a yeoman. *Of our time*—of modern times. *This illustration would be etc.*—Macaulay means to say that country gentlemen of modern times would never approve of such wholesale destruction of these animals. Such reckless slaughter would result in the extermination of foxes and these gentlemen would thereby be deprived of the pleasures of fox-hunting. *Not seldom*—frequently. *Massacre*—wholesale slaughter;

destruction in large numbers. *Thronged*—assembled in large numbers. *Mustered*—collected. *Traps*—snares.

*Quarter*—mercy. *With cub*—i.e., great with young; in a pregnant condition. *Feat*—exploit; creditable deed. *Merited*—deserved. *Red deer*—a name for the common stag found in the temperate parts of Europe and Asia. In Great Britain this animal is now found in a wild state only in the Highlands of Scotland. *Gloucestershire*—a county in the west of England. *Hampshire*—a county in the south of England. *Grampian Hills*—the well-known mountain-chain in Scotland forming the natural rampart which separates the Highlands from the Lowlands. *Queen Anne*—the younger daughter of James II; she reigned in England from 1702 to 1714. *Portsmouth*—See notes on paragraph 23. *Wild bull*—the aurochs or the European bison. It was once widely distributed through the forests of Europe but has now become almost extinct. A few herds are still to be found only in the forests of Lithuania. *Mane*—long flowing hair growing on the head and neck of some animals like the lion and the horse.

*Badger*—a burrowing carnivorous animal of the size of fox. *Tortuous*—winding. *Made his dark and tortuous hole*—because the badger is a burrowing animal and lives in holes. *Copsewood*—brushwood; a thicket of small trees; “a wood of small growth for periodical cutting”—(*Chambers's Dictionary*). *Wild cat*—a carnivorous animal resembling a domestic cat but somewhat larger and more powerful. It is very destructive to smaller domestic animals like lambs, kids and poultry. *Wailing*—uttering their plaintive cries. *Lodges*—small houses; cottages at gates of park or grounds of large houses, occupied by rangers and other servants. *Rangers*—keepers of parks or forests. *Whittlebury*—a parish in Northamptonshire. It was formerly a forest. *Needwood*—an ancient English forest in Staffordshire. It was disforested in 1801 and is now mostly cultivated. *Martin*—a small fur-bearing carnivorous animal resembling a sable. The word is more commonly spelt as *marten*.

*Cranbourne Chase*—a wooded tract in Wiltshire extending nearly to Salisbury and still abounding in deer. *Fur*—The fur of the marten is used for hats, muffs etc. *Reputed*—considered. *Sable*—a carnivorous animal of the weasel family

found in the northern parts of Asia, Europe and America; "small brown-furred arctic and subarctic carnivorous quadruped allied to martens"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). It is famous for its fine, soft fur. *Few eagles*—eagles frequenting swamps and preying on fish and smaller birds; called also fish-hawks or moor buzzards. *Measuring more than nine feet between the extremities of the wings*—the length between the tips of the two wings being more than nine feet. *Extremities*—tips; ends. *Norfolk*—an English county bordering on the sea to the east. *Downs*—sand-hills near the shore: [**down**, n. Open high land, esp. (pl.) treeless undulating chalk uplands.....used for pasture—(*Oxford Dictionary*).] *From the British Channel to Yorkshire*—i.e., along the entire length of the eastern sea-coast from the south to the north. *Bustards*—birds belonging to the class of runners. The great bustard is the largest game bird of Europe and was formerly common in Great Britain. [**bustard**, n. Genus of large, swift-running birds. [perh. mixture of OF *bistarde*, *oustarde*, both f. L. *avis tarda* slow bird (the inappropriate adj. unexplained)]—(*Oxford Dictionary*).] *Strayed*—roamed. *Troops*—flocks.

*Cambridgeshire*—a county in the midland district of England. It is fenny in character and is famous for its great university. *Lincolnshire*—a maritime county on the eastern coast of England. It is generally flat and fenny in character. *Immense clouds*—vast flocks. *Clouds*—multitudes; large numbers. *Cranes*—wading birds with straight bills and long necks and legs; *নান্ন পক্ষী*. *Races*—classes of animals. *Progress of civilization*—i.e., the advance of the country from its previous backward condition. *Extirpated*—utterly destroyed; exterminated. *Diminished*—reduced. *Specimen*—one of a number of things or animals taken to be a representative of its class. *Bengal tiger*—or royal tiger is the name given to the largest and most powerful class of these animals. Found chiefly in the Sunderbans of Bengal. *Polar bear*—or white bear is the name given to the large bears that inhabit the arctic regions. The Bengal tiger and the Polar bear are never seen in a wild state in England. They are generally exhibited as show animals.

---

[Page 63, Footnote—*White* (1720–1793)—a famous\* English naturalist; author of the "*Natural History and Antiquities of Selborne*."

**Paragraph 41.** The progress of civilisation is best evidenced by the Statute Book. Since the accession of George II 4000 acts were passed enclosing over ten thousand square miles. During less than a century, a quarter of the country has been converted from a wilderness into a fertile field.

*This great change—viz., the reclamation of wild tracts into arable and pasture lands. Traced—followed. Statute Book—*a record of the laws passed by Parliament. A statute (as distinguished from common law) is a law passed by the legislature of a country. *Inclosure acts*—These acts (laws) were passed by Parliament permitting the enclosing (fencing in) of land which previously had remained unenclosed being common field or common waste. With the progress of agriculture and growth of population, enclosure acts multiplied. These benefited the large landowners at the expense of the poor people who were deprived of their rights in the common land. "The commoners, who were generally poor and unable properly to represent their case, often suffered by enclosure, obtaining inadequate compensation"—Chambers's *Encyclopædia*.

*Since George the Second came to the throne—i.e., in 1727. Authority—i.e., sanction. Moderate—sober : not extravagant.*

*Bell* (1792-1882)—a dental surgeon and a famous zoologist; he published a number of zoological treatises and an edition of White's *Selborne*. *Aubrey* (1626-1697)—an English antiquarian, he was appointed by the crown to make antiquarian surveys and formed large topographical collections in Wiltshire. *Natural History*—a term used to mean the sciences of botany and zoology collectively; sometimes used of zoology alone. *Wiltshire*—an inland county in England north of Hampshire and Dorset. *Morton* (1671-1726)—an English naturalist; he was the author of *The Natural History of Northamptonshire with some account of its antiquities*. *Willoughby* (1635-1672)—a famous naturalist; he travelled with his friend Ray through England and through Europe collecting natural history specimens; his work on ornithology was published in Latin in 1676 and in English in 1678. *Ornithology*—the branch of zoology that treats of birds. *Ray* (1627-1705)—a famous English naturalist; he composed works on botany and entomology and on the death of his friend Willoughby took up his unfinished zoological work. He is commonly regarded as the father of Natural History in England. *Latham* (1740-1837)—an ornithologist; his chief work was "*A General History of Birds*." *Synopsis*—a general view; abstract. *Browne* (1605-1682)—a physician and a famous English author.]

*Uncultivated*—i.e., wild and unreclaimed. *Ill cultivated*—carelessly or unskilfully cultivated. *Fenced*—enclosed. *Proprietors*—owners of the lands. *Without any application to the legislature*—i.e., without any Parliamentary sanction. *Legislature*—a body of persons in a country invested with the constitutional power to make and repeal laws. The British Parliament is the legislature of Britain. *Can only be conjectured*—can only be roughly guessed and not known accurately. *Little more than a century*—from 1727 to 1848, i.e., only 121 years. *Turned from a wild etc.*—converted from a barren waste into a smiling and fruitful land.

**Paragraph 42.** The system of agriculture pursued was defective and hence the produce of the soil was poor. Now-a-days the total yield of grains considerably exceeds thirty million quarters but in those times it was less than ten million quarters.

*The kingdom*—i.e., England. *Close*—end. *The farming*—the system of agriculture or cultivation. *Though greatly improved since the civil war*—though it was much better than it was at the time of the civil war. *Was not such etc.*—i.e., was rude and unskilful compared with the present system of cultivation. *Effectual steps*—adequate arrangements; measures able to produce the intended effects. *Public authority*—i.e., the government of the country. *Produce*—yield; quantity of crops grown. *Misgiving*—distrust; doubt. *Statistics*—the science which deals with the collection and classification of facts relating to the condition of the people of a country. *Diligence*—industry. *Fidelity*—truthfulness; honesty. *Whose reputation etc.*—who are well-known for their industry and love of truth. *Average*—ordinary; usual. *Rye*—a grain closely resembling wheat but inferior to it. *Quarters*—As a measure of grain a quarter is the fourth part of a ton or eight bushels. A bushel is almost equal to ten seers. *Wretched*—miserable.

**N. B.** Dr. Bowley shows in the following note on the agricultural produce of England that the yield of wheat has greatly fallen off since Macaulay wrote. "The earliest accurate figures date back only from 1866, ten years after Macaulay wrote. The following table shows the increase of agricultural land, and the considerable transference of land from arable

(including all that is ploughed in any part of the rotation of crops) to permanent grass or pasture land :—

		ENGLAND		WALES	
		1866	1907	1866	1907
		<i>Acres</i>	<i>Acres</i>	<i>Acres</i>	<i>Acres</i>
Arable	...	13,236,000	10,778,000	1,026,000	769,000
Permanent grass	...	9,000,000	13,808,000	1,258,000	2,022,000
		<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
Total agricultural area	...	22,236,000	24,586,000	2,284,000	2,791,000
Total area including forests, moors and wastes	...	32,382,000		4,748,000	

The change in the proportion of arable to pasture land is said to have begun soon after 1871.

The wheat crop of England in 1907 was about 6½ million quarters, that of Wales, Scotland and Ireland about half a million. The falling off of this crop is shown roughly as follows :—

*Wheat crop of United Kingdom.*

1848	circa	.....12 millions (Macaulay's 'a wretched crop')
1866-70	.....	11 "
1870-80	.....	9¾ "
1880-90	.....	8¾ "
1890-00	.....	7½ "
1900-06	.....	7 to 7½ millions.

The fall appears now to be checked, temporarily or not. The total crop of Barley, Oats, and Beans in England and Wales in 1907 exceeded 20 million quarters, that of England being 19 millions. This is about the same as Macaulay's estimate for 1848. The fall in the production of cereals appears, then, to be confined to wheat.

Meanwhile, the number of cattle in England has increased by 50 per cent since 1866, that of horses 20 per cent since 1870, that of pigs about 10 per cent since 1866, while the number of sheep has hardly changed. In the increase of dairy

produce and of meat is to be found a counterbalance to the diminution of wheat."

*Computation*—calculation. *Gregory King*—See notes on paragraph 5. *Strongest clay*—i.e., not loamy soil; firm and compact soil. *Consumed*—i.e., used. *Easy*—affluent; well-to-do. *Charles Davenant*—See foot-note to paragraph 5. *Acute*—keen; shrewd. *Well-informed*—well-read. *Though most unprincipled, etc.*—Macaulay refers to Davenant's attacks on the clergy in his *Essays upon the Balance of Power*. *Unprincipled*—dishonest; unscrupulous. *Rancorous*—spiteful; malignant. *As to*—as regards. *Items*—particulars; heads. *Conclusions*—inferences.

**Paragraph 43.** The principle of the rotation of crops was not understood. Cattle were slaughtered in large numbers at the beginning of the cold weather for fodder was scarce, and people had to live on salted meat during winter.

*Rotation of crops*—the practice of cultivating an orderly succession of different crops on the same land. The fertility of the soil is maintained by the regular succession (rotation) of crops. And the reason is this. The soil supplies nitrogen, potash, lime, phosphoric acid and other things as food for the plants that grow on it. Wheat, barley, oats and other crops do not require the same proportion of these things. One crop requires more of potash. Another requires more of hydrogen. So if the same crop is grown in successive seasons on the same plot of land, its fertility as regards certain constituents is completely exhausted. For maintaining and restoring the fertility of the soil a regular rotation of different suitable crops is of the highest value.

*Imperfectly understood*—not thoroughly known. *Lately*—recently. *Turnip*—the familiar vegetable with a roundish root allied to the cabbage. It is much cultivated as food for cattle and sheep especially in winter; শালগম। *Afforded*—provided. *Nutrient*—that which nourishes; food. *Practice*—custom. "Up to the early part of the eighteenth century, husbandry had been poor, and the necessity of leaving corn land fallow once in three years had made the produce of the soil scanty. Lord Townshend, after his quarrel with Walpole, encouraged,



by his example, the cultivation of turnips, and as turnips could be planted in the third year in which the ground had hitherto been left fallow, the crops were largely increased.”—*Gardiner*.

*During the season when etc.—i.e., in winter. Scanty—i.e., not abundant; scarce. Salted—i.e., the meat was preserved with salt. Gentry—gentlemen, not to speak of peasants and men of poorer classes. Tasted—could eat. Game—meat of wild animals and birds used as food. House keeping—management of a house and of domestic affairs. Which were consequently much more etc.—i.e., the meat of wild animals and fish was more commonly used as food than now. Northumberland Household Book—a book containing a record of the regulations and expenses of the Earl of Northumberland in the 15th century. Henry the Seventh—King of England; he reigned from 1485 to 1509. Fresh meat—as opposed to salt meat. Attendant on a great Earl—i.e., who formed the retinue of a powerful noble. Interval—period. Midsummer—the 24th June, the feast of the nativity of St. John the Baptist. Michaelmas—29th September—the feast of St. Michael, the angel. Laid in their stock etc.—stored their supply of salt meat. Martinmas—the 11th November, the feast of St. Martin. Martinmas beef—beef from oxen killed on Martinmas.*

**Paragraph 44.** The sheep and the ox of those times were of a comparatively diminutive size. The horses were of a poor quality and foreign breeds were preferred. The need of improving the native stock by the infusion of new blood was felt by the most competent judges.

*Diminutive—of small size. “In 1755, Bakewell began to improve the breed of sheep and cattle by judicious crossing. The result was that, before long, a sheep or an ox produced twice as many pounds of meat as before, and that the meat was far more tasty. Improvements in agriculture and cattle-breeding were possible, because landowners were wealthy enough to enclose waste lands and to make poor lands fit for culture.”—Gardiner.*

[Page 66, Footnote—*M’ulloch* (1789—1864)—English statistician and political economist. He was the author of a number of statistical and economical works published between 1841 and 1860.]

*Our native horses*—i.e., horses of English stock ; horses born and bred in England *Serviceable*—useful. *Small esteem*—poor repute. *Fetched very low prices*—i.e., were valued very little. *One with another*—on an average. *Foreign breeds*—horses belonging to stocks other than English. *Preferred*—esteemed. *Jennets*—a breed of small Spanish horse. *Chargers*—war-horses *Pageantry*—show ; parade ; public procession or exhibition *Aristocracy*—nobles. *Flemish*—belonging to Flanders. *Trotted*—ran in a steady pace faster than walk. *Peculiar grace*—characteristic charm or elegance. *Reared*—bred ; raised. *Ponderous equipage*—heavy coach. *Rugged pavement*—uneven street. *Dray horse*—a strong, heavy horse used in drawing carts. *Race horse*—a breed of horses remarkable for swiftness ; used in running races.

*Gigantic quadrupeds*—huge animals. The reference is to the English cart horses. These are huge animals usually of a black colour and are about 17 hands ('Hand'—“a lineal measure of horse's height=4 in.—*Oxford Dictionary*) or more high. *Class*—count ; reckon. *Which all foreigners now class etc.*—i.e., visitors to London are struck with surprise at the huge size of these horses. *Walcheren*—the westernmost province of Zeeland in Holland. It is of a low level and marshy in character.

*Childers*—commonly known as Flying Childers was a famous race-horse that had the “Darley Arabian” for its sire. It was foaled in 1715 and died in 1741. The animal was never beaten in any race and was the wonder of its age. *Eclipse*—the most celebrated race-horse in the annals of the turf. It was named after the eclipse of the sun that occurred on 1st April 1764 on which day the animal was foaled. Its racing career commenced in 1769. The animal ran for 18 years and was never beaten. “Eclipse first and the rest nowhere” was the famous remark made by its owner, when this horse easily won the first race. *The ancestors of Childers and Eclipse etc.*—The reference is to the fact that thorough-bred race-horses of modern times trace their descent from Arab horses. The founders of this stock of English horses were *Byerly Turk*, *Darley Arabian* and *Godolphin*. *Arabian*—three Arab horses imported into England in the reign of William III. *Sands*—deserts.

*Passion*—strong love. *Amusements of the turf*—pleasures of the horse-race. *Turf*—a grassy plot ; sod ; hence race

course. Horse-racing received a great impetus during the reign of Charles II. He re-built the house at Newmarket which had been erected by James I but had since fallen into decay. The Round Course was made in 1666 and racing at the head-quarters was regulated in the most systematic way. Charles II was the first monarch who entered and ran horses in his own name. *Studs*—collections of horses kept for racing or riding. *Infusion*—admixture. *By an infusion of new blood*—by crossing it with horses of a different breed. *The importance of improving our studs etc.*—people clearly understood the necessity of improving the English horses by crossing them with horses of a superior breed. *View*—object. *Barbs*—a superior breed of horses found in Barbary in north Africa. **N.B.** James I's taste for racing led him to purchase an Arab stallion named "Markham Arabian." Charles II bought a number of foreign horses and mares for breeding. These included a Barb mare. There were fresh importations in the reign of William III. The best known of these were Byerly Turk, Darley Arabian and Godolphin Arabian from which the modern thorough-breds trace their descent.

*Whose authority on such subjects etc.*—whose opinions on the question deserved the greatest respect. *The Duke of Newcastle*—William Cavendish, Duke of Newcastle (1592-1676), was a staunch adherent of Charles I. He was a patron of Ben Jonson and Dryden and wrote a book "*New Method.....to dress Horses*" in 1667. *Sir John Fenwick* (1579-1658)—an English politician; he was one of the commissioners for the suppression of violence in the border districts and held the office of the high sheriff of Northumberland. *Pronounced*—declared; affirmed. *Meanest hack*—the most worthless horse. A *hack* is a horse used in all kinds of work or a common saddle-horse as distinguished from hunters and racers. *Tangier*—i.e., from Barbary; see notes on paragraph 20. *Finer progeny*—better off-spring. *Sire*—father; the use of the word in this sense is confined to the lower animals. *They would not readily have believed.....Barbary*—Macaulay is referring to the poor quality of English horses in the days of King Charles II, and the great improvement in their quality in later times. Considering the poor quality of the English horses in the 17th century it was difficult for Englishmen of those times like the Duke of Newcastle and Sir John Fenwick to believe that in later times

English horses would reach a very high standard of excellence. It was difficult for them to believe that foreigners in future times would be as eager to import English horses as Englishmen of their time were eager to obtain horses from Barbary and other foreign countries.

**Paragraph 45.** The increase of the mineral wealth of England has been much greater than the increase of the animal and vegetable produce. The only mines then worked were those of tin in Cornwall producing a third of their present yield. The copper mines were not worked. The salt manufactured was of a poor quality and large importations had to be made from France.

*Vegetable and animal produce*—i.e., agricultural wealth and the wealth of live-stock, i.e., cattle, horses etc. *Mineral wealth*—wealth derived from produce of the mines. *Cornwall*—a county in the south-west of England; it is rich in tin and other minerals. *Tyrian sails*—Phœnician ships (*Synecdoche*). Tyre was an ancient Phœnician city, situated on the coast of Syria. The Phœnicians were the most daring sailors and enterprising merchants of ancient times. They are said to have carried on trade with Britain in the west and India in the east.

*The pillars of Hercules*—a translation of Latin *Columnæ Herculis*; a name given by the ancient Romans to the rock of Gibraltar (old name Calpe) and the mountain on the other side of the strait (Abyla).

**N.B.** This name—the pillars of Hercules—was given to these mountains in allusion to the legend that Hercules in the course of his travels in search of the oxen of Geryones raised

---

[Page 68, Footnote—*Dappled Flanders mares*—a quotation from Pope's Epistle to Mrs. Martha Blount :

"The gods, to curse Pamela with her prayers,  
Gave the gilt coach and dappled Flanders mares."

*Dappled*—spotted; "variegated with rounded spots or patches or colour of shade"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Marks of greatness*—signs of wealth and high social position. *Pope* (1688—1744)—a famous English poet. *Vulgar proverb*—popular saying. *The grey mare is the better horse*—a proverbial expression, meaning a wife who rules over her husband. The proverb seems to be older, though its connection with "Flanders mares" may have given it a new piquancy.]

these pillars as the monuments of journey. They were regarded by the ancients as the farthest limit of a man's travels. *Cornwall*—Cornwall and Devon were known in ancient times under the name of *Cassiterides* or the "Tin island." It is not known for certain whether Phœnician or Carthaginian traders actually visited Cornwall or whether they obtained their supply of tin through Gaul. But it is known definitely that the tin of the district was largely exported from a very early period and that the mines were still worked under the Romans.

*Subterranean productions*—mineral produce. *Subterranean*—lying under the surface of the earth or under ground. *Extracted*—drawn; produced. *About a third of what it now is*—the produce of the Cornish tin-mines amounted to 5500 tons in 1850. It rose to 10,200 tons in 1870 but has been decreasing since then.

*Veins of copper*—narrow masses of rocks full of copper ore intersecting other rocks. *Vein*—"fissure in rock filled with deposited matter"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *In the same region*—i.e., close to the tin-mines of Cornwall. *Landowner*—owner of an estate or landed property. *Account*—consideration. *Estimating*—calculating. **N.B.** The copper mines of Cornwall remained unnoticed till recent times because the mineral lies deep in the earth.

In 1851 the mines of Devon and Cornwall together were estimated to furnish one-third of the copper raised throughout other parts of Europe and the British Isles. The production of the English copper-mines has greatly decreased since then because it can be obtained more cheaply from elsewhere. Dr. Bowley shows that the total yield of the Cornish mines that amounted to 20,000 tons in 1854 sank to 670 tons in 1907. *Yield*—produce. *Of all description*—of all classes of minerals.

*Bed*—layer or seam. *Rock salt*—mineral salt; salt occurring in rocklike masses in mines. There are other varieties of

[Page 69, Footnote.—*Tonkin* (1678--1742)—Cornish historian; he projected a history of Cornwall for which he collected topographical and genealogical information. *Lord de Dunstarville* (1757--1835)—a politician and an author of political and agricultural treatises. *Carew* (1555--1620)—was the author of a "*Survey of Cornwall*" published in 1602.

*Borlase* (1695-1772)—an English antiquary; wrote several works including "*Cornish Antiquities*". *Returns*—statistics.]

salt such as sea-salt, bay-salt. *Cheshire*—an English county on the western coast bordering on the river Mersey. The chief English salt-mines are situated in this county. Salmon notes that the first bed of rock-salt was discovered near Northwich in 1670 in Cheshire during a search for coal.

*Rude process*—crude. unskilful means or operation of manufacture. *Brine pits*—springs or wells of salt water from which water is taken to be manufactured into salt. *Brine*—salt water. *Was held in no high etc.*—was considered to be of poor quality. *Pans*—i.e., brine pans, i.e., “iron vessels or shallow pits”—(*Oxford Dictionary*): basins of salt water where salt is formed by evaporation. *Exhaled*—gave out. *Sulphurous stench*—offensive smell like that of sulphur. *Evaporation*—the transformation of a liquid or a solid into vapour. Salt is manufactured by collecting sea-water into a shallow basin and allowing the water to evaporate through heat. *The substance which was left*—the solid portion that remained after the disappearance of water. *Was scarcely fit etc.*—because it was salt of a very crude type and contained many impurities. *Attributed*—ascribed; considered as being due.

*Scorbutic*—pertaining to the disease of scurvy. For an explanation of ‘scurvy’, see notes on paragraph 31. *Pulmonary*—pertaining to the lungs. *Scorbutic and pulmonary complaints*—scurvy and the diseases of the lungs. *Unwholesome condiment*—unhealthy seasoning. *Condiment*—something which adds taste or relish to food; here used to mean salt. [*condiment*, n. Thing used to give relish to food—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Regular* systematic. *Considerable*—large.

*Springs*—i.e., of salt water. *Our own immense demand*—i.e., the huge quantity required for the consumption of the English nation. *Foreign countries*—e.g., India where English salt is even now largely consumed by the poorer classes.

**Paragraph 46.** The growth of the manufacture of iron has been much greater. Iron could then be manufactured on a very small scale because the employment of wood for the

---

[Page 70, Footnote—*Philosophical Transactions*—the journal in which the work of the Royal Society is published.]

smelting of ores was forbidden by law. Towards the close of Charles II's reign the total quantity of iron, manufactured in England, did not exceed ten thousand tons.

*Improvement*—growth : development. *Iron works*—establishments for the manufacture of iron. *Long existed*—Iron mines were first worked in Britain in the first century B.C. *Prospered*—flourished. *Regarded with no favourable eye*—i.e., viewed with dislike. *Smelting the ore*—melting (or fusing) the ore for the purpose of separating and refining the metal. *Ore*—the unrefined form in which metal is found in mines. The ore was melted in those times by means of charcoal fire. *The rapid consumption of wood*—the quick destruction of forests to supply fuel for the iron manufacturers. *Ercited the alarm of politicians*—roused the fear of the public men, i.e., it was feared that if wood were consumed at such a rapid rate, the whole country would soon be without timber.

*Elizabeth*—Queen of England : she reigned from 1558 to 1603. *Feeding the furnaces*—supplying fuel to the huge furnaces in which iron ore was heated. **N.B.** About the end of the 16th century the iron-works of Sussex and the neighbouring counties had grown so extensive that their consumption of timber for fuel became a serious matter. So an Act was passed in Elizabeth's reign to prevent their further extension. Attempts were now made to use coal as a fuel. A patent for this purpose was granted in 1611 to a manufacturer who however does not seem to have been successful. Somewhat later Dud Dudley succeeded in producing both cast iron and malleable iron by the aid of coke but met with so much opposition from the charcoal smelters that he abandoned the process. *Interfered*—interposed. *The Parliament had interfered etc.*—i.e., the practice of burning wood for the manufacture of iron was forbidden by law. In 1558 a law was passed forbidding the use of wood as fuel for iron furnaces. *Languished*—declined ; did not prosper. *From abroad*—from foreign countries. *Cast*—i.e., manufactured ; to form into a particular shape by pouring liquid metal into a mould ; the reference is to the production of pig-iron, i.e., iron cast into the form of blocks or bars as it comes from the smelting furnace. Pig-iron is afterwards converted into steel and other forms of iron. *Depressed state*—dull condition.

*If less than a million of tons etc.*—The enormous growth of English iron industry since Macaulay wrote will appear from the following figures collected by Bowley.

	Quantity of pig-iron produced
1854	3,100,000 tons
1870	6000000 ..
1880	7700000 ..
1903	8900000 ..

**Paragraph 47.** Coal was used not for any manufacture. It was used as ordinary fuel for domestic consumption in the districts where it was produced and in London. The annual consumption of coal in London in the present age is at least ten times of what it was in those times.

*More important than iron itself*—because coal lies at the root of England's wealth and industrial greatness. *Species*—kind. *Ordinary fuel*—substance commonly used for domestic fires. *Beds*—seams; deposits; coal-field. *Water-carriage*—transport by sea and river. *Which could easily be supplied, etc.*—where it could be easily carried by sea or water. Hence it was commonly known by the name of *sea-coal* to distinguish it from charcoal brought by land. *Extracted*—raised. *Pits*—mines. *Consumed*—used up. *Imperial city*—the mighty city of London, the capital of a powerful empire. *The consumption of London etc.*—the huge quantity of coal used in London appeared to indicate the wealth of the people. *They scarcely hoped to be believed*—i.e., they considered it to be almost unbelievable. *Affirmed*—stated. *Chaldrons*—a measure of coal varying in different places. A London chaldron is about twenty-five hundredweights and a half—a Newcastle chaldron being about double of this quantity. *Metropolis*—properly mother city; hence the chief city of a kingdom.

*Annual produce*—yearly output. *Moderate computation*—modest calculation. Bowley quotes the following figures to

---

[Page 71, Footnote—Yarranton (1616--1684)—a famous engineer and agriculturist; published works on various schemes for improvement of English manufactures and commerce. Porter (1792-1852)—an economist and statistician; published "*The Progress of the Nation from the Beginning of the Nineteenth Century*" 1836-43 and other papers. *Perspicuous*—clear; lucid. *Compass*—bulk; extent.]



show the enormous increase in the produce of coal in the United Kingdom since Macaulay wrote :—

1850	...	...	40,000,000 tons
1854	...	...	64,600,000 "
1870	...	...	110,431,000 "
1880	...	...	146,970,000 "
1907	...	...	267.831,000 "

**Paragraph 48.** In England rent has been rising along with these changes. The increase has been different in different districts.

It has on the average increased fourfold.

*Have been in progress*—have been taking place. *Constantly*—steadily. *Multiplied*—increased. *Quadrupled*—grown four times.

**Paragraph 49.** A large proportion of rent was divided among country gentlemen. Their position and character decided the fate of the nation at important crises.

*Proportion*—share. *Was divided among*—was shared or enjoyed by. *Country gentlemen*—landed proprietors living in the rural parts of the country and occupying a rank below the nobility and above the yeomanry; moffusil zemindars with moderate estates and incomes. *Position*—social rank. *Influence*—power and authority.

**N.B.** The country gentlemen (the moffusil zemindars of England with moderate incomes) exercised a great deal of influence in the politics of the country. They filled the higher posts in the public services, in the army and the navy. Most of the higher ecclesiastical offices were held by them. Their voice counted for much in the counsels of government. They practically controlled the social and political life of the country.

*Passions*—strong feelings, enthusiasms and prejudices. For example, their love of monarchy helped the restoration of King Charles II to the throne; their hatred of Roman Catholicism led to the passing of the Test Act. *Conjunctures*—crises. *Determined*—shaped; decided. *For by their influence etc.*—for

the influence of these men shaped the history of the nation under critical circumstances.\*

**Paragraph 50.** The country gentlemen of those times were rude and unrefined compared with their present descendants. They were poorer, and hence they were compelled to live on their estates. So their tastes could not be refined by foreign travel or frequent visits to London, the capital. They were men of little education, culture or refinement; often coarse and even vulgar in their amusements; indulging freely in oaths and abuses, living in houses that could boast of no decoration, and eating and drinking in excess. Their lives were spent among rustic companions in the pursuit of rural occupations.

**N.B.** The picture of the country gentleman's character is a little exaggerated. It may be true in details, but the total impression of coarseness and vulgarity is hardly true to fact. In his usual way, Macaulay is swept on by the force of rhetoric.

*We should be much mistaken*—it would be a serious error. *Pictured to ourselves*—imagined. *Squires*—properly attendants on knights of former times; hence country gentlemen: landed proprietors of good families below the rank of nobles. *County members*—knights of the shires; representatives of the counties or districts in Parliament (as distinguished from the representatives of cities or boroughs). *Chairmen*—presidents. *Quarter sessions*—a criminal court held every three months by justices of the peace in the counties for the trial of criminal cases and for the disposal of miscellaneous business like matters connected with highways, Poor Law administration etc. The chairmen of these meetings would be very important personages in the districts. The term *quarter* refers to the fact that these courts met every three months. [**Quarter sessions**, a court of Justices of the Peace (q.v.) established in 1350-51, and meeting once a quarter. Most of their administrative duties were in 1888 transferred to the county councils—Chambers's *Encyclopædia*.]

*With whom we are familiar*—i.e., whom we see in our times. *Liberal education*—training befitting a gentleman; education that enlarges and disciplines the mind. *Distinguished school*—famous and respectable school. Macaulay is thinking

of the famous public schools of England such as Eton, Harrow, etc. *Distinguished college*—Macaulay is referring to the famous colleges of Oxford and Cambridge. *An excellent scholar*—a man of culture and learning. *He has generally seen etc.*—very commonly he has travelled through foreign countries (France, Germany, Italy, etc.). In modern times the education of an English student is not considered complete before he has taken a tour through foreign countries after finishing his studies at college. *Considerable part*—large portion. *Has generally been, etc.*—because it is now the fashion for well-to-do people to visit London during the season. *Refinements of the capital*—polish and elegance that characterise town life. *The refinements of the capital, etc.*—He displays in his country home the polished and the elegant tastes that he acquired in the capital. *Rural seats*—country abodes. *Seat*—"a country mansion with park or large grounds"—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Pleasure grounds*—gardens surrounding a house laid out in an ornamental manner, and used for out-door pleasures or amusements. *Dressed*—beautifully decked; elegantly arranged. *Disguised*—concealed, hidden, cloaked—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Art*—the application or employment of means or knowledge for the production of beautiful effect.

*In the parks and pleasure grounds.....alluring form*—**Expl.** Macaulay here refers to the type of English gardens in his own days. The parks and pleasure grounds of rich Englishmen are examples of Nature dressed and improved by the Art of Man. But in these Art is not too prominent; it does not disguise the beauty of Nature by excessive symmetry, regularity and other artificial things. In such a style of gardening the beauty of Nature is seen to best advantage as touched by Art. The expression is an echo of Pope's famous line—"True Art is Nature to advantage dressed."

*Wears her most alluring form*—assumes her most attractive shape; looks very charming and beautiful.

*The buildings*—the house as distinguished from the pleasure grounds. *Good sense*—sound practical wisdom or judgment regarding the comfort and convenience of the house. *Good taste*—sense of refinement and beauty (in order to make the house look beautiful). *Combine*—unite. *Happy union*—apt and

appropriate combination. *Combine to produce a happy union etc.*—render the house both pleasant and beautiful. *In the buildings .....the graceful*—**Expl.** Macaulay says that the modern country gentlemen show both practical wisdom and love of beauty in the building of their homes. The houses show a happy combination of both practical convenience and beauty and elegance of structure. The houses not only make us feel cosy and comfortable but they also please us by their beauty of design and structure.

*The musical instruments*—like the piano and the organ. *The library*—well-stocked with valuable literary and scientific works. *Owner*—master. *Eminently*—highly. *Polished*—elegant; refined. *Accomplished*—possessed of graces and attainments necessary for cultivated society. *Who witnessed the Revolution*—i.e., who lived during the latter part of the 17th century. The Revolution occurred in 1689; see notes on paragraph 14. *Was probably in receipt of*—had possibly an income of. *Acres*—lands. *Posterity*—descendants. *Was generally under the necessity of residing*—was compelled (by his poverty) to dwell. *With little interruption*—i.e., almost continuously. *On his estate*—i.e., in his rural seat where his property lay. *To travel on the Continent*—as the country gentlemen generally do in modern times.

*Establishment*—household, with furniture, servants etc. *In which only the great etc.*—which only the owners of very large estates could afford to enjoy. It was a luxury in which only very rich men could indulge. *Confidently affirmed*—stated without any doubt. *Were then in the Commissions of Peace and Lieutenancy*—then held the offices of the Justices of the Peace and Lord-Lieutenants or their deputies. *Commissions of Peace*—Justices of the Peace are appointed by Commissions issued under the great seal of the crown. The Lords-Lieutenants are appointed by a Royal Commission. They manage the military concerns of their shires and nominate to the Chancellor the Justices of the Peace for their counties. [*lord-lieutenant*, n. chief executive authority and head of magistracy in each county—*Oxford Dictionary*.]

*Not one in twenty*—i.e., very few. *Wandered*—travelled. *Lords of manors*—landed proprietors; zemindars: see notes on paragraph 18. [*manor*, n. English territorial unit, orig. of

nature of feudal lordship, now consisting of lord's demesne and of lands from whose holders he can exact certain fees etc.; *lord of the manor*, person.....having rights of this—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Differing little from*—not much superior to. *Menial servants*—domestic servants for the performance of low offices. *The heir of an estate*—*i.e.*, the son of the squire. *The seat of his family*—the family residence in the country. *Grooms*—servants who have the charge of horses or the stables. *Gamekeepers*—men who have the charge of game or the wild animals preserved in a park. *Attained*—acquired. *Mittimus*—(*Lat.* we send) a warrant issued by a magistrate for committing a person charged with a crime to prison. The warrant began with the word *mittimus*, *i.e.*, we send. *Scarce attained etc.*—had just sufficient learning to be able to sign his name on a warrant of commitment to prison, *i.e.*, was almost illiterate. *Seclusion*—retirement. *Returned .....the old hall*—came back from college very early and resumed the old isolated mode of life at this country seat. He lived a secluded and isolated life cut off from all cultured company. *Hall*—"residence of landed proprietor"—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Unless his mind were very happily constituted by nature*—unless he possessed a natural talent for study and for literary pursuits. *Academical pursuits*—scholarly occupations; literary studies. *Rural business and pleasures*—rustic occupation and rude pleasures in which countrymen indulge. *Chief serious employment*—main and important occupation. *The care of his property*—the management of his estate. *Samples*—specimens. *Grain*—corn. *Handled pigs*—examined the quality of these animals by feeling them with the hand. *He examined samples of grain etc.*—Macaulay implies that one of the chief occupations of the country squires was to sell the produce of their lands to advantage. **N.B.** All the occupations here mentioned are likely to coarsen the mind. So he loses all the delicacy and refinement of mind fostered by his college life.

*Market days*—days on which markets are held (*i.e.*, people meet at an appointed place for buying and selling things). **N.B.** Villages in Bengal have their *hat* ( हट ) days. *Made bargains*—haggled over the prices of articles, concluded agreements for the sale of his articles. *A Tankard*—a large drinking cup. *Drovers*—those who drive sheep and cattle to the market;

cattle-dealers. *Hop*—a fruit extensively grown in England for flavouring liquors. *Made bargains over a tankard etc.*—i.e., drank wine with these common people and settled prices of things; so mixed familiarly with rustic traders. *Field sports*—out-door sports, i.e., hunting, fishing and athletic games. *Unrefined sensuality*—indulgence in coarse carnal pleasures. *Pronunciation*—style or manner of utterance. *Clowns*—ignorant or ill-bred men; rustics; churls. *Oaths*—Swearing is forbidden in modern polite society. *Coarse*—rude; indecent; indelicate. *Scurrilous terms of abuse*—foul and vulgar language employed by him in abusing others. *Scurrilous*—"grossly or obscenely abusive"—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Broadest accent of his province*—strongly marked style of pronunciation peculiar to his district. This was the result of his being brought up in the rural parts of the country. People who mix intimately with the refined society, gathered at the capital, learn to get rid of the provincial accents. *Province*—here shire or district of England. N.B. People in districts (Chittagong, Mymensingh, Nadia, etc.) of Bengal speak different dialects of the same Bengali language and differ much in pronunciation. So also Englishmen of different shires (Yorkshire, Somersetshire etc.) differ markedly in the pronunciation of the same English words. *Discern*—make out; understand. *Broadest*—most marked: "most downright in sound"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *From the first words which he spoke*—i.e., from the style of his pronunciation.

*It was easy etc.*—Dialects differ in different districts particularly in the mode of pronunciation. The dialects of East Bengal, for example, are clearly different in pronunciation from those of Western Bengal. So the dialect of Somersetshire is different from that of Yorkshire. These peculiarities of dialectal pronunciation were noticeable in the speech of the country gentleman, as they were without much culture and learning.

*Troubled himself little*—did not much care. *Decorating his abode*—adorning or embellishing his house. *Deformity*—ugliness. *If he attempted decoration etc.*—As he was a man of rude and vulgar tastes, his attempts to embellish the house only served to disfigure it. It could in no way be compared to the beautiful country seats of the modern country gentlemen. *Litter*—rubbish; refuse.

*Farmyard*—the yard or inclosure attached to a barn. *Gathered*—was collected. *Gooseberry bushes*—prickly shrubs producing the well-known English fruit. *The litter of the farmyard etc.*—This indicates the unclean and slovenly manner in which the house was kept. *Hall*—the chief room in a castle or manor house of former times. It generally stood at the entrance of the house. *Loaded with*—provided plentifully with. *Coarse plenty*—abundance of common, inferior food. *Cordially*—warmly. *His table was loaded etc.*—He was a hospitable man who freely invited guests to his house. His table could not supply any delicacies but there was an abundance of common inferior food. *To excess*—immoderately. *As the habit etc.*—as the country gentlemen of those times were addicted to hard drinking. *His fortune*—his limited means. *Intoxicate*—entertain with drink. *Large assemblies*—i.e., the crowd of guests gathered at his table.

*Claret*—a sort of expensive red wine made at Bordeaux in France. *Canary*—wine made in the Canary islands: called also sack. Claret and canary are comparatively costly wines. *Beer*—an intoxicating drink made from malted grain. It is a comparatively cheap drink and is commonly used by the poorer classes in England. *Ordinary beverage*—usual drink. *All that beer now is*—i.e., a light sort of drink used for refreshment and quenching of thirst. *Tea*—came into popular use in England long after Charles II's reign. In those times it was regarded as a great luxury. *Ardent spirits*—strong, invigorating drinks: distilled liquors like rum, brandy, whisky.

*At great houses*—at the houses of very rich men. *On great occasions*—i.e., at the times of very important and rare feasts. *Foreign drink*—i.e., French and Spanish wines. *Board*—table. *That foreign drink etc.*—The guests were provided with French and Spanish wines. *Whose business it had commonly etc.*—N.B. This line throws an interesting light on the social customs of those times. Ladies belonging to the respectable families of the country gentlemen of those times did not feel it beneath their dignity to act as the family cooks. In modern times the task of cooking the food is entrusted to servants kept for the purpose. *Repast*—meal. *Retired*—withdrew from the dining hall. *Devoured*—eaten greedily. *Left the gentlemen to etc.*—the

gentlemen were left to themselves so that they might drink and smoke to their heart's content. It is still the custom for the ladies to leave the hall as soon as the meal is over so that the gentlemen may enjoy their smoke.

*Ale*—an intoxicating drink allied to beer ; “liquor made from an infusion of malt by fermentation, flavoured with hops etc.” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Coarse jollity*—vulgar merry-making. *Prolonged*—continued. *Revellers*—merry-makers. *Were laid under the table*—grew quite intoxicated and fell down unconscious on the floor. *The coarse jollity of the afternoon etc.*—**Expl.** This sentence describes the coarse pleasures of the country gentlemen of the 17th century. Drinking was the chief source of pleasure of these men. When feasting with their friends they would drink hard until they grew intoxicated and dropped senseless on the ground.

**Paragraph 51.** On account of his ignorance and inexperience of the world the country gentleman was a man of narrow prejudices. His mind was not broadened by wide travels and knowledge of the great world. He adhered strongly to conventions and ancient customs. For what was beyond the narrow circle of his ideas he cherished the deepest hatred and distrust. The acquirements of his wife and daughters did not rise above those of a house-keeper of the present day.

*Caught glimpses of*—could get a view of ; could see. *The great world*—human society and affairs in Britain and in foreign countries lying outside his narrow sphere (or range of experience).

*What he saw of it etc.*—i.e., on those rare occasions when he travelled in his own country or in foreign countries. He realised that among his own countrymen, Englishmen, also in foreign countries there were ways of living and thinking different from his own. But in his narrowness and prejudice he could not sympathize with them. He was only perplexed by them. *Tended*—served. *Former times*—past ages. *Observation*—personal experience. *Enlightened*—cultured and well-informed. *Traditions*—commonly accepted opinions. *Current*—generally received ; common. *His own small circle*—the few companions among whom he moved ; his small set. *Were the opinions of a child*—were quite childish ; were quite stupid and



unreasonable. Like children they never think for themselves but receive implicitly the opinions and ideas current among persons of their class. *Adhered*—held fast; clung. *Obstinacy*—stubbornness; pertinacity. *Fed with*—gratified with; treated with. *He adhered to them.....flattery*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes the remark in connection with his description of the English country gentlemen of the 17th century. These men had little education, information and experience: and their opinions on religion, government and foreign countries and past ages were childish and often quite unreasonable. But though unreasonable, they held to these opinions with the obstinacy characteristic of ignorant men. Such men are never aware of their own limitations; and so they are apt to think very highly of their own wisdom. This is especially the case when they move in the society of their humble dependents, tenants and servants, who are always flattering them.

*Animosities*—antipathies; strong dislikes. *Bitter*—violent; strong. *His animosities were numerous and bitter*—The objects of his strong dislike were many in number; he deeply hated many men and institutions. *He hated Frenchmen, Italians, Scotchmen and Irishmen*—The popular English dislike against these nations continued in a strong form till the 19th century. **N.B.** Even now Englishmen think much too highly of themselves; and have a somewhat poor opinion of foreigners.

*Papists*—followers of the Pope of Rome; a contemptuous term for Roman Catholics. *Presbyterians*—a sect of Christians who do not believe in the government of the Christian Church by bishops. The Presbyterians want that the control of the Church should be vested in associations of ministers and elders. The Scottish Church is mainly Presbyterian. *Independents*—called also Congregationalists; members of the Christian sect who believe that every congregation of Christians forms an independent religious society by itself. *Baptists*—members of the Christian sect who do not believe in infant baptism and mere sprinkling of water. They hold that baptism should be administered to believers alone and by immersion. *Quakers*—members of the Christian religious sect called *The Society of Friends*. It is “devoted to peace principles, plainness of dress (esp. the use of drab or grey), simplicity of speech (esp. the use of *thee* and avoidance of titles and words suggestive of

paganism, such as names of days of the week) and peculiar priestless religious meetings"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). The sect was founded by George Fox in 1650 and the members were called Quakers originally in derision, because they were strongly agitated when addressing public meetings.

*Jews*—These people were since early times the objects of the deepest dislike of the orthodox Christians. *Aversion*—hatred. *More than once*—several times. *Produced important political effects*—seriously affected the course of English political history. **N.B.** During the Civil War the country gentlemen mostly sided with the King while the people of London ranged themselves on the side of the Parliament. Towards the end of the reign of Charles II the country gentlemen rallied to his side to enable him to defeat the power of the Whigs who had their stronghold in London. The people of London were Whigs in political principle. The country gentlemen were Tories. *Tastes*—critical judgment. *Acquirements*—attainments: education. *Housekeeper*—the head of the menial establishment of a household; she is generally a woman and supervises the management of the domestic affairs. *Still-room*—strictly speaking a room where liquors were distilled. *Still-room maid*—a female servant in charge of the store of liquors, preserves and kindred things in a household.

*Stitched*—‘to stitch’ properly is to mend rents in garments: hence sewed. *Spun*—Spinning was the usual occupation of women in those times. *Brewed*—prepared; *to brew* is to prepare an intoxicating liquor like beer or ale. *Gooseberry wine*—a light sort of wine prepared from fermented gooseberry. *Cured*—preserved by drying or salting. *Marigolds*—the familiar plant with golden yellow flower (गौदाकुल) The dried flowers are used as seasoning for food. *Crust*—the hard cover or case of a pie as distinguished from its soft contents. *Venison*—the flesh of deer. *Pasty*—meat pie; meat surrounded with a crust made of a sheet of paste. *They stitched and spun etc.*—Macaulay means to imply that the ladies of those days did not possess any liberal education. The training that they had received fitted them to perform ably their housewifely duties. They sewed and spun and cooked delicacies for the family.

**Paragraph 52.** The country gentleman though rude and ignorant was essentially a gentleman. He had a keen family pride and a strong sense of his dignity as a magistrate and an officer of the militia. He had a keen sense of honour and was ready to risk his life rather than cast a stain on his honour.

*Esquire*—now commonly shortened into 'squire'; country gentleman. *Materially*—substantially; essentially. *Müller*—a man who keeps a flour mill; a miller is a man of poor education and humble social position. *Alehouse*—a house where ale is sold in retail; beer house. *Noted*—pointed out. *Modify this estimate*—alter this opinion. *Unlettered*—uneducated, ignorant. *Unpolished*—rude; uncultured. *Important points*—essential respects. *Distinguished by*—noted for. *The good and bad qualities*—the virtues and vices. *Aristocrats*—men of high social positions; a small class of men ruling the political and social life of the country. [*aristocrat*, n. One of a ruling oligarchy; one of the class of nobles—*Oxford Dictionary*] *Family pride*—pride of descent; a keen sense of the nobility of the family in which he was born. *Was beyond*—i.e. was more. *A Talbot*—a member of the Talbot family. The Talbots were a very old and distinguished family of English nobles with the Earl of Shrewsbury as their head. The first Earl of Shrewsbury distinguished himself in the Hundred Years' War during the reign of Henry V.

*Howard*—another very old and distinguished family of English nobles with the Duke of Norfolk as their head. The first Duke of Norfolk fought in the Wars of the Roses on the side of the Yorkists and was slain at Bosworth.

*His family pride*.....*Howard*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this remark in connection with his description of the English country gentlemen of the 17th century. He means to say that though these men were rude and ignorant, yet they were full of pride of birth. Indeed their pride in this respect was even greater than that of the members of the noblest families of the country, such as the Talbots and the Howards. *Genealogies*—accounts of the origin and descent of families; pedigrees. *Coats of arms*—armorial bearings; heraldic devices; marks of honour on shields or coats distinguishing families of nobles. *Neighbours*—refer to the country gentlemen in

his neighbourhood. *Assumed*—(here) usurped. *Supporters*—figures of men and animals placed on either side of an escutcheon or coat of arms. In the British royal arms, there are two 'supporters', a lion and a unicorn. *Any right*—any just claim. *Supporters* can be used only by men sprung from noble families who were granted the privilege by the King.

*Aldermen*—members of a municipal board next in rank to a mayor. *These offices in England were generally held by merchants.* Macaulay refers here to the contempt which English gentlemen of former times felt for merchants. Businessmen as a class were regarded as being of a decidedly inferior social position. The descendants of successful merchants might live like country squires. But they were looked down upon by country gentlemen because of their descent from merchants. *Which of them were so unfortunate etc.*—i.e., the country gentleman remembered that some of his neighbours who posed as squires, had the misfortune to be descended from some successful merchant: he therefore did not consider them to be fully his social equals.

*Gratis*—free: without any recompense. Macaulay pointed out in paragraph 36 that the work of administration was performed mostly by honorary officers. *Rude*—primitive: rough and ready. *Patriarchal justice*—justice administered after the manner of the ancient patriarchs. *A patriarch* was in ancient history the head and ruler of a family who governed it by paternal right. *Rude patriarchal justice*—Macaulay refers to primitive forms of law and justice. In very ancient times, justice was administered (i.e., disputes were settled) by heads of families or tribes called patriarchs. This justice was rude because finer points of law were not discussed by the patriarchs. They were guided by broad and general considerations of right and wrong. Still the justice of the patriarchs checked the lawlessness of primitive men and was certainly better than the earlier condition of utter anarchy.

*Innumerable blunders*—numerous mistakes. The ignorant, ill-educated country gentleman could not be expected to be well-versed in law. So his decisions were bound to be full of errors. *Occasional*—occurring at times: casual. *Than no justice at all*—i.e., than utter anarchy.

*Trainbands*—See notes on paragraph 19. *Military dignity*—important rank as a military officer. *Might move the mirth of*—might rouse the laughter of; might be sneered at by. *Gallants*—daring spirits: brave young men. *Served a campaign*—fought. *Flanders*—The reference is to the English regiments that had fought on the side of the Dutch against Spain. Flanders is the name of a province in Belgium.

*Raised his character etc.*—filled him and his neighbours with a sense of his own dignity. He thought highly of his own importance as a military officer and his neighbours too did the same.

*Soldiership*—martial quality. *Derision*—contempt; scorn. *Nor indeed was his etc.*—His warlike qualities could not be a just object of scorn, i.e., he was no contemptible soldier. *Elderly*—bordering on old age: advanced beyond middle age. *Who had seen service*—who had fought in battles. *No child's play*—no easy task; really hard fighting. *Which was no child's play*—which required very hard fighting and was full of dangers. *There were elderly etc.*—Macaulay refers here to the veterans of the Civil War between Charles I and Parliament. *Knighted*—promoted to the rank of a knight for the courage and skill he displayed in the battle. The rank of a knight is immediately below that of the nobles and entitles its possessor to prefix *Sir* before his Christian name.

*Battle of Edgehill*—The first battle of the Civil War fought in 1642 between King Charles I and Parliament. In this battle the Royalist army obtained some advantage over their enemy. **N.B.** The student should remember that in the Civil War the greater part of the country gentlemen had fought on the side of the King and the majority of the middle classes of the towns had sided with Parliament. *Patch*—a small piece of silk used to cover a defect on the face; a piece of plaster put over the scar left by the wound. *Scar*—the mark left by a wound. *Naseby*—the last important battle of the Civil War fought in 1645. It resulted in a complete defeat of the Royalist army. *Defended his old house*—Many of the English nobles and country gentlemen fought on the side of the King and they converted their residences into royalist strongholds (forts) during the Civil War. *Fairfax*—the Parliamentary general; see notes on

paragraph 15. *Blown in the door*—broken down the door to force an entrance. *Petard*—a kind of bomb consisting of a metal case filled with powder, used in former times to break down gates and barricades.

*Cavaliers*—the name assumed by the partisans of Charles I. A *cavalier* is literally a horseman, and then a courtly gentleman. The Royalists were so called because they were mostly courtly gentlemen. **N. B.** They called their Puritan opponents (the partisans of Parliament) *Roundheads*, because the Puritans cropped their hair short. *Old swords*—i.e., historic swords used in battles. *Holsters*—leathern cases for pistols carried by horsemen in the forepart of the saddles. *Goring*—George Goring (1608-1657) joined the royalist side on the outbreak of the Civil War. He raised reinforcement for the royalist cause in Holland and defeated Fairfax at Seacroft Moor in 1643. He commanded the left wing of the Royalist army at Marston Moor and made a successful charge at the second battle of Newbury in 1644. After the final defeat of the King he retired to Spain where he commanded the English regiments in Spanish service. His father George Goring, Earl of Norwich, was also a staunch royalist and fought on the side of the King. *Lunsford*—There were three brothers Lunsford, Thomas, Herbert and Henry; all these were royalists and fought on the side of the King. Thomas, knighted in 1641, was taken prisoner at Edgehill, but was subsequently released. He then settled in Virginia where he died. Herbert was present at Edgehill and was knighted in 1645. Henry was killed at the siege of Bristol.

*Muster*—"assembling of men for inspection, etc."—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Musters of militia*—assembling of the militia men for review. *Earnest*—businesslike; serious. *Warlike aspect*—martial character. *Wanting*—absent. *The presence of these old etc.*—The officers of the militia were mostly country gentlemen. The militia was not, however, a body of amateur or unskilled soldiers. Some of the country gentlemen had served in the Civil War. They talked of the old days, of their old generals, and were proud of the weapons with which they had fought in the Civil War. These veterans with their experience of war made the militia look like a body of real soldiers. *Exchanged blows with*—fought against. *Cuirassiers*—soldiers protected with

a cuirass or breast plate. The cuirass was a piece of defensive armour made of iron plate covering the whole body from the neck to the girdle. It was adopted as the armour of English soldiers in the reign of Charles I. *Traces of recent war*—marks left by the Civil War on their castles and elsewhere. *Fed*—brought up.

*Martial exploits*—warlike achievements. *Compounded of*—made up of. *Elements*—traits. The two elements are (1) lack of education and refinement, and (2) a strong sense of dignity, honour and family-pride. *We are not accustomed etc.*—we do not commonly find to go together. *Uncouthness*—clumsiness: awkwardness. *Low*—unrefined. *Gross phrases*—rude and coarse language. *Indicating*—showing. *Breeding*—training. *A nature and a breeding*—a character and training. *Thoroughly plebeian*—utterly low and vulgar. *Plebeian*—befitting one of low birth; coarse; base: ignoble. *Essentially*—fundamentally. *Patrician*—aristocrat: properly an ancient Roman noble. **N.B.** In ancient Rome, the people were divided into two classes: (1) the *patricians* or aristocrats, (2) the *plebeians* or the common people. The plebeians were without political rights and privileges. The patricians, i.e., men of noble birth monopolised all power and privilege. So *patrician* has come to mean 'an aristocrat' and *plebeian* has come to mean 'a person of low birth'. *In large measure*—to a great extent.

*Flourish*—thrive; grow. *Set*—placed. *Place*—rank; station. *Set from their birth in high place*—born to a noble rank. *Accustomed to authority*—used to exercise command. *Observance*—respectful attention: homage. *Self-respect*—sense of his own dignity. *A generation*—people living in an age; the reference is to people of Macaulay's times. *Accustomed*—used. *Chivalrous sentiments*—noble and heroic instincts. *In company with*—associated with. *Liberal*—properly befitting a free man or one well-born; hence not mean or low; gentlemanlike. *Polished manners*—refined ways. *To image to itself*—to imagine or conceive. *Deportment*—conduct; behaviour.

*Vocabulary*—language. *Accent*—pronunciation. *Carter*—i.e., a rude, vulgar fellow like a carter. *Punctilious*—very exact in the observance of social rules or ceremonies. *Genealogy*—questions of birth and noble ancestry. The country gentleman

had a keen sense of the nobility of birth. *Precedence*—properly the right to a more honourable place in a public ceremony: hence social dignity. *Risk his life*—lay down his life. *Stain*—spot; disgrace. *Honour of his house*—good name or reputation of his family. Macaulay means to say that in modern times nobility of conduct is the result of excellent education and refinement of manners. It is therefore very difficult for a man of the present generation to conceive how the English country gentleman of the 17th century with his ignorance and rude and vulgar ways could yet be essentially aristocratic in his instincts. He would die rather than allow the least disgrace to stain his family honour. *It is not easy*.....*honour of his house*—**Expl.** Macaulay has pointed out already that the English country gentlemen of the seventeenth century were thoroughly plebeian and vulgar in their rude language and rough manners, but essentially patricians (aristocrats) in some of their virtues and vices. Englishmen of Macaulay's own times find that the English aristocrats of their days have noble birth and also education, culture and refinement. So they will find it difficult to imagine how the English aristocrats (the country gentlemen) of the seventeenth century had noble birth but little education and refinement; how though they were ready to risk their lives to prevent the slightest blot on the honour of their families yet were rude and vulgar in language and had manners like those of a common carter.

*Never found together in our own experience*—i.e., that we have never seen to be associated. *Just idea*—correct conception. *Rustic aristocracy*—rural nobility; country gentlemen; a very striking phrase denoting the curious combination of rudeness and vulgarity with keen sense of honour and chivalry in the character of the country gentleman. *Constituted*—formed. *The main strength of the armies etc.*—It has been pointed out above that most of the country gentlemen fought on the side of King Charles I during the Civil War. *Supported*—upheld; helped. *Strange fidelity*—unaccountable and rare loyalty. **N.B.** To a staunch Whig like Macaulay it was quite unaccountable ('strange') why the country gentlemen should have made such heavy sacrifices for the cause of the Stuarts, the most worthless line of kings that ever occupied the English throne. Moreover, the country gentlemen of the 17th century



were often politically neglected by the Stuart Kings who wanted to establish despotic monarchy in England with the help of domestic favourites and foreign powers. Again they were deeply attached to the Church of England; the Stuart Kings showed great favour to the Roman Catholics, whom the country gentlemen strongly disliked. Yet the country gentlemen supported the Stuart Kings. So Macaulay regards this support as 'a strange fidelity'.

*The interest of his descendants*—the cause of his posterity. Macaulay here refers to the support given not merely to Charles II and James II but also to the son and grandson of the latter. Sympathy for the Jacobite cause, *i.e.*, the cause of the Stuart dynasty, continued to be strong amongst country gentlemen till long after the expulsion of James II.

**Paragraph 53.** Though staunch Tories and loyal supporters of hereditary monarchy, the country gentlemen deeply hated the King's ministers and favourites and the corruption that prevailed in the court. Though they had just reasons to complain of the King's ingratitude, yet they rallied round the throne whenever it was in danger. King James II deprived himself of their sympathy by his attack on the Church of England—an institution that the country gentlemen loved even more than monarchy.

*Gross*—coarse; unrefined. *Untravelled*—*i.e.*, without any experience of foreign countries by means of travel; stay-at-home. *Tory*—See notes on paragraph 18. *Devotedly attached to*—strongly in favour of. *Hereditary monarchy*—the form of government in which a king is succeeded after his death by his son or his nearest heir. In England there is hereditary monarchy. *Partiality*—fondness; sympathy. *Courtiers*—persons who frequent the courts of kings; here used to mean persons who attend on kings to advance their own selfish interests; favourites of the King. *Ministers*—officers entrusted with the administration of public affairs. *Not without reason*—justly. *Whitehall*—the favourite palace of the Stuart Kings in London; see notes on paragraph 31. *Corrupt*—dishonest; vicious. *Voted to the crown*—sanctioned to meet the costs of administration. *Embezzled*—misappropriated. *Cunning*—dishonestly clever. *Squandered*—spent lavishly; wasted. *Buffoons*—jesters; here used of the courtiers who amused the King by their jokes and

pleasantries. *Courtesans*—prostitutes. *Foreign courtesans*—The reference is to the Duchess of Portsmouth, one of the King's mistresses. She was a Frenchwoman.

*Stout*—brave. *His stout English heart*—his feeling as a brave English patriot. *Swelled with indignation*—was filled with anger. *French dictation*—command of the King of France. *That the government of his country etc.*—Louis XIV, King of France, heavily bribed King Charles II and his ministers in order that England might not stand in the way of his ambitious conquests on the Continent. Indeed Charles followed the suggestions of his powerful neighbour both in his foreign and domestic policy. N.B. Macaulay in his *Essay on Milton* describes this period as the most shameful in English history when the English King sank into a viceroy of France. "The king cringed to his rival that he might trample on his people, sank into a viceroy of France and pocketed with complacent infamy, her degrading insults, and her more degrading gold. The caresses of harlots and the jests of buffoons, regulated the policy of the state"—Macaulay's *Essay on Milton*.

*Cavalier*—See notes on the previous paragraph. *Reflected*—thought. *Bitter resentment*—deep anger. *Requited*—repaid; recompensed. *Best friends*—viz., the Cavaliers who had sacrificed their lives and fortunes for the royal cause. *Ingratitude with which the Stuarts etc.*—The Cavaliers had made heavy sacrifices to support the cause of King Charles I against Parliament in the Civil War. They naturally expected that Charles II (King Charles I's son and heir) would amply compensate them for all their losses and sufferings after his restoration to his father's throne. But they were soon cruelly undeceived. Charles II, engrossed in his own pleasures, had no time and inclination to listen to the complaints of the faithful supporters of his family. This ingratitude was the darkest blot on Charles's character. The Restoration of Charles II, no doubt, enabled many Royalists to return to their native land from foreign exile and to reclaim their lost estates. But there were others whose properties had been confiscated and who did not receive any support from the new king to recover their estates. *Grumble*—complain; murmur. *Neglect*—slight; indifference. *Profusion*—prodigality; extravagance. *Lavished*—bestowed plentifully; squandered. *Bastards*—illegitimate children.

*Nell Gwynn* (1650-87)—She originally sold oranges before London theatres; afterwards she became an actress and then the mistress of King Charles II. Her portrait was painted by Lely and one of her sons was created Duke of St. Albans. She retained the King's favour till his death and his last words on his death-bed were: "Don't let poor Nelly starve." *Madam Carwell*—Louise Renee de Keroualle, (1649-1734), accompanied, the Duchess of Orleans, Charles II's sister, to England as maid of honour in 1670 and soon after became the mistress of the King. She was naturalised in 1673 when she was made the Duchess of Portsmouth. Her son was created the Duke of Richmond. She kept Charles II subservient to France. Charles's foreign policy was to a large extent shaped by her influence. *Carwell* is the English form of the French name Keroualle. Charles's lavish expenditure on his mistresses was a stock subject of complaint. A caricature of the age represented him as standing between two women, with empty pockets hanging out.

*Ripe*—ready; prepared. *Ripe for rebellion*—ready to rise in revolt. *Ill humour*—anger; disgust. *Lasted*—continued. *But all this ill humour etc.*—The country gentlemen vented their anger against the King's misconduct as long as everything went well with him. The moment he was threatened with any serious danger they forgot their grievances and rallied round him. *Precisely*—exactly. *Loaded*—rewarded liberally. *Honours*—i.e., rank and distinction. *Shrank*—withdrew; deserted. *Surly*—ill-tempered. *Mutinous*—disposed to rise in rebellion. *Season of his prosperity*—period of his happiness and good fortune. *Rallied round etc*—thronged to his support.

*Murmuring*—grumbling. *Rescue*—help; support in carrying out his policy. *Twenty years*—from 1660 to 1680 when the question of succession to the throne introduced a crisis in English political history. The Parliament and the English people generally were in favour of excluding James, the Catholic Duke of York, from the succession. Even King Charles II's trusted ministers, such as Shaftesbury, opposed the nomination of James as successor to the throne.

*In his extremity*—in his hour of serious danger. *Secretaries of State*—heads of the different branches of administration.

Shaftesbury, for example, supported the claims of the Protestant Duke of Monmouth to the throne and steadily opposed the King's choice of James. There were other ministers who supported Shaftesbury such as Russell, Cavendish, Essex, and Temple. The Exclusion Bill, designed to shut out Catholic successors to the throne, was introduced in the House of Commons in October 1679 and was supported by many ministers of the King but was vehemently opposed, on behalf of the King, by Halifax. It was thrown out by the Commons, on the support, it seems, of the country gentlemen. The King, therefore, triumphed ultimately.

*Lords of the Treasury*—See notes on paragraph 38. *Deserted him*—forsook him: left him in the lurch. *Gain a complete etc.*—utterly defeat the power of the Whigs. *The opposition—i.e.*, the Whigs who opposed the royal policy. *Thus after murmuring twenty years etc.*—The reference is to the strong wave of Tory reaction that passed over England in 1681. Taking advantage of this change in popular opinion, Charles II dismissed Shaftesbury, the Whig statesman from his office as President of the Council. A number of Whig leaders were executed for their alleged complicity in the Rye House Plot and the party was crushed for a while. *Would have shown equal loyalty*—would have been equally faithful. *Even at the last moment—i.e.*, even when things had taken an almost desperate turn. *Refrained from*—abstained from; avoided. *Outraging*—offending. *Strongest feeling*—deepest sentiment.

*Would even at the last etc.*—Macaulay means to say that the country gentlemen would have supported James II if he had not deprived himself of their sympathy by his Declaration of Indulgence in 1688. The Declaration of Indulgence was an attempt on the part of James to weaken and undermine the Church of England; and to restore Roman Catholicism to its former position in England. By this unwise measure James forfeited the sympathy of the country gentlemen who were staunch supporters of the Church of England. *Institution*—established system. *Prized*—valued. *Church of England*—Anglican or Episcopal Church; the form of Protestantism that is recognised as the state religion of England. The King is the head of this church and exercises control through

the Archbishops and bishops. *Meditation*—deep thought or reflection.

*Their love of the Church etc.*—Their reverence for the Church of England was not due to the fact\* that they had been convinced as a result of deep study or thought that this form of worship contained the highest religious truth. They never made a careful study of its doctrines to be convinced of its superiority to Roman Catholicism. Nor did any religious contemplation reveal to them its superiority. *Scripture*—Bible. *Ecclesiastical history*—history of the church. *Adhering to*—following. *Doctrines*—principles. *Ritual*—ceremony. *Polity*—the system or principles on which that church was based. *As a class*—i.e., some individuals among them might have been pious but this could not be said of the whole body of them. *Strict observers*—attentive followers. *Code of morality*—system of moral teachings like forgiveness of injuries, disregard for worldly things, etc.

*Which is common to all Christian sects*—which all Christians are required to obey, to whatever sect they may belong. *Christian sects*—the various churches into which the Christians are divided. The European Christians were primarily divided into two churches—(I) the Greek or the Eastern and (II) the Catholic or the Western Church. The latter was again divided into two: (a) the Roman Catholic and (b) the Protestant. The last was again divided into a number of sects, e.g., (i) The Church of England or the Anglicans. (ii) Lutherans, (iii) Presbyterians, (iv) Baptists, (v) Congregationalists or Independents, (vi) Quakers and others. *Few among them could have.....* *sects*—**Expl.** Macaulay refers to the country gentleman's strong attachment to the Anglican Church. It was a blind and fanatical love of the Church. They could not give any adequate reason for their attachment. Neither were they very scrupulous in following its teachings. The country gentlemen simply followed the form of faith they had inherited from their ancestors. But they could not justify it by any reason drawn from the Bible or the history of the church. Secondly their religion was a merely formal matter—they did not care to follow in practical life the noble teachings of Christianity that are binding on all Christians to whichever sect they may belong.

*Persecute without pity*—cruelly harass (or afflict) for supporting any particular creed or form of worship. *Creed*—articles of faith; religious principles that are professed or believed. *Precepts*—teachings. . *Habitually violate*—continually violate. *But the experience of many ages proves etc.*—The worst fanatics belonging to any religion, men who are ready to lay down their lives in fighting for their faith and to cruelly harass those who differ from them in their form of worship, are seldom very devout (truly religious-minded) persons. They neither understand the teachings of their religion nor do they scruple to violate them regularly in practical life. This is the long experience of mankind. **N.B.** The truth of this remark is clearly illustrated by the conduct of men who figure prominently in the Hindu-Moslem riots that occur frequently in this country. No one will admit that the men, who instigate these riots or take any prominent part in them, are devout Hindus or Moslems.

**Paragraph 54.** The rural clergy were more violent Tories than even the gentry (the country gentlemen). Their social rank was then comparatively lower and they were relatively poorer.

**N.B.** The account of the country clergy that follows is vitiated by Macaulay's political prejudice and narrow party spirit. Macaulay was a Whig and had, it seems, a Whig's "invincible suspicion of parsons". The country clergyman's only offence was that he was an honest and even a staunch Tory. Macaulay, therefore, makes him appear as contemptible as possible, extremely low in social status and content to cultivate fellowship with the lowest menials. He even offends all decency and propriety by insinuating about the chastity of his wife. "Neither an ill-regulated zeal for virtue, nor the needs of picturesque history, demanded the singular form of depreciation of the English clergy which he has allowed himself. He does not arraign their morality, or their patriotism, or even their culture on the whole—but *their social position*: they were not gentlemen; they were regarded as on the whole

[Page 83, Footnote—*Notion*—idea. *Derived*—obtained. *Sources*—materials. *Too numerous to be recapitulated*—so many that they cannot all be conveniently mentioned. *I must leave my description etc.*—i.e., those who have studied the polite literature of the age will best be able to judge of the correctness of the picture. *Lighter literature*—like poetry, drama etc.]

a plebeian class. *The climax of insult was reached in the aspersion thrown on the wives of clergymen, that they were generally women whose 'characters had been blown upon'; and this is based on no better authority than a line in Swift—unusually audacious, cynical, and indecent, even for him. The tone of the whole passage savours more of satire and caricature than of sober history.*"—(Morison).

*Vehement*—violent; ardent. *More vehement in Toryism*—fiercer Tories. *Toryism*—conservatism. [*tory*, n. (Member) of the party that opposed the exclusion of the Duke of York (James II), inclined to the Stuarts after 1689, accepted George III and the established order in church and state, opposed Reform Bill of 1832, and has been succeeded by Conservative Party—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *a class*—a body of men. *Scarcely less important*—i.e., exercised almost equal influence. *The individual clergyman*—i.e., a single member of the clerical (priestly) profession as distinguished from the whole class of priests. *Ranked much lower*—occupied a humbler social position. *Our days*—present times. *The main support of the Church etc.*—Tithes constituted the chief source of income of the priests. *Tithe*—the tenth part of the annual profits from land and stock and the personal industry of the inhabitants allotted to the clergy for their support. Since the passing of the Tithes' Commutation Act of 1836, the tithes have been commuted into rent-charges on the land payable in money. [*tithe*, n. tenth part of annual proceeds of land and personal industry taken for support of clergy and church—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Ratio*—proportion. *The tithe bore to the rent etc.*—A much smaller fraction of the rent was then paid as tithe.

*King*—Gregory King, the Lancaster herald and statistician, to whom Macaulay refers in paragraph 5. *Parochial clergy*—clergymen officiating as priests in parish churches. *Collegiate clergy*—clergymen belonging to collegiate churches, i.e., churches other than cathedrals managed by the Dean and the Chapter of Canons. *Davenant*—See footnote on paragraph 5. *The larger of these two sums*—i.e., £540,000. *It is certainly now more etc.*—i.e., about £4,000,000. N. B. Bowley notes that the aggregate income of the parochial clergy amounted to nearly £5,000,000 in 1908 and that the average net income of the

**Beneficed Clergy** including the value of the house amount to about £800 in modern times.

*Proportionally*—correspondingly. *Rector*—in English Church a clergyman who has the charge and care of a parish and enjoys the parsonage and the tithes. *Vicar*—properly one who supplies the place of another: hence a representative of the rector; a priest officiating in a parish who does not enjoy the tithes in full. The tithes are received by a religious house or a layman to whom they belong: the vicar receives a fraction of the tithes or only a salary. *It follows that rectors etc.*—The above facts prove that relatively to the country gentlemen the clergymen were a much poorer class in the 17th than in the 19th century.

**Paragraph 55.** The reformation exercised a disastrous influence on the social position of the clergymen. Before this the highest posts in the government (administration) had been the monopoly of clergymen: but with spread of learning among other classes it became unnecessary to appoint clergymen to these high government posts. So few men of good families now cared to enter the church. The clergymen came to be regarded as a plebeian class: and the domestic chaplains were looked upon as little better than menial servants.

*The place of the clergymen in society*—the social position of the Christian priests. *Completely changed*—greatly altered for the worse: disastrously affected. *The Reformation*—This is the name usually given to the religious revolution that occurred in Europe in the 16th century. The movement was begun by Martin Luther, a German monk, and some of his colleagues about 1517. As a result of this movement the Western Church was divided into two sections known as Protestant and Roman Catholic. Protestantism was introduced into England in the reign of Henry VIII and firmly established its position in that country in the reigns of Edward VI and Queen Elizabeth. The suppression and spoliation of monasteries, the centres of Roman Catholic faith, deprived the Roman Catholic Church in England of all its vast wealth.

*Ecclesiastics*—clergymen. *Formed the majority of the House of Lords*—i.e., the larger number of members of the House of Lords were clergymen. *House of Lords*—the second chamber



in the British constitution ; the membership of this House is confined to nobles and bishops or lords temporal and spiritual as they are called. *Splendour*—magnificence. *Equalled*—rivalled. *Outshone*—excelled ; eclipsed. *The greatest of the temporal barons*—the richest and most powerful of the nobles. *Temporal*—secular. *Temporal barons* are the nobles as distinguished from the spiritual peers, (*i.e.* bishops). *Held the highest etc.*—occupied the highest posts in the civil administration of the country. *Civil*—as opposed to military or ecclesiastical. **N. B.** The reason why the highest offices in the state were in those times held by clergymen was that learning was mostly confined to them. Very few of the laymen (*i.e.*, persons who were not clergymen) could read and write. Fighting was the only occupation of the nobles : they were not merely illiterate but despised learning as an unmanly and effeminate pursuit.

*Lord Treasurer*—the head of the Exchequer ; see notes on paragraph 38. *Lord Chancellor*—the chief judge of the High Court of Chancery (*i.e.*, the highest court of justice in England next to Parliament). He is the keeper of the Great Seal and the highest officer of the crown. He is *ex-officio* the speaker (*i.e.*, the President) of the House of Lords. *Was almost always so*—was invariably a clergyman. Considering the ignorance of the laity the judge of the highest court in the land could not be other than a clergyman. *Privy Seal*—In England the seal affixed to grants which have afterwards to pass the great seal or to documents of minor importance that do not require the great seal. *The Lord Keeper of the Privy Seal*—called also Lord Privy Seal ; the Secretary of State who has the charge of the Privy Seal. He is the fifth great officer of state in England. *Master of the Rolls*—one of the highest of English judges, a member *ex-officio* of the Court of Appeal, which usually consists of him and five lords justices. Officially as his title indicates he is the keeper of the rolls of patents and grants that pass the Great Seal, and of public records generally.

*Ordinarily*—commonly. *Churchmen*—clergymen. *Transacted*—conducted. *Diplomatic business*—negotiation with foreign powers ; matters relating to the settlement of international

relations. *Administration*—government. *Rude*—ignorant. *Warlike*—fond of war; full of martial spirit.

*Incompetent*—unable. *Conduct*—manage; perform. *As especially belonging to etc.*—as the particular sphere of clergymen. *Were averse to*—disliked. *The life of camps*—military profession. *Desirous to rise in the state*—ambitious for high offices. *Received the tonsure*—entered the church; became clergymen.

*Tonsure*—the first ceremony performed in the Roman Catholic Church for dedicating a man to the service of God and the Church: the candidate for holy orders had a portion of his hair cut off with scissors by the bishop with appropriate prayers and benedictions. *Men, therefore, who were.....tonsure—***Expl.** Macaulay makes this statement in connection with his remarks on the position occupied by Catholic clergymen in England before the Reformation. He says that most of the highest offices of the state were held by clergymen. Therefore ambitious men, who disliked the profession of arms, entered the church in order that they might raise themselves to wealth and distinction.

*Illustrious*—noble and distinguished. *Near kinsmen of the throne*—near relations of the sovereign.

*Scroops and Nevilles etc.*—These are the names of some of the most distinguished families of English nobles of former times. *Scroops*—or *Scropes*: the first Baron Scrope had distinguished himself in the Hundred Years' War during the reign of Edward III. His son Richard Le Scroop was Archbishop of York during the reigns of Richard II and Henry IV. He was condemned and executed for joining the Percies in their rebellion against the latter. *Nevilles*—the family name of the Earl of Warwick, the kingmaker. George Neville, brother of the kingmaker, became Chancellor in 1460 and was installed as the Archbishop of York in 1465. *Bourchiers*—Thomas Bourchier, brother of the first Earl of Essex, was the Archbishop of Canterbury from 1454 till his death in 1486. He crowned Edward IV and married Henry VII to Elizabeth of York. He was nominated Cardinal in 1467. *Stafford*—Edmund Stafford was the Bishop of Exeter and was the Lord Chancellor from 1395 till the abdication of Richard II in 1399. John Stafford was the Archbishop of Canterbury from 1443 to 1452. *Pole*—Reginald Pole was a Cardinal. He

became Archbishop of Canterbury in 1556 during the reign of Queen Mary.

*Religious houses*—i.e., churches and monasteries. *Immense domains*—extensive landed property. *Tithe*—See notes on the previous paragraph. *Laymen*—men other than clergymen: men who do not belong to the church. *All that large portion etc.*—After the suppression of the monasteries by Henry VIII the lands belonging to them were either given to some of his favourites or sold. Thus the tithes originally paid by the tenants of these lands happened to pass into the hands of laymen. *Down to the middle of the reign of Henry VIII*—i.e., down to about 1533; when Henry VIII married Anne Boleyn without waiting for the Pope's approval. This marriage may be said to mark Henry's final rupture with Rome and the introduction of Protestantism into England. Henry VIII reigned from 1509 to 1547.

*Line of life*—profession. *Inviting*—promising: attractive. *Bore so inviting an aspect*—held out such an attractive prospect. *Covetous*—avaricious; greedy of wealth. *Down to the middle .....priesthood*—**Expl.** Macaulay explains in this sentence the reasons why men of the noblest families entered the church in former times. In his opinion the reason is to be found in the fact that till the introduction of Protestantism into England in the middle of Henry VIII's reign, the clerical profession provided brilliant careers for ambitious and greedy men who wanted to rise high in the state and grow rich.

*Violent revolution*—sudden and total change. *Abolition*—suppression; utter destruction. *Monasteries*—religious houses where monks passed their lives secluded from the world: मठ । The monasteries are recognised institutions in the Roman Catholic Church but not in the Protestant Church. Some of the monasteries had very large estates attached to them. *The abolition of monasteries*—The reference is to the suppression of monasteries by Henry VIII that shortly followed his quarrel with the Pope of Rome. Desirous of possessing the vast wealth of the monasteries he sent some commissioners to inquire into their moral condition. These commissioners, as was expected, reported most unfavourably of the morality of the monks. On this excuse Henry suppressed the smaller monasteries in 1536 and appropriated to himself their estates.

The greater monasteries were suppressed on a similar excuse in the following two years. *At once of the greater etc.*—i.e., both of her wealth and political influence. *Greater part of her wealth*—because the estates attached to the monasteries passed into the possession of the King. *Predominance*—influence. *Upper House of Parliament*—the House of Lords.

*Glastonbury*—near Wells in Somersetshire. It was close to Avalon the island where King Arthur was buried according to the old traditions. It was famous for its old abbey which was believed to have existed even in Roman times. St. Dunstan founded an abbey here in 946. On its destruction by fire, King Henry II undertook to build its splendid minster which was dedicated in 1303. It continued to be one of the richest and most important abbeys in England down to the Reformation. In 1539 Richard Whiting, the last of its abbots, was hanged by order of Henry VIII.

*Reading*—the chief town of Berkshire about 36 miles from London. It possessed a splendid Benedictine abbey founded in 1121 by Henry I who was buried here. It is now in ruins. The last of its abbots was hanged by Henry VIII. *Seated among the peers*—were members of the House of Lords along with the nobles of the land. It has been pointed out in a previous note that the membership of the House of Lords was confined to the lords temporal and spiritual. The lords spiritual included the bishops and the abbots of some of the larger monasteries. These abbots were called *Mitred Abbots* and exercised a bishop's functions within the monastery and its precincts. *Peers*—nobles.

*Possessed of revenues*—enjoying rich incomes. *Possessed of revenues etc.*—Thus in political influence and wealth they (the clergy of high rank) were in no way inferior to the greatest nobles of the land. Cf. Gardiner's remarks on the suppression of monasteries:—"Before the end of 1540 not a single monastery was left. Three abbots, those of Glastonbury, Colchester and Reading had been hanged the year before after the mere semblance of a trial. The disappearance of the abbots from the House of Lords made the lay peers, for the first time more numerous than the ecclesiastical members of the House. The lay peers, on the other hand, were reinforced by new creations from among Henry's favourites, whom he had

enriched by grants of abbey lands. The new peers and the more numerous country gentlemen who had shared in the spoil were interested in maintaining the independence of the English Church, lest the Pope, if his jurisdiction were restored, should insist on their disgorging their prey." *Princely splendour*—almost regal magnificence and grandeur. *William of Wykeham* (1324-1404)—the famous Bishop of Winchester. He held this office from 1366 till his death and was the Lord Chancellor of England from 1367 to 1371. He was a man of great learning and was a great architect and administrator. He used his great wealth in founding New College at Oxford and the first public school in England at Winchester. *William of Waynflete* (1395-1486)—Bishop of Winchester and Lord Chancellor of England. He, like his predecessor, William of Wykeham, used his great wealth in establishing schools and colleges. He founded Magdalen College at Oxford and added to the buildings at Eton. A free school was established by him at Wainfleet in 1484. *Had disappeared*—had become a thing of the past.

*The princely splendour.....disappeared*—**Expl.** Macaulay points out in this sentence the effects of the Reformation on the clergymen. Before this event, the clerical profession was often a passport to power and wealth, and clergymen, like William of Wykeham and William of Waynflete, could rise to be the Lord Chancellor of England and become masters of immense wealth. But these things became quite impossible after the Reformation. *Scarlet hat*—A low-crowned, broad-brimmed hat of a scarlet colour with two cords hanging on either side and ending with fifteen tassels at the extremities, forms the distinctive head-dress of a Cardinal. *Cardinal*—the highest dignity of the Roman Catholic Church immediately below the Pope. He has precedence over the bishops. Bouchier and Wolsey, Henry VIII's ministers, rose to be Cardinals. *Cross*—the symbol of the Christian religion. Roman Catholic clergymen always wear it on their bodies. *A silver cross*—was the badge of a Legate's office. *Legate*—a cardinal or a bishop sent as the Pope's representative to a foreign sovereign. Cardinal Pole was sent as a Papal Legate to France and England.

*The scarlet hat of the Cardinal etc.*—The Reformation established Protestantism in England. So after this event it

was no longer possible for an English clergyman to rise to the highest dignities of the Catholic Church, *viz.*, the offices of Cardinals or Papal Legates. *Scarlet—red.* **N.B.** With reference to Cardinals, their dignity and their red hats, the following is interesting—"cardinal (Lat. *cardinalis*), in the Roman Church, *the title of the highest dignitaries next to the pope.* The cardinals constitute the council or senate of the sovereign pontiff (the pope), his auxiliaries in the general government of the Church....The most lofty function of the cardinals is the election of the pope...It was in 245 or the year before that Innocent IV granted the cardinals the privilege of wearing the red hat"—*Encyclopædia Britannica*.

*Ascendency*—authority ; power. *Is the natural reward of etc.*—naturally follows from superior education or intellectual culture. *Circumstance*—fact. *Presumption*—supposition ; strong probability. *Was in orders*—was in holy orders, *i.e.*, was a clergyman. In former times learning was almost entirely confined to the clergy and the laity were quite illiterate. So in those times the very fact that a man could read was supposed to indicate that he was a clergyman. *In an age*—*i.e.*, an age of general intellectual awakening that followed the Reformation. All the men mentioned below flourished in the age of Elizabeth. *Laymen*—men who do not belong to the Church ; men other than priests or clergymen.

*William Cecil* (1520—98)—better known as Lord Burghley was the Lord High Treasurer from 1572—98 and the chief minister of Queen Elizabeth. He was a student of St. John's College, Cambridge, and was a good Greek scholar. He was the Chancellor of Cambridge University in 1559. *Nicholas Bacon* (1509—79)—father of Francis Bacon, the famous English philosopher. He was appointed Lord Keeper of the Great Seal in 1558. He was a graduate of Cambridge University and was called to the bar in 1533. *Roger Ascham* (1515—1568)—a well-known English author. He obtained his M.A. degree in 1537 and was in the following year appointed Greek reader at St. John's College, Cambridge. He served for a time as the private tutor of Queen Elizabeth. His best-known works are "*Torophilus*" and "*Scholemaster*". *Thomas Smith* (1513—77)—a scholar and statesman. He was a Professor of Civil Law and subsequently the Vice-Chancellor

of Cambridge University. He was appointed Secretary of State in 1548 during the reign of Edward VI and reappointed to this office in 1572 during the reign of Elizabeth. He wrote a work on the English constitution "*De Republica Anglorum*."

*Walter Mildmay* (1520—89)—Chancellor of the Exchequer and founder of Emanuel College, Cambridge. He was educated at Christ's Church College and afterwards studied law at Gray's Inn. *Francis Walsingham* (1530—1590)—a famous English statesman of the age of Elizabeth. *Calling away*—summoning. *Prelates*—dignitaries of the Church: bishops and archbishops.

*Dioceses*—A diocese is a division of a country over which a bishop exercises authority or jurisdiction. *Negotiate treaties*—settle the terms of agreement with foreign nations: conduct diplomatic business. *Superintend the finances*—supervise the public (government) revenue and expenditure: this is the duty of the Lord Treasurer. *Administer justice*—try important cases: this is the function of the Lord Chancellor. *There was no reason etc.*—There was no longer any necessity of engaging the high dignitaries of the Church to conduct diplomatic business or to act as Lord Treasurer or Lord Chancellor. *Spiritual*—priestly: clerical. *Character*—vocation: profession. *Qualification*—fitness: recommendation. *High civil office*—dignified post in the secular administration. *Disqualification*—disability.

*The spiritual character not only.....disqualification*—The fact that a man was a priest stood in the way of his being appointed to a high administrative post. For educated men were available outside the Church. And the clergy were left entirely to their spiritual profession. *Worldly motives*—temporal or earthly considerations: the desire to advance one's fortunes. *Induced*—persuaded. *Able*—gifted. *Aspiring*—ambitious. *High born youths*—young men of noble families. *Assume the ecclesiastical habit*—don the priestly gown, i.e., become clergymen. *Habit*—dress. *Ceased to operate*—was no longer effective. *Not one parish in two hundred*—i.e., very few parishes. *A man of family*—a man of an honourable descent: a man belonging to a good or respectable family. *A maintenance*—a suitable provision; means of support. *Prizes*—covetable positions. *There were still indeed etc.*—The Church still contained a few lucrative and

honourable situations. Macaulay refers to the bishoprics and arch-bishoprics.

*They were few*—such situations were not many in number. *Mean*—poor and humble. *Glory*—wealth and grandeur. *Hierarchy*—a body of men entrusted with the control of sacred things or institutions. *Princes of the hierarchy*—rulers (or the highest dignitaries) of the Church. [*hierarchy*—"organized priesthood in successive grades"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *The highest were mean, when etc.*—The highest of the ecclesiastical offices after the Reformation were decidedly inferior in point of wealth and grandeur to what had been enjoyed by the great dignitaries of the Church before that event. *State*—dignity: grandeur. *Parker* (1504—1575)—was consecrated as the Archbishop of Canterbury in 1559 shortly after Queen Elizabeth's accession and held this office till his death. He played a prominent part in giving the final shape to the Anglican Church. *Grindal* (1519-1583)—was Archbishop of York from 1570 to 1575 and then succeeded Parker as the Archbishop of Canterbury. *Beggarly*—poor and mean.

*Imperial pomp*—wealth and grandeur like that of a king (or emperor). *Wolsey*—Thomas Wolsey (1471—1530), the famous Archbishop of York, is said to have been the son of a butcher. He was an able statesman and rose to be Henry VIII's chief minister. It was said of him that though a clergyman he could as well lay down the plan of a campaign as carry on diplomatic contests with the ablest statesmen of Europe. He was made a cardinal by the Pope in 1515 and then his Legate. As he enjoyed the revenues of several sees he could amass an enormous fortune. He lived in a princely style and to all observers he seemed to be more a king than the King himself. He lost the King's favour for his failure to obtain his divorce from Queen Catherine. He died in disgrace when he was on his way to London to be tried for high treason. "If I had served my God" he said as he was dying "as diligently as I have done my king, He would not have given me over in my grey hairs".

*Favourite abodes of royalty*—places that the kings particularly favoured. *Whitehall*—originally known as York House because since 1248 it had been the residence of the Archbishops of York. After the fall of Wolsey it passed into the



possession of the Crown. The palace was almost reconstructed by Henry VIII who made it his principal residence and employed Holbein in its decoration. A new banqueting hall was erected by James I in place of the old one burned down in 1615. This hall was the only portion of the building that escaped destruction by fire in 1691 and 1697. This hall was afterwards converted into a royal chapel by George I. See notes on paragraph 31. *Hampton Court*—the famous palace of the English kings situated close to Hampton, a town on the Thames, a few miles to the west of London. The original palace was erected by Cardinal Wolsey. It was presented by him to King Henry VIII in 1526 who enlarged it and formed round it a royal deer-park. It continued to be a royal residence down to the time of George III. This palace is famous in English history for the conference of divines held here in 1604 during the reign of King James I. This conference led amongst other things to the authorised translation of the Bible.

*Sumptuous*—i.e. richly furnished; provided with costly delicacies. *Spread*—set and furnished with provisions. *Refectory*—dining-hall; properly an apartment in a monastery where a moderate repast is taken. *Gorgeous*—grand; magnificent. *Copes*—arches. *Copes*—may also mean “long cloaks worn by ecclesiastics in processions”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Chapel*—a subordinate place of worship attached to a large church or cathedral and intended for special services. *Running footmen*—servants who in former times ran before their master's carriage to render any services that might be necessary but mainly as a mark of his importance. They usually wore a light black cap and carried a long pole in their hands. *Rich liveries*—costly uniforms. A livery is the peculiar dress by which the servants of a nobleman are distinguished. *Body guards*—attendants for the protection of his person. *Poleaxes*—the usual weapon of English infantry from the earliest times till the 16th century. It was a combination of a hatchet and a pike. *Gilded*—made to look like gold. The weapons were gilded so that they might give a more imposing appearance; this indicated their master's love of show and magnificence.

*Sacerdotal*—(from Lat. *sacerdos*, a priest) priestly; clerical. *Office*—profession; occupation. *Lost its attraction*—ceased to

have any charm or fascination. *Accession*—act of ascending the throne. *Elizabeth*—the famous queen of England; she ascended the throne in 1558. *During the century*.....*Elizabeth*—i.e., from 1558, the date of Elizabeth's accession, to 1660, the year of the Restoration. *Of noble descent*—of honourable birth or family. *Took orders*—entered the Church. *Two sons of peers*—These were Dr. Compton, the famous Bishop of London, and Lord Crew, the Bishop of Durham. Dr. Compton crowned William and Mary in 1689 and was a younger son of the Earl of Northampton. Lord Crew was the son of the first Baron Crew of Stene.

*Four or five sons etc.*—Chamberlayne, whom Macaulay evidently follows, mentions twelve men of noble families who were then in the Church. This may be regarded as one of the many instances of Macaulay's perversion of facts to make them suit his theories. *Preferment*—(lit.) promotion to high office; high and lucrative office. *Valuable preferment*—lucrative offices in the Church. *The reproach which lay on the body*—the blame or the censure which applied to the bulk of the priests or the clergymen as a class. Though there were some men of noble birth among the clergy, the profession of the clergymen had suffered in public estimation. And this low opinion about the whole body of clergymen was not removed. *On the whole*—all the circumstances being taken into consideration. *A plebeian class*—a low, vulgar class of men. The *plebeians*, as distinguished from the *patricians*, were the common people of ancient Rome. *For—against*. *Who made the figure of a gentleman*—whose appearance and ways were like those of a gentleman. *Made the figure of*—presented the appearance of; looked like. *Figure*—conspicuous appearance or impression.

*Menial servants*—domestic or household servants. *For one who made the figure etc.*—The priests, whose social position was no better than that of menial servants, were larger in number than those who occupied respectable positions; the former were to the latter as ten to one. If there was one priest in the profession who looked like a gentleman, there were ten priests who were no better than ordinary servants in conduct and appearance and social position. *Divines*—See previous notes. *Benefices*—livings; priestly offices. [*benefice*, n. church living—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Whose benefices etc.*—The incomes of their

livings (priestly offices) were too small to enable them to live comfortably on them. In England each church is endowed with some lands intended for the maintenance of the clergyman who officiates in it. His income consists of the tithes and the revenue from the lands. Some of the churches are richly endowed and others not. Consequently the incomes of the clergymen vary in different places. Those who are placed in well-endowed churches enjoy a comfortable income while those who hold poorer livings can hardly make two ends meet. *Lived in the houses of laymen*—as domestic chaplains. These are priests in the pay of men of rank and wealth for the performance of divine (religious) services in their families. *This practice*—this custom, *viz.* that of priest living in the houses of laymen. *Tended*—contributed. *Degrade*—cast shame and disgrace on; lower in public estimation.

*Laud* (1573-1645)—Archbishop of Canterbury during the reign of Charles I. Though a man of great purity of life he became very unpopular by supporting the King in his struggle with Parliament and by his attempts to force uniformity of worship. He was impeached for high treason and beheaded in 1645. *Exerted himself*—attempted. *Effect a change*—introduce a reform. **N.B.** In order to suppress nonconformity, Laud had prohibited the appointment of household chaplains. For Puritans and other nonconformists being turned out of Church, offices might be employed by private individuals and so keep Puritanism alive in the country. *Repeatedly*—several times. *Positive*—express. *None but men of high rank*—*i.e.*, only men of dignified social position.

*Presume*—venture; take the liberty. *Domestic chaplains*—clergymen belonging to the household of noblemen.

*Injunctions*—orders. *Became obsolete*—fell into disuse or neglect; were not observed. *Domination*—rule; government.

*Puritans*—the name originally given to the dissenters from the Church of England in the reign of Elizabeth. It was afterwards applied to the general body of dissenters who took sides against Charles I and the High Church during the

---

[Page 88, Footnote—*Heylin* (1600--1662)—an ecclesiastical writer, *Cyprianus Anglicus*—published in 1668; it was a defence of Archbishop Laud written in answer to "*Canterburies Doom*,".

Civil War. The name was originally given to them in derision on account of the superior purity of religious doctrine and character claimed by them. [**puritan**, n. (Hist.) member of the party of English Protestants who regarded reformation of Church under Elizabeth as incomplete and sought to abolish unscriptural and corrupt ceremonies.....person of or affecting extreme strictness in religion or morals—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *During*.....*Puritans*—The Puritans ruled England from the execution of Charles I in 1649 to the Restoration in 1660. this period is commonly known as the period of the Commonwealth.

*Ejected*—driven out. *Ministers*—priests. *Ejected ministers of the Church of England*—Anglican priests who had been removed or dismissed from their livings. It has been pointed out before that the Puritans wanted to suppress the public performance of Anglican worship, because they considered it idolatrous. Consequently the priests, who officiated in Anglican Churches, were dismissed from their livings and were succeeded by Puritan clergymen.

*Bread and shelter*—food and lodging, *i.e.*, mere subsistence. *Attaching themselves, etc.*—entering the service of wealthy royalists as their domestic chaplains. *Those times of trouble*—those evil days; the period of persecution during the Commonwealth. *The re-establishment of monarchy etc.*—*i.e.*, the Restoration (the restoration of Charles II to the throne of England). *Episcopacy*—that form of church government in which the control is vested in the bishops. The Church of England is an episcopacy. *Mansions*—houses. *Liberal sentiments*—generous feelings. *Cultivated understandings*—cultured intellect. *Urbanity*—politeness; courtesy. *His conversation*—*i.e.*, the pleasure to be enjoyed from conversation with a man of culture like the chaplain. *Literary assistance*—help obtained from him in matters relating to literature. *Spiritual advice*—religious instruction. *Ample return*—sufficient recompense or repayment. *Stipend*—salary. *But this was not etc.*—The country gentlemen did not usually take this favourable view of the chaplain's services. *Coarse*—rude; vulgar. *It belonged to his dignity*—It was necessary for him to maintain the honour and importance of his social position; his elevated rank required it. *Grace*—a short prayer to God and uttered

before or after meal: "short thanksgiving before or after meal"—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*An ecclesiastic in full canonicals*—a duly ordained clergyman clad in a priestly gown. *Ecclesiastic*—clergyman. *Canonicals*—the dress prescribed by canon (or rule) for officiating clergymen. *Found means etc.*—sought to maintain the dignity of his social position at the least cost. *Reconcile*—harmonise: make compatible. To maintain the dignity of his position he had to incur heavy expenses. Dignity with economy is, therefore, apparently impossible. But he managed to maintain his dignity without incurring heavy expenses. *The coarse and ignorant...economy*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the position of the domestic chaplains (clergymen attached to the houses of country gentlemen etc.) in England in the 17th century. Their position in the households of polite and cultured gentlemen of wealth was not quite uncomfortable. But the case was quite different in the households of the rude and ignorant squires (uncultured country gentlemen). These men thought that their social position required them to have in their pay a duly ordained clergyman to say prayers before meal every day. They thought that their high social status would be maintained if they would employ a private chaplain in their household. The chaplain with his priestly robe saying prayers before meal would add to the dignity of their position. But they maintained their dignity as economically as possible, i.e., paid as low a salary as possible to the chaplain.

*Levite*—(from *Levi*, one of the sons of Jacob) a person who in ancient Jewish society assisted the priests in the performance of the Temple services: a subordinate priest: here used contemptuously for a domestic chaplain. **N. B.** There is an allusion to the story of Micah and how he hired a Levite to be his priest described in the *Book of Judges*. "And the Levite was content to dwell with the man (Micah): and the young man was unto him as one of his sons. And Micah consecrated the Levite; and the young man became his priest, and was in the house of Micah"—(*Judges*, xvii. 11—12). [**Levite**, n. One of the tribe of Levi, esp. of that part of it which provided assistants to priests in worship of Jewish temple—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Such was the phrase then in use*—This was the

contemptuous expression used of domestic chaplains in those times. *Might be had*—was available. *Board*—food. *Garret*—an apartment in the uppermost part of a house immediately under the roof; attic. Such a room is the most uncomfortable in the whole house. That this room should be reserved for the chaplain indicates the low position in which he was held. *Ten pounds a year*—This pitiful sum constituted the salary of the chaplain.

*His professional functions*—i.e., his priestly services. *Butts*—A butt is properly the mark to be shot at in archery or rifle-practice; hence the object of ridicule or rude jests. *The most patient of butts*—The chaplain would be the victim of the squire's rude jokes. He would never venture to protest against them because he was a poor dependent on his patron's favour. *Listeners*—i.e., he would listen patiently to the squire's dull and thrice-told stories. This is the usual lot of poor dependents and relations. *Might not only be etc.*—was expected to join his patron in a game of bowls or shovelboard whenever he felt inclined to play it. *Bowls*—an out-door game played with a large ball of wood loaded on one side. The game consists in rolling it nearest to a prescribed mark along a level grassy plot. *Shovelboard*—an indoor game played by moving or shoving small discs or pieces of money along a board with the view of reaching certain marks. *Might also save the expense etc.*—might act as the gardener and the groom: might attend to the garden and dress the horses. Macaulay indulges here in a bit of exaggeration and overdraws the picture.

*Reverend man*—contemptuous for *reverend gentleman*, the expression commonly used of a priest; the word *Reverend* often shortened into *Rev.* is the title commonly used before the name of a clergyman. *Nailed up*—fixed with nails against the walls. The apricot is one of the many fruit-trees that are raised against walls in England: hence these fruits are commonly known as wall-fruits. *Apricots*—fruits of delicious taste allied to the plum; খুবানী। *Curried*—rubbed and cleaned with a comb; খটবা দিয়া ঘোড়ার শরীর পরিষ্কার করা। *Sometimes the reverend man etc.*—Macaulay illustrates in this sentence how the clergyman saved the expenses of a gardener and a groom.

*Cast up*—calculated; examined. *Farrier*—a man who shoes horses; the farriers were the veterinary surgeons of former times; অশ্চিকিৎসক। *Bills*—accounts. *Message*—communication sent from one person to another. *Parcel*—package. *He walked ten miles etc.*—He was often employed as a messenger and was sent to carry messages or things to his patron's friends living at a distance of ten miles. This shows the low estimation in which the chaplain was held because only menials are employed for such purposes.

*Was permitted to dine etc.*—In this respect he was superior to the menials because they are never permitted to dine at the same table as their masters. The word 'permitted' however shows that it was a favour done to him. But he was not allowed to have any share of the delicacies served on the table. *To content himself*—to remain satisfied. *The plainest fare*—the simplest food. *Fare*—food. *Fill himself*—eat as much as he liked; stuff himself. *Corned beef*—beef preserved and seasoned with salt; salt beef. *Carrot*—the familiar edible root of a red colour largely cultivated for the use both of men and cattle; গাজর। *Tart*—a species of pie or pastry consisting of fruit baked and inclosed in paste. *Cheesecake*—a sort of cake filled with a jelly of soft curds, sugar and butter. *Made their appearance*—were served. *Quitted his seat*—left the table. *Stood aloof*—remained at some distance. *Summoned*—called. *Return thanks*—utter grace after the dinner; the grace uttered by Christians after dinner is a prayer of thanksgiving to God for the day's meal. *Repast*—meal; feast. *From a great etc.*—in the greater part of which he did not share. Notice the irony of the situation. The priest was required to offer thanks for a meal that he did not mostly enjoy.

*He might fill himself.....had been excluded—Expl.* In this sentence Macaulay describes the humiliating treatment that the chaplain (the clergyman attached to the household of a country gentleman) of the 17th century received in England from his patron. He was no doubt permitted to dine with the family. But a degrading distinction was made about his share of the meals. He was expected not to share in the fine things and delicacies but to remain satisfied with the coarser dishes of salt meat and vegetables. When the delicacies, the pasties and the

cheesecakes were served he was expected to leave the table and go without these sweet things. After the meal was over he was again summoned to the table so that he might say the usual grace after it. It was indeed a painful and humiliating experience for a man to be made to offer prayers for a meal which he did not mostly share.

**Paragraph 56.** After years of drudgery, he was by some dishonourable means presented to a living. He had to seek a wife from the humbler classes. No girl of any respectable family would have a priest for her husband. His wife was generally a handmaiden or a cook whose character was not above reproach or suspicion.

*Service*—drudgery as a domestic chaplain in a patron's house. *Living*—benefice: "now used in England to denote any kind of (church promotion or dignity." *Presented to a living*—nominated to an ecclesiastical appointment: nominated by his patron, the country gentleman, to the position of a parish priest. **N.B.** The country gentlemen had the right of nominating clergymen for church livings under their control. They made the nominations and then submitted them to the bishop of the diocese for confirmation. *Sufficient to support him*—with an income adequate for his maintenance. *Preferment*—valuable place or office in the Church. *Species*—sort. *Simony*—properly the practice of making dishonest profit out of sacred things: it is used to mean particularly the corrupt presentation of any one to an ecclesiastical benefice for bribe or other reward. **N.B.** The word *Simony* is derived from Simon Magus, the name of the Samaritan magician, who wanted to purchase the power of conferring the Holy Spirit. "And when Simon saw that through laying on of the apostles' hands, the Holy Ghost was given, he offered them money.

Saying, Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may receive the Holy Ghost. But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with thee, because thou hast

---

Page 90, Footnote *Eachard*—an English clergyman and historian. *Oldham* (1653—83)—an English satirical poet: his best known poems are his ironical "*Satire against Virtue*" and "*Satires upon the Jesuits*." *Tatler*—the famous English newspaper edited by Steele with the help of Addison. It commenced in April 1709 and continued till January, 1711. *Lombard*—of humble parentage.]



thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money.”—*The Acts*, VIII, 18-20. The corrupt practice of securing a church living by agreeing to marry a servant (often a cast-off mistress) of the patron was a form of simony.

*Furnished*—provided; afforded. *Inexhaustible*—endless. *Pleasantries*—jest; jibe. *Scoffers*—irreverent critics. *Inexhaustible subject*—a subject that offered them infinite scope for the exercise of their power of jest and ridicule, i.e., they were never tired of referring to this subject. *Cure*—(Lat. *cura*, care) spiritual charge or care for the spiritual welfare of people; the office of a curate; অধ্যক্ষিক ভার। *To take a wife*—to marry: the suggestion is that for the curateship which the patron offered, the chaplain had to do him a good turn by marrying a cast-off mistress of the patron. *Had ordinarily been etc.*—Usually the woman, chosen as his wife, had been a servant in the household of which he had been the chaplain. *Well*—fortunate. *Standing too high.....favour*—i.e., enjoying the favour of the patron as his mistress. *Of standing too high etc.*—of having had the patron for her lover. This is a too sweeping reflection as coarse as it is unwarranted. For Macaulay's exaggerated picture of the degradation of the rural clergy, see the criticism of the chapter in the Introduction. *Nature*—character. *Matrimonial connections*—marriages. *Forming*—contracting. *Certain indication*—sure evidence. *Place*—position. *The order*—the class, i.e., of priests. *Social system*—i.e., society. *The place which the order etc.*—the low social position occupied by clergymen as a class.

*Oxonian*—(Lat. *Oxoniensis*, of Oxford) graduate of Oxford University. As Macaulay explains in the footnote, the reference is to Thomas Wood of New College, Oxford. *Writing a few months after the death of Charles the Second*—The reference is to Wood's *Angliae Notitiae*, published in 1686. *Complained bitterly*—sorrowfully lamented. *Country attorney*—village lawyer. For *attorney*, see notes on paragraph 9. *Country apothecary*—village doctor. An *apothecary* in England is not a mere compounder of drugs but a medical practitioner of an inferior sort. *Looked down with disdain on*—regarded with contempt; arrogantly despised. *Earnestly inculcated*—carefully taught or impressed. *Give no encouragement etc.*—not to accept

with favour the suit of a lover who happens to be a priest : reject the love-suit of a priest. *Precept*—maxim ; lesson. *Disgraced*—shamed ; dishonoured. *Illicit*—unlawful ; forbidden. *Amour*—love-intrigue. *If any young lady etc.*—If any girl accepted a priest for her lover with a view to marriage, she was believed to have brought as much dishonour on herself as if she had been guilty of an illicit love-affair.

*Clarendon*—Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon, was a famous English statesman and historian. He was a minister of Charles I and held the office of Lord Chancellor during the reign of Charles II. See notes on paragraph 39. *Bore no ill will to the Church*—was no enemy or unfriendly critic of the Church. Clarendon strongly defended episcopacy during the reign of Charles I and wanted to restore it in Scotland in the reign of Charles II. A series of Acts—known as the Clarendon Code—were passed by him to safeguard the interests of the Anglican Church and the Anglican clergy. Even such a supporter of the Anglican clergy deplored the marriage of priests with ladies of noble families as a sign of social disorder brought about by the Civil War. *A sign of the..... produced*—a mark or evidence of the disorder in the social system that had been brought about by the Civil War : as an indication of the disruption of the social system brought about by the Civil War : confusion of ranks, *i.e.*, the different social grades or classes means the break-up of social order. *Great Rebellion*—This was the name given by the Royalist Clarendon to the Civil War in the reign of Charles I. He named his great work on this war as "*History of the Rebellion*."

*Damsels*—young unmarried ladies : the use of this word is confined mostly to poetry. *Bestowed themselves on divines*—given their hands to clergymen ; married priests. *Divines*—clergymen ; priests. *Clarendon, who assuredly bore etc.*—Though Clarendon was a staunch friend of the Church, yet even he noticed that the marriage of girls belonging to good families with clergymen was an effect of the social disorder brought about by the Civil War.

[Page 92, Footnote—*Clarendon's life*—After finishing his "*History of the Rebellion*," Clarendon wrote his own life. The "*Life of Clarendon*" by himself was published in 1759.]

*Waiting woman*—female servant who attends a lady. *Help-mate*—partner in life; wife. *Parson*—clergyman. *Head of the Church*—the Church of England recognises the English sovereign as its supreme head. *As head of the Church*—i.e., in her ecclesiastical capacity. The breach of the rule that she thus laid down, could not be punished by a court of law, but disciplinary action could be taken against it by the church authorities. *Formal sanction*—solemn recognition; express confirmation. The order of the Queen, therefore, formally and authoritatively recognised this popular prejudice (against the marriage of a priest with a gentlewoman). *Prejudice*—unfavourable opinion; unfriendly impression. *Presume*—venture.

*During several generations*—for a very long period, viz., during the 17th and 18th centuries. *Relation*—connection. *Hand-maidens*—female servants or attendants. *Relation etc.*—i.e., priests being represented as the lovers of the maid-servants. *Theme*—subject. *Was a theme etc.*—was an inexhaustible subject of jokes and pleasantries; the wits never tired of making fun of this relation. *Comedy of the seventeenth century*—i.e., comedies of the Later Elizabethan and Restoration periods; Macaulay deals with this subject later on in this chapter. *Comedy*—a drama of a light amusing character. *Instance*—example; case. *Spouse*—wife; the word is used to mean both husband and wife. *Nor would it be easy, etc.*—It would be difficult to point out any instance in the whole range of the Restoration comedies of a priest marrying a woman whose social position was above that of a cook.

[Page 92, Footnote *Injunctions*—commands; precepts. *Bishop Sparrow* (1612-85)—Bishop of Exeter and afterwards of Norwich; wrote some treatises on ecclesiastical subjects. *Jerry Collier* (1650-1726)—a famous English non-juring clergyman; he is best known for his treatise, "*Short view of the Profaneness and Immorality of the English Stage*," published in 1698; was the author of a number of essays published 1694-97. *Bitterness*—anger; severity. *Which proves that etc.*—The severity with which James Collier condemns this injunction, shews that his own pride as a clergyman was touched by it. *Effectually tamed*—successfully controlled.

[Page 93, Footnote *Roger*—a clergyman in *Scornful Lady*. *Abigail*—a waiting gentlewoman. *Fletcher* (1579-1625)—a famous English dramatist. He jointly with his friend Beaumont produced a number of dramas, *Scornful Lady*, their joint composition, was published in 1616. *Bull*—a clergyman.

*Even so late as the time of George the Second*—as late as the middle of the 18th century. George the Second reigned from 1727 to 1760. *The keenest of all observers of life and manners*—the shrewdest critic of human character and ways. Swift, the English author, referred to by Macaulay, displays a penetrating insight into human character. *Himself a priest*—Swift himself was a clergyman by profession: he was the Dean of St. Patrick's, Dublin. *A great household*—a rich family. *Resource*—resort. *A lady's maid*—a woman who waits upon a lady: waiting-maid. *The chaplain was the resource etc.*—the waiting-maid sought to have the chaplain for her husband. *Blown upon*—discredited: damaged in public opinion; blown upon by the foul air of scandal, *i.e.*, discredited by ugly scandals about the looseness of her character. Food becomes stale when it is blown upon, *i.e.*, exposed to open air. So her character became tainted because it became the subject of scandalous gossip. *Catching*—*i.e.*, marrying. *Steward*—a man employed to manage an estate or the households of families of importance and wealth.

*Even so late.....catching the steward*—**Expl.** Macaulay says this in the course of his remarks on the social position of clergymen in the 17th century. An indication of the humbleness of their position is to be found in the observation of Swift, a writer of deep penetration and judgment, himself a clergyman by profession. According to Swift even till the middle of the 18th century, a priest could not hope to marry a more respectable woman than a lady's maid who, on account of her damaged reputation, could not win the steward for her husband. A lady's maid, who had her honour unsullied, would not care to marry a chaplain. She would rather try to secure the steward as her husband. But if she was guilty of improper conduct and her character was damaged by scandal, she could not hope to win a suitable husband. It was only then that she

*Nurse*—not a menial but a governess. *Vanbrugh* (1664--1726), a famous English dramatist and architect: his *Relapse* was published in 1697. *Smock and Susan*—two characters in Shadwell's play, the first a clergyman and the second a housekeeper. *Shadwell*—(1610-92) an English dramatist and poet; succeeded Dryden as Poet-laureate. *Lancashire Witches*—one of Shadwell's little-known compositions.]

would turn to the chaplain. So low was the chaplain held in social estimation.

**Paragraph 57.** The poor income of his living did not enable the clergyman to maintain himself and his family in comfort. His condition grew worse with the growth of his family. He had to supplement the income of his living by hard manual work on the fields. He could scarcely enjoy a good meal. His children went without the benefits of education and culture and were employed as labourers and servants. There were few or no books in his library, and intellectual labour was quite out of the question under such circumstances.

*In general*—in most cases. *Who quitted his etc.*—who gave up his situation as the chaplain of a noble family so that he might accept an ecclesiastical living and marry a wife. *Found that he etc—i.e.*, his troubles did not end with his preferment to a living. He learnt from bitter experience that he escaped from one class of troubles only to be plunged into another. *Verations*—troubles; worries. *Not one living in fifty—i.e.*, very few benefices. *Incumbent*—a person occupying or in possession of a benefice or an office. *Bring up*—maintain. *Multiplied*—increased in numbers. *The household—i.e.*, the condition of the family. *More and more plainly—i.e.* larger and larger. *Parsonage*—dwelling-house of a clergyman attached to his living; “rector’s or other incumbent’s house”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). The cost of its repairs has to be met from the income of the benefice. *Single*—because he was too poor to have more than one. *Cassock*—a garment worn under the gown by clergymen: “long close tunic worn by some Anglican clergymen under gown or short surplice, or as ordinary attire”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Holes appeared more etc.*—his house fell into disrepair and his clothes became ragged. *Glebe*—(Lat. *gleba*, a clod or lump

---

[Page 93, Footnote - *Swift* (1667-1745) -Dean of St. Patrick’s, Dublin, was a famous English author and satirist. His best known works are *The Tale of a Tub* and *Gulliver’s Travels*. *Directions to Servants*—one of Swift’s satiric essays published shortly after his death. The passage, referred to by Macaulay, is addressed to the waiting-maid and runs as follows: “In such a family. (*i.e.*, great family) if you are handsome, you will have the choice of three lovers: the chaplain, the steward, and my lord’s gentleman. I would first advise you to choose the steward; but if you happen to be young with child by my lord, you must take up with the chaplain.”

of earth) the land belonging to a benefice: "portion of land going with clergyman's benefice"—*Oxford Dictionary*. *By toiling on his glebe etc.*—i.e., he could not pay for the services of hired labourers and had to perform himself hard manual work on the fields.

*Dungcarts*—carts full of the excrement of animals used in manuring the soil. *Utmost exertions*—hardest labour or efforts. *Bailiffs*—officers who seize possession of a debtor's property in execution of a decree. *Concordance*—a book in which the principal words, used in any great work like the Bible (or the works of great authors like Shakespeare and Milton), are alphabetically arranged with their references. These books are intended to assist an inquirer in finding out any passage by means of any leading word in it that he can recollect. *Cruden's Concordance* of the Bible was published in 1737. It is an indispensable book of reference for a clergyman and every student of the English Bible. *In execution*—i.e., of a decree of the court. *White*—lucky; fortunate. The word 'white' was used in this sense by the ancient Romans. *Kitchen*—cook-room. The servants generally take their meals in the kitchen.

*A great house*—the house of a wealthy man. *Regaled*—feasted. Even cold meat and ale were sumptuous food to the poor priest. *Cold meat and ale*—not luxuries but simple fare. *Brought up*—fed and clothed. *Followed the plough*—i.e., worked as farm-labourers. *Went out to service*—sought employment as menial servants. *Study he found impossible*—The pursuit of learning or intellectual labour of any sort was not possible under such unfavourable circumstances. *Advowson*—"right of presentation to a benefice"—(*Oxford Dictionary*); the patron's right of nominating a clergyman to a vacant benefice under him. *The advowson etc.*—The whole value of the living would not have purchased a good library.

*Theological library*—collection of books on theology. Theology is the science which treats of God and His attributes and His relations with man. *Unusually lucky*—i.e., a man of rare good fortune. *Dog-eared volumes*—books with their corners turned down by frequent use: well-thumbed books. *Pots and pans*—kitchen utensils. The few books that the clergyman had, did not require an entire shelf; so they are arranged amongst the domestic utensils. *Rust*—to be covered with rust,

*i.e.*, to moulder or decay: (here) "to lose quality or efficiency by disuse or inactivity"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *In so unfavourable a situation*—in such circumstances of extreme poverty.

**Paragraph 58.** The English Church of that age contained a number of ministers (clergymen) distinguished for their learning and culture. These men were to be found at the Universities, in the Cathedrals and the capital.

*Lack*—want *Ministers*—clergymen. *Distinguished by abilities and learning*—remarkable for their talents and scholarship. *Scattered*—dispersed. *Rural population*—village folk. *Were brought together*—were assembled: congregated. *Where the means of acquiring knowledge were abundant*—*i.e.*, where there were facilities for study, such as large libraries. *Where the opportunities, etc.*—through the means of debates and discussions held in learned societies.

*Qualified*—endowed: furnished. *Parts*—talents: natural gifts. *Eloquence*—the art of giving effective expression to one's thoughts and emotions.

*Of life*—*i.e.*, experience of human character and society. *Victoriously*—successfully. *Heretics*—persons who hold opinions contrary to the doctrines of the orthodox religion. *Sceptics*—persons who doubt or disbelieve the truths of religion. *To command the attention of*—to impress. *Friolous*—silly and thoughtless. *Worldly congregations*—worshippers assembled in the Church who care more for the pursuit of the advantages and pleasures of this world than spiritual blessings. *Guide the deliberations of senates*—help Parliament with their wise advice on political questions. *Senate*—originally the body of the representatives of the citizens of ancient Rome vested with supreme legislative power; in modern times this name is given to the upper chamber of the legislature of several countries in Europe and America. Macaulay uses this word of the English Parliament especially of the House of Lords of which the bishops were members. *Respectable*—worthy of respect, and winning respect. *Dissolute*—immoral; licentious. *The most dissolute of courts*—The extreme

[Page 95. Footnote—*Distinction*—difference. *Marked*—emphasised. *Eschard*—See notes on paragraph 55. *Cannot but be observed*—must be noticed. *Ecclesiastical history*—history of the Church.

licentiousness of Charles II and his courtiers is referred to. *Fathom*—sound; deeply investigate into. *Abysses*—properly bottomless gulfs: hence profound problems.

*Metaphysical theology*—doctrines about God and His attributes and relation to man and this world based on deep philosophical truths. Theology treats of God and His relations to the World and Man. Metaphysics, on the other hand, aims at an explanation of the universe with the aid of the laws of thought framed by man's reason. Metaphysical theology attempts to explain the facts of religious experience in the light of abstract philosophical truths. *To fathom.....theology*—to penetrate into and comprehend the deepest problems of religion in the light of abstract philosophical truths.

*Metaphysical*—pertaining to the science of metaphysics. i.e., the science which inquires into the first principles of being and nature. Mansel defines Metaphysics as "the philosophy of the facts of consciousness considered subjectively in relation to the mind knowing, and objectively in relation to the things known." *Versed*—skilled; practised. *Biblical criticism*—the art by which a student of the Bible seeks to arrive at a correct idea of the truths of Christianity by an examination of its different books in the light of historical and other knowledge. *Threw light on*—illuminated; explained. *The darkest parts etc.*—those periods of the history of the Church about which very little is known.

**N.B.** The doctrines and practices of the modern Christian Church have their roots partly in intuitive truths in Philosophy, partly in the teachings of the Bible and partly in the customs which prevailed in the early Church. The Bishops therefore investigated into these subjects in order that they might defend the Church against its hostile critics.

*Consummate*—thorough; skilful. *Logic*—science of reasoning. *Consummate masters of logic*—able debaters; skilful disputants. *Cultivated*—studied. *Rhetoric*—"art of persuasive or impressive speaking or writing"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Assiduity*—diligence. *Discourses*—compositions oral or written: treatises and sermons. *Valued*—esteemed; prized. *Models of style*—standards of literary excellence; examples of a style of writing worthy of imitation.



*Some cultivated rhetoric...style*—**Expl.** Macaulay describes in this sentence the better type of English clergymen of the 17th century who were to be found in the towns. Some of these men diligently studied the literary art. They acquired such excellence in it that their compositions are still regarded as standards of elegant language.

*With scarce a single exception*—almost without any exception : almost invariably. *Universities*—i.e. of Oxford and Cambridge. *Cathedrals*—A Cathedral is the principal Church in a diocese : its management is entrusted to a body of clergymen presided over by the bishop. *Barrow* (1630-77)—a famous English divine and scholar. He held for a time the chair of Greek and then of Mathematics at Cambridge and lastly he rose to be the Master of Trinity. As a mathematician he was considered to be inferior only to his distinguished pupil Newton. He composed some of the finest sermons in the English language. *Lately died*—Barrow died in 1677. *Pearson* (1613-1686)—John Pearson was a famous English divine and scholar of his age. He became Master of Jesus College, Cambridge in 1660 : and was elected Master of Trinity College in 1662. He was consecrated as Bishop of Chester in 1673. He was perhaps the ablest scholar and theologian of his age. His best known work, "*Exposition of the Creed*", was published in 1659.

*Thence*—i.e. from Cambridge. *Episcopal bench*—an expression used for the body of bishops who have seats in the House of Lords. *Had gone.....bench*—i.e., had been made a bishop. *Cudworth* (1617-88)—Ralph Cudworth was a famous English divine and author ; he became Master of Christ's College, Cambridge, in 1654. His best known works are "*The True Intellectual System of the Universe*" published in 1678 and a "*Treatise concerning Eternal and Immutable Morality*" published after his death. *Henry More* (1614-87)—a famous scholar and theologian. He became a fellow of Christ's College at Cambridge in 1639. He received holy orders but refused all preferment including two bishoprics. He was known as one of the Cambridge Platonists and published a number of philosophical works both in verse and prose. *There*—i.e., at Cambridge. *South*—Robert South (1634-1716) was a famous English divine ; he was the Rector of Islip and declined the bishopric of Rochester that was offered to him in 1713. His

sermons were pithy and humorous in their style and remain popular even till now. *Pococke*—Edward Pococke (1604-91), the famous orientalist, was a fellow of Corpus Christi College, Oxford. He was the first professor of Arabic at Oxford. He was one of the most learned men of his age.

*Jane*—William Jane (1645-1707) was the canon of Christ Church and then the Regius Professor of Divinity at Oxford. He became the Dean of Gloucester in 1685.

*Aldrich*—Henry Aldrich (1647-1710), the famous divine and scholar, was the Dean of Christ Church from 1689 till his death. He was entrusted with Spratt with the publication of Clarendon's "*Memoirs*". *Prideaux*—Humphrey Prideaux (1648-1724) was a famous orientalist and divine. He became a canon of Norwich in 1681 and rose to be its Dean in 1702 which office he held till his death. His reputation as an author rests mostly on his "*Life of Mahomet*," published in 1697. *Close*—properly a place surrounded by a fence or a wall; hence the precincts of a cathedral. *Close of Norwich*—i.e. Norwich Cathedral. *Whitby*—Daniel Whitby (1638-1726) was first the chaplain of the Bishop of Salisbury and then the precentor of the Cathedral. He was the author of numerous sermons and theological treatises including a "*Paraphrase and Commentary on the New Testament*."

*London clergy*—clergymen who officiated as priests in the different parishes of the capital. *Were always spoken of as a class apart*—formed by themselves a band of famous scholars and authors distinct from the clergymen in other parts of the country. *Profession*—calling or vocation as clergymen. *Learning and eloquence*—scholarship and oratorical abilities. *Upheld*—maintained. *Principal pulpits*—chief churches. A *pulpit* is an elevated place in a church on which the preacher takes his stand. *Metropolis*—properly the mother city; hence capital. *Occupied*—held. *Crowd*—band; number. *Distinguished*—famous; remarkable. *Rulers of the Church*—i.e., bishops and archbishops.

*Sherlock*—William Sherlock (died 1707) was a famous English divine and a theological writer of some repute. He was the master of the Temple from 1685 to 1704 and the Dean of St. Paul's from 1691 till his death. His "*Practical Discourse concerning Death*" was translated into French and

Welsh. *Preached at the Temple*—officiated as the priest of the Temple Church. The quarter of London where the monasteries of the Knights Templars stood in former times is called the Temple. The Temple Church is believed to be the only portion of the old monasteries now existing. Adjoining it are the two Inns of Court called Middle Temple and Inner Temple because they stand on the site of the old monastic establishment. *Tillotson*—John Tillotson (1630—94), one of the most famous of English divines. He was a preacher of Lincoln's Inn and chaplain to Charles II. He was the Dean of Canterbury in 1670 and a canon of St. Paul's in London. He was appointed Archbishop of Canterbury in 1691 which office he held till his death. He was one of the best preachers of the day. Some of his sermons like "*The Wisdom of being Religious*" are still popular.

*Lincoln's Inn*—one of the four institutions in London that enjoy the privilege of calling candidates to the bar after they have studied for a certain number of terms and passed certain examinations. The other three are Gray's Inn, Inner Temple and Middle Temple. *Wake*—William Wake (1657—1737) was a preacher at Gray's Inn from 1698 to 1696. He became the Dean of Exeter in 1703, the Bishop of London in 1705 and the Archbishop of Canterbury in 1716. He was the author of a number of theological treatises. *Jeremy Collier*—the famous non-juring clergyman and author became a lecturer at Gray's Inn in 1685. He was ordained a non-juring bishop in 1713. (For further particulars of his life, see notes on paragraph 56). *Gray's Inn*—See notes on 'Lincoln's Inn' above. *Burnet*—Gilbert Burnet (1643—1715), a famous English divine, who played an important part in English history during the period of the Revolution. He became the chaplain of Charles II in 1673 from which office he was subsequently dismissed for his condemnation of the King's profligacy. He was the chaplain of the Rolls Chapel and lecturer of St. Clement's from 1675 to 1684. He was outlawed by James II in 1697 and strongly supported the cause of William III. He was made Bishop of Salisbury in 1689. His best known works are "*History of the Reformation in England*" and "*History of My Own Time*". *Stillingfleet*—Edward Stillingfleet (1635—99) was at first, like Bishop Burnet, a preacher at Rolls Chapel. He became the Dean of St. Paul's in 1678 and

the Bishop of Worcester in 1689 which office he held till his death.

*St. Paul's Cathedral*—in London. It is the largest cathedral in England. *Patrick*—Simon Patrick (1626—1707) was the rector of St. Paul's Covent Garden from 1662 to 1689. He was consecrated Bishop of Chichester in 1689 and was translated to Ely in 1691. He was a voluminous writer on theological subjects. *Covent Garden*—North of the Strand in London. *Fowler*—Edward Fowler (1632—1714) was the vicar of St. Giles, Cripplegate, in London from 1681 to 1685. He was suspended for his Whiggism in 1685 and influenced the London clergy against reading Declaration of Indulgence in 1687. He was made the Bishop of Gloucester in 1691. He was the author of a number of theological treatises. *Cripplegate*—a quarter of London. *Sharp*—John Sharp (1645—1714) was appointed the Rector of St. Giles-in-the Fields, London, in 1675. He became chaplain in ordinary to James II in 1686 but was suspended for his sermons held to contain reflections against the King. He was one of those clergymen who refused to read the Declaration of Indulgence in 1688. After the Revolution he became the Dean of Canterbury in 1689 and the Archbishop of York in 1691. His works include, besides sermons, a book on the coinage of England.

*Tenison*—Thomas Tenison (1636—1715) became the Rector of St. Martin-in-the Fields. He joined the seven bishops in their declaration of 1688. He won fame for his philanthropic projects and established in 1695 the first public library in his parish in London. He was made the Bishop of London in 1691 and the Archbishop of Canterbury in 1694. *Sprat*—Thomas Sprat (1635—1713) was appointed curate of St. Margaret's in Westminster. He was a man of versatile talents and was one of the original members of the Royal Society. He was made the Dean of Westminster in 1683 and the Bishop of Rochester in 1684. He is famous in literature for the excellent style of his sermons. *Beveridge*—William Beveridge (1637—1708) became a vicar of St. Peter's Cornhill, in London in 1672. He became the prebendary of Canterbury in 1684 and the Bishop of St. Asaph's in 1704. He composed a number of religious works that were published after his death. *St. Peter's*—a parish church in London

and must be carefully distinguished from the great cathedral of this name in Rome. *High note*—great eminence or fame. *Ecclesiastical history*—i.e., history of the English Church

*Ten became Bishops etc.*—Macaulay's calculation is a little inaccurate. Nine of these men became Bishops and four Archbishops. The Bishops were (1) Wake, (2) Burnet, (3) Stillingfleet, (4) Patrick, (5) Fowler, (6) Tenison, (7) Sprat, (8) Beveridge and (9) Collier (a non-juring Bishop). The Archbishops were (1) Tillotson, (2) Wake, (3) Sharp and (4) Tenison. *Which came forth.....parsonage*—which were written by a country clergyman. *George Bull* (1634-1710)—a famous Anglican theologian; he held a number of livings in the country before he was created Bishop of St. David's in 1705. His greatest works "*Harmonia Apostolica*" and "*Defensio Fidei Nicænæ*" were published while he held rural livings in Gloucestershire.

*Produced those works*—written those books. *Estate*—property. *Collect a library*—i.e., purchase books that he required for his use.

**Paragraph 59.** The priests of the Anglican Church consisted of two classes of men—(1) one cultured, intelligent and scholarly and (2) the other poor and ignorant, scattered through the rural areas. The former were in favour of constitutional principles of government and toleration for the Dissenters (Protestant sects other than the Church of England). The latter thought very highly of their own profession and were intolerant of other faiths and sects. They were narrow bigots who were opposed to all measures of toleration for the Dissenters. These men, though rude and poor, exercised the most powerful influence in the country.

*The Anglican priesthood*—the priests of the Anglican Church (i.e., of the Church of England). *Sections*—classes. *Acquirements*—attainments; knowledge and talents. *Manners*—ways;

---

[Page 97, Footnote—*Nelson* (1664-1715)—a religious writer and a promoter of various philanthropic enterprises; he published in 1713 a life of Dr. George Bull. *Procuring*—obtaining. *Thomas Bray* (1636-1730)—a well-known English divine. He projected a scheme for establishing parochial libraries in England which developed into the Society for promoting Christian knowledge.

conduct. *Trained for*—fit to discharge their duties. *Comprised*—included. *Familiar with all ancient and modern learning*—possessed of a thorough knowledge of ancient and modern literature and science. *Ancient learning* refers to the literature and philosophy of the ancient Greeks and Romans. *Encounter*—meet on equal terms; successfully refute the arguments of. *Hobbes* (1588-1679)—a famous English philosopher. His greatest work "*Leviathan*" was published in 1651. His speculations were condemned as atheistic because they tended to weaken men's faith in religion. His most striking doctrine was that all human actions, however disguised, have their roots in our self-love. Hobbes's views caused considerable comment and were fiercely criticised by Tenison and the Cambridge Platonists. *Bossuet* (1627-1704)—bishop of Meaux, was an eminent French preacher and controversial writer. He was the author, amongst other works, of "*Exposition of the Roman Catholic Faith*." A number of the English divines of the age wrote treatises to expose the errors of the Roman Catholic faith of which Bossuet was a champion.

*Weapons of controversy*—i.e., arguments or reasons. *Controversy*—dispute. *Men able to encounter Hobbes or Bossuet etc.*—Men, who by their able arguments, could refute Hobbes's theories directed against religion and Christianity, and defend the Protestant religion against the champions of Roman Catholicism like Bossuet. *Sermons*—religious discourses delivered by clergymen from the pulpits. *Set forth*—show; present to view. *The majesty and beauty of Christianity*—the sublime and beautiful truths of the Christian religion. *Justness of thought*—elevation of sentiments appropriate to the subject. *Energy*—vigour. *The indolent Charles*—Charles II who was quite indifferent about religion. *Roused himself to listen*—i.e., felt interested in the sermon. *Fastidious*—difficult to please, i.e., apt to find fault with sermons and make merry over them. Buckingham possessed some literary talents and among other pieces he wrote '*The Rehearsal*' in which he ridiculed the contemporary dramatists.

*Buckingham*—See notes on paragraph 38. He was a brilliant but a most dissolute member of the court of Charles II. He seduced the Countess of Shrewsbury and killed her husband

in a duel in 1688. *Sneer*—scoff or gibe as he generally did at religion. *Forgot to sneer*—i.e., was deeply impressed. Macaulay is evidently thinking of Goldsmith's famous line:—"And fools who came to scoff remained to pray." *Men who could in their etc.*—**Expl.** Macaulay describes in this sentence the talents of some of the famous London clergymen of the 17th century. The sermons, in which they preached the sublime and beautiful truths of Christianity, were noble in their sentiments and powerful in their language. They roused the interest even of Charles II who was indifferent about matters of religion and deeply impressed even the dissolute Buckingham who was so hard to please.

*Address*—style of conversation. *Politeness*—courtesy as distinguished from the rudeness of the rural clergy. *Knowledge of the world*—wide experience of men and things. *Qualified*—fitted. *Manage the consciences etc.*—guide the moral and religious life of rich men and of those who enjoyed high social positions. The clergymen from their wide experience of human nature knew the best way to approach these men so that they might be persuaded to give up their evil courses. Any attempt at the reform of the character of such man would certainly have failed if the clergymen had gone about it in a dictatorial manner. **N.B.** Some of the clergymen, named above, were chaplains to Charles II. But Burnet lost his situation because he had ventured to remonstrate with the King on his immorality. *Halifax*—Sir George Saville, Marquis of Halifax (1633-95), was an eminent statesman of the periods of the Restoration and the Revolution. He opposed the Exclusion Bill in 1679 and in 1688 presided over the meeting of the peers who invited William III to assume the crown of England. He was the author of a number of political pamphlets. He was a "Trimmer," who prided himself in avoiding extremes. *Discuss*—hold debates or disputes with a view to find out the truth. *With whom Halifax etc.*—i.e., whose opinions were sought by Halifax on important political questions. **N.B.** Macaulay is thinking of those clergymen who played important parts in the history of the period. Bishop Burnet, for example, largely assisted in bringing about the Revolution, even drafted William's declaration of policy and accompanied him from Holland to London.

*Dryden*—the greatest poet of the age; among English authors he ranks very high also as a master of finished prose. See notes on paragraph 18. *Own*—admit.

*Was not ashamed to own etc.*—i.e., Dryden admitted without any hesitation that the writings of some of the famous clergy-men of the age had taught him his beautiful prose style.

*The other section*—the other class of priests, viz., those who were scattered in the villages. *Was destined*—was intended to perform. *Ruder and humbler service*—rougher and lowlier duties. *Dispersed etc.*—scattered in the villages. *At all*—in the least. *Refined*—cultured.

*Small farmers*—farmers of a humble class who own small plots of land. *Upper servants*—menials of the upper grades, like cooks and butlers, as distinguished from grooms and gardeners. *Subsistence*—livelihood. *Derived but a scanty subsistence*—obtained a very poor livelihood. *Tithe sheaves and tithe pigs*—The tenth part of the profits of the land and stock belonged to the clergy. These tithes were formerly not paid in money but in kind. Hence the tenth sheaf of corn or the tenth pig belonged to the clergy. The tithes have since then been converted into rent-charges. See notes on paragraph 54. *Sheaves*—bundles, viz., of the ears of corn. *Attaining*—obtaining. *Professional honours*—ecclesiastical rank and distinction; higher church offices. *Attaining high professional honours*—rising to high ecclesiastical offices, like those of bishops and archbishops. *Professional spirit*—exclusive devotion to and zeal for the work of one's profession; so a narrow spirit of intolerance of other professions. *The professional spirit was strongest*—i.e., these men cherished a very high opinion of their own calling and the Church to which they belonged and were guilty of very narrow intolerance against other sects.

*Boast*—pride. *The boast of the Universities*—members of whose scholarship and attainments the Universities were proud. *The delight of the capital*—whose ways and eloquent sermons pleased the refined society of London. *Attained or*

---

[Page 98, Footnote.—*Own with pleasure*—gladly admit. *Talent*—turn; gift. *Archbishop Tillotson*—See previous note on this paragraph. *Congreve*—William Congreve (1670—1729) was a famous dramatist of the Restoration age. He was a great friend of Dryden's.]



*might etc.*—either actually obtained or were likely to obtain. *Opulence*—wealth. *Lordly rank*—the highest rank in the Church as bishops and archbishops; status as a spiritual peer. Bishops are addressed as lords and are entitled to seats in the Upper House of Parliament. *Respectable in numbers*—fairly large in number. *More respectable in character*—On account of their superior intelligence and sanctity of life these men exercised a much greater influence on society than could be expected from their number.

*Leaned towards*—inclined towards; favoured. *Constitutional principles of government*—these principles of government which check the arbitrary power of the King and make him govern according to the law and constitution of the country. Macaulay means to say that the upper ranks of the English clergymen did not view with favour the despotic power of the King; they desired that Parliament (representing the English nation) should exercise an effective check on the royal power. *Lived on friendly terms with*—were friends with; did not want to persecute.

*Presbyterians, Independents and Baptists*—See notes on paragraph 51. *Full toleration*—complete freedom of worship. *Granted*—extended. *All Protestant sects*—Dissenters of various classes; all classes of Protestants who did not conform to the form of worship prescribed by the Church of England. The Presbyterians, Independents, Baptists, Quakers were some of these sects.

*Would even have consented*—were even willing. *Alterations*—changes. *Liturgy*—the established ritual for public worship; more commonly it is used of the service for the celebration of the Eucharist. The Liturgy of the English Church dates from 1547-48 when it received the approval of Parliament. *Conciliating*—satisfying. *Honest and candid Nonconformists*—these Dissenters who had conscientious objections against worshipping God according to the form prescribed by the Church of England. *Nonconformists*—Dissenters; those who do not conform to the form of worship prescribed by the Church of England. This name came into use after the passing of the Act of Uniformity in 1662 and was first applied to those clergymen who refused to subscribe to it and were in consequence driven from their livings. Before the passing

of this Act they were known under the general name of "Puritans." *Would even have consented to make etc.*—These men were liberal; they were even prepared to introduce some changes in the form of worship prescribed for their Church to satisfy the honest scruples of the Dissenters so that they might enter again the Church of England. **N.B.** Macaulay refers to the attempts, made by some of the Anglican churchmen, like Wilkins and Stillingfleet, to devise some means by which Dissenters might be reconciled to the Church of England. A Bill, proposing some modification of the Church ceremonies, was introduced in Parliament in 1668 but failed to pass. A similar attempt made in 1689 to attract the Dissenters to the Church by altering the Prayer Book again ended in failure.

*Latitudinarianism*—(1) Now commonly used to mean indifference (or laxity) regarding religious doctrines. (2) In the 17th century it was used of those theologians, like Burnet, Tillotson and Chillingworth, who wanted to bring the Non-conformists within the fold of the Church of England by modifying its religious doctrines and forms of worship. These men denied or doubted the divine origin of Episcopacy though they admitted its expediency. *Held in horror*—deeply hated; abhorred. *Parson*—i.e., clergyman. *Ragged*—tattered; shabby. *Gown*—a loose outer garment; the reference is to the surplice or white gown worn by the priests of the Church of England during the performance of religious services. *Lawn*—a sort of fine linen or cambric. It is commonly used for the sleeves and other parts of the dress of bishops. Hence it is commonly mentioned as a symbol for a bishop's garment. Cf. Pope's famous line: "*A saint in crape is twice a saint in lawn.*" *Hoods*—ornamented folds at the back of academic gowns. Hoods of a scarlet colour are worn by the holders of some of the highest University degrees like the D. D. *Scarlet*—of a bright red colour. *He was indeed prouder.....scarlet hoods*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the rural English clergy of the 17th century. These men, though poor and ignorant, took much greater pride in their profession than ecclesiastics of the highest rank like bishops, and who possessed besides the highest University degrees. The bishops were rich and

educated. They wore fine clothes and silk hoods indicative of their high academic distinction.

*Consciousness*—knowledge. *Worldly*—temporal; secular. *Worldly circumstances*—viz., wealth and social position. *Distinguish*—make out; differentiate. *Hold immoderately high*—form an extravagant estimate of; think very highly of. *Dignity*—importance. *Sacerdotal office*—priestly function. *Single title*—solitary or only claim. *The very consciousness that there was little etc.*—The rural clergyman was aware that in wealth and social position he was in no way superior to the rustics amongst whom he moved. His only claim to superiority was his religious profession. So he thought very highly of his profession which alone distinguished him from the rustics. **N.B.** Macaulay refers here to a very common trait of human nature. Men, who have very little to boast of, are apt to attach an extravagant importance to any claim to superiority that they may have over their fellows. Amongst the Hindus the most intolerable caste pride is to be found mostly among the poor and ignorant members of the upper castes.

*Seclusion*—retirement, i.e., of the country. *Having lived in seclusion*—i.e., with no experience of the world at large. *By reading or conversation*—A man's knowledge improves either by study or by conversation with well-informed and intelligent companions. The rural clergyman enjoyed none of these advantages. He had few or no books at all to read. He moved in ignorant society. Consequently he could not be expected to be cured of his errors. *Held*—believed in. *Doctrines*—principles; theories. *Indefeasible*—that which cannot be defeated or made void; অখণ্ডনীয়। *Hereditary right*—the right or claim to the throne that descends from father to son or from an ancestor to his legal heir.

*Indefeasible hereditary right*—This was a natural corollary of the theory of the *Divine Right* of kings, set up by some of the English sovereigns especially the Stuarts. The doctrine taught that the King ruled by appointment of God and that he owed his throne to no human agency. The doctrine naturally implied that the legal heir of a king, however wicked or incompetent, could never be deprived of his right to succeed to the throne. The doctrine of Divine Right played in the

past an important part in English constitutional history but is now regarded as quite exploded. "Such a doctrine (that of Divine Right) was credited, not because those who held it were absolutely silly, but because they were more afraid of rebellion and Civil War than they were of the tyranny of kings"—(*Gardiner*). *Passive obedience*—Another corollary of the doctrine of Divine Right of kings. This doctrine lays down that it is the duty of the subjects to offer unqualified submission to the King's commands, however unreasonable or tyrannical these commands may be. *Nonresistance*—Another name for the principle of passive obedience. This doctrine lays down that it is sinful for a subject to resist the authority of the King on any ground or pretext whatsoever. A Non-resistance Bill was introduced in Parliament in 1675 but failed to pass.

*Crude absurdity*—unqualified preposterousness; essential silliness or worthlessness. *He held and taught etc.*—The rural clergyman was a staunch believer in the foolish doctrine of the Divine Right of kings. He not only held this theory himself but taught his parishioners the utterly silly theories that the legal heirs of kings (however wicked or incompetent) cannot by any reason be deprived of their right to the throne. He taught them further that it is the bounden duty of the subjects to submit to the authority of the King without any question; and that resistance to the King's authority under any circumstances and on any ground is sinful. **N. B.** Macaulay was a staunch Whig and a believer in the principles of constitutional government. Consequently he holds in utmost scorn these theories that support the despotic authority of kings. *Petty war*—light skirmish; mean controversy. *Having been long etc.*—being for a long time engaged in active hostility (such as controversy, persecution) with the Dissenters.

*Dissenters*—See previous notes. *Wrongs*—injuries; injustice. *He had done them*—*i.e.* the Church of England which he represented had inflicted on the Dissenters. *He hated them for the wrongs he had done them*—The clergyman bore a great grudge against the Dissenters, because he had done these harmless people deep injustice. This embodies a deep psychological truth. If we do wrong to innocent people we feel uneasy about our own injustice. If the injured people do not retaliate.

we hate them more deeply. The sense of wrong rankles in our mind and gives us no rest.

*Five Mile Act*—an Act passed in 1665 forbidding dissenting ministers from preaching within five miles of any corporate town or of any place where the ministers had once held a cure. The breach of the provisions of this Act was to be punished with a fine of £ 40. This Act, which proved a powerful engine for the persecution of the Dissenters, was abolished in 1689. *Conventicle Act*—a law passed against the Dissenters in 1664. It provided that any person over sixteen years of age would be punished with an ascending scale of fine ending with seven years' transportation according to the number of times that he attended worship in a conventicle. A conventicle was defined as a religious meeting not in accordance with the practice of the Church of England at which more than four persons were present beside the household. This Act was repealed in 1689. *Odious*—hateful. *Had not a sharper edge*—were not more severe in their operation; did not inflict more cruel penalties. The repressive laws are compared to weapons with sharp edges.

*Found no fault with the Five Mile Act etc.*—He cordially approved of the laws like the Five Mile Act and Conventicle Act by which the Dissenters were cruelly harassed. Far from feeling any sympathy for these persecuted people, he only wished that the penalties, provided by these Acts, were more severe. *Influence*—power. *Office*—profession (of a priest) *Exerted*—exercised. *Passionate zeal*—burning ardour; extreme enthusiasm. *On the Tory side*—i.e., in favour of the political party that supported royal authority. For *Tory*, see notes on paragraph 18. *Immense*—great; enormous; tremendous. *That influence was immense*—He exercised very powerful influence in the country; his views and opinions carried great weight with his rustic parishioners. *Country rector*—village clergyman. For *rector*, see notes on paragraph 54. *Not regarded as a gentleman*—Macaulay has stated in paragraph 55 that "the clergy were regarded as, on the whole, a plebeian class." *Dare to aspire to the hand of*—venture to think of marrying. *Ladies of the manor house*—ladies belonging to the family of the village squire or nobleman. *Manor house*—See notes on paragraph 18. *Asked*—invited. *Parlours*—drawing-rooms.

A *parlour* is properly a room in a house occupied by the members of a family when they have no company. *The great*—rich and powerful men; this was the sense in which this word was commonly used in 18th century literature.

*Was left to drink and smoke*—i.e., mixed on intimate terms. *Butlers*—domestic servants who have the charge of plates, wines etc. [*butler*, n. Servant in charge of wine-cellar and plate etc., head servant—(*Oxford Dictionary*).] *The power etc.*—the influence of the clergymen was less than in modern times, though they are now regarded as the social equals of gentlemen. *Clerical body*—priestly class.

*A class*—a body of men; the members of a profession. *Is by no means proportioned to*—is in no way equal to; cannot certainly be judged by. *Consideration*—respect. *In their individual capacity*—i.e., singly by themselves without any reference to the class or organisation to which they belong. As an individual the rural clergyman was poor and low in social esteem. But the whole body of country clergy exercised a vast influence in the rural areas of England. *A Cardinal*—The highest dignitary of the Roman Catholic Church immediately below the Pope. *Is a much more exalted personage*—is a man possessed of much higher dignity and rank. *Exalted*—elevated: lofty. *Begging friar*—mendicant monk. *Friar*—(Lat. *frater*, a brother) a name given to the members of the religious orders of the Roman Catholic Church especially the members of the four mendicant orders. These orders are as follow: (1) Franciscans or Grey Friars; (2) Augustines; (3) Dominicans or Black Friars; (4) Carmelites or White Friars. The members of these orders took the vow of absolute poverty and of renunciation of the pleasures of the world. They lived on alms and devoted themselves to the spiritual welfare of the people.

*Grievous mistake*—great error. *The College of Cardinals*—called also the *Sacred College*. is the body of the highest dignitaries of the Roman Catholic Church who constitute the Pope's council. On the death of a Pope they sit in conclave and elect his successor. *Dominion*—influence. *Order of Saint Francis*—class of mendicant friars known as Franciscans or Grey Friars. This order was founded by Francis of Assisi about 1210. *Saint Francis* (1182-1226)—known also as

St. Francis of Assisi, was a holy man who founded the Franciscan order of monks. He was canonised by Pope, Gregory IX. and his day is commemorated on 4th October. **N.B.** The enormous influence, exercised on the public mind of Europe by the monks of the Middle Ages, may be judged by the fact that the ruinous wars of the Crusades were undertaken by the Christian princes of Europe at the instance of Peter, the Hermit, a French monk. Indian students need not be reminded of the deep respect felt by the Hindus for *Sannyasis*.

*A Cardinal.....Saint Francis—Expl.* Macaulay is here speaking of the vast influence exercised by the country clergy as a class though each individual clergyman was poor, neglected and low in social esteem. Individually the country clergyman was poor and low in social status when compared with the higher dignitaries of the Church who were rich and moved in high circles. But as a class the rural clergy exercised an immense influence over the minds of the people. For they were numerous, scattered in all parts of the country, directly in touch with the mass of the people. In the Roman Catholic Church also each Cardinal is richer and higher in power and dignity than each mendicant friar. But the whole body of Cardinals had much less power and influence than the mendicant friars, specially the Franciscan friars as a class. The Franciscan friars profoundly influenced and shaped the religious thoughts of men in Europe for many centuries.

*Peer*—nobleman. *Station*—rank: position. *Roman Catholic priest*—The inhabitants of Ireland except in the northern division of Ulster are mostly Roman Catholics. Therefore the priests of this religion exercise a powerful influence in Irish politics. Roman Catholics were not eligible for election as members of Parliament before the Catholic Emancipation of 1829. *Munster and Connaught*—names of the two provinces of Ireland in the south-west and the west. The inhabitants of these provinces are mostly Roman Catholics as has been pointed out above. *Counties*—districts. *Combination*—united or joint action. *Carry an election*—secure a candidate's election as a member of Parliament; succeed in returning a man to Parliament. *Against a combination of peers*—against a candidate whose cause is supported by a number of peers. *Yet there are in Munster Connaught etc.*—Each

Roman Catholic village priest in Ireland is poor. Every Irish peer and landlord is much richer, has a far higher social position than the village priest. Yet the priests as a class have enormously greater influence on the people than the Irish peers as a class. They will carry an election easily against the landlords.

**N.B.** The relations between the Irish tenants and their landlords continued to be most unfriendly till quite recent times. The latter were mostly Englishmen who chose to live in England rather than reside on their estates. Thus there could not be any bond of sympathy between the landlords and their tenants. The former left the management of their estates to agents who attempted to screw as much as they could out of the poor and ignorant peasants. The Roman Catholic priest was the only friend from whom the miserable tenants could obtain advice and support. It was natural under these circumstances that the priest's voice would carry greater weight with the Catholic voters than that of the absentee landlord.

*Pulpit*—See notes on paragraph 58. *Periodical press*—publications appearing at regular intervals, *i.e.*, weekly newspapers and monthly magazines, etc. *In the seventeenth.....press now is*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's remarks on the great influence of the English rural clergy in the 17th century. Newspapers were then very few and most of the common people were then illiterate. In those days the sermons, delivered by the village clergy in the village church, served the purpose of modern newspapers and magazines. The clergymen expressed their views on the political questions of the day in these sermons and instructed their parishioners about their political duties. So the village clergymen did the work in those days which newspapermen do now; and they had the same great influence.

*Clowns*—boors; ignorant villagers. *Gazette*—newspaper; the only newspaper that then existed was named *The London Gazette*. *Pamphlet*—a small book consisting of a few pages or sheets. *A political pamphlet*—a short treatise discussing a political topic, generally of temporary interest. *Ill informed*—ignorant. *Spiritual pastor*—priest; rather a tautologous expres-



sion for a religious teacher or a minister of religion. *Pastor*—(Lat. *pastor*, a shepherd) originally a shepherd or a keeper of a flock; now generally used to mean a priest (a minister of the gospel who has in his charge the religious care of his congregation). *Every week*—i.e., on Sundays when services are held in Christian Churches. *Haranguing them*—addressing his congregation. A *harangue* is an address delivered to a large assembly; it refers here to the sermon delivered in the Church by the clergyman. *His harangues were never answered*—i.e., they never met with counter-arguments. Thus the ignorant villagers naturally remained under the impression that their priest's views were the last words on the subject. They believed that their correctness could not be challenged in any way.

**N.B.** The opinions of public men on political questions, expressed in public meetings or published in books, are subjected to a searching criticism by their opponents. But on account of the privileged position, enjoyed by the clergymen, their opinions had to meet with no such opposition.

*Important conjuncture*—serious crisis. *Conjuncture*—critical state of public affairs. *Invectives*—violent abuse or denunciation. *Against the Whigs*—Macaulay has pointed out above that the clergymen were violent Tories. *Exhortations*—homilies; admonitions. *The Lord's anointed*—the King; this expression was commonly used of the King by those who believed in the theory of the Divine Right of Kings. The throne was, in the opinion of these politicians, sacred, because the King was elevated to his high office by God. *Anointed*—properly smeared with oil; consecrated for his high office by the pouring of holy oil on the body. *Anointing* is one of the principal ceremonies performed at the coronation of English sovereigns and the spoon, with which the oil is applied, forms part of the English regalia. The student may remember in this connection that the pouring of holy water on the head forms a part of the coronation ceremony of Hindu Kings.

*Resounded*—were heard. *Formidable*—tremendous. The minds of men were strongly influenced by the Tory principles of government. *Dissolution*—break-up. *Oxford Parliament*—This name was commonly given to Charles II's last Parliament because it was summoned to meet at Oxford. It had only a

week's session: it opened on March 21, 1681 and when the King found that Parliament was determined to pass the Exclusion Bill, he dissolved it on March, 28. This Parliament was summoned to meet at Oxford because the Tory influence was strong in that town and the Whigs would be left there without the support of the London populace who strongly shared their views. The Whigs, fearing that the King might attempt some violent measure against them, attended Parliament well-armed. This led the common people to suspect that the Whigs desired to gain their ends by Civil War. As the nation had already a bitter experience of the effects of such a war, it rallied round the King to avert such a calamity. This explains the strong Tory reaction that followed the dissolution of this Parliament.

*Violent reaction*—strong counter tendency. *Reaction* in politics means a backward movement from a more advanced to a less advanced policy.

*Exclusionists*—the supporters of the Exclusion Bill. This Bill proposed to exclude from the throne Charles II's brother, the Duke of York (who afterwards became King as James II), on the ground of his being a Roman Catholic. The Bill was introduced in three successive Parliaments in 1679, 1680 and 1681, but failed to become law because each time the King dissolved the Parliament. The Whigs warmly supported the Bill while the Tories stoutly opposed it. *Potent*—powerful. *Oratory*—eloquence.

**Paragraph 60.** The Tory influence of the country gentlemen and clergy was to some extent counterbalanced by the power of the yeomen. The English yeomen were small proprietors who cultivated their own lands with their own hands. They formed about one-seventh of the population. Their income ranged between sixty and seventy pounds a year. They were staunch Whigs in politics and Dissenters in religion.

*In some measure*—to some extent. *Counterbalanced*—checked; neutralised. *Yeomanry*—class of yeomen or free-holders. The yeomen were small landed proprietors who owned the land that they cultivated. They were substantial farmers occupying a rank between gentlemen and labourers. *An eminently manly and truehearted race*—a very brave and honest

class of men. **N.B.** The yeomen furnished the English army with its bravest soldiers in former times. They claim Macaulay's admiration because they always fought for popular freedom and ranged themselves against the supporters of the despotic authority of the kings. They were Whigs. So they got the sympathy of Macaulay, the staunchest of Whigs.

*Truehearted*—honest: sincere. *Petty proprietors*—owners of small estates. *Who cultivated their own fields with their own hands*—This was the distinctive characteristic of the yeomen and indicated their peculiar position in society. Though cultivators, they did not, like the ordinary farm-labourers, work on other men's lands. Again though landed proprietors, they did not, like gentlemen, live on the rent of their lands but on the fruits of their own labour. *Modest competence*—small income. *Moderate*—moderate; small. *Competence*—"sufficiency of means for living" (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Affecting*—pretending. *Scutcheons*—spelt also as 'escutcheons'; the shield on which the coat of arms of an honourable family is represented; family shield. *Crests*—a figure on a wreath or coat of arms serving as the badge of a family; it is a symbol of the coat of arms of a family. | *crest*. n. (Herald) device above shield and helmet on coat of arms etc.—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Without affecting to have etc.*—i.e., without claiming the rank of gentlemen. *Bench of justice*—i.e., bench of Justices of Peace (or rural magistrates). No one below the rank of a gentleman was appointed to these offices. *Aspiring to sit etc.*—i.e., claiming to be gentlemen. *Than at present*—the number of yeomen has greatly declined in modern times, because under the system of agriculture now in vogue the cultivation of small holdings has ceased to be paying.

*The best statistical writers of that age*—the most reliable authors of those times who discussed in their works the social and economical condition of the people. *Proprietors*—i.e., owners of landed property. *Made up*—constituted. *Subsistence*—maintenance. *Freehold estates*—is a legal term, meaning estates held in fee-simple or for life to which no service to a superior is attached as in copyhold estates. *Small landholders*—owners of small estates. *Rent, profit and wages*—Three sources of income are mentioned, (1) *rent* realised from land leased out, (2) *profit* derived from land tilled with their own hands,

(3) *wages* earned by working on the lands of others. *Was estimated at etc.*—was calculated to vary from sixty to seventy pounds a year. *Computed*—reckoned. *Farmed*—cultivated. *The land of others*—i.e., land of which they had taken a lease and for which they had to pay rent to the landlords.

*Reformation*—See notes on paragraph 55. *Leaned towards*—were favourably disposed towards. *Puritanism*—i.e., the religious doctrines of the Puritans. The dissenters from the Church of England were commonly called Puritans in the reign of Elizabeth and the first two Stuarts. They professed extreme strictness in religion and morals. See notes on paragraph 55. [*puritan*, (Hist.) member of the party of English Protestants who regarded reformation of Church under Elizabeth as incomplete and sought to abolish unscriptural and corrupt ceremonies.....; person of or affecting extreme strictness in religion or morals—(*Oxford Dictionary*).] *The civil war*—i.e., the war between Charles I and Parliament. *Taken the side of the Parliament*—The supporters of the Parliament during the civil war were commonly known as Puritans. *Persisted in hearing etc*—continued obstinately to attend religious services in the dissenting churches. *Presbyterian and Independent*—See notes on paragraph 51. *Elections*—i.e., Parliamentary elections. *Strenuously*—zealously; strongly. *Strenuously supported the Exclusionists*—i.e., strongly supported the Whigs who advocated the Exclusion Bill. *Rye House plot*—a plot formed in 1683 by some of the more violent Whigs to assassinate Charles II and his brother, the Duke of York, with a view to securing the succession of the Duke of Monmouth. The plot was so named because the conspirators formed the plan of attacking the King and his brother at the Rye House on their return from Newmarket. The plot failed. A number of men believed to be implicated in it were taken and executed, the most noted victims being Lord Russell and Algernon Sidney. *Proscription*—dooming to death; “putting out of the protection of the law”. (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Fopery*—(a contemptuous term for) Roman Catholicism. *Arbitrary power*—despotic authority of kings; tyranny. *Unmitigated hostility*—deep or bitter hatred.

**Paragraph 61.** The change that has occurred in the towns since the Revolution, has been much greater than the

---

[Page 102, Footnote—*Davenant*.....*King's*—See notes on paragraph 5.]

change that has come to pass in the villages. In the reign of Charles II only four provincial towns could boast of a population numbering ten thousand.

*Great as has been the change*—though the change has been most striking or remarkable. *Rural life*—village life. *Since the Revolution*—i.e., since 1689. For *Revolution* see notes on paragraph 14. *Has come to pass*—has taken place; has occurred. *Amazing*—wonderful; surprising. *Provincial towns*—county towns: towns other than the capital. *Four provincial towns*—as Macaulay points out below these were Bristol, Norwich, York and Exeter.

**Paragraph 62.** The towns next to London in population in those times were Bristol, the port and Norwich, the greatest of the manufacturing towns.

*Next to*—i.e., immediately below London in population. *Next at an immense distance*—i.e., though these towns ranked immediately below London, yet there was an enormous difference between the population of these towns and that of the capital. *Immense distance*—vast difference. *Bristol*—a famous English town and port in Gloucestershire on the western coast. *Then the first English seaport*—the greatest of the English seaports in the 17th century. *Norwich*—the chief town of Norfolk. *First*—greatest. *Far outstripped*—left far behind; greatly exceeded in population. *Outstripped*—"surpassed in relative progress"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Younger rivals*—newer towns like Manchester and Liverpool. *Both have made great positive advances*—The population of both these towns has greatly increased in number. Though these towns are now less populous than others, yet there has been undoubtedly a great increase in the number of their inhabitants. *Quadrupled*—grown four times.

**Paragraph 63.** Visitors to Bristol were in those times surprised at its splendour though the city occupied a much smaller area than now. It was a town of narrow streets, a labyrinth of narrow lanes through which carriages passed with difficulty. But it was famous for its hospitality and good cheer. The chief source of the wealth of the town was its trade with the American plantations. Often the trade was very questionable. For men were often crimped or kidnapped

and shipped off to America to be sold as slaves. The population of the town numbered about 29000 souls.

*Pepys*—See notes on paragraph 28. *Eight years after the Restoration*—i.e., in 1668. *Struck*—impressed. *Splendour*—wealth and magnificence. *His standard*—the test by which he judged the greatness of the city. *Was not high*—was a modest one: could not be regarded as a proof of great superiority. *But his standard was not high*—Pepys did not judge of the greatness of the city by any high standard. He merely thought of the serried rows of houses on the streets. *Noted down*—noticed or mentioned in his diary. *See nothing but houses*—i.e., he found himself surrounded by houses on all sides and could not catch any sight of the country or the green fields. Macaulay refers in this passage to the following entry under June 13, 1668 in *Pepys's Diary*:—"Walked with my wife and people through the city (Bristol), which is in every respect another London, that one can hardly know it to stand in the country no more than that." *Place*—town. *Completely shut out the woods and fields*—obstruct the view of the country. *Large as Bristol might then appear*—though Bristol was then considered a large town. *But*—only. *Area*—space: site. *A few churches of eminent beauty, etc.*—The most beautiful of the Bristol churches is that of St. Mary Redcliffe which was built for the most part towards the end of the 14th century. For grandeur of proportion and finish, this is regarded as one of the most beautiful of English parish churches. Bristol contains besides the remains of some famous churches of the mediæval type.

*Labyrinth*—properly a structure having numerous intricate winding passages which render it difficult for one to find his way from the interior to the entrance; hence anything full of intricate turnings and windings; maze. *Vaults*—arched cellars. *Solidity*—strength: massiveness. *Alleys*—narrow lanes. *Wedged*—fixed like a wedge: a *wedge* is a piece of wood or metal thin at one end and thicker at the other, used in splitting wood or rocks. *Break in*—break down: force its way into. *Cellars*—vaults. Macaulay refers to the following entry in *Pepys's Diary* about Bristol:—"No carts, it standing generally on vaults, only dog-carts." *Conveyed*—carried. *Exclusively*—solely; entirely. *Trucks*—low carriages for conveying goods. *Exhibited*—displayed; publicly manifested. *Gilded carriages*—

luxurious and well-decorated coaches used by rich men in London and other towns. *Trains of servants*—bodies of attendants; retinues. *Rich liveries*—gorgeous dresses; see notes on paragraph 55. *Loaded with*—liberally provided with. *Cheer*—(Lat. *cara*, face) properly cheerfulness of countenance; hence that which promotes good spirits, viz., food, fare; 'to make good cheer' means 'to feast'. *By keeping tables etc.*—i.e., by the richness of their repasts and feasts. *Pomp*—magnificence; splendour. *Christenings*—to christen is to initiate into the Christian Church by the application of water; to baptise. The reference here is to the feasts held on the occasion of the baptism of the children. *Burials*—i.e., funeral feasts. *The hospitality of the city*—the rich entertainment that the citizens provided to their guests or visitors; the festive character of the town. *Widely renowned*—known far and wide. *Collations*—light meals; lunches. *Sugar refiners*—men who carried on the business of refining sugar. America contained extensive sugarcane plantations. The crude sugar, manufactured there, was refined at Bristol. *Regaled*—feasted. Macaulay is evidently thinking of the following passages in Pepys's *Diary* describing his visit to Bristol:—"And so brought us a back way by surprise to his house; where a substantial good house and well furnished; and did give us good entertainment of strawberries, a whole venison pasty cold, and plenty of brave wine, and above all Bristol milk."

*Repast*—food; viands. *Dressed*—prepared; cooked. *Furnace*—a large fire-place used in factories; the reference here is to the furnaces of the sugar-factories. *Rich brewage*—costly drink. *The whole kingdom*—i.e., England. *Bristol milk*—called 'milk punch', a drink made of spirits, usually sherry and milk. **N.B.** Macaulay seems to suggest as if this is some preparation of wine, but this name is commonly given to the famous Spanish wine, called sherry, because formerly it was imported into England through Bristol. In this and the previous sentence, Macaulay alludes to the following passage in Evelyn's *Diary* under 27th June, 1654:—"Here I first saw the manner of refining sugar and casting it into loaves, where we had a collation of eggs fried in the sugar furnace, together with excellent Spanish wine." *This luxury*—indulgence in such rich and expensive feasts. *Thriving trade*—prosperous commerce. *Plantations*—colonies. This was the name formerly

given to the American colonies because they were mostly engaged in agriculture. *West Indies*—the group of islands to the east of North America. *Passion*—ardour; vehement desire. *Colonial traffic*—trade with the American colonies. *Venture*—commodity sent across sea in trade; merchandise sent in ships, on which money was risked. *Bound for*—destined for; sailing for. *Virginia*—one of the oldest of English colonies in America. It was founded by Sir Walter Raleigh and was so named after Elizabeth, the virgin queen. *Antilles*—properly great chain of isles: a name applied to the West Indies consisting of the group of islands enclosing the Carribean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico. *Ventures*—cargoes: wares; commodities. *Were not of the most honourable kind*—were of a disreputable character. Macaulay refers here to the traffic in slaves.

*Transatlantic possessions of the crown*—English territories lying beyond the Atlantic Ocean; English colonies in America. *Transatlantic*—lying beyond the Atlantic Ocean. *There was in the Transatlantic etc.*—Labourers were badly wanted in the American colonies to work the plantations. It was with a view to supplying this demand that labourers were kidnapped and shipped off to America from Bristol. *Supplied*—met. *Crimping*—entrapping men for the army, navy or any other unpopular service by dishonest and questionable practices. A *crimp* is one who for a commission supplies ships with sailors or plantations with labourers. When a crimp finds out a likely victim he seeks to obtain his confidence by advancing to him money or by supplying him with goods on credit. When the confidence is secured, the victim is plied with liquor and is persuaded to sign the articles of service and shipped off to his destination; আড়কাটি।

*Kidnapping*—forcibly carrying away men from one country into another or into slavery. Salmon quotes the following passage from North's *Life of Lord Keeper Guildford* in support of Macaulay's statements:—"It is remarkable there (Bristol) that all men that are dealers even in shop trades launch into adventures by sea, chiefly to the West India plantations and Spain. A poor shopkeeper that sells candles will have a bale of stockings or a piece of stuff for Nevis or Virginia etc., and rather than fail they trade in men."



*Operations*—practice. *Nowhere was this system etc.*—In no other English town was this crime practised so briskly and on such a large scale. *The first magistrates*—i.e., the mayor and the aldermen. *So odious a commerce*—such a hateful trade. *Just*—exactly. *City of London*—the most populous district and richest commercial quarter in London. *The best authority*—the most authentic or reliable source. *Must therefore*—i.e., according to the above calculation.

**Paragraph 64.** Norwich was the centre of the chief manufacture of the country. It was a cathedral town and contained the residence of a Bishop and of a chapter. It was famous besides for the library and museum collected by Sir Thomas Browne. It contained the princely seat of the Dukes of Norfolk who lived in almost a royal style. The population numbered about 29000.

*Norwich*—the capital of Norfolk situated at a distance of about 100 miles to the north east of London. *Fruitful province*—fertile district. *Residence*—seat. *Chapter*—the bishop's council consisting of the canons and other clergymen attached to a Cathedral Church presided over by the Dean. The Cathedral of Norwich dates from very early times. Its foundation is believed to have been laid towards the end of the 11th century by Bishop Herbert who made it the seat of East Anglian bishopric in 1094. *Chief seat*—principal centre. *Chief manufacture*—i.e., woollen manufacture. *Woollen manufacture*—was introduced into England by a colony of Flemish weavers who settled at Worstead, a few miles from Norwich

Page 106, Footnote *North's Life of Lord Keeper etc.* See notes on paragraph 9. *Sir Dudley North* (1611-91) a famous English financier and economist. *Petty's Political Arithmetic* See notes on paragraph 3. *Had the advantage etc.*—i.e., having been born in a subsequent age they had access to facts which were not known to Petty. *Jeffreys* (1618-89) an English lawyer who became Lord Chief Justice in 1689; he became notorious for the brutal sentences he passed on offenders implicated in Monmouth's rebellion. *Bloody Assizes*—the name commonly given to the series of trials held by Judge Jeffreys when 300 prisoners alleged to be concerned in Monmouth's Rebellion were sentenced to death and about 1,000 men were condemned to be sold as slaves.

*Style*—language. *Was as usual coarse* The reference being to the brutal remarks he made as a judge against the prisoners. *Reprimand* reproach. *I cannot reckon the reprimand etc.* i.e., the magistrates of Bristol richly deserved the severe condemnation of their conduct by Jeffreys.

in the reign of King Henry I. A second colony of these weavers settled at Norwich itself during the reign of Edward III. *Realm*—country. *Some men distinguished by learning and science*—e.g., John Caius, the famous scholar and physician. Bishop Hall and Sir Thomas Browne. *More attractions*—greater charms or fascination. *The curious*—people fond of research and inquiry; men of an inquisitive turn of mind. *Museum*—collection of things that have a close relation to literature, arts or science; collection of objects of natural history. *Aviary*—a building or enclosure for rearing or keeping birds. *Botanical garden*—a garden devoted to the culture of plants collected for the purpose of illustrating the science of botany. Sir Thomas Browne (1605—82)—an eminent physician and one of the greatest scholars of his age. After studying medicine in France and Italy he settled at Norwich in 1637 where he practised as a physician. His "*Religio Medici*" attracted much attention and his treatises "*On urn burial*" and "*On vulgar errors*" display much curious erudition. *Fellows*—members. *Royal Society*—the famous English academy of science founded in 1660. A fellowship of this society is regarded as one of the highest distinctions that a scientist can achieve. **N. B.** Sir J. C. Bose and Sir C. V. Raman are members of the Royal Society.

*Well worthy of a long pilgrimage*—A visit to Browne's collections of objects of literary and scientific interest was considered worth the trouble of a long journey. *Pilgrimage*—(1) is properly a journey to a sacred place; (2) *here* it is used to mean a journey undertaken to visit a place full of literary or scientific interest. This part of Macaulay's description of Norwich is based on Evelyn's account of his visit to the city in October 1671. "Next morning I went to see Sir Thomas Browne (with whom I had some time corresponded by letter, though I had never seen him before); his whole house and garden being a paradise and cabinet of rarities, and that of the best collection, especially medals, books, plants and natural things. Amongst other curiosities, Sir Thomas had a collection of the eggs of all the fowls and birds he could procure, that country (especially the promontory of Norfolk) being frequented as he said, by several kinds which seldom or never go farther into the land, as cranes, storks, eagles and

a variety of waterfowl". Evelyn was one of the original fellows of the Royal Society and became its Secretary in 1672.

*A court*—a palace : the reference being to the princely seat of the Dukes of Norfolk. *In miniature*—on a small scale. *Heart*—centre. *An old palace*—The library and several learned societies of Norwich are now accommodated in this house. *Dukes of Norfolk*—recognised as the premier noble family in England. The founder of the house was John Howard, created Duke of Norfolk by Richard III in 1485. The office of the Earl-Marshal is hereditary in this family. *Mansion*—palace. *Annexed*—attached. *Tennis court*—a rectangular edifice in which tennis is played. Tennis, as played in those times, was a game in which a ball was driven continually against a wall in a specially constructed court and made to rebound beyond a line at a certain distance by several persons striking it alternately with a small bat. The object of the players was to keep the ball in motion as long as possible without allowing it to drop on the ground. The game was introduced into England in the 13th century and continued to be very popular with the nobility till the reign of Charles II. *Bowling green*—a level piece of green turf kept smooth for playing the game of bowls. See notes on paragraph 55. *Wilderness*—a portion of garden set apart for plants to grow in unchecked luxuriance ; shrubbery. *Wansum*—spelt also Wensum ; a small river with a winding course that falls into the Yare. Norwich stands on the right bank of the Wensum a little above its confluence with the Yare.

*The noble family of Howard*—i.e., the Dukes of Norfolk ; it has been pointed out in a previous note that Howard was the family name of this house. *Kept a state*—lived in a princely or grand style. *Petty sovereigns*—small kings. *Goblets*—large cups without handles. *Tongs*—an instrument of metal consisting of two shafts joined together at one end used for handling things, particularly fire or heated metals : চিনটা বা সাঁড়াশী। *Shovels*—instruments consisting of a blade with a long handle used for taking up and removing a quantity of loose things like sand, coal etc. *Italian masters*—famous Italian painters. The Italians were the best painters of Europe in former times and their pictures commanded fancy prices. *Cabinets*—(1) "cases with drawers for keeping

valuables or displaying curiosities (*Oxford Dictionary*): (2) apartments reserved for the conservation of works of art, antiquities, etc.

*That Earl of Arundel—viz.*, Thomas Howard, Second Earl of Arundel (1556—1646). He formed at Arundel House the first considerable art collection in England including statues, busts, pictures and marbles. The last were presented to Oxford University in 1667 by Henry Howard, the collector's grandson. *Marbles—columns, tablets or figures of marble. Are now among etc.*—are now regarded as some of the precious possessions of the Oxford University. *Whose marbles are etc.*—Macauley refers to the Arundel marbles that were presented to Oxford University in 1667. The collection of these pieces of ancient sculpture was originally purchased for the Earl of Arundel by Sir William Petty at Smyrna in 1624 and was subsequently presented to Oxford University by the collector's grandson. The most interesting portion of this collection is called the Parian Chronicle from having been kept in the island of Paros. In its perfect state the inscription contained a chronicle of the main events of early Grecian history but much of it is now lost and what remains is much defaced and corroded. *Sumptuously entertained*—received with great hospitality and splendour. Sir Thomas Browne was knighted by Charles II on the occasion of his visit to Norwich. *Comers—guests. Twelfth Night*—the evening of the festival of the Epiphany celebrated on the 12th day after Christmas, *i.e.*, the 6th January. Many social functions and rites have for long been connected with this festival. *In oceans—in torrents. Ale flowed in oceans etc.*—The common people were liberally entertained with ale. *Festivities*—joyous entertainments. *Luxurious banquet*—rich feast. *Greeted*—welcomed; received with honour. *The Cathedral—i.e.*, Norwich Cathedral

*Saint Peter Mancroft*—in Norwich, is considered to be one of the finest of parish churches in England. Originally built in the 15th century it was restored in 1880—83. Amongst its other attractive features it possesses a matchless peal of twelve sweet bells. Sir Thomas Browne was buried in this Church. *The bells of the Cathedral etc.*—Church bells are generally rung on occasions of public rejoicings. *The guns of the Castle were fired*—This shows the great honour in which the Dukes were

held: it is generally kings, princes and governors who are received with such a salute. *The Mayor and Aldermen*—i.e. the chief magistrates of the town. The *Mayor* is the chief officer of a municipal corporation. The *Aldermen* are municipal officers next in rank below the Mayor. *Waited on etc.*—visited their distinguished townsman to pay their respects. *Complimentary addresses*—speeches of respectful welcome. *Actual*—real. *Enumeration*—numbering.

**Paragraph 65.** The other county towns were greatly inferior to Norwich. They had, however, much greater importance than now, because they served as the local metropolises of the country gentlemen. The assize courts were held there and besides they served as the centres of local trade from which the inhabitants of the district received their supplies.

*High in dignity and importance*—i.e. occupying an honourable position and possessed of great importance. *Capitals*—chief towns. *Seldom*—rarely. *In that age it was etc.*—in those times it was not yet the fashion for country gentlemen of means and social position to reside in London for a few months every year as they do now. *Metropolis*—the capital of the kingdom. *Made it his residence etc.*—lived in these towns for a few months every year as he now does in London. *At all events*—at any rate. *Attracted*—drawn. *Assizes*—the periodical sessions held by the judges of superior courts in each of the counties of England and Wales for the trial of the more serious criminal cases. *Quarter sessions*—See notes on paragraph 50. *Elections*—elections of members for Parliament. *Musters of militia*—See notes on paragraph 52. *Festivals*—social functions.

[Page 100. Footnote *Fuller* Thomas Fuller (1608–1661) a famous English divine who supported the Royalist cause during the Civil War. He was the author of a number of books of which "*Worthies of England*" published in 1662 is the best known. *Journal*—diary. *E. Browne i.e.* Edward Browne (1641–1708), a traveller and physician and the eldest son of Sir Thomas Browne. After an extensive tour in Europe he settled as a medical practitioner in London in 1675 and became the president of the Royal College of Physicians in 1701. *Blomefield* Francis Blomefield (1705–52) was an English clergyman and topographer. He published his "*History of Norfolk*" in numbers but died leaving the third volume unfinished. The work was continued by the Rev. Charles Parkin and was ultimately finished by a hack writer.]

*Races*—i.e., horse-races. *There were the halls etc.*—This is only a round-about way of saying that the assize courts were held there. *Robed in scarlet* clad in gowns of a bright red colour: it is the custom for judges presiding over the assize courts to wear gowns of a scarlet colour. *Escorted*—attended: guarded: accompanied.

*Javelins*—short spears thrown from the hand. Formerly both foot and horse soldiers were armed with this weapon of war. *Escorted by javelins etc.*—The Sheriff, accompanied by his armed retainers, usually met the judges at the boundary of the county and escorted them to the assize town. He remained in attendance as long as the trials lasted and after they were over, he again escorted the judges out of the county. The trumpets were blown to indicate the arrival of the judges at the courts. See paragraph 9. *Opened the King's commission twice a year*—i.e., held the assize courts. The assize courts are held by virtue of a King's commission issued twice a year to the judges of the High Court of Justice; two judges are usually assigned to every circuit. *There were the markets*—i.e., the markets were held in the capitals of the shires. *Hops*—See notes on paragraph 50. *Exposed*—i.e., offered. *Fairs*—markets held on stated occasions in towns or cities: *मेला*। *Came down from London*—i.e., with their merchandise. *Rural dealer*—village shop-keeper. *Laid in*—i.e., purchased. *Stores*—stocks. *Stationery*—articles used in connection with writing, e.g., paper, pencil, ink etc. They are so called because they were originally sold by booksellers having stations or stalls at fairs or in market-places. *Cutlery*—sharp-edged or cutting instruments, like knives, scissors etc. *Muslin*—fine cotton fabric: it was so named because it was believed to have been first made at Mosul, a town in Turkish Arabia. *Grocery*—articles sold by grocers, viz., tea, sugar, coffee, spices etc. *Millinery*—articles of female dress, like hats, bonnets, lace, ribbons etc.

*Interesting historical recollections*—associations with important events of history: the interest of some of those towns lay in the historical events with which they were connected. For example, Gloucester was famous for its siege and Nottingham for the fact that Charles I there first declared war against

Parliament. *Decorated*—adorned. *By all the art and magnificence etc.*—Most of the famous English Cathedrals are of the Gothic style and furnish the most magnificent examples of the architecture of the Middle Ages. Macaulay is thinking of the beautiful English Cathedrals like those at Salisbury and Exeter. *Palaces*—*i.e.*, episcopal palaces: residences of bishops. *Prelates*—dignitaries of the Church, like bishops and archbishops. *Closes*—properly ‘enclosed places’; hence ‘the precincts of abbeys and cathedrals’; see notes on paragraph 58. *Venerable abodes*—dwelling-houses hallowed by age or dating from very old times. *Deans*—governors over the canons of cathedrals. *Canons*—members of the chapter of a cathedral. *Repelled*—withstood successfully; driven back. *Nevilles*—family name of the famous Earl of Warwick, commonly known as the “king-maker.” *De Veres*—the family name of the Earls of Oxford. The founder of the house was Aubrey de Vere who accompanied the Conqueror from Normandy and was rewarded with rich estates in Essex and the neighbouring counties. The house became extinct in 1703 after the death of the 20th Earl. The De Veres played a prominent part during the Wars of the Roses. They fought mostly on the Lancastrian side. John de Vere, the 13th Earl, accompanied Henry VII to England and fought at Bosworth. *More recent traces of vengeance etc.*—marks of damages caused in later times by the generals that fought on different sides during the last Civil War. *Rupert or of Cromwell*—the Royalist and the Parliamentary generals; see previous notes. *Castles which had etc.*—old historic castles that had witnessed the Wars of the Roses and had driven back the attacks of the Yorkist or Lancastrian leaders and which had during the last Civil War declared themselves for the King or Parliament and had been battered by the guns of the enemy generals.

*Some of these places..... Cromwell*—**Expl.** Macaulay here speaks of the importance of county towns that attracted the country gentleman to live in them for some months of the year. Some of these towns were associated with great historical events the memories of which were still cherished. Some contained churches and cathedrals, built in the splendid and imposing mediæval style of architecture. Some possessed palatial residences where one bishop after another had lived for a long time. Adjoining the cathedrals were extensive

grounds over which rose ancient buildings, the homes of deans and canons. All this lent an air of sanctity and hoary antiquity to such places. Some again contained castles of great nobles which were associated with great events of the past, and stood, therefore, as venerable monuments of past history. Some of these castles had been the strongholds of rival parties in the Wars of the Roses. Some of these castles again in more recent years had suffered damage in the Civil War either in the hands of the Royalist armies, led by Prince Rupert or the Parliamentary armies, led by Cromwell.

**Paragraph 66.** The more important provincial towns were York, Exeter, Worcester, Gloucester, Nottingham, Derby and Shrewsbury. None of these towns had more than ten thousand inhabitants and many much less.

*Conspicuous*—noticeable; eminent; distinguished. *Interesting cities*—rich in historical associations. *York*—the capital of Yorkshire, the largest county in England. Yorkshire lies between Durham on the north and the Humber on the south. The town possesses a magnificent cathedral and an old castle and walls. *The capital of the north*—York was the most important town in England, north of the Humber. *Exeter*—the capital of Devonshire. It is a very old town possessing a fine cathedral dating from the 12th century. *Neither can have contained etc.*—The present population of York is over 84,000 inhabitants and that of Exeter about 60,000. *Worcester*—the capital of Worcestershire, a midland county, lying between Staffordshire on the north and Gloucestershire on the south. *Cider*—a fermented liquor prepared from the juice of ripe apples. *The queen of the cider land*—the capital of the district famous for its cider wine. The best cider comes from Worcestershire and the neighbouring counties of Herefordshire and Somersetshire. *Had about eight thousand*—The present population is about 49,000. *Nottingham*—capital of Nottinghamshire, a midland county lying between Lincolnshire on the east and Derbyshire on the west. It was at Nottingham that Charles I set up his standard as a sign of war with Parliament in August 1642. *Probably as many—i.e.,* probably contained 8000 inhabitants. The present population of Nottingham is about 263,000 inhabitants.



*Gloucester*—the capital of Gloucestershire lying on the southern borders of Wales. *Renowned*—famous. *Renowned for that resolute defence etc.*—In the early stages of the Civil War Charles I fixed his headquarters at Oxford from which he intended to march on London. But the Welshmen in his army refused to march forward leaving their homes at the mercy of Parliamentary army that garrisoned Gloucester. Accordingly Charles I was compelled to lay siege in person to Gloucester in 1643. The London train-bands marched to the help of Gloucester and compelled the King to raise the siege. The successful defence of Gloucester decided to a large extent the ultimate issue of the Civil War. The fall of Gloucester would have inevitably led to the capture of London and thus assured the King's ultimate victory in the war. *Had certainly between etc.*—The present population of the town is over 51,000. *Derby*—capital of Derbyshire lying to the west of Nottinghamshire. *Not quite four thousand*—Its present population is about 130,000 inhabitants. *Shrewsbury*—capital of Shropshire bordering on Wales. *Chief place*—capital. *Extensive*—wide in extent. *Fertile district*—Shropshire possesses both rich agricultural and pasture lands.

*Marches*—boundaries: borders. The word is commonly used to denote the boundaries between England and Scotland and England and Wales. *The court of the marches of Wales*—The marches between England and Wales were divided into three portions—the western, the middle and the eastern marches, each of which had courts peculiar to itself and a kind of president or governor who was called 'warden of the marches'. Ludlow Castle in Shropshire was the official residence of the President but he paid frequent visits to Shrewsbury with his court. *The Wrekin*—a hill in Shropshire near Wellington about 1320 ft. high. *To go to town*—'town', without any article before it, commonly means London. But to the gentry (ladies and gentlemen) many miles round the Wrekin, 'going to town' meant going to Shrewsbury—Shrewsbury was to them a substitute for London offering to them country imitations of London fashions and amenities.

*In the language of etc.*—The country gentlemen, living in the neighbourhood of the Wrekin hill, thought so highly of Shrewsbury that they spoke of it simply as "town". A visit

to this town was in their eyes almost equal to a visit to London. *The provincial wits*—the smart people of the county town. *Beauties*—fair ladies. *Fashions*—the current ways and manners. *Saint James's Park*—a piece of open ground for public recreation in the fashionable quarter of London. *Severn*—the well-known river in the west of England flowing into Bristol Channel. Shrewsbury is situated on the Severn. *The provincial wits.....*

....*the Severn*—Expl. Macaulay is speaking of the importance of the town of Shrewsbury. Though it was a provincial town, the benefits of London life could be enjoyed there to some extent. The witty men and beautiful ladies of the town imitated the fashions of London. The fashions of polished London society, seen among people who assembled at Saint James's Park were reflected in some measure in the manners of men and women who took their walk along the bank of the Severn in Shrewsbury. In short, Shrewsbury was a country imitation of London, imitating as well it could the fashions of London life. *The inhabitants were about seven thousand*—The present population of the town is over 31,000.

**Paragraph 67.** The population of all these towns has greatly increased since the Revolution. They have been entirely rebuilt and are far more prosperous. But their growth has not been so rapid as that of some younger towns of which no mention is to be found in early history.

[Page 111. Footnote—*Baptism*—initiation of infants into the fold of the Christian Church by the sprinkling of water and other appropriate ceremonies. *Drake*—Francis Drake (1696–1771) a surgeon and antiquary published in 1736 "*History and Antiquities of the City of York*." 1801—the year when the first official census was taken. *Nash*—Treadway Russel Nash (1725–1811) was a clergyman and historian. He published his "*Collections for the History of Worcestershire*" in 1781–82. *Made allowance for*—taken into consideration; made a reasonable reduction in the number in view of the increase that took place during the subsequent 40 years. *Dering* (1665–1750)—antiquary and divine. *Atkyn's*—Sir Robert Atkyns (1617–1711), published topographical works on Gloucestershire in 1712.

*Lysons*—Daniel Lysons (1762–1831), a topographer, published his "*Magnum Britannia or an Account of the counties of Great Britain*" in 1806–22. *Gaieties*—mirth and festivities; delights. *Farquhar* (1678–1707)—a famous English dramatist of the Restoration period. *Recruiting Officer*—one of Farquhar's principal dramas, published in 1706. *Bornie out*—supported. *Burden*—refrain; the verses in a song that are frequently repeated. "*Shrewsbury for me*"—I love or prefer Shrewsbury.]

*Multiplied sevenfold*—increased seven times. The student will understand from their present population, given in the notes on the previous paragraph, that their increase has even been much greater since Macaulay's times. *Slate has succeeded to thatch*—In those times most of the houses had thatched roofs; in modern times the roofs are mostly of slate. *Brick to timber*—the houses were then mostly made of wood, but now they are built of bricks. *Pavements*—paved footpaths [**pavement**, n. paved footway at side of road—(*Oxford Dictionary*)]. *Lamps*—with which the streets are lighted. *Display of wealth etc.*—rich stores that are exhibited for sale in the shops. *Luxurious neatness of the dwellings*—comfortable and tidily-kept houses. *Miraculous*—marvellous: wonderful. *Relative*—comparative. *Luxurious neatness*—cleanliness combined with comfort and luxury. *Yet is the relative importance of the old etc.*—i.e., the importance of the old capitals of shires has declined in comparison with that of younger towns. These old towns are no longer considered the most important in the country; they have been far surpassed in wealth, population and importance by younger towns. *Younger towns*—towns of a later date. *Which sent no representatives to our early Parliaments*—i.e., which did not enjoy any franchise; which did not elect members of Parliament. *Representatives*—members of Parliament representing the people. *Early Parliaments*—Parliaments before the passing of the Reform Bill for 1832. This Bill deprived many old depopulated towns or boroughs (rotten boroughs as they were called) of their franchise and conferred it on prosperous new towns like Manchester. *Contemplates*—views: considers. *Not accompanied by awe and anxiety*—The rapid growth of these towns and the concentration of population at a few centres are not without their dangers. These facts present some very anxious problems to statesmen. The growth of these new towns meant the decline of agriculture and increasing industrialism. Large numbers of men left the villages and agriculture to work in the mills and workshops of the new towns. The evils and dangers of excessive industrialism were being dimly realised even in Macaulay's days.

**Paragraph 63.** One of the most important of these towns is Manchester. It was then regarded as a respectable seat of industry and was permitted to send one representative to

Cromwell's Parliament. As cotton manufacture was then in its infancy, Manchester was, in the 17th century, no better than a mean-looking village with a population under six thousand.

*Respectable*—fairly large and important. *Respectable seats of industry*—manufacturing towns of moderate size and importance. *Rapid progress*—quick development. *Vast opulence*—enormous wealth. *Opulence*—wealth. *Ludicrous*—ridiculous; absurd. *Their present grandeur*—the wealth and magnificence they enjoy in modern times. *Nay their rapid progress and their vast opulence etc.*—The rapid growth of these towns and their wealth roused the wonder of the men of the 17th century. But these were nothing compared with their present greatness. Therefore the high-sounding language in which the growth of these towns was described as marvellous in the 17th century strikes us as being quite ridiculous. *Prosperous*—thriving; flourishing. *Manchester*—a town in Lancashire, situated on the river Irwell. It is the greatest centre of England's cotton industry and has a population of over 730,000. *The Protector*—Oliver Cromwell. After the dissolution of the Long Parliament he was appointed Lord Protector of England in 1653. *His Parliament*—i.e., the Parliament provided for in the constitutional document, known as *The Instrument of Government* drawn up in 1653. The Parliament was to consist of a single house and there was a redistribution of seats. The *Instrument* deprived small hamlets of their franchise and conferred it on populous towns and counties. *A busy and opulent place*—a thriving and a wealthy town. *Brought*—imported. *Cyprus*—the well-known island in the Levant; it is now a British possession. *Smyrna*—an ancient and historic city in Asia Minor. It is the greatest centre of commerce in the Levant. In those days Manchester had to depend for her supply of cotton on the eastern countries. She has since then received most of her supply from America. *In its infancy*—in an early and undeveloped condition.

*Whitney*—Eli Whitney (1765—1825) was the famous inventor of an improved type of cotton gin, called "saw gin." He had been originally a school teacher at Connecticut and amassed a very large fortune by the invention of his machine. The "roller gin" that had been previously in use could clean only 6 lbs of cotton by the labour of a single slave; the "saw gin,"

invented by Whitney, increased this output to 1000 lbs. Whitney's invention gave a great impetus to cotton cultivation in America and it is commonly said that his cotton gin has affected the history of the United States more than most of its wars and treaties. *Raw material*—i.e., cotton before it is worked up into cloth. *Furnished*—supplied. *Fabulous*—beyond the bounds of probability or reason; incredible. *Whitney had not yet etc.*—Whitney had not yet invented his famous machine for ginning cotton that enabled America to supply Manchester with the enormous quantities of that article that she required for the manufacture of cloth. *Arkwright* (1732-92)—was in his early life a barber. He invented an improved cotton-spinning machine for which he took out a patent in 1769 and established in 1771 the first spinning mill, worked by water-power. He was knighted in 1786. *Worked up*—i.e., spun into threads or yarn. *Precision*—accuracy. *Magical*—marvellous. *Arkwright had yet not taught etc.*—**Expl.** Arkwright had not yet invented his improved spinning machine by which cotton can be spun into yarn of any count within an incredibly short period of time.

*Import*—i.e., of raw cotton. *Which would now hardly etc.*—i.e., the Manchester mills now consume a million pounds of cotton daily. *Emporium*—centre of commerce; trading town. *Surpasses*—exceeds; outstrips. *Berlin*—the capital of the German Empire. In Macaulay's time Berlin was only a second rate city in Europe, being the capital of only Prussia. But since she became the capital of the German Empire, her population and wealth greatly excelled those of Manchester. *Madrid*—the capital of Spain. *Lisbon*—the capital of Portugal. *Mean*—poor and humble. *Market town*—a town where markets are held at stated times. *Under*—below; less than. *Establishments*—houses; firms.

[Page 114, Footnote—*Blome*—Richard Blome (died 1705) was a publisher and compiler; his "*Britannia*" was published in 1673. *Directory*—an annual publication containing a detailed account of a town or district with a list of their inhabitants and of their places of business or abode. *Barnes* (1800—1890)—a journalist and economist and a writer on political and social subjects. His "*History of Cotton Manufacture in Great Britain*" was published in 1835. *Touching*—concerning. *A paper*—an essay or treatise. *Reverend R. Parkinson* (1797—1858)—canon of Manchester.]

**Paragraph 69.** Leeds was the chief centre of woollen manufacture. It had a thriving trade and was granted a charter by Charles I. The population of the town did not exceed 7000 inhabitants in the reign of Charles II.

*Leeds*—a town on river Aire in the West Riding of Yorkshire. It is the chief centre of English woollen manufacture. The present population of the town is about 459,000. *Chief seat*—main centre. *Elderly*—bordering on old age; advanced beyond middle age. *Red House*—so named because it was one of the first brick-built houses in Yorkshire and the bricks were coloured red. *Boasted loudly*—exulted; gloried. *Immense sales of cloth*—sale of huge quantities of cloth. *Which took place etc.*—These transactions were held in a primitive manner in an open space on the bridge. *The bridge*—over the Aire. *Market day*—the day on which a market is held in a town under its charter. *Rising*—growing. *Attracted the notice*—drawn the attention. *Successive governments*—i.e., one king after another. *Had granted municipal privileges to the town*—had by a charter incorporated it into a municipal corporation. The charter was granted in 1626, the 2nd year of Charles I's reign. *Oliver*—i.e., Oliver Cromwell. *Invited it to send etc.*—conferred on it the privilege of sending one representative to his reformed Parliament. *Borough*—a town with a properly organised municipal government: a township. [*borough*, n. (Munic.) town with corporation and privileges conferred by royal charter: (Parl.) town sending member (s) to parliament—(*Oxford Dictionary*)]. *District*—area. *Hamlets*—small villages. The student may be told here that Macaulay was returned to Parliament from Leeds in 1831.

**Paragraph 70.** About a day's journey from Leeds lay an old manor on the verge of a moorland tract, known by the name of Hallamshire. The region abounded in iron which was manufactured into whittles from early times. This place grew into the prosperous town of Sheffield whose cutlery is now famous all over the world.

[Page 115, Footnote—*Thoresby* (1658—1725)—an antiquary and topographer. His "*Ducatus Leodiensis*" was published in 1715. It is a very useful compilation though not a very scholarly work. *Whitaker*—Thomas Dunham Whitaker (1759—1821) clergyman and topographer. He was the vicar of Whalley and also of Blackburn and published topographical works relating to Lancashire and Yorkshire.]

*Verge*—border. *Wild moorland tract*—barren desolate region; wasteland. *Manor*—lordship; an estate or territory over which a lord exercises jurisdiction. *Barren*—i.e., lying waste and uncultivated. *Uninclosed*—not surrounded with a fence, i.e., it was used as a common and was not therefore cultivated. *Hallamshire*—the old name of the southern district of the West Riding of Yorkshire of which Sheffield is the capital. *Abounded*—existed in plenty. *Whittles*—an archaic word for knives. *Fabricated*—manufactured. The whittle of those times was a rude implement consisting of a blade of bar steel fastened into a wooden or horn handle. It was used for cutting up food as well as for other purposes. *They*—i.e., the whittles.

*Geoffrey Chaucer* (1340—1400)—father of English poetry. His greatest work was his *Canterbury Tales* in which he drew graphic pictures of the life and manners of his age. This poem was composed about 1387 and was first printed by Caxton in 1475. *Canterbury Tales*—See above note. The poem consists of a number of tales related by a party of pilgrims to the shrine of Becket at Canterbury. The reference is to the Reeve's Tale which describes the miller of Trompington as carrying a whittle in his stocking—

"A Scheffeld (Sheffield) thwitel (whittle) bar (bore) he in his hose." *They had indeed been etc.*—**Expl.** Macaulay refers here to the manufacture of whittles at Hallamshire. The place was famous for the whittles, manufactured here from very early times. Chaucer, the great English poet of the 14th century, refers to these whittles in one of his poems

*Made little progress*—did not thrive or make any advance. *During the three centuries which followed his time*—i.e., from the 14th to the 17th century. *Languor*—dullness; stagnation; absence of progress. *May perhaps be explained by the fact*—was possibly due to the reason. *Regulations*—rules. *Court leet*—a court, held by the steward of a lordship or manor for regulating its affairs. *Impose*—lay on the manufacturers. **N.B.** Sheffield was the capital of Hallamshire from the Norman conquest. A number of workers in iron gathered round the manorial castle and formed the nucleus of the town. After changing hands several times, the manor passed into the line of the Talbots in 1406. In 1654 the estate passed by marriage

to the Howards, the Dukes of Norfolk. *More delicate*—finer. *Cutlery*—cutting instruments like knives, etc.

*The capital*—London. *Till the reign of George the First*—i.e., till the first quarter of the 18th century. George I reigned from 1714 to 1727. *Exquisitely fine blades*—surgical knives of extreme delicacy and fineness. *Operations*—surgical operations, like the opening of an abscess or the amputation of a diseased limb. *Frame*—body. *Forges*—furnaces in which iron or other metal is heated to be hammered into the required shape; hence smithies: workshops. *Market town*—See notes on paragraph 68; this town grew into Sheffield. *Sprung up*—grew up: rose. *Proprietor*—i.e., the lord of the manor. *In the reign of James the First*—i.e., in the first quarter of the 17th century. James I reigned from 1603 to 1625. *Singularly*—uncommonly: to an unusual degree. *Miserable place*—poor and backward town. *Parochial registers*—See notes on paragraph 7. *Effects*—consequences. *Species of toil*—kind of labour. *Singularly unfavourable*—extremely injurious. The kind of physical labour required for making cutlery was injurious to health. Long exposure to the heat of the furnace told severely on the whole system. *Vigour*—strength. *At once discerned*—readily perceived. *Traveller*—i.e., visitor to the town. *Distorted*—twisted out of natural shape; deformed. *This is that Sheffield*—These were the humble beginnings of the famous and thriving town of Sheffield. *Dependencies*—auxiliary towns: suburbs. *Contains a hundred and twenty thousand souls*—The population of the town has more than quadrupled since Macaulay's days; it is now over 490,000. *Admirable*—of excellent quality. *Lancets*—surgeon's knives used in opening tumours and abscesses etc. *Furthest ends*—the most distant quarters.

**Paragraph 71.** Birmingham was a town of little importance though its hardware was prized in London and even in Ireland. The place had become notorious for coining bad money. The population did not number even four thousand in 1685. The place did not contain a regular bookshop.

[Page 117. Footnote—[*Hunter*—Joseph Hunter (1783-1861) was a Presbyterian minister and the vice-president of the Society of Antiquaries. His "*Hallamshire*" was published in 1819.]



*Birmingham*—at present the greatest industrial town in the English Midlands, famous for its metal manufacture. *To send a member to Oliver's Parliament*—See notes on paragraphs 68 and 69. *Thriving race*—prosperous class. **N.B.** From an early period Birmingham has been a seat of manufactures in metal. Hutton, the historian of the town, claims for it Saxon or even British antiquity in this respect. The first direct mention of Birmingham trades is to be found in Leland's *Itinerary* (1538). Importance of Birmingham as a centre of manufactures began towards the close of the 17th century. *Hardware*—articles made of iron (or other metal) like pots, kettles, saws etc. *Esteemed*—prized; valued. *Pekin*—capital of China. *Lima*—capital of Peru in South America. *Bokhara*—capital of the state of this name in Central Asia. *Timbuctoo*—the chief town in the French Soudan immediately to the south of the Sahara desert. *They boasted that their hardware etc.*—The metal wares, manufactured at Birmingham, had not then attained a world-wide celebrity and though they did not then find their way to the most distant parts of the world as now they had established their reputation all over Great Britain. Birmingham hardware was then highly prized in London and even in Ireland.

*Acquired*—achieved; obtained. *A less honourable renown*—notoriety. *Acquired.....renown*—became notorious. *Coiners of bad money*—manufacturers of counterfeit coins. *Spurious*—false; counterfeit; *फेकि*. *Groats*—old English coins equal to four pence. *The Tory party*—See notes on paragraph 18. The Tories supported the claims of the Duke of York to succeed to his brother's throne; the Whigs opposed them on the ground of his being a Papist. *Fixed on*—applied to. *Demagogues*—political agitators; properly leaders of the people; the word is now commonly used as a term of reproach to mean *unprincipled orators* who acquire influence with the populace by playing on their ignorance and prejudices. *Hypocritically*—falsely; insincerely. *Affected*—pretended. *Zeal against Popery*—fervent desire to check the spread of Catholicism. *Demagogues who etc.*—orators who, in order to win influence over the masses, falsely pretended to cherish hatred for the Roman Catholic religion. They knew that the masses were opposed to Roman Catholicism. They professed, therefore, to share their

religious prejudice. But it was all false and insincere. *Nickname*—a name given to a person or class to indicate contempt or derision. *Birminghams*—colloquially shortened into *Brummagem* meaning cheap and showy, counterfeit, sham. This was because cheap and spurious jewellery was made at Birmingham. The supporters of the Exclusion Bill of 1679 were called *Brummagem Protestants* by their political opponents. This expression implied a playful reference to the spurious coins made at Birmingham and also involved a reference to the town being a Radical stronghold.

*Which is now little less than two hundred thousand*—The present population of the town is about 920,000 *Birmingham buttons*—Buttons, hooks, eyes, pins and other articles used for dress constitute a proportion of the manufactures of Birmingham. *Birmingham guns*—In modern times Birmingham specialises in the manufacture of small arms of all kinds. These arms are now produced in large quantities in the Birmingham factories. It is said that some of the larger establishments are now capable of turning out 2000 stand per week. *Of Birmingham guns etc.*—i.e. the manufacture of guns had not yet begun at Birmingham. **N.B.** The great staple industry of Birmingham is metal-working in all its various forms. The chief variety is the brass-working trade which employs thousands of workmen and annually consumes about 50,000 tons of metal which is worked up into an infinity of articles of ornament and ease. Jewellery, gold, silver and gilt come next to brass. Then follow small arms of all kinds and buttons, eyes, hooks and other articles of dress. Glass, especially table glass, constitutes an important element of the manufactures of the town. Screws, nails are made in enormous quantities and steel pens constitute a speciality. Iron-working, though largely carried on, constitutes a much less important branch of trade. The following is an eloquent description of the extent and variety of Birmingham industry:—

"We cannot move without finding traces of the great hive of metal-makers—the veritable descendants of Tubal-cain. At home or abroad, sleeping or waking, walking or riding, in a carriage or upon a railway or steam-boat, we cannot escape reminiscences of Birmingham. She haunts us from the cradle to the grave. She supplies us with the spoon that first brings

our infant lips into acquaintance with "pap" and she provides the dismal "furniture" which is affixed to our coffins. In her turn Birmingham lays the whole world under contribution for her materials. For her smiths and metal-workers and jewellers, wherever nature has deposited stores of useful or precious metals or has hidden glittering gems, there industrious miners are busily digging. Divers collect for her button makers millions of rare and costly shells. For her, adventurous hunters rifle the buffalo of his wide-spreading horns and the elephant of his ivory tusks. There is scarcely a product of any country or any climate that she does not gladly receive, and in return stamps with a richer value."

*The place—i.e., Birmingham. Two generations later—the Baskerville editions appeared about the middle of the 18th century. Magnificent editions—splendid publications; editions de luxe. Baskerville—John Baskerville (1706-1775) introduced striking improvements in type-founding. While engaged as a writing-master at Birmingham he began to make experiments in type-founding about 1750. He achieved great success in the art and set up a printing press where he published elegant editions of the Bible and a number of Latin classics. Baskerville is deservedly ranked amongst the foremost of those who advanced the art of printing. Baskerville editions are now very rare and command a very high price. Went forth—were issued. All librarians of Europe—Baskerville's editions of the Latin classics were naturally in great demand all over Europe. Regular shop—as distinguished from temporary stalls. A Bible or an almanack—books indispensably necessary to every householder. Almanack—an annual publication containing an account of the days, weeks and months in a year and of the stated festivals; पञ्जिका। Market days—See notes on paragraph 69. Great—famous; distinguished. Samuel Johnson (1709-1784)—a great English author and the compiler of the first English dictionary. His life by James Boswell is the best biography in the English language. Macaulay's life of Dr. Johnson is one of his best essays. Lichfield—a town is Staffordshire about 16 miles to the north of Birmingham. Stall—a shed in the open air where traders expose their articles for sale. Literature—i.e., books. Adequate—fully sufficient. This supply*

of literature was long etc.—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this remark in connection with the book-stall opened at Birmingham on market days. He means to say that Birmingham did not for a long time possess any book-shop, because the townsmen did not require many books to study. The meagre supply of books from the stall fully met their demand.

**Paragraph 72.** The above four towns deserve especial mention; many fairly big industrial towns of modern times were then either obscure hamlets or wild desolate moors. The town of Liverpool with her innumerable docks and quays was then just rising into importance and was carrying on a profitable trade with Ireland and the sugar colonies. The population of the town did not exceed 4000.

*Our great manufactures—viz., cotton, wool, cutlery and hardware.* These constitute the main four branches of English industry. *Especial mention—particular notice.* *Tedious—tiresome.* *Enumerate—mention in detail.* *Hives of industry—factory or manufacturing towns where people work in large numbers; busy and crowded centres of industry.* *Hives—are properly the cells built by bees: शोकाक । A hundred and fifty years ago—i.e., towards the end of the 17th century.* *Hamlets—small villages.* *Without a parish church—The villages were too small to have churches of their own.* *Desolate moors—uninhabited tracts of wild and barren land.* *Inhabited—frequented.* *Grouse—moor-fowl, a common English game bird.* *Signal—remarkable; marked.* *Outlets—means of exit; channels through which the manufactured goods pass out of the country.* *i.e., the ports through which the goods are sent to foreign countries.* *Looms—machines by which thread is woven into cloth; ଚିତ । Products of English looms—cloths manufactured in the cotton and woollen mills of England.* *Forges—The reference is to the cutlery and hardware articles made in*

---

Page 118, Footnote—*Blome's Britannia*—See notes on paragraph 68. *Dugdale*—Sir William Dugdale (1605-86) was the Garter King-of-arms; published his "*Antiquities of Warwickshire*" in 1656. *Examen*—examination; disquisition. *Absalom and Achitophel*—one of Dryden's most famous satires. *Hutton*—William Hutton (1723-1815), a topographer and a book-seller of Birmingham; published his "*History of Birmingham*" in 1782. *Boswell*—James Boswell (1740-95), the famous author of "*Life of Johnson*". *Mortality—death-rate.* *Salubrity—healthfulness.*

England. *Poured forth etc.*—exported in large quantities all over the earth.

*Liverpool*—the great English sea-port and manufacturing town, situated on the river Mersey in Lancashire. *Contains about three hundred thousand inhabitants*—The present population of the town numbers over 800,000 inhabitants. *The shipping registered at her port*—the number of vessels (ships) belonging to the port. *Registered*—enrolled in the list of ships belonging to the port. *Amounts to etc.*—has a tonnage varying from four to five hundred thousand. The ships of a port are collectively estimated by the loads they can carry in tons. *Custom house*—the office in a port where the duties (taxes) on exports and imports are collected. *Repeatedly*—frequently. *The whole income of the English crown in 1685*—In paragraph 13 Macaulay estimated this income at £ 140,000. *Into her custom house etc.*—The customs duties, realised at the port of Liverpool in a year, frequently amounted to more than thrice the revenues of the English crown in 1685. *Receipts*—income. *Duty*—i.e., postage. *Since the great reduction of the duty*—The reference is to the introduction of Penny-postage in 1839. Before this the ordinary charge for a letter was a shilling or two, the postage rising according to distance. Macaulay describes the old postal system later on in this chapter. *Yielded*—paid. *Duke of York*—Macaulay has mentioned in paragraph 13, that the profits of the Post Office had been made over to the Duke of York.

*Endless*—innumerable. *Are among the wonders etc.*—cannot but strike one with wonder and surprise. *Wonders of the world*—Macaulay is evidently thinking of the seven wonders of the ancient times, like the Egyptian pyramids, the temple of Diana at Ephesus etc. *Docks*—artificial sheets of water in a port or harbour for the reception of vessels where they can be conveniently loaded or unloaded. The wet dock, constructed at Liverpool early in the 18th century, is said to have been the first of its kind in the world. *Quays*—(pron. keys) wharves; landing places where vessels can be loaded or unloaded. *Warehouses*—a house in which wares or goods are stored. *Seem hardly to suffice for etc.*—are not sufficient to meet the demands of the enormous business carried on at this port.

*Gigantic*—enormous; prodigious. *Mersey*—a river in England that flows through Lancashire and Cheshire into the Irish Sea.

Liverpool is situated on the estuary of this river. *A rival city etc.—i.e.*, the town of Birkenhead, situated on the Mersey opposite to Liverpool. *Rising*—growing in wealth and importance. The rise of the commerce of Liverpool dates from the Restoration. The growth of the manufacturing industry of South Lancashire and the opening of the American and West Indian trade gave an impetus to the commerce of the town that has ever since continued. Traffic in slaves constituted a very profitable branch of the trade of this town in the 18th century.

*Advances*—progress. *Maintained*—kept up. *Profitable intercourse*—lucrative commerce. *Intercourse*—trade; commerce. *Sugar colonies*—colonies in North America that produced sugar. The importation of crude sugar from America led to the establishment of sugar refineries which still continue to be an important branch of the local industry. See notes on paragraph 63. *Customs*—revenue from the duties (taxes) on exports and imports. *Multiplied*—grown; increased. *Immense*—very large. *Tonnage*—the load or the burthen that a ship can safely carry. *Modern Indiaman*—a ship that carries on trade with India. *First class*—superior type.

**Paragraph 73.** The growth of towns, where people resort for health and recreation, has not been less rapid than that of the manufacturing towns. Cheltenham now so populous was in the 17th century merely a rural parish lying under the Cotswold hills. Brighton once a thriving place was then fast sinking into decay.

---

Page 120, Footnote—*Gregson*—Matthew Gregson (1749–1824) was an antiquary who made a fortune at Liverpool as an upholsterer. His "*History and Antiquities of the County Palatine and Duchy of Lancaster*" appeared in 1817. *County Palatine*—was a county in England that formerly enjoyed some special privileges. The owner of such a county had originally royal powers in the administration of justice. The counties palatine in England are Lancaster, Chester and Durham. *Duchy of Lancaster*—the name of the fief of which Liverpool is the centre. It was so named because it was bestowed on John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, by his father Edward III. On the accession of Henry IV, John of Gaunt's son, to the throne, the estate merged in the crown. An Act was then passed declaring that the inheritance and title of the Duchy of Lancaster should remain to the King and his heirs for ever, a distinct and separate inheritance from the lands and possessions of the crown. Since then the sovereigns of England have held the duchy as their private property.]

*Towns where wealth.....accumulated—i.e., manufacturing towns. Accumulated—amassed. Towns of a very different kind—because people resort there not for work but for amusement. Recreation—amusement; relaxation. Sprung into existence—come into being. Cheltenham—a fashionable watering place in Gloucestershire, situated on the Chelt, a small tributary of the Severn. It owes its importance to the salt springs and is frequented by hosts of fashionable visitors every year. Is now a greater city etc.—The population of Cheltenham in 1841 numbered over 31,000. Local historians—historians of the district, viz., of Gloucestershire. Rural parish—village. A parish is the area under the spiritual care of a minister. Cotswold hills—a range of hills in the west of England. These hills form fine pasturage for sheep. Lying under the Cotswold Hills—Cheltenham is sheltered on the north and east by a semi circular sweep of the Cotswold Hills. Affording good ground etc.,—containing rich corn-fields and pasture lands. Tillage—cultivation.*

*Browsed—grazed [browse “feed on, crop, (leaves, twigs scanty vegetation)” (Oxford Dictionary).] Space—region. Gay—showy; brilliant. Gay succession of streets and villas—series of beautiful streets and country houses. Villa—(Lat. villa, a country seat) a country house; “country residence, detached suburban house” (Oxford Dictionary.): a rural mansion. Cheltenham possesses a beautiful high street about a mile and a half in length and numerous elegant terraces, squares and detached villas interspersed with trees and gardens. Brighton—a seaport town and watering place in Sussex. Which had once been thriving etc.—Brighton is believed to have been an ancient Roman station, but till the time of George II it was a mere fishing village. The town owed its rise to the partiality displayed for it by George IV. Barks—boats. At the height of its prosperity—when it was most prosperous. Was sinking fast into decay—rapidly declining. Gaining on the buildings—i.e., encroaching on the houses of the town. Almost entirely disappeared—i.e., were swallowed up by the sea. Ninety years ago—i.e., towards the end of George II’s reign. Pebbles—small round stones found on sea-coasts. Seaweed—plant growing in the sea. Ancient men—very old men. Traces—signs; marks Foundation—“solid ground or base, natural or artificial, on which building rests”—(Oxford Dictionary).*

*Swallowed up*—engulfed. *Desolate*—uninhabited; forlorn. *The vicarage was thought etc.*—No clergyman cared to be the minister of the parish. *Calamity*—disaster, viz., the sea encroaching upon and washing away houses of the town.

*Continued to dry their nets etc.*—i.e., continued to dwell in the village and carry on their trade of fishing. *The Bristol of the Stuarts*—the town of Bristol during the days of the Stuart Kings, i.e., in the 17th century. Macaulay has pointed out in paragraph 62 that Bristol was one of the largest towns in England next to London. *Fantastic*—fanciful; quaint. *Presents, mile after mile, its gay etc.*—The town faces the sea. The town of Brighton extends for about 3 miles on the coast. It is fronted by a sea-wall which forms a magnificent promenade containing the "pavillion" a palace built in oriental style by George IV. It consists almost wholly of new and elegant streets, squares, terraces, built in a style equal to the best in the metropolis.

**Paragraph 74.** Buxton, a village with low sheds and poor fare, was visited by the gentry of Derbyshire and the neighbouring counties. Tunbridge Wells, situated within a day's journey from London, had greater attractions. It is now a populous town with brilliant shops and luxurious dwellings. In the 17th century, it consisted only of a number of cottages scattered on the heath. A kind of daily fair was held during the season near the fountain.

*Destitute of*—deprived of; without. *Watering places*—towns or places where people resort at certain seasons of the year in order to drink mineral waters or for bathing as at the sea-side. *Derbyshire*—an English county in the Midlands lying to the west of Nottinghamshire. *Buxton*—a fashionable watering place in Derbyshire near the source of the Wye. It is situated in a deep valley and consists of an old and a new town. The latter, containing fine ranges of buildings.

[Page 121, Footnote—*Atkyns's Gloucestershire*—See notes on paragraph 66.]

[Page 122, Footnote—*Magna Britannia*—an account of the counties of Great Britain published under this title by Daniel Lysons from 1806 to 1822. *Groser's Antiquities*—Francis Grose was an antiquary and draughtsman of the 18th century. His "*Antiquities of England and Wales*" was published from 1773 to 1787.]



shops, hotels and pump-rooms, was founded by the late Duke of Devonshire. The older town is unprepossessing but it contains some tolerable inns and lodging-houses. The place is frequented by visitors from June to October. *Low wooden sheds*—humble cottages built of wood. *Regaled*—feasted; sumptuously entertained; the word is used here ironically. *Oatcake*—cake made of oat-meal; (যাইএর ছাতুর পিষ্টক)। *Viand*—meat. *Hosts*—inn-keepers. *Mutton*—flesh of sheep. *Guests*—lodgers at an inn or hotel. *Strongly suspected etc.*—had strong reasons to believe that dog's flesh was served up to them as mutton.

*Tunbridge Wells*—a fashionable inland watering place in Kent; the chalybeate springs of this place were discovered by Lord North in 1606. *Lying within a day's journey of the capital*—Tunbridge Wells lies at a distance of about thirty miles to the south east of London. *Highly civilised*—most advanced. *The richest and most highly etc.*—In the 17th century Kent and Middlesex were the best cultivated and advanced districts in England. *Attractions*—charms. *A hundred and sixty years ago*—i.e., about 1685. *Have ranked*—have been classed. *In population*—The population has greatly increased since Macaulay wrote and now numbers about 36,000. *Brilliancy*—splendour; magnificence. *Private dwellings*—villas of gentlemen as distinguished from public buildings and hotels. *Surpasses*—exceeds. *The court*—the King and his retinue. *Spring*—fountain from which the supply of mineral water was obtained. *Rustic*—rude; not elegant. *Cleaner and neater*—clean means free from dirt or filth; neat means orderly and tidy. *Ordinary cottages of that time*—cottages in which the poor people of those times usually lived. *Scattered*—spread. *Heath*—uncultivated and uninhabited fields. *Cabins*—huts. *Sledges*—vehicles with low wheels for the conveyance of loads over ice or bare ground. *Common*—a tract of open ground, property not of one individual but of the public.

*Men of fashion*—members of the upper classes or genteel society. *Wearied with*—tired of; sick of. *Din*—loud rattling sound of towns. *Smoke*—i.e., impure and unwholesome air. *Catch a glimpse of*—obtain a view of. *Rural*—pertaining to the village or country. *The season*—the period of the year when a

particular place is most frequented by visitors. *Fair*—See notes on paragraph 65. *Kentish farmers*—the farmers of the district. Tunbridge Wells is situated in Kent. *Cream*—the richer part of milk that rises to the surface when the milk stands unagitated in a cool place; ননী। *Cherry*—a familiar English fruit allied to the plum and apricot. *Wheatears*—a species of small birds. *Quails*—a common game bird; its flesh is regarded as a delicacy; বটের পাখী। *Chaffer*—bargain; haggle; negotiate; দর কষাকষি করা। *Flirt*—play at courtship; pretend to make love. *Tight*—neat; tidy. *Refreshing pastime*—agreeable amusement; pleasant diversion. *Voluptuaries*—people devoted to the pursuit of sensual pleasures. *Sick of*—tired of; disgusted with. *Airs*—affected manners; caprices. *Maids of honour*—ladies in the service of the queen; their duty is to attend on the queen when she appears in public. *Actresses and maids of honour*—These were the ladies to whom the courtiers made love when they were in town.

*Milliners*—persons whose profession is to make hats and bonnets for women. The milliners are now generally women. *Toymen*—dealers in toys or children's playthings. *Bazaar*—mart for the sale of miscellaneous articles especially fancy goods. *Booth*—a temporary shed or stall for the sale of goods in a fair or market. *The London Gazette*—the name of the only newspaper that was published in those times. For a further account of this newspaper see paragraph 119. *Deep*—absorbed; wholly engrossed in their game. *Basset*—a game at cards resembling modern *faro*. This game was very popular with fashionable gamblers after the Restoration. *Fine*—i.e., free from rain and clouds. *Fiddles*—well-known stringed musical instruments; violins; বেহালা। *Were in attendance*—played to the company. *Morris dances*—fantastic dances supposed to be of Moorish origin said to have been introduced into England by John of Gaunt. Bells were tied to the feet of the performers which jingled in time with the music. These dances formed for a long time an important element of the holiday amusements of England. *Elastic turf*—soft rich grass. *Bowling green*—See notes on paragraph 64. *In 1685*—the last

year of Charles II's reign. *Frequented*—visited. *Wells*—fountains; springs. *Cf.*

“Begin then sisters of the sacred wells  
That from beneath the seat of Love doth spring”  
—*Lycidas*, 15-16.

*Domineered*—ruled: were in the ascendant. The Tories formed the most powerful political party in England towards the close of Charles II's reign. *Delicating*—consecrating: naming it after. *Saint Charles the Martyr*—Charles I who was worshipped as a martyr and saint by the Tories.

**N.B.** This was the way in which the Tories showed their deep respect for the memory of Charles I. His execution at the hands of his subjects was in their eyes nothing short of martyrdom. So they styled him ‘The Martyr King’. A *martyr* is one who sacrifices his life for the sake of his religion. Macaulay says elsewhere how the Tories cherished the memory of the dead King as that of a martyr who by a noble and heroic death had almost become a saint.

**Paragraph 75.** Bath was the chief of the English watering places. Its springs were famous since the Roman times. It had been the seat of a bishop for a long time. The King sometimes held his court there. Yet it was a mean-looking town of 400 or 500 houses, crowded within the old wall. From the account of the writers of the middle of the 18th century the town seems to have been then wanting in most of its modern comforts and luxuries.

*At the head*—at the top, *i.e.*, the largest and most important. *Rival*—equal. *Bath*—a famous watering place situated on the Avon in Somersetshire. The mineral waters of this place are believed to be a cure for various diseases, like gout, rheumatism and liver complaints. Hence this town is frequented by large crowds of visitors every year. It was the most fashionable watering place in England in the 18th century. *Springs*—fountains of mineral waters issuing from the earth. “The mineral springs, four in number, to which Bath owes its name and its prosperity, are the only hot springs in Britain and yield over a million gallons per day. Used for bathing and drinking, they are found beneficial in all forms of rheumatism and gout, sciatica and lumbago, disorders of the

nervous system and digestive organs; tropical and skin diseases, anæmia etc." (*England, The Blue Guide Book*).

*Renowned*—famous. *The days of the Romans*—the period of the Roman occupation of Britain which lasted from 43 to 410 A.D. The town was known to the Romans under the name of *Aquæ Solis*—and baths were erected there in the reign of Emperor Claudius. Numerous remains of the old Roman city have been discovered at various times. *The seat of a Bishop*—the head of a diocese. Jointly with Wells, Bath constitutes a bishopric, comprising all the county of Somerset; the bishop's palace and cathedral are at Wells. *Repaired*—resorted. *From every part of the realm*—It has been pointed out in a previous note that the mineral waters of the place are a remedy against numerous disorders of the human system; so invalids from the different parts of England visited the city for the cure of their diseases. *Realm*—kingdom. *Held his court there*—resided there with his courtiers and ministers. *The King sometimes etc.*—Charles II with his court visited Bath in 1663 and granted to the citizens a new charter. Pepys refers to this visit in his *Diary* in an entry under 26th Aug., 1663. *Maze*—"complex network of paths; confused mass" (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Maze of four or five hundred houses*—four or five hundred houses huddled together, *i.e.* built without any methodical arrangement or plan; the houses were confusedly grouped together within a narrow area.

*Crowded*—confined within a narrow area; standing close to one another. *Old wall*—Bath being an old city was surrounded by a wall; all important cities were in former times defended by walls around them. Some of the streets of the town still bear the names of different gates, such as Northgate, Southgate etc., implying that the town was once surrounded by a wall. *Vicinity*—neighbourhood. *Avon*—the name of several rivers in England and Scotland; the river referred to here is commonly known as the Lower Avon—it rises on the borders of Wiltshire and falls into the estuary of the Severn. *Extant*—in existence. *Lowest*—poorest; most uninviting. *Rag shops*—shops where rags, bones and other refuse articles are sold in small quantities. *Pothouses*—ale-houses; low drinking dens. *Ratcliffe Highway*—north of the London Docks; one of the meanest streets in London. Dickens describes it as "a reservoir of dirt, drunkenness and drab; thieves, oysters

baked potatoes and pickled salmon." *Pictures of what were considered etc.*—Pictures happen to exist of the best houses of Bath in former times. It seems from these pictures that these houses were in no way superior to the rag-shops or the drinking dens of the meanest quarter of modern London like Ratcliffe Highway. N.B. So the best houses of Bath in the 17th century were as mean and poor as the worst houses of London of Macaulay's time. There is a touch of exaggeration in Macaulay's description.

*Even then—i.e.*, when people were not very particular about the breadth or the tidiness of streets. *Complained of*—murmured against; found fault with. *Meanness*—wretchedness. *That beautiful city*—Bath stands enclosed by an amphitheatre of hills on the western slopes of which its finest quarters extend in successive terraces. The houses being made mostly of white freestone, the city is acknowledged to be the handsomest in Britain. Its shops rival those of London in appearance and are generally as well supplied. *Charms*—pleases. *Eyes familiar with*—persons who have witnessed the beauties of. *Masterpieces*—the best architectural work of; the noblest houses designed by. *Bramante* (1444—1514)—a famous Italian painter and architect. He constructed some additions to the Papal palace and designed St. Peter's Cathedral of Rome, a portion of which was built under his direction. After his death his design was much altered by succeeding architects but competent judges are strongly of opinion that if Bramante's design had been carried out, the effect would have been better. *Palladio* (1518-80)—a famous Italian architect. He designed a number of churches and palaces in Venice and other towns of Italy. He published a work on architecture which had a great influence.

*Genius*—literary talents. *Anstey*—Christopher Anstey (1724-1805) was an English poet of some repute. His best known work is "*New Bath Guide*," a humorous poem, published in 1766. He translated Gray's *Elegy* into Latin. *Smollett*—Tobias George Smollett (1721-1771) was one of the greatest English novelists of his age. He was the author of "*The Adventures of Roderick Random*," "*The Adventures of Peregrine Pickle*" and a number of other stories; see notes on paragraph 32. *Frances Burney* (1752-1840)—known also as Madame D' Arblay, was a famous English novelist. She wrote "*Evelina*," "*Cecilia*" and

"*Camilla*." *Jane Austen*—(1775-1817) perhaps next to George Eliot, the greatest woman novelist of England. She was the author of "*Sense and Sensibility*," "*Pride and Prejudice*," "*Emma*" and a number of other works.

*Classic ground*—a place associated with literature; country which has been made the scene of events described in famous works of literature. N.B. It may be noticed here that the scene of some of the stories of these writers was not merely laid at Bath but that the town was associated with the lives of most of them. Anstey and Frances Burney died at Bath: Jane Austen lived there for a number of years. *That beautiful city which charms.....begun to exist*—Expl. Macaulay makes this remark in connection with his description of Bath in the 17th century. Bath in modern times is one of the finest towns in England. The beauty of its architecture is nearly equal to the beauty of the finest buildings, designed by the famous Italian architects, Bramante and Palladiò. It has besides a close connection with English literature being the scene of the events of some of the famous novels of Anstey, Smollett, Frances Burney and Jane Austen. Its close association with literature—being used as the scene of action of so many novels—has made it a place of unusual interest and charm to lovers of literature. But this town, which is noted for its beauty of architecture and its association with literature, is of quite recent origin. The Bath of the 17th century was altogether different in character; it was a miserable town of narrow streets and mean-looking houses.

*Milsom Street*—a street in the fashionable quarter in the centre of Bath. *Open*—unenclosed field. *The walls*—*i.e.*, the walls which surrounded the old city. *Intersected*—crossed. *The space*—the quarter. *Crescent*—a range of buildings in the form of a half-moon; the reference is to the Royal Crescent of Bath—a group of beautiful buildings in the form of a crescent. *The Circus*—a pile of handsome buildings arranged in the form of a circle close to Gay Street. The Circus of Bath stands at a short distance from Milsom Street. A *Circus* is "an open circle with streets converging on it"—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Hedgerows intersected the space, etc.*—The fashionable quarter of the town of Bath, where the beautiful piles of buildings, named the Crescent and the Circus, now stand, was then an

open field crossed by hedgerows. *The waters*—the mineral waters of the Bath springs. *Recommended*—prescribed. *To whom the water had been recommended*—who had been advised by their physicians to take Bath waters. *A contemporary physician*—a medical man of that age. *Covert*—bare shelter or hiding-place. The place gave him bare protection from the weather, but provided no comfort. *Lodging*—a room or rooms where a man resides for a time; temporary residence; *दाया*. *As to*—as regards. *Were to be found*—could be had; were available. *In the interior of*—inside. *Fashionable visitors*—men of wealth and social position who visited the place. *Resorted*—repaired; went. *In search of health or amusement*—for the recruitment of their health or for pleasure. *Complete*—exhaustive; full. *Minute*—detailed. *Can generally be obtained*—is usually available. *Subjects*—matters. *Than can generally etc.*—because such things are commonly held to be beneath the attention of historians and too trivial and unimportant to be recorded in books.

*A writer*—John Wood, commonly known as Wood of Bath: he settled at Bath in 1727 and effected many improvements in the town. The extension and improvement of Bath were designed by him and his son. He was an author and wrote, among other works, a *History of Bath*. Died 1754. *About sixty years after the Revolution*—Wood's *History of Bath* was published in 1749. *Accurately*—faithfully; correctly. *Had taken place*—had occurred. *Recollection*—memory. *Garrets*—See notes on paragraph 55. *Footmen*—servants who attend the door and the table; men in waiting. *Lived to see*—He lived long enough to see great changes effected in the accommodation of houses in Bath. *Rooms hardly as good etc.*—i.e., their bed-rooms were worse than the attics in which their servants slept in later times. *Uncarpeted*—not covered with carpet; in modern times the floors of rooms in all respectable English houses are covered with carpets. *Wash*—a liquid preparation with which the surface of anything is coated or tinted. *Soot*—a black substance formed from smoke or the combustion of any fuel. It rises in the form of fine particles and adheres to the side of chimney or of roofs exposed to smoke; *बूझ*. *Small beer*—a species of weak beer. *To hide the dirt*—to conceal the filth; the filth would not be readily visible on account of the brown coating.

*Wainscot*—originally a kind of foreign oak not liable to rot like the English; hence a wooden lining of the walls of rooms, because the panels used for this purpose were originally made of such timber. [*wainscot*, n. Wooden panelling or boarding on room-wall—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Hearth*—i.e., the outer hearth; the broad slab of stone in front of the fire-place.

*Chimney-piece*—called also *mantel* or *mantel-piece*, a "structure of wood or marble above and around the fire-place"—(*Oxford Dictionary*); the architectural dressings in front of the open recess constituting the fire-place of a room. *Slab*—a thin flat piece. *Common*—ordinary. *Freestone*—as distinguished from marble, is a species of stone composed of stone or grit. Marble is a species of compact stone of beautiful appearance and capable of receiving a good polish. *Fire irons*—implements used in managing a fire like poker, tongs and shovel. *Sufficient for any fireplace*—good enough for the fireplaces even in the houses of the rich. *Apartments*—rooms; chambers. *Were hung with*—had their walls covered with. *Coarse*—rough. *Stuff*—cloth; fabric. *Coarse woollen stuff*—i.e., tapestry made of wool or silk and formerly used for covering the walls and furniture of apartments. *Rushbottomed chairs*—as opposed to cushioned chairs, are chairs, that have their bottoms or seats made of rushes. Rush is a wild plant that grows in moist places in the colder parts of the world.

*Progress*—advance. *Civilisation*—Macaulay holds a very narrow view of civilisation. In his opinion civilisation consists in material progress only. See *Introduction*. *Useful arts*—mechanical arts that minister to the comforts and pleasures of human life. *Topographer*—one who describes a particular place—a town, city or a tract of land; the reference is to Wood who composed an account of the town of Bath. *Recorded*—mentioned in his book. *Historians of far higher pretensions*—historians with higher aims; authors who profess to record the history of the rise and fall of nations. *Military evolutions*—movements of troops. *Evolution*—"change in disposition of troops or ships"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Political intrigues*—underhand plots or schemings of politicians to outwit their opponents; secret artifices of politicians to get the better of



their opponents. *Spared.....intrigues*—The pages of their histories are filled with the stories of battles and movements of troops or of political intrigues; they could have devoted a few pages to a description of the decoration of homes or articles of furniture of men. *Parlours*—See notes on paragraph 59. *Bedchambers*—sleeping apartments. *Will perhaps wish that etc.*—Students, who take an interest in tracing the progress of the civilisation of a society, cannot but wish that historians, who profess to deal with more dignified subjects like wars and battles and the struggles of ministers for political power, had devoted a few pages to the description of the manner in which our ancestors spent their daily lives. *For the purpose of letting us etc.*—Macaulay refers here to the design of his History. See notes on paragraph 1.

**Paragraph 76.** The position of London, with reference to the other towns of England, was much higher than now. Its population at that time was about seventeen times that of Bristol or Norwich. London was then the most populous town in Europe with Amsterdam as its only commercial rival. The shipping of London roused the wonder of the English writers of the age, but was only a quarter of the tonnage of Newcastle in the present times. The customs of London amounted in 1685 to £330 000 but now it exceeds ten millions.

*Relatively to the other towns*—with reference to the other towns; compared to the other towns. *Far higher than at present*—i.e., the proportion between the population of London and

[Page 124, Footnote—*Memoires de Grammont*—Philibert, Count of Grammont, was a celebrated wit of the court of Charles II. After serving in the army in France, he came over to England shortly after the Restoration, and became a great favourite of the English King. He married the daughter of Sir George Hamilton and died in 1707. After his death his memoirs were published by his brother-in-law, Count Hamilton. *Hasted*—Edward Hasted (1732-1812) was the great historian of Kent. His "*History and Topographical Survey of Kent*" appeared in four volumes from 1778-99.]

[Page 127, Footnote—*Wood's History of Bath*—See notes on the paragraph 75. *Stukeley's Itinerarium Curiosum*—See notes on paragraph 15. *Collinson*—an English divine and historian; he was the vicar of Long Ashton in Somersetshire from 1787 to 1793 and published his "*History of Somerset*" in 1791. *Dr. Pierce*—Robert Pierce (1622-1710) was a physician who practised in Bath; he published his "*Bath Memoirs*" in 1697.]

that of the towns immediately below it was much larger than now. The other towns were then far below London. Now they have come nearer to London. *Manchester or of Liverpool*—now the second cities of the kingdom in point of population. *Bristol or of Norwich*—Macaulay has pointed out before that next to London these were the most populous towns of the 17th century in England. In Macaulay's days the population of London was about 2 millions, while that of Manchester or Liverpool was about three hundred thousand. About 1685 London had a population of 530,000, while Bristol and Norwich had a population of 30,000 each. *Instance—example. Mentioned—cited. The most populous capital*—the city having the largest number of inhabitants. *The inhabitants—i.e., the population of London. Who are now at least nineteen hundred thousand*—The population of London has almost quadrupled since Macaulay wrote: now it numbers about seven millions and a half. *Commercial rival*—competitor in trade. *Outstripped*—surpassed. London has now far surpassed Amsterdam which was once its only rival in commercial importance.

*Mighty*—powerful. *Opulent*—rich. *Amsterdam*—the capital of Holland. The town is built on a number of small islands and possesses a very large harbour containing accommodation for about 1000 ships. In the 17th century Holland was the chief commercial rival of England and this rivalry led to frequent conflicts between the two countries. A large part of the Indian trade was then in the hands of the Dutch and it was after a strenuous struggle that England was able to check their ascendancy in the eastern waters. *Forest*—countless number. *Yardarms*—pieces of timber fixed crosswise to a mast along which sails are spread. *Forest of masts and yardarms*—This implies the large number of vessels (ships) that lay in the port. Their masts with the yardarms looked like a dense forest of trees. *The river—i.e., the Thames. The Bridge—i.e., the London Bridge* crossing the river a little to the west of Billingsgate market. It was the oldest stone bridge across the Thames said to have been built as early as the 12th century. *The Tower*—the famous Tower of London, situated on the Thames, a little to the east of London Bridge. It was begun by William the Conqueror and served as the palace of the early Norman kings. It was used as a state prison from the 15th to the 18th century. The Crown Jewels

are now kept at the Tower. It is now one of the interesting show places of London. *Stupendous*—enormous. *Custom House*—See note on paragraph 72. *Thames Street*—a street running parallel to the course of the river from Blackfriar's Bridge to the Tower. London Customs House stands on Lower Thames Street between the Tower and London Bridge. It is an imposing edifice built in 1814–17. *The trade of metropolis etc.*—the trade of the port of London then formed a considerable part of the trade of the whole country; the proportion of London's trade has now become lower because of the rise of other important commercial towns. *Honest vaunting*—sincere pride or boasting as regards the huge shipping trade of London. *Ludicrous*—ridiculous, absurd, because the shipping which appeared so enormous to them is ridiculously small when compared with the shipping of present-day London.

*The shipping*—See notes on paragraph 72. *Incredibly large*—so large as to be improbable and not to admit of belief. *Appears not to have exceeded etc.—i.e.,* the total tonnage of the whole merchant fleet did not exceed more than seventy thousand; the strength of merchant vessels is generally measured by the burthen or the load they can carry. *Tonnage*—See notes on paragraph 72. *Newcastle*—Newcastle-on-Tyne, a sea-port in Northumberland; it is the greatest centre of the ship-building industry in England and a large colliery port. *Nearly equalled by*—almost equivalent to. *Steam vessels of the Thames*—steam barges plying on the Thames. The number of vessels, registered in the port of London in 1850, numbered 3052 with a tonnage of 614,343. In 1908 the number rose to 3329 with a tonnage of over 22 millions. *In our time*—in modern times; about the time when Macaulay wrote. *Net duty*—revenue from exports and imports after the deduction of the costs of collection. *At the same place*—in London.

**Paragraph 77.** London in the reign of Charles II. was only the nucleus of the modern city. It covered only a small part of the vast area over which it now extends. The important quarters in north, east and west of London were then outside the limits of the town and were quite rural areas. On the south it was connected with the suburb by a single bridge.

---

[Page 128, Footnote—*King*—Gregory King, the Lancaster herald: See notes on paragraph 5.]

*Maps of London etc.*—Macaulay is probably thinking of the map of London, published by John Ogilby, who became the "King's cosmographer" after the Great Fire of London. *Nucleus*—properly kernel: hence the centre to which accretion is gradually made: "central part or thing round which others are collected, kernel of aggregate or mass, beginning meant to receive additions"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Only the nucleus of the present etc.*—London of the 17th century constituted only the centre of the modern city: it has since then largely extended in all directions. *Fade*—disappear gradually. *By imperceptible degrees—i.e.,* in a slow and gradual manner. *The town did not etc.*—The town of London in modern times extends on all sides until it merges into the country around. The town has on its outskirts villas and beautiful houses, surrounded by gardens and is thus gradually lost in the country beyond. So that the change from the crowded town to the sparse village is not striking. But this was not the case in the 17th century; the town was then confined within narrow limits after which it abruptly ended and the country began. Wordsworth refers to this characteristic of London in his famous sonnet, *Composed upon Westminster Bridge*:—

"Silent, bare,

Ships, towers, domes, theatres, and temples lie

Open unto the fields, and to the sky."

*Avenues*—garden walks planted with trees on each side. *Villas*—See notes on paragraph 73. **N.B.** The sparsely distributed villas on the outskirts of the town and in the suburbs keep up the appearance of city life and yet have an air of rural life. They are symbols as it were of the town spreading into the heart of the villages. So the transition from town to village becomes easy and gradual through the semi-urban and semi-rural villas. Macaulay seems to take pride in the spread of villas into the countryside—a token to him of the spread of refinement and civilisation. But a modern writer writes bitterly against "the red rash of villadom." "Long lines of villas are extended to infinity into the surrounding country, flanked by outlying bungaloid growths. Year by year the advancing tide of bungalows and villas runs higher. Vast areas of many miles in extent are already inundated, while the English country afflicted with a spreading rash of irritable

pink, languishes as though stricken by a mortal disease"—(*C. E. M. Joad*). *Embowered*—sheltered with trees; surrounded with trees. *Lilacs*—garden shrubs with beautiful and fragrant flowers. *Laburnum*—a plant well-known for its beautiful pea-shaped flowers. *Extended*—spread. *Centre of wealth and civilisation*—i.e., the City and Westminster, the seat of trade and of culture. *Boundaries*—limits. *Middlesex*—See notes on paragraph 9. *Heart*—interior. *Kent and Surrey*—counties immediately to the south-east and south of London. *Extended from the great* ..... *Surrey*—The town did not then extend from the City and Westminster to the limits of Middlesex and far into the interior of Kent and Surrey as it does now. The town of London with its modern outskirts is commonly known as *Greater London*.

*Immense line*—long stretch. *Warehouses*—godowns; store-rooms; see notes on paragraph 72. *Artificial lakes*—docks. *The Tower*—See notes on the previous paragraph. *Blackwall*—a suburb of London at the confluence of the Lee and the Thames, 4 miles to the east of St. Paul's. Here are the East and West India docks and numerous yards for ship-building. Blackwall is about 3 miles east of the Tower. *Projected*—designed; planned. The construction of these docks and godowns had not yet been thought of. *On the west*—The western part of London is its fashionable quarter. The houses of the rich and men of rank are situated in this quarter. *Stately piles of building*—majestic edifices. *Pile*—"lofty mass of buildings"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Chelsea*—a populous suburb of London on the north bank of the Thames about 4 miles and a half to the west of St. Paul's. It has many beautiful thoroughfares and terraces and is connected with Battersea on the south of the river by means of a wooden bridge. *Peopled*—inhabited. *More than forty thousand human beings*—The population of the borough has, since Macaulay's time, risen to about 64,000. *Quiet*—retired; secluded. *Country village*—a rustic village.

*On the north*—in the northern parts of the modern town. *Cattle fed*—i.e., there were pasture lands. *Sportsmen*—hunters. *Wandered*—roamed in quest of game. *Wandered etc.*—a round-about way of saying that this part of the country was then quite uninhabited and was frequented by wild birds and

animals. *Over the site of the borough of Marylebone*—over the country where the borough of Marylebone now stands. See Map of London. *Borough*—town with a municipal government; township. If it possesses the right of sending a member or members to Parliament it is called a Parliamentary borough. Otherwise it is simply called a municipal borough. Marylebone is a Parliamentary borough. *Marylebone*—a Parliamentary borough in the county of Middlesex forming the north-western quarter of London having Finsbury to its east and Westminster to its south on which side Oxford Street forms its boundary. It consists mostly of elegant streets regularly laid out and is inhabited by many wealthy families. The famous park, known as Regent's Park, is included within this borough. *Far the greater part of the space*—most of the area.

*Covered*—occupied. *Finsbury*—a Parliamentary borough of England in Middlesex comprising the northern part of the metropolis between Marylebone on the west and Tower Hamlets on the east and bordering on the south on the city of London and Westminster. It comprises the parishes of Islington and Clerkenwell. *Tower Hamlets*—a Parliamentary borough in Middlesex forming the eastern part of London. It contains the Tower of London. *Islington*—a parish in England within the borough of Finsbury in Middlesex. It is one of the northern suburbs of the metropolis between Hackney and St. Pancras. (See Map of London.) *Solitude*—lonely place; secluded village. *Poets*—The reference is to Cowley as Macaulay points out in the footnote. *Contrast*—point out the difference between. *Repose*—quiet; tranquillity. *Din*—loud sounds. *Turmoil*—tumult; commotion. *The monster London*—the gigantic city of London. London is called *the great wen* because it is an abnormally large and congested city. The phrase "monster London" is taken from Cowley's poem on *Solitude* :—

"While this hard truth I teach, methinks I see  
The monster London laugh at me."

In Stanza 2 of the same poem he speaks of London as the "bright and great metropolis."

*Poets loved to contrast its etc.*—**Expl.** Poets loved to dwell on the quiet and restfulness of Islington and drew a poetic contrast between the tranquillity of this village and the roar and

tumult that prevailed in the huge city of London. Macaulay is evidently referring to the following lines of Cowley on the solitude of Islington :—

“Let but thy wicked men from out thee (London) go  
And all the fools that crowd thee so,  
Ev’n thou, who dost thy millions boast.  
A village less than Islington wilt grow,  
A solitude almost.”

*Connected*—joined : united. *Suburb*—The reference is to the parts of the city lying south of the Thames. See notes on paragraph 2. *Several bridges*—Now there are twelve bridges other than railway bridges over the Thames within the metropolitan area—the most easterly being London Bridge and the most westerly Hammersmith Bridge. *Magnificence*—architectural beauty and splendour. *Solidity*—massiveness. strength.

*Noblest works of the Cæsars*—grandest works of architecture built by the old Roman emperors. The reference is to the beautiful temples, amphitheatres, columns and triumphal arches erected in Rome by the ancient emperors. The Pantheon and the Colosseum may be mentioned as the examples of such edifices. Some of these buildings remain to this day in a perfect state of preservation and testify to the grandeur of design and beauty of execution of the architects. Emperor Hadrian built the Pons Ælius, one of the bridges over the Tiber at Rome. *Cæsars*—Roman emperors. **N.B.** Cæsar was originally the surname of the Julian family to which the first emperors of Rome belonged. Hence it came to be used as a title for Roman emperors in general. The German word *Kaiser* and the Russian word *Tsar* are only different forms of this word. *A single line of irregular arches*—a single bridge consisting of arches of unequal spans. Until 1750 when the Waterloo Bridge was constructed, London Bridge was the only means by which the Thames could be crossed at London. *Irregular*—unsymmetrical. *Overhung by*—surmounted, bearing on them. *Piles*—masses. *Mean*—ugly-looking. *Crazy*—not strongly built; weak and shaky; tottering; rickety. The old London Bridge, was covered with houses. These were removed in 1758 and a new bridge was built in its place.

*Garnished*—adorned, used ironically here. *Fashion*—manner. *Worthy of*—appropriate or suited to. *Barbarians*—savages. *Dahomy*—an old Negro kingdom on the west coast of Africa extending inland from the Slave Coast in the Gulf of Guinea. Now it is a French colony. Macaulay refers here to the cruel custom of the Negroes of Dahomy of offering human sacrifices at the shrine of the king's ancestors and sprinkling their blood on the graves. The skulls were used to adorn the palace-walls, and the king's sleeping chamber was paved with the heads of his enemies. The skulls of the conquered kings were turned into royal drinking cups and their conversion to this use was esteemed an honour. *Scores*—properly twenties; hence large numbers. *Mouldering*—decaying; rotting. *Heads*—heads of executed criminals. *Impeded*—checked. The spans of the arches were so narrow that it was difficult and sometimes positively dangerous for boats to pass through them. The reference in this passage is to the old revolting English custom of exposing the heads of executed traitors and other malefactors in prominent places in the town. The heads were frequently stuck on poles fixed on the south end of the bridge and were allowed to remain in this condition until they rotted or were replaced by new heads. The heads were so exposed by way of warning.

*In 1685, a single line.....river*—**Expl.** Macaulay describes in this passage the old London Bridge as it existed in 1685. This bridge was the only means by which the Thames could in those times be crossed at London. It was built on arches of unequal size. The spans were so narrow as to interfere with the safe passage of boats through them. Rows of ugly-looking and dilapidated houses stood on the bridge. The heads of executed criminals were exposed over it; just as the Negroes of Dahomy hold up for public view the heads of men, sacrificed by them to their gods. This was a horrible and revolting sight.

**Paragraph 78.** The City (or the commercial quarter) was the most important division of London, the capital. Before

---

[Page 130, Footnote—*Lyson*—Daniel Lyson (1762-1834), a topographer; his principal work "*The Environs of London*" appeared in 1792-96.]

[Page 131, Footnote—*Cowley*—Abraham Cowley (1618-1667) was a well-known English poet. His greatest work was "*Davidis*," a sacred poem; he wrote besides a number of Pindaric Odes and "*Verses on several occasions*."]



the great fire the houses had been made of wood and plaster or ill-baked bricks. After the great fire, great changes were effected in the style and materials of buildings. But the streets remained narrow as before—a great inconvenience to the passage of coaches. The City quickly repaired the damages caused by the great fire. But the Cathedral of St. Paul's took a long time to be rebuilt.

*Metropolis*—"chief city of a country; capital"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *The City*—This name is commonly given to the commercial quarter of London lying to the east of Westminster. The City forms a county by itself and has a separate administration of its own with the Lord Mayor as its head. *Properly so called*—strictly so named as distinguished from the whole metropolis. *Division*—quarter. *For the most part*—to a very large extent. *Plaster*—"soft plastic mixture, esp. of lime, sand and hair for spreading on walls and to smooth surface"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Ill baked*—not properly burnt. *Booths*—stalls. *Exposed*—exhibited; displayed. *Projected*—jutting; extended. *Were overhung by the upper stories*—i.e., the upper floors hung or extended over them. *Specimens*—samples; examples. *This architecture*—this type of building. *Districts*—quarters; parts. *Reached*—touched, i.e., consumed. *The great fire*—commonly known as the Fire of London. It broke out in a baker's shop in September 1666 and burnt for four days. All the City from the Tower in the east to the Temple in the west and from the Thames northwards to Holborn Bridge was completely destroyed. It burnt down 89 churches including St. Paul's Cathedral and many public buildings like the Royal Exchange, Custom House and Guildhall. It destroyed 13000 houses and 400 streets.

*In a few days*—within four days. *Covered a space*—extended over an area. *Had risen again*—had been rebuilt. *Celerity*—rapidity; quickness. *Excited the admiration*—roused the praise and wonder. *Neighbouring countries*—like France and Holland. *Lines*—courses. *Preserved*—maintained. *Originally traced*—first laid down or designed. *Performed their journeys*—travelled. *On horseback*—because no easier conveyance had then come into use. *Wheeled carriages*—coaches moving on wheels. *Were often too narrow to allow etc.*—Most of the streets were so narrow that two coaches could not pass easily side by side. *Adapted*—suited. *In an age*—i.e., in the period after the

Reformation. *A coach and six*—a coach drawn by six horses. Macaulay explains later on in this chapter that the badness of the roads rendered the employment of six horses necessary. *A fashionable luxury*—a pleasant and agreeable mode of travelling used by men of wealth and rank.

*Style of building*—nature or character of the houses. *Far superior to*—much better than. *Perished*—been consumed by the fire. *The ordinary material*—the substance with which these houses were usually built. *Better quality*—superior character. N.B. "The first great impetus of change in the configuration of London was given by the great fire and Evelyn records and regrets that the town in his time had grown almost as large again as it was within his memory. Although for several centuries attempts had been made in favour of building houses with brick or stone, yet the carpenters continued to be the chief house-builders. As late as the year 1650 the Carpenters' Company drew up a memorial in which they 'gave their reasons that timber buildings were more commodious for this city than brick buildings were'. The Act of Parliament 'for rebuilding the city of London' passed after the great fire, gave the *coup de grace* to the carpenters as house-builders. After setting forth that 'building with brick was not only more comely and durable, but also more safe against future perils of fire' it was enacted 'that all the outsides of all buildings in and about the city should be made of brick or stone, except door cases and window frames, and other parts of the first story to the front between the piers, for which substantial oaken timber might be used for conveniency of shops'—*Encyclopædia Britannica*

*Sites*—situations: grounds on which the churches had previously stood: *Multitude*—number. *New domes, towers and spires*—newly built churches with domes, towers etc. *Domes*—roofs of buildings in the form of cupolas or inverted cups. Cathedrals are generally adorned with domes. St. Paul's, designed by Wren, is the best example of a cathedral with an imposing dome. *Towers*—lofty narrow buildings forming part of a church or castle. The towers of the church of St. Mary Somerset were built by Wren. [*tower*, n. Tall, usually equilateral (especially square) or circular structure, often forming part of church or other large building—(*Oxford Dictionary*).] *Spires*—the pyramidal members forming the

summits of church towers. The church tower with its surmounting spire is called a steeple. The steeple of the church of St. Mary-le-bow designed by Wren is the most beautiful of its kind. *Mark*—stamp; impress. *Bore the mark of*—were stamped by. *Fertile*—productive: prolific. Besides his many many other works, Wren built no less than fifty-two churches in London after the fire excluding St. Peter's, his greatest work. *Fertile genius of Wren*—Wren who displayed his rare talents as an architect in building numerous beautiful edifices. *Wren*—Sir Christopher (1632—1723) was the greatest English architect of his age. He built a number of chapels at Cambridge and the famous Sheldonian theatre of Oxford. After the fire of 1666 he was appointed "surveyor general and principal architect for rebuilding the whole city." Besides St. Paul's and fifty-two other churches in London he built Chelsea Hospital and Marlborough House.

*Save one*—except St. Paul's Cathedral. *Traces*—marks. *Devastation*—ravage; destruction caused by the fire. *Completely effaced*—wholly removed. *Scaffolds*—temporary structures of timbers and planks by the walls of a building to support workmen and materials. *Masses*—piles. *Hewn*—properly shaped or carved. *Noblest of Protestant temples*—grandest of the Protestant Churches: Macaulay perhaps is mentally distinguishing it from St. Peter's of Rome, the greatest of the Roman Catholic Churches. *Was slowly rising*—was being slowly built. St. Paul' Cathedral took a very long time in building. It was commenced in 1675 and finished in 1697 when the thanksgiving service on the conclusion of the Peace of Ryswick was held in it. It was built in the form of a Latin cross and cost £747, 954.

**Paragraph 79.** The great change that has occurred in the character of the City. It is no longer the home of the great merchants and bankers but only their place of business. As they have their residences in the suburbs, they do not care for the municipal honours and duties of the City.

---

[Page 133, Footnote—*British Museum and in the Pepysian Library*—See notes on paragraph 12. *Travels of the Grand Duke Cosom*—See notes on paragraph 40. *Ward*—Edward Ward (1697—1731), an English humourist; he published a number of coarse poems and issued "*The London Spy*" in parts from 1698 to 1709; he was pilloried in 1705 for an attack on the government. *Nauseous balderdash*—revolting nonsense. *To descend even lower*—to study worse books.]

*Character*—nature. *Undergone*—suffered. *Undergone a complete change*—changed altogether. *Bankers*—persons who keep banks. A bank is an establishment for the deposit and issue of money. Besides it grants loans, discounts bill and facilitates the remittance of money from one place to another. *Repair*—resort; go. *Six mornings every week*—i.e., the week-days only, viz., from Monday to Saturday. *Transaction*—management. *Business*—the work of their firms. *Reside*—dwell. *Other quarters*—viz., the parts of the town inhabited by the members of rich and genteel society. *Suburban country seats*—villas or houses in the country adjoining the town. *Shrubberies*—rows of shrubs planted for adorning gardens and pleasure-grounds. A powerful modern writer thus writes of suburban life. "Living in one place and sleeping in another, we pass our lives in perpetual transit between workshop and dormitory". *Revolution*—change. *Private habits*—personal habits of the merchants; the ways of life of the merchants. *Produced*—led to: resulted in. *No small importance*—great importance or moment. *This revolution in private etc.*—This change in the personal ways of the merchants has greatly affected the political life of the City.

*Regarded*—considered; viewed. *Attachment*—affection; fondness. *The City is no longer.....home*—**Expl.** This remark is made by Macaulay in connection with his observations on the change that has occurred in modern times in the character of the City. Formerly the greatest merchants of the City lived in it; and they felt for it the affection that one cherishes for his home. Now they do not share these feelings because their homes lie elsewhere and outside the City. The City happens to be only their places of business. ("The City" refers to the commercial quarter of London) *Associated*—connected; hence endeared. *Domestic affections and endearments*—love that a man feels for his home and all things connected with it. *Endearments*—loving attachment. *Fireside*—properly the side of a fire-place with which the room is warmed; hence comforts of home. *Nursery*—a room set apart for children; hence love of children. *Social table*—dinner table where a man enjoys the society of his friends and relations. *The quiet bed*—the bed where a man enjoys sleep and rest after the day's hard work. • *There*—i.e., in the City. *The fireside. the nursery etc.*—The City does not contain

any longer the merchants' homes and is not therefore associated with the joys that endear a man's home to him. *Lombard Street and Threadneedle Street*—These streets are in the heart of the City and are close to Mansion House. The Bank of England stands on Threadneedle Street. Lombard Street contains a number of banks. The Royal Exchange, which forms the business centre of the City, stands at the junction of Threadneedle Street, Cornhill and Lombard Street. See Map of London. **N. B.** The nature of Lombard Street may be judged from the fact that Bagehot's famous book on monetary questions is named "*Lombard Street*".

*Toil*—labour: work. *Accumulate*—pile riches; make their fortunes. *Lombard Street...accumulate*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's remarks on the change that has occurred in the character of the City in modern times. The City no longer contains the homes of the great bankers and merchants. It contains only their places of business, banks, houses of exchange, offices etc., where they work and make their fortunes. *They go elsewhere etc.*—Their homes are in a different place where they spend their wealth on their enjoyments and recreations. *On a Sunday*—on Sundays when the firms remain closed. *Courts*—open grounds or uncovered areas surrounded by buildings. *Alleys*—lanes: narrow passages in a town as distinguished from public streets. *A few hours before*—i.e., a little earlier in the day. *Alive*—full of life and movement; brisk and active. *Alive.....faces*—were full of life and movement, because busy men were quickly moving about, and their faces wore signs of deep thought and anxiety about their business. *Had been alive with hurrying feet etc.*—had been full of men quickly moving about in all directions in an anxious manner; had been full of bustle and activity. *Glades of a forest*—open places or passages in a forest. [**glade**, n. ('lear open space or passage between forest trees—(*Oxford Dictionary*)). *The chiefs of the mercantile interest*—the heads of the great firms; the great merchants of the City. *On a Sunday.....glades of a forest*—**Expl.** Macaulay is here speaking of the effects of the rich merchants' habit of living in suburban villas upon the life of the City of London. On Sundays and on every other day at the close of business, the big merchants go to their suburban homes leaving the City (the commercial quarter of London) in a state of utter loneliness and desolation. The whole City

wears a deserted appearance. The open spaces round the mercantile houses and the adjoining streets were full of life and movement during business hours. Men with grave and anxious looks moved hurriedly to and fro. But when offices and firms are closed, they become as quiet and lonely as forest paths. *Are no longer citizens*—do not now reside in the City. *The chiefs.....citizens*—the heads of mercantile firms live in their suburban villas. They, therefore, deny themselves the privileges of citizenship of London. *Contemn*—despise. *Municipal*—pertaining to a corporate town or city. *Honours*—distinctions. *They almost contemn etc.*—They do not care to hold the dignified office of the Lord Mayor or to perform their duties as citizens by serving as the Aldermen or the Councilmen of the Corporation. (The municipal affairs of the City are managed by a corporation, consisting of the Lord Mayor, twenty-six Aldermen and over two hundred councillors forming the Court of Common Council). *Abandoned*—left. *Princely commercial houses*—leading and wealthy mercantile firms.

**Paragraph 80.** The City was the home of the merchant princes in the 17th century. Their houses were majestic buildings and were fitted up at a great cost. The merchants were inspired by an intense local patriotism. They were proud of their city and jealously guarded her honour and privileges

*Residence*—home; abode. *Mansions*—large and imposing houses; palaces. *Burghers*—(from A, S. *burg*, a town or city) citizens. *Turned*—converted. *Counting houses*—business houses; offices. [**counting-house**, n. Building, room, devoted to keeping accounts; office—(*Oxford Dictionary*)]. (*Originally*—formerly when they served as the residences of the merchants. *Not inferior in magnificence*—not less grand or imposing. *Retired*—secluded. *Gloomy*—dark. *Courts*—See notes on previous paragraph. *Are accessible*—can be reached by. *Inconvenient passages*—dark, narrow lanes through which it is difficult to make one's way. **N.B.** The situation of the firms and dwelling-houses of the rich Marwari merchants of Burrabazar in Calcutta will best illustrate the truth of this remark. *Dimensions*—size. *Ample*—large; spacious. *Aspect*—appearance. *Stately*—noble; grand. *Entrances*—gates. *Decorated*—adorned. *Richly carved*—beautifully sculptured. *Canopies*—richly ornamented dripstones over doors and windows.

*Staircases*—flights of steps. *Landing place*—part of a floor at the end of a flight of steps: a resting place at the end of a series of steps. *Are not wanting in grandeur*—are stately and majestic. *Of wood*—of planks of timber and not of masonry work. *Tessellated*—formed by inlaying differently coloured materials in little squares, triangles or other geometrical figures. *After the fashion of France*—after the manner of the French.

*Sir Robert Clayton* (1629-1707)—one of the richest English merchants of his days. He became an Alderman of London in 1670 and was appointed the Sheriff of the City in the following year when he was knighted. He became the Lord Mayor in 1679. He was a staunch Whig in politics and when returned to Parliament, he strongly supported the Exclusion Bill. Afterwards he strongly defended the charter of the City in 1682. In Chapter X of his *History*, Macaulay describes Clayton's wealth and magnificence as follows:—"With these eminent persons were joined Sir Robert Clayton, the wealthiest merchant of London, whose palace in the Old Jewry surpassed in splendour the aristocratical mansions of Lincoln's Inn Fields and Covent Garden, whose villa among the Surrey hills was described as a garden of Eden, whose banquets vied with those of Kings, and whose judicious munificence, still attested by numerous public monuments, had obtained for him in the annals of the City a place second only to that of Gresham."

*Old Jewry*—the name of a street in the City in the neighbourhood of Aldgate. *Superb*—magnificent. *Banqueting room*—dining hall. *Wainscoted*—See notes on paragraph 75. *Cedar*—a valuable timber allied to Indian *deodar*. *Battles of gods and giants*—described in the ancient classical legends. According to these legends the giants were creatures of monstrous size who made war on the gods and attempted to take heaven by storm. They were finally slain by Zeus with the help of Hercules. [*fresco*, n. Method of painting (esp. in f.) picture, in water-colour laid on wall or ceiling before plaster is dry—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Fresco*—a method of painting on the fresh plaster of walls with mineral and earthy colours. Such painting is very durable. Macaulay's description is based on the following account of the dining-room in Evelyn's Diary. "I carried with me to dinner my

Lord H. Howard to Sir Robert Clayton's, now Sheriff of London, at his new house, where we had a great feast: it is built indeed for a great magistrate, at excessive cost. The cedar dining-room is painted with the history of the Giants' War, incomparably done by Mr. Streater, but the figures are too near the eye." 26th Sept. 1672.

*Sir Dudley North* (1641-1691)—was originally a merchant at Constantinople where he made his fortune. He became Sheriff of London when he was knighted. He was made a commissioner of customs in 1683 and afterwards of the treasury. He advocated free-trade and was a staunch Tory in politics. In Chapter IV of his *History* Macaulay gives the following estimate of North's abilities and character:—"After an exile of many years, Dudley North returned to England with a large fortune, and commenced business as a Turkey merchant in the City of London. His profound knowledge both speculative and practical, of commercial matters, and the perspicuity and liveliness with which he explained his views speedily introduced him to the notice of statesmen. The government found in him at once an enlightened adviser and an unscrupulous slave. For with his rare mental endowments were joined lax principles and an unfeeling heart. When the Tory reaction was in full progress, he had consented to be made Sheriff for the express purpose of assisting the vengeance of the Court. His juries had never failed to find verdicts of Guilty; and on a day of judicial butchery, carts, loaded with the legs and arms of quartered Whigs, were, to the great discomposure of his lady, driven to his fine house in Basinghall Street for orders."

*For thousand pounds*—four thousand pounds. 'For' is a misprint for 'four'.

*Which would then have been important to a Duke*—£ 4,000 would in those days have been considered a large sum even by a Duke. Macaulay has pointed out previously in this chapter that the incomes of the richest nobles of England did not in that age exceed £ 19,000 a year. *Duke*—the highest rank of peers immediately below the King. *Reception rooms*—rooms for receiving and entertaining guests. *Basinghall Street*—a street in the neighbourhood of Lothbury; it contained North's house; (See the above quotation from Macaulay's



*History*.) Salmon notices that Macaulay is here guilty of an oversight because according to his biographer North sold his house at Basinghall Street and purchased another behind Goldsmith's Hall. It was on the furniture of this house that he spent £ 4000. *Abodes*—dwellings. *The last Stuarts*—the last two kings of the Stuart dynasty. *viz.*, Charles II and James II. *Heads*—chiefs. *Great firms*—leading mercantile houses. *Splendidly*—in great state. *Hospitably*—*i.e.*, entertaining friends and guests with rich banquets. The Lord Mayor of London is by custom the dispenser of the hospitality of the City. The official position of the Lord Mayor requires him to give a number of dinners every year. *Their dwelling place*—the City that contained their homes. *Bound*—attached. *Ties*—bonds. *To their dwelling place etc.*—Considerations of their own welfare and feelings of love firmly united them with the City where they had their homes. *Courted*—wooed in marriage. *Laid the remains of their parents in the earth*—buried their parents. *Remains*—dead bodies. *Their own remains would be laid*—They themselves would be buried.

*Intense*—fervent *Patriotism*—love of country. *Is peculiar to*—is the special characteristic of. *Congregated*—assembled. *Narrow space*—small area. *Developed*—deepened. **N. B.** Macaulay speaks here of what is commonly called parochial patriotism. This implies a fervent love of the town or village in which a man lives and the society in which he moves. This feeling is naturally much stronger than a man's love of his nation or country at large. *Athens*—now the capital of Greece but it was in ancient times the capital of a small state of this name. Ancient Greece was divided into a number of small city-states like Athens, Sparta, Corinth etc. The different states were independent of one another and often fought amongst themselves. *Pericles* (B.C. 495—429)—the famous statesman, general and orator of Athens during whose administration the city reached its highest degree of prosperity. He decorated Athens with magnificent temples and public buildings that made it the wonder of Greece. During his age Fine Arts reached their highest perfection and Athens became the centre of Greek civilisation. *Florence*—the capital of Tuscany in northern Italy. In the Middle Ages Italy was like ancient Greece divided into a number of small states like Florence, Genoa, Pisa etc. *Florentine*—an inhabitant of Florence.

*Fifteenth century*—the most glorious period of the history of Florence. Under the fostering care of the Medicis, science and arts flourished in Florence in this age to a degree never known before. The greatest of the Italian artists, like Leonardo da Vinci, Andrea del Sarto, Raphael and Michael Angelo, flourished in this age and were connected with Florence. The greatest Italian authors of the age like Boccaccio, Guiccardini and Machiavelli, belonged to Florence. The art of printing was introduced into Florence in this century.

*London was to the Londoner.....fifteenth century—Expl.* In this sentence Macaulay speaks of the burning local patriotism of the citizens of London of the 17th century. The people of London were then as proud of their City as the Athenians were of theirs in the age of Pericles when the arts and culture of Athens reached their highest perfection. The Florentines were equally proud of their city in the 15th century because under the wise rule of the Medicis, literature and arts then flourished in Florence to a degree not known elsewhere in Europe. Athens, the City of the Violet Crown as the Athenians called her, was not merely their home, the centre of their interests and affections. She was the nursery of arts and letters of which one might well be proud. So was Florence under the Medicis. The cities, therefore, called forth the deepest loyalty from their inhabitants. London did not attain the magnificence of Athens under Pericles, or of Florence under the Medicis. Still she was as dear to her citizens as Athens and Florence were to theirs. *Grandeur*—magnificence; splendour. *Punctilious*—properly exact in the forms of behaviour; hence sensitive about the City's honour. *Was punctilious etc.*—strongly insisted on the observance of the respect which the City could rightfully demand. *Ambitious of her offices*—keenly desirous for election to corporation offices like those of the Lord Mayor or the Aldermen. *Zealous for her franchises—i.e.,* jealously guarded the privileges of the City. *The citizen..... her franchises—Expl.* Macaulay is here speaking of the intense love of Londoners for their City. They took pride in belonging to a city which was full of splendid and imposing buildings. They appreciated keenly the material wealth and splendour of their City. They thought so highly of their City that they were strict and scrupulous in respecting her honour and dignity. They were indeed so proud of their City that they

considered the privileges of citizenship an honour. And they eagerly sought after the high offices of the City Corporation.

**Paragraph 81.** The old charter of the City had been recently cancelled and the Corporation remodelled. The new officers of the Corporation were mostly Tories though they could not compare with the Whig citizens of London in number and wealth. The old festive character of the City that had declined under the former Puritanic rule was revived under the new administration.

*At the close of the reign of Charles the Second*—The cancellation of the old charter of the City took place in 1683 only two years before Charles II's death. *Smarting*—suffering painfully. *Cruel mortification*—bitter humiliation. The pride of the City was humbled by the withdrawal of the charter. And the citizens were acutely feeling the humiliation. *Charter*—royal order conferring on the City its powers and privileges. The power, by which any corporate body, like a municipality or university, can exercise its functions, is generally based on such charters. *Taken away*—cancelled. *Magistracy*—body of city magistrates; officers of the Corporation who managed the affairs of the City. *Remodelled*—newly constituted or formed. *The old charter had been taken etc.*—The reference is to the measure taken by Charles II against the City in 1683 by which it was deprived of its charter. The City had always supported the Whigs and afforded refuge to Shaftesbury when he incurred royal displeasure. Offended at this conduct of the City, the King resolved to crush its liberties. He called on the City in 1683 to show cause under the writ known as "*Quo Warranto*" why it should not be deprived of its charter for having imposed irregular tolls and attacked the King's authority in a petition submitted in 1680. The King's Bench before which the case was tried decided against the City and Charles promised to restore the charter only on the condition that he should have a veto on the election of its principal officers. As the City did not agree to these terms it was deprived of the municipal self-government that it had enjoyed for several centuries. The decision of the King's Bench was reversed and the charter restored in 1690 after the Revolution. *Civic*—pertaining to a city; municipal.

*Functionaries*—officers. *Civic functionaries*—the Lord Mayor, aldermen and the sheriffs. *Were Tories*—because they were all nominated by the King. *Though in numbers and in wealth superior to their opponents*—although the Whig citizens were more numerous and richer than the Tories. *Excluded*—shut out. *Local dignity*—honourable office in the corporation. *External splendour*—brilliance of exterior; outer pomp or lustre. *Municipal government*—administration of the affairs of the City. *Diminished*—lessened. *Increased*—improved. *This change—viz., the replacement of Whig officers by Tories. The external splendour of the municipal.....change*—The system of the administration of the affairs of the City after its reconstruction seemed to be more glorious than before. The gaiety and festivity of the City did not suffer, but increased. *Puritans*—They held very serious views of life and condemned sports and feasts as sinful. They were generally Whigs in politics. *Lately*—recently. *Borne rule*—were in power. *Good cheer*—rich feasts; banquets, gaiety and festivity.

*The ancient fame of the City etc.*—The old reputation of the City for its festive gaiety and hospitality had suffered. *More festive party—i.e., Cavaliers* who were fond of mirth and feasts. The Tories of the Restoration period shared the character of the Cavaliers of the previous generation. *Boards*—tables. *Guests of rank and fashion*—noble and distinguished guests. *From beyond Temple Bar*—from the city of Westminster, the place where men of wealth and fashion lived, and the seat of the government of the kingdom. *Temple Bar*—was the old stone gateway at the western boundary of the City separating it from Westminster. It was removed in 1879. The state banquet given by the Lord Mayor at Guildhall is an annual function to which distinguished guests including the ministers of state are invited. These dinners provide the ministers with an opportunity of expounding their policy before the public and have now become as much a social as a political function. (Guildhall banquets may to some extent be compared to St. Andrew's dinners annually held in Calcutta). *Guildhall*—the hall where a guild or corporation usually assembles. The London Guildhall contains the common council chamber, the aldermen's room and several courts of justice. It contains besides a great hall for state banquets and receptions. *The halls*—halls where the members of

different guilds met. See Map of London. *The great companies*—i.e., the guilds; these were the corporate bodies of men who followed any trade or profession. These guilds were recognised institutions in the Middle Ages; they possessed many privileges and exercised great influence on the course of trade and manufacture. Some of the guilds still exist but they are no longer recognised as public institutions. They are now mere private associations and have little influence on a country's trade or industries. Twelve of these guilds claiming precedence over the others are known as great companies each having its separate hall. They are as follow:—(1) Mercers, (2) Grocers, (3) Drapers, (4) Fishmongers, (5) Goldsmiths, (6) Skinners, (7) Merchant Taylors, (8) Haberdashers, (9) Salters, (10) Ironmongers, (11) Vintners, (12) Clothworkers. The 'Great companies' may also refer to the Turkey and East India Companies to which Macaulay has already referred.

*Enlivened*—cheered; gladdened. *Sumptuous banquets*—rich feasts. *Odes*—songs of a dignified type; lyrics full of fervent emotion. [ode, n. (mod.) rhymed or rarely unrhymed lyric often in form of address, usu. of exalted style and enthusiastic tone; often in varied or irregular metre—*Oxford Dictionary*]. *Poet laureate*—a poet belonging to the royal household who was formerly required to compose poems on the sovereign's birth-day, a victory or other great national achievement. The post has in recent times become a sinecure. *Poet laureate of the corporation*—The expression is used ironically for a city poet—a poet of humble merits in the pay of the corporation who was required to compose poems on events like the Lord Mayor's show or Guildhall banquets. Salmon writes:—"The city for many years had a poet whose duty it was to celebrate in an ode the Lord Mayor's procession. The last to hold office was Elkanah Settle (1648-1724) of whom Pope wrote:

Now night descending, the proud scene (the Lord

Mayor's show) was o'er.

But lived in Settle's numbers one day more."

*The Duke*—the Duke of York. *The drinking was deep*—Wine was drunk in large quantities at these feasts. *The shouting loud*—The toasts proposing the health of the King and

other important personages were drunk with loud cheers. It may easily be understood that the guests being rather the worse for drink would shout at the top of their voices when drinking the toasts.

*An observant Tory*—a Tory writer who carefully noticed the customs of his times. As Macaulay explains in the footnote the reference is to North, the author of *Examen*. *Shared in these revels*—partook of these feasts and merry-makings. *Practice*—custom. *Huzzaing*—uttering loud shouts of acclamation and joy. Salmon quotes from North: "It is not to be denied but at merry meetings good fellowships in way of healths run into some extravagance and noise, as *that which they call 'huzzaing', an usage then at its perfection.*" *Huzza* is only another form of *hurrah*. *Drinking health*—pledging the health; signifying good-will towards a man by drinking a glass of wine. In European society it is a common custom to drink a glass of wine while expressing good wishes for a man's health or welfare. *Joyous period*—jovial or hilarious age; an euphemistic expression for an age when hard drinking was in fashion amongst public men.

**Paragraph 82.** The Lord Mayor could lay a just claim to the almost regal splendour by which he was surrounded when he appeared in public. He was the first magistrate of the richest and the most powerful City in the kingdom. By reason of its wealth and military resources London then exercised the greatest influence on the politics of the country. It could set up and pull down kings at will. It was the hostility of London that chiefly brought about the downfall of King Charles I and it was again by the City's favour that Charles II was restored to the throne.

*First civic magistrate*—chief magistrate of the City, i.e., the Lord Mayor of London. He is the head of the Corporation

---

[Page 137, Footnote.—*North* - Roger North (1653-1734) was a lawyer and author; author of the *Lives of Sir Dudley North* and Dr. John North: his *Examen* was published after his death. *Sublime raptures*—noble strains; ironical for 'absurd verses'. *Pindar* (522-443 B.C.)—the greatest lyric poet of ancient Greece. His best known poems were odes composed on contemporary events. *Pindar of the City*—ironical for a worthless poet, who was paid to compose odes on festive occasions. *Sir John Moore* (1620-1720)—He made his fortune by East India trade; became Mayor of London in 1681 when he assisted the court-party in destroying the City's liberties.]

that manages the municipal affairs of the City and is its Lord Lieutenant. *Regal*—royal; worthy of a king. *Gilded coach*—luxurious and richly decorated coach in which he rides on state occasions. *Which is now annually admired by the crowd*—The reference is to the Lord Mayor's procession held once a year. This procession is an occasion of joy and entertainment to the populace of the City. *State*—pomp; grandeur. *Was not yet a part of his state*—did not yet figure in the procession. *On great occasions*—in times of solemn public ceremonies. *Caralcade*—procession of horsemen. *Coronation*—the ceremony of investing a prince with the insignia of royalty when he succeeds to the throne. *Escorted*—accompanied. *The Tower*—of London where the regalia are kept: see notes on paragraph 77. *From the Tower to Westminster*—A pompous procession from the Tower to Westminster Abbey forms part of the coronation ceremonies of the British sovereigns. *Westminster*—Westminster Abbey, the coronation church of the English sovereigns from the time of King Harold. It stands on the site of a very old church of the 7th century and was rebuilt during the reigns of successive kings. The coronation chair of which the famous *Stone* forms a part is kept in the chapel of Edward the Confessor. The King takes his seat on this chair and is then anointed and invested with the Crown by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

*Was never seen in public*—never took part in a public function. *Rich robe*—gorgeous dress. *Hood*—an ornamental fold at the back of a cloak or a gown. *Harbingers*—properly officers of the King's household who rode a day's journey before the King to arrange for his lodgings: hence fore-runners or men who march at the head of a procession. *The world*—i.e., the public. *Indicrous*—absurd; ridiculous. *Nor did the world etc.*—The almost regal state and grandeur that the Lord Mayor always assumed did not strike the public as being ridiculous in any way. That the chief officer of a city corporation should assume royal splendour may be regarded as ridiculous. But London was no mean city. So it was proper that its chief magistrate should have the dignity of a King. *Proportioned*—fitting; suitable. *Place*—dignified situation. *Wielding*—exercising. *Dignity*—greatness; importance. *Was entitled*—had a just right. *State*—kingdom. *For*

*it was not more than proportioned etc.*—The Lord Mayor being the representative of the might and majesty of London, had a just claim to the dignity and pomp that he assumed. *The City being then.....second*—London being then the first and greatest city in the kingdom and the other towns being infinitely below it in power and importance; London being the first city in the kingdom and the rest being nowhere. *Without second*—There was no city that could come so near to London as to be considered second to it.

*During five and forty years—i.e., since the first meeting of the Long Parliament in 1640. Exercised almost as great an influence etc.*—exercised the greatest influence on the politics of the country; shaped to a large extent the course of the history of the country. *As Paris has in our time exercised on the politics of France*—All the important political movements of France in recent times had their origin in Paris. The great French Revolution of 1789 began in Paris. The Revolution of 1830 that led to the expulsion of Charles X. from the throne and the accession of Louis Philippe as the King of the French had its origin in Paris. There was again a revolution in Paris in 1848 as a consequence of which Louis Philippe was expelled from the throne and a republic was established in France in place of a monarchy. Since 1789 all the revolutionary movements that swept over France had their origin in Paris, the capital of the country. *That City being then not only etc.*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this remark about the powerful influence exercised by the City of London on the course of English politics from 1640 to 1685. During this period the City had entirely determined the political history of England; it had made and unmade Kings and the party that it supported had prevailed. Macaulay therefore compares the paramount influence exercised by London on English politics to that of Paris in France—because all the revolutionary movements in France from 1789 onwards had their origin in that city.

*Intelligence—culture and education. Was greatly in advance of*—was much superior to. *Every other part of the country*—In previous paragraphs Macaulay has described the gross ignorance that prevailed amongst the country gentlemen, not to speak of the rustics. *Supported and trusted by London*—that commanded the confidence of the merchants of the city.



*Pecuniary means*--monetary help. *Could in a day obtain such pecuniary means etc.*—This was illustrated soon after William III's arrival in London when the City of London advanced to him a large loan to extricate him from his pecuniary difficulties. The following is Macaulay's description of the event in Chapter X of his *History*:—"The City of London undertook to extricate the Prince from his financial difficulties. The Common Council, by an unanimous vote, engaged to find him two hundred thousand pounds. It was thought a great proof, both of the wealth and of the public spirit of the merchants of the capital, that, in forty-eight hours, the whole sum was raised on no security but the Prince's word. A few weeks before, James had been unable to procure a much smaller sum, though he had offered to pay higher interest, and to pledge valuable property."

*Military resources*--fighting strength; forces at the disposal of the City. *To be despised*--contemptible; negligible. *Lord Lieutenant*—See notes on paragraph 17. The Lord-lieutenant of a county is its principal official and has the control over the military resources for its defence. The Lord Mayor is the lord-lieutenant within the City. *Commission*--body. *Commission of eminent citizens*--i.e., the Court of Common Council. *Draper*--a dealer in cloths. *Apprentices*--persons bound by agreement to serve some master for a fixed period of time to learn some trade or profession--the master in his turn being bound by that contract to impart to him the necessary training. According to the rules of the trade-guilds no man was permitted to practise a trade or a profession unless he had received the necessary training by being apprenticed to one of its members. *Journeymen*--properly men hired to work by the day; now generally used of mechanics and workmen who have served their apprenticeship and are therefore supposed to have acquired a mastery of their special occupation or profession. *Common councilmen*--members of the Common Council. The Common Council of a city or a corporate town is the assembly of the representatives of its citizens empowered to frame laws for the management of the municipal affairs. The Common Council of London consists of two houses--the upper consisting of the Lord Mayor and the Aldermen and the lower consisting of the citizen's representatives elected annually.

*Aldermen*—properly elders; now used as the title of the officers of a corporate town immediately below the Mayor. The Common Council of the City contains twenty-six Aldermen elected for life. *Colonels*—officers commanding regiments. *Stand its ground*—maintain its position; successfully oppose. *There were very few regular troops etc.*—For the strength of the standing army in those days see paragraph 25. *Notice*—warning or intimation beforehand. *At an hour's notice*—i.e., immediately; at once. *Abounding in*—full of. *Natural*—constitutional and not the effect of training and discipline. *Provided with*—armed with. *Tolerable*—not quite contemptible or worthless. *Untinctured*—unimbued; untinged. *Martial discipline*—military training. *Not altogether untinctured with martial discipline*—possessed of a moderate degree of military training. *Could not but be*—must be. *Valuable ally*—useful friend. *Formidable*—dangerous. *A town, therefore, which could etc.*—Macaulay describes in this sentence the military resources of the City of London. It could within a very short time raise an army of twenty thousand fairly armed soldiers possessed of some military training. A city possessed of such resources could render very useful service as a friend and prove a very dangerous enemy.

*Hampden*—John Hampden (1594-1643) was a famous English patriot who refused to pay the "ship-money" tax levied illegally by Charles I. He joined the Parliamentary army when the Civil War broke out and was mortally wounded at Chalgrove Field. He was one of the five members whom Charles I came to arrest in the Parliament house. *Pym*—John Pym (1584-1643) was a prominent statesman during the reign of Charles I. He strongly denounced the arbitrary measures of Laud and Strafford and was one of the managers of Buckingham's impeachment. He was one of the five members whom Charles I wanted to seize in the Parliament house before the outbreak of the Civil War. *Lawless tyranny*—high-handed persecution. *Trainbands*—See notes on paragraph 17. *It was not forgotten.....trainbands*—The reference is to Charles I's attempt on the five members in 1642. These five members of Parliament of whom Hampden and Pym were the most prominent had rendered themselves obnoxious to the King by their strong condemnation of his arbitrary measures. Accordingly in January 1642, the King proceeded to the House

of Commons accompanied by 500 armed men to arrest these members on the alleged charge of treason. They, being forewarned of the step the King proposed to take, had left the House before the King's arrival and taken refuge in the City where the King did not venture to follow them. A week later, the citizens brought them in triumph to Westminster.

*Crisis*—serious stage; most dangerous hour. *The London trainbands had marched etc.*—See notes on paragraph 66 The raising of the siege of Gloucester marked a turning-point in the history of the Civil War. *Movement*—action. *Military tyrants*—army officers who usurped arbitrary authority: military officers who arbitrarily assumed the rule of the country. *Downfall*—deposition. *Richard Cromwell* (1626-1712)—son of Oliver Cromwell. On his father's death he succeeded him as the Lord Protector in 1658 but was compelled to abdicate within a few months. *Borne a signal part*—figured prominently. *In the movement against the military tyrants etc.*—A period of anarchy followed the abdication of Richard Cromwell. The army officers quarrelled with the Rump Parliament and attempted to rule the country without its help. But taxes were not regularly paid and to render the situation more difficult the soldiers quarrelled amongst themselves. The soldiers were therefore compelled to restore the Rump to power but the City refused to pay taxes because they had no representatives in the Rump. General Monk marched from Scotland to London, proceeded to Guildhall and finding that the Rump was hated by everybody arranged for holding a free Parliament in 1660. This Parliament voted for the restoration of Charles II to the throne of his father.

*Exaggeration*—over-statement of facts. *It is no exaggeration to say*—it may be truthfully said. *But for*—without. *Hostility*—opposition. *Hostility of the City*—The misgovernment of Charles I angered the citizens of London and they in a body supported Parliament. During the Civil War the cause of Parliament was supported not merely by London but the whole south-east, *i.e.*, the richer part of England. The more rugged north-west declared itself for the King. *Vanquished*—defeated. *Without the help of the City etc.*—The restoration of Charles II to his father's throne became possible because the City disgusted with the rule of soldiers favoured the restoration of monarchy.

**Paragraph 83.** These considerations explain the reasons why some members of the aristocracy chose to reside in the City. Shaftesbury and Buckingham, while engaged in bitter opposition to the court, lived under the protection of the City magistrates and the City militia. The former lived in Aldersgate Street and the latter in Dowgate.

*May serve to explain*—may furnish the reason. *Aristocracy*—nobles. *Westward*—the western part of London. *i.e.*, Westminster is its fashionable quarter. The quarter is outside the limits of the City. *Drawn the aristocracy westward*—led the nobles to reside in the western quarter of London. *Till a very recent period*—till quite lately. *Vicinity*—neighbourhood. *The Exchange*—the Royal Exchange is the business centre of London. See Map of London. It occupies a prominent position between Threadneedle Street and Cornhill. The first building was erected by Sir Thomas Gresham during the reign of Elizabeth. It was destroyed by the Great Fire and the second building was completed in 1669. An *Exchange* is a place where merchants and brokers meet to transact business. *Guildhall*—See notes on paragraph 81. London Guildhall stands a little to the north-east of the Bank of England. *In the vicinity of the Exchange etc.*—*i.e.*, near the heart of the City. *Shaftesbury*—Anthony Ashley Cooper, Earl of Shaftesbury (1621—1683), was one of the most prominent figures in English political life during the reign of Charles II. He became Chancellor of the Exchequer in 1671 and strongly opposed Clarendon's repressive measures against the Dissenters. He was appointed Lord Chancellor in 1672 but was dismissed from his office in the following year because of the offence he had given to some of his colleagues and the King's mistresses. He then became the leader of the opposition and strongly supported the Exclusion Bill. As the President of the Privy Council he passed the Habeas Corpus Act in 1679 but was again shortly dismissed from his office. He fled to Holland in 1682 where he died. He is the Achitophel of Dryden's famous satire *Absalom and Achitophel*.

*Buckingham*—See notes on paragraph 38. He was at first a favourite of Charles II but on being dismissed from his offices for the Shrewsbury scandal became an opponent of the government. He then began to intrigue against the King and

supported the cause of Monmouth. He is the Zimri of Dryden's *Absalom and Achitophel*. *Bitter*—severe; characterised by animosity. *Unscrupulous*—unprincipled; these statesmen did not hesitate to adopt the foulest means to achieve their ends. *Intrigues*—underhand plottings or schemings. *So conveniently*—with such advantage. *Securely*—safely. *City militia*—i.e., London trainbands. *Aldersgate*—running north and south from Goswell Road to St. Martin Street. *Pilasters*—architectural decorations in the form of square pillars slightly projecting from the walls.

*Wreaths*—architectural ornamentations of the form of garlands of leaves and flowers. *Graceful*—beautiful. *Inigo*—Inigo Jones (1573—1652), the famous English architect of his day. His best known work was the "*Banqueting Hall of Whitehall*." *Pilasters and wreaths etc.*—The beautiful architectural decorations of this house were designed by the famous architect, Inigo Jones. *Charing Cross*—at the west end of the Strand. *Charing*—is a corruption of *chere rene* (dear queen). Queen Eleanor, Edward I's wife, died at Lincoln and her corpse was brought to Westminster for burial. The bereaved husband ordered that a memorial cross should be erected at each place where the body rested. Charing Cross is believed to have been one of these spots. *Once the abode of the Archbishops of York*—which had formerly been the official residence of these church dignitaries. *Streets and alleys etc.*—i.e., Villiers Street, Buckingham Street. *That site*—i.e., the spot where the house had stood. *Downgate*—a street in the old ward of Downgate to the east of St. John's Church.

**Paragraph 84.** These were exceptions. Most of the noble families had their houses in the fashionable quarters beyond the City walls. The favourite quarters were the south and west of Lincoln's Inn Fields, the Piazza of Covent Garden, Bloomsbury Square and Soho Square. Two magnificent palaces, Bedford House and Montague House, stood north of Holborn on the verge of the country.

*Were rare exceptions*—i.e., were perhaps the only houses of nobles that stood within the City. *Migrated*—moved. *Beyond the walls*—i.e., beyond the western limits of the City. London, like all old towns, was surrounded by a wall on all

sides from the Roman times. It was repaired and rebuilt from time to time and extended in the form of a bow surrounding the City on the land side. The position of the wall is indicated by the names of the various gates. It ran from the Tower on the east to Aldgate, from Aldgate to Bishopsgate, thence to Cripplegate. From Cripplegate it passed through Aldersgate and Newgate to the Fleet dike and thence again to the Thames on the west. The remnants of the wall and the gates were demolished in 1760. *The regions which are now etc.—viz.*, the West-End. *Retained*—continued to have. *Hotels*—large town mansions of men of wealth and rank. *Hereditary hotels*—townhouses that had belonged to these families for generations. *Strand*—a well-known Street in London connecting Charing Cross with Fleet Street. It runs parallel to the Thames on its northern side. Northumberland House, Norfolk House, Somerset House stood in this quarter. *Stately dwellings*—imposing houses. *Lincoln's Inn Fields*—a public park in London immediately to the south of Holborn. [**piazza**, n. Public square or market-place specially in Italian town—*Oxford Dictionary*.]

*Piazza*—(It. *Piazza* an open square or market-place) a square open space surrounded by buildings. The piazza of Covent Garden was built from the designs of Inigo Jones about 1632. *Covent Garden*—the principal market in London for vegetables, fruits and flowers situated immediately to the north of Strand. *Southampton Square*—so named because in the 17th century it contained the townhouse of the Earls of Southampton. *Bloomsbury Square*—North of Holborn immediately to the south-east of Montague House. *Soho Square*—immediately to the south of Oxford Street between Charing Cross Road on the east and Dean Street on the west. *Favourite spots*—quarters preferred by men of rank and wealth. By the end of the 18th century the aristocracy had migrated further west from Covent Garden and Soho. *One of the wonders of England*—one of the most beautiful places in England on account of the beauty and grandeur of the houses of the nobility surrounding it. *Which had just been built*—i.e., after the Great Fire. *Posterity*—descendants, i.e., Englishmen of the present generation. *Will hardly sympathize*—do not share; modern Englishmen do not find this square to be so grand and beautiful.

*Monmouth Square had been the name*—Soho Square was originally named Monmouth Square. *Duke of Monmouth* (1649-85)—an illegitimate son of Charles II. The Duke was very popular, and as Charles II had no legitimate children, a vigorous attempt was made to ensure his succession to the throne after his father's death. The bill, sought to be passed for this purpose, was known as the Exclusion Bill. For it wanted to exclude the Duke of York, Charles II's brother, from the throne and give the crown to the Duke of Monmouth after Charles II's death. On Charles II's death, the Duke of York became King as James II. The Duke of Monmouth headed a rebellion against James II but was defeated at the battle of Sedgemoor and was executed. *While the fortunes etc.*—during the happier days of the Duke. *Towered his mansion*—his palace rose to a lofty height. *Ungraceful—clumsy; ungainly.* *Richly adorned*—beautifully decorated. *Principal apartments*—chief rooms or halls. *Were finely sculptured with*—were decorated with beautiful figures of. *Foliage*—leaves. *Armorial bearings*—heraldic devices; coats of arms. *Hung with embroidered satin*—covered with silken tapestry; decorated with figures of needle work. *Trace*—mark; vestige.

*Aristocratical mansion*—stately residence of nobles. *Once aristocratical quarter—i.e.,* Soho Square. *Holborn*—a street running west to east connecting Oxford Street with Newgate Street. It runs along the north of Lincoln's Inn Fields. *Verge*—border. *Pastures and cornfields—i.e.,* the country. *Ample*—large. *Southampton House*—the house of the Earls of Southampton: the second Earl of Southampton is famous in the History of English Literature as Shakespeare's patron to whom "*Venus and Adonis*" was dedicated. *Bedford House*—the house of the Dukes of Bedford. The site of the house is indicated by Bedford Square and Russell Street and Russell Square. Russell was the family name of the Dukes of Bedford. Francis Russell, the 4th Duke of Bedford, built the square of Covent Garden and his son built Russell and Tavistock Squares. *Was removed about fifty years ago*—Russell Square was built about 1800. *Renowned in the 17th century etc.*—a round-about way of saying that this part of the town was then a mere rural area. *Peaches*—well-known fruits considered as delicacies by Europeans; पीछ कब। *Snipes*—small game birds with long

hills that are found to frequent marshy or moist grounds ; কাঁদা-খোঁচ।

*Montague House*—near Bloomsbury and close to Southampton House built for Ralph Montague (1638-1709), a prominent statesman of his age, by Robert Hook, the Surveyor of London. It was burnt down in 1686 when a new house was erected on the site. *Frescoes*—See notes on paragraph 80. *Celebrated for its frescoes and furniture*—This appears from an entry in Evelyn's Diary under 19th June, 1686—"This night was burnt to the ground my Lord Montague's palace in Bloomsbury, than which for painting and furniture there was nothing more glorious in England." *A few months after the death of Charles the Second*—Charles II died in February 1685 and the house was burnt down in January, 1686. *Repository*—a place where things are kept for safety and preservation ; storehouse. *Repository of such precious treasures of art etc.*—The British Museum was located in Montague House from its foundation in 1759 till 1847 when it was removed to the present building in Great Russell Street. The library attached to the Museum is a treasure-house of books, ancient and modern. The Museum contains besides a rich collection of art-treasures and the Science Department contains models of all kinds of machinery. *Assembled under a single roof*—collected at one place. *Has just given place etc.*—has been succeeded by an even more splendid building.

**Paragraph 85.** Saint James's Square and Jermyn Street had recently been built on an open space nearer the court. Golden Square had not yet been begun. Only three or four isolated buildings stood to the north of Piccadilly of which the most celebrated was Clarendon's palace named Dunkirk House.

*Court*—Whitehall Palace. After its destruction by fire in 1691 St. James's Palace became the principal residence of the English sovereigns. *On a space*—on an open ground. *St. James's Square*—close to St. James's Park. *Jermyn Street*—a street running parallel to Piccadilly and connecting Regent Street with St. James's Street. The street was named after Henry Jermyn, Earl of St. Albans, who planned St. James's Square and built St. James's Church. *Saint James's Church*—in Piccadilly ; this was one of Wren's churches and possesses a very beautiful interior. *Had recently been opened*—the church



was consecrated in July, 1684. *For the accommodation of*—for supplying the want of; to provide a place of worship for. *Quarter*—part of the town. *Golden Square*—close to Regent Street. *Ministers of state*—statesmen in charge of the administration. *Piccadilly*—a street running east and west from Hyde Park corner to the Quadrant. The eastern half of this street is chiefly occupied with shops, the western part contains fashionable dwelling-houses and clubs. *Isolated*—detached. *Almost rural mansions*—These houses were almost in the country because the limits of London did not then extend so far to the north. *Costly pile*—rich and magnificent building. *Nicknamed*—called in derision. *Dunkirk House*—See notes on paragraph 39. *Founder's downfall*—Clarendon's dismissal from office and banishment in 1667. *Duke of Albemarle*—General Monk was raised to the peerage under this title after the Restoration. *The side*—the place where Dunkirk House stood.

**Paragraph 86.** The gayest and most thickly peopled quarter of Regent Street was then a solitude frequented by wild birds. The Oxford Street on the north ran between hedges. The site, through which Conduit Street now runs, was a meadow famous for its spring. The pest field, where in a pit cartloads of dead bodies had been thrown during the great plague, lay to the east.

*Rambled*—wandered. *Gayest*—most brilliant or showy. *Crowded*—thickly peopled. *Regent Street*—runs from north to south across Oxford Street and connects Portland Place with the Quadrant. *Was sometimes so fortunate etc.*—had occasionally the good fortune of bagging a woodcock. This is Macaulay's favourite way of saying that the place was then a rural solitude. *Woodcock*—a common English game bird whose flesh is highly esteemed for food. *Oxford road*—one of the principal thoroughfares of London running east to west from Holborn to Hyde Park. *Ran between hedges*—i.e., this road then ran through the country. The modern town of London extends far to the north of this road and Oxford Street now runs through what may be called the centre of the town. *Were considered as quite out of town*—were regarded as being situated in the country. So it seems that the town of London did not even extend as far to the north as Oxford road.

*A Spring*—a natural fountain. *Conduit Street*—north of Holborn connecting Guildford Street with Theobald Road. To judge from maps this street lies to the east and not the west of Regent Street. *Shudder*—fear and trembling.

*Haunts of men*—i.e., human dwellings. *Far from the haunts of men*—at a great distance from human dwellings. *Twenty years before*—The outbreak of the plague took place in 1665. *Raging*—prevailing violently. *Dead carts*—carts for carrying the bodies of dead men. *Shot*—thrown. *By scores*—in large numbers. During the plague “the dead were too numerous to be buried in the usual way and carts went their rounds at night, accompanied by a man ringing a bell and calling out, ‘Bring out your dead.’ The corpses were flung into a huge pit without coffins, there being no time to provide them for so many.”—(*Gardiner*). *Tainted with infection*—poisoned. The germs of the plague tainted the whole ground. *Disturbed*—dug up. *Imminent risk*—serious and immediate danger. *No foundations were laid there*—i.e., no houses were built on this spot. *Return of the pestilence*—re-appearance of the plague. *Ghastly*—dreadful.

**Paragraph 87.** The streets and squares of London were quite different in appearance from what they are now. Even the most fashionable quarters of that time would appear to us now dirty and squalid. In Covent Garden a market filthy and noisy was held close to the houses of the rich.

*Should greatly err*—should be seriously mistaken. *Squares*—open grounds having four sides with houses on each. *Bore the same aspect*—presented the same appearance. *The great majority of the houses*—most of the buildings. *In great part*—to a large extent.

*Such as they then were*—in the condition in which they happened to be in those times. *Disgusted*—offended. *Squalid*—filthy; extremely dirty. *Poisoned*—infected. *Noisome atmosphere*—noxious or unwholesome air. *Covent Garden*—See notes on paragraph 84. *Filthy*—dirty. *Close to the*

---

[Page 144, Footnote—*General Oglethorpe* (1696-1785)—an English military officer who rose to the rank of a Brigadier-General in 1743. He served against the Jacobites in 1745. He was a great friend of Dr. Johnson. *Pennant* (1726-98)—a traveller and naturalist. His “*British Zoology*” appeared in 1766. *Pest field*—the field where the victims of the plague were buried].

*dwellings of the great*—Macaulay has pointed out in paragraph 84 that the Piazza of Covent Garden was one of the fashionable quarters of London in those days and that this locality contained the townhouses of many of the nobles. *Screamed*—uttered shrill cries as they quarrelled amongst themselves or with the customers. *Stalks*—stems; *rotten*—decaying; decomposed. *Accumulated in heaps*—collected in huge piles. *At the thresholds*—before the very doors. *Countess of Berkshire and of the Bishop of Durham*—These were two amongst the many persons of rank and wealth who had their houses in Covent Garden in the latter half of the 17th century. The condition of Covent Garden might have much improved since the 17th century but that it was not quite satisfactory when Macaulay wrote or even later will appear from the following account of the market in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*—"Until 1828 Covent Garden market consisted of an unsightly array of sheds. The present building, erected by the Duke of Bedford, though lately much improved, is quite inadequate for its requirements, while the arrangements for the disposal of mud and refuse are very reprehensible."

**Paragraph 88.** The centre of Lincoln's Inn Fields was an open space where the populace assembled every evening to see bears dance and set dogs at oxen. Horses were exercised there and beggars collected in large numbers. The place was enclosed and a garden laid out after a serious accident had occurred to Sir Joseph Jekyll.

*Lincoln's Inn Fields*—See notes on paragraph 84; designed and built during the reign of Charles I. *The rabble*—the lower class of people; "contemptible or inferior sort of people; the lower part of the populace (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Congregated*—assembled. *Within a few yards of*—quite close to. *Cardigan House and Winchester House*—the town houses of the Earl of Cardigan and the Marquess of Winchester. These houses were situated in Lincoln's Inn Fields. *Mountebanks*—properly one who mounts a bench in the market or other public place and boasts of his skill in curing diseases and sells medicines which he professes to be unfailing remedies;

[Page 146, Footnote—*Hogarth* (1697-1764)—a famous English painter and engraver.]

hence quack doctors; charlatans. *Harangue*—declaim; make a pompous speech. *Set*—incite. *Set dogs at once*—The reference is to the savage game of bull-baiting formerly very popular with the English mob. A bull was tied to a post and then dogs were set against it. The poor bull was pulled to pieces though before it died it gored a number of its enemies to death. *Rubbish*—waste matters; refuse; dirt. *Shot*—cast. *Exercised*—trained; made to undergo physical exertions. *Importunate*—troublesome; “persistent, pressing, in solicitation” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *In the worst governed cities of the Continent*—The beggars were in former times felt to be a nuisance in some of the Catholic countries of southern Europe like Italy and Spain.

*Mumper*—beggar. *Proverb*—by-word; term of reproach or contempt. Macaulay himself elsewhere illustrates this:—“Deceived by the tales of a Lincoln’s Inn mumper.” *A Lincoln’s Inn mumper was a proverb*—**Expl.** This remark occurs in connection with Macaulay’s description of Lincoln’s Inn Fields. He says that beggars assembled there in such large numbers that the place became notorious for this nuisance. Consequently a Lincoln’s Inn mumper came to pass into a by-word. *Fraternity*—properly brotherhood; hence company or society; here, gang. *Arms*—armorial bearings; figures that serve as symbols of distinguished families. *Liveries*—distinctive dresses worn by the servants of noblemen or gentlemen. *Charitably disposed grandee*—kind-hearted nobleman. *Grandee*—“Spanish or Portuguese nobleman of highest rank; person of high rank or eminence” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *His lordship’s coach*—the coach of the lord or nobleman. *Hopping*—limping (pretending lameness). *Crawling*—dragging himself along the ground on hands and feet. *Persecute*—pester; harass; torment. *Disorder*—irregularities; disturbances; troubles. *Lasted*—continued. *Accidents*—mishaps. *Legal proceedings*—law-suits. *Sir Joseph Jekyll* (1663-1738)—a famous English barrister; he became Master of the Rolls in 1717 which office he held till his death. *Master of the Rolls*—the title of one of the highest of English judges who is *ex-officio* a member of the Court of Appeal. As the title indicates he is the official keeper of the rolls of patents and grants and of public records generally. *Knocked down*—struck down; run over. *Palisades*—poles or stakes; wooden

fences. *Palisades were set up*—The place was enclosed or fenced round with stakes. *Laid out*—arranged; planned.

**Paragraph 89.** Saint James's Square was the dumping ground for all the filth and refuse of Westminster. These nuisances continued for a long time till at last Parliament permitted the place to be enclosed and laid out as a garden.

*Saint James's Square*—See paragraph 85. *Receptacle*—properly a vessel for receiving things; repository; here dumping-ground. *Offal*—refuse; rubbish. *Cinders*—ashes. *Westminster*—the famous borough in Middlesex on the north of the Thames immediately to the west of London. The Houses of Parliament, Westminster Abbey, Government offices and the Palaces of Buckingham and St. James are situated in Westminster. See Map of London. *Cudgel*—short, thick stick; club. *Ring*—an inclosed place generally circular in shape where games or sports are performed or boxing contests held. *Kept the ring there*—enclosed a portion of ground for holding contests in cudgel playing or exhibiting his performances in the art. *Impudent*—audacious; insolent. *Squatter*—one who settles on public land without any title.

*An impudent squatter etc.*—A fellow audaciously occupied a portion of the grounds though he had no right to do so. *A shed for rubbish*—a temporary structure or cottage for storing refuse or waste things. Perhaps the squatter was a dust man who dealt in such things. *Gilded saloons*—richly decorated halls. A saloon is a spacious and well-furnished room for the reception of company. *First magnates of the realm*—greatest nobles of the land. A magnate is a person of rank and distinction. *Norfolks*—the premier English noble family; see paragraph 64. *Ormonds*—Dukes of Ormond; see notes on paragraph 38. *Kents*—Earls of Kent, a distinguished family of English nobles; the ninth Earl was created a Duke in 1710. *Pembrokes*—Earls of Pembroke, another very old and distinguished family of English nobles. All these distinguished English nobles had their townhouses in St. James's Square.

---

[Page 147, Footnote—*London Spy*—See notes on paragraph 78. *Tom Brown* (1663-1704)—a satirist, author of the famous lines on Dr. Fell. *Daily Courant* and *Daily Journal*—names of old English newspapers. *Breaking in*—training.]

*Balls*—social gatherings of persons of both sexes for dancing. *At another time.....balls*—**Expl.** Macaulay says this in connection with his description of the miserable condition of St. James's Square in the 17th century. Although this square was inhabited by the greatest nobles of the land, still a fellow audaciously occupied a portion of the open ground without any show of title. He built there a hut for storing refuse close to the palaces of the peers where they gave parties to their friends. The setting up of a mean, filthy refuse-shed so close to the splendid mansions of rich nobles where feasts and banquets were held—was an act of shameless daring. The man flagrantly defied law and public decency. *Nuisances*—annoyances; troubles. *Much had been written about them*—in the newspapers to attract the notice of Parliament and the ministers. *Applied to Parliament*—because public land cannot be enclosed without the sanction of Parliament. See notes on "inclosure acts" in paragraph 41. *To put up rail*—i.e., to enclose the land with a fence. St. James's Square was enclosed early in the reign of George II.

**Paragraph 90.** The streets were wretchedly paved. the drainage was so bad that after a shower the gutters became roaring torrents carrying the animal and vegetable refuse of the town. People ran the risk of being splashed with this dirty water when coaches passed through them.

*Such*—so wretched or miserable. *State of the region*—condition of the quarter. *Luxurious portion of society*—rich and fashionable section of the inhabitants, i.e., men of rank and riches. *The great body of the population*—the great majority of the citizens; common people. *Insupportable grievances*—insufferable inconveniences or hardships. *The pavement*—the flooring of the streets; "covering of street, floor, etc., made of stones, tiles, wooden blocks, asphalt etc., esp. paved footway at side of road".—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Detestable*—miserable; wretched; i.e., the streets were full of ruts and holes. *Cried shame on it*—considered it shameful; strongly condemned it. *The drainage*—the arrangements for carrying off the water of the town and the streets. *Gutters*—drains; channels for carrying off water by the side of roads and streets. *Torrents*—violent streams. *Facetious*—witty; humorous. *Commemorated*—preserved the memory of; hence celebrated; described. *Fury*—violence. *Black rivulets*—currents

of dirty water. *Roared*—thundered; flowed with a strong current. *Snow Hill*—(formerly named Snor Hill) near Holborn. *Ludgate Hill*—between Fleet Street and St. Paul's. *Fleet Ditch*—the name of a small stream that formerly flowed through London and marked the western boundary of the city. The bed gradually silting up it was converted into a covered sewer. Fleet Street, Fleet Bridge indicate the course of this river. *Tribute*—properly contribution; here it refers to the mass of refuse borne by the gutters into the Fleet. *Stalls*—shops. *Greengrocer*—one who sells vegetables.

*Several facetious poets.....greengrocers*—Expl. A number of witty poets have playfully described in their verses how after a heavy shower the road-side drains were converted into torrents. These streams of dirty water flowed in a strong current from Snow Hill and Ludgate Hill and carried down to the Fleet Ditch a vast mass of filth, the refuse of the shops of the butchers and the dealers in vegetables. *This flood*—*viz.*, the mass of dirty water that covered the streets. *Profusely*—in large quantities. *Carriage road*—the middle of the street through which the carriages passed. *Pedestrian*—one who walked along the streets on foot. *The wall*—(here) "position next to wall as opposed to the kennel side of street footpath"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *To give one the wall* 'is to allow him the cleaner part of the street in passing.' *Gave the wall*—As the walls stood by the side of the street, the nearer the wall the less the chance of being splashed with the dirty water on the road. So every one tried to keep as close to the wall as possible. Weak and timid people had naturally to yield this position of advantage to bolder and more powerful men.

*Athletic*—strong: powerful. *Took it*—kept close to the wall. Hence the expression "*to take the wall*" came to mean to have the preference of. Cf. *Romeo and Juliet*, I. i. 15—"I will take the wall of any man or maid of Montague's." *Roisterers*—bullies: bold, turbulent fellows. *Cocked their hats in each other's faces*—set the hats erect on their heads before each other, *i.e.*, faced each other with an insolent and threatening air. *Shoved*—pushed. *Kennel*—(a form of canal) gutter; the water-course of a street. This word should be carefully distinguished from *kennel* meaning a house for dogs. The latter word is derived from Lat. *canis*, a dog.

*Bully*—blustering, overbearing fellow. *A mere bully*—a man insolent and tyrannical but timid at heart. Bullies are men who terrorize over the weak and the timid by their bold insolent exterior but are really cowards at heart. *Sneaked off*—stole away without fighting; made off or slunk away timidly. *Muttering that etc.*—threatening in an under-tone that he would take his revenge on another occasion. *Pugnacious*—disposed or inclined to fight. *Encounter*—conflict; fight. *Duel*—a single combat with deadly weapons between two persons for the settlement of some difference or quarrel touching a point of honour. The practice is believed to have originated in France during the days of chivalry. It made its way into England in the Middle Ages and continued down to the reign of George III. This barbarous practice has now become obsolete in England. **N.B.** One of the latest duels, recorded in history, was the one fought by the Duke of Wellington with the Earl of Winchelsea in 1829. Pitt, Castlereagh and Canning all took part in duels in their times.

*Ended in a duel*—resulted in a single combat with deadly weapons between the two men. *Behind Montague House*—a reference to the secluded position of Montague House in those days. As duelling was forbidden by law, the duellists generally chose the most unfrequented places. In paragraph 84, Macaulay has described that Montague House was situated north of Holborn almost beyond the limits of the town. So the neighbourhood of this house would be a convenient spot for fighting a duel. Wellington fought his duel in Battersea Fields south of the Thames because it was then an unfrequented quarter lying outside the limits of the town.

*If he was a mere.....Montague House*—**Expl.** Macaulay describes in these lines the encounter between two quarrelsome and swaggering fellows when they met on the road. Each wanted to keep as close to the wall as possible. They struggled with each other until the weaker man was pushed towards the gutter. If this man pushed down happened to be a coward who had merely assumed a bold and insolent air then he withdrew vowing vengeance on a more suitable occasion. But if he was of a fighting temper he would challenge his assailant to a duel for the insult. The casual encounter thus resulted in a single combat with deadly weapons fought in



secluded quarters like the neighbourhood of the Montague House.

**Paragraph 91.** The houses were not numbered. Numbers would have been useless, for the common people could not read. Shops were known by painted signs.

*Were not numbered*—did not bear any numbers as they do now. *Advantage*—use. *Chairmen*—men who carried sedan chairs. A sedan chair was a covered vehicle borne on poles by two men. These chairs were the usual means of conveyance in towns from the 16th to the 18th century. *Porters*—carriers; persons who carry loads or messages for hire; *भूटे* ! *Errand boys*—messengers; men engaged to carry a message or to do some odd jobs. *A very small proportion*—very few. *Distinguished*—recognised. *Painted signs*—figures painted on boards and hung at a prominent position over or near the

[Page 149, Footnote—*Swift* (1667-1745)—a famous English satirist and poet; author of *Tales of a Tub*, *Gulliver's Travels* and other works. *City Shower*—one of Swift's poems. The reference is to the following lines :—

"Now from all parts the swelling kennels flow,  
And bear their trophies with them as they go:  
Filths of all hues and odours seem to tell,  
What street they sailed from by their sight and smell.  
They as each torrent drives, with rapid force,  
From Smithfield or St' Pulchre's shape their course,  
And in huge confluence joined at Snowhill ridge,  
Fall from the conduit prone to Holborn Bridge.  
Sweepings from butchers' stalls, dung, guts and blood,  
Drowned puppies, stinking sprats, all drenched in mud,  
Dead cats, and turnip-tops, come tumbling down the flood."

*Gay*—John Gay (1685-1732) was a famous English poet. His best known works were "*The Beggar's Opera*" and the *Fables*. *Trivia*—a poem on walking the streets of London. The reference is to the following lines—

"Let due civilities be strictly paid,  
The wall surrender to the hooded maid.....  
But when the bully with assuming pace  
Cocks his broad hat, edged round with tarnished lace,  
Yield not the way; defy his strutting pride  
And thrust him to the muddy kennel's side;  
He never turns again nor dares oppose,  
But mutters coward curses as he goes."

*Johnson*—Dr. Samuel Johnson, *vide ante*. "His mother said that when she lived in London there were two sorts of people, those who gave the wall and those who took it,—the peaceful and the quarrelsome. When he visited her at Lichfield she asked him to which sort he belonged"—(*Salmon*).]

doors. *Gay*—showy; brilliant. *Grotesque*—fantastic. *Aspect*—appearance. *Charing Cross*—See notes on paragraph 83. *White chapel*—in the eastern districts of London. *Endless succession of Saracens' Heads etc.*—countless shops and taverns bearing such signs.

*Saracens' Heads*—The word 'Saracen' was formerly used of the Arabs of the early days of Islam; afterwards it came to be used of the Mahomedans generally especially of the Turks. A Turk's Head or a Saracen's Head was in former times a very common sign for shops or inns. Dr. Johnson and his friends used to meet at Turk's Head. *Royal Oaks*—This sign was very popular in Charles II's reign because after his defeat at Worcester in 1651 he had escaped from Cromwell's soldiers by hiding himself in an oak tree. *Blue Bears, and Golden Lambs*—These were other popular signs in those days. Golden Lamb might contain a reference to the gold ram that carried Phrixus to Colchis and whose fleece became the subject of the Argonautic Expedition. *Disappeared*—ceased to be displayed before the shops. *Direction*—guidance. *When they were no longer etc.*—When by reason of the spread of education, common people could make out the houses by the names or the numbers they bore.

**Paragraph 92.** As the streets were not lighted it was difficult and dangerous to walk them in the dark. They were infested by thieves, robbers and by bands of wild young men belonging to the upper classes. The favourite pastime of these upper-class ruffians was to break windows, assault innocent passers-by and insult pretty women. The law provided for a body of a thousand watchmen to keep the peace. 'But they never cared to perform their duties.

*When the evening closed in*—when the darkness of evening covered the town. *Closed in*—approached; enclosed. *Garret windows*—top-floor windows. *Pails*—tubs or vessels containing filth and dirty water. *Were emptied*—had their contents thrown on the ground. *With little regard etc.*—without any consideration for the persons who might be walking along the streets. *Bruises*—contusions; injuries caused by blunt or heavy instruments. *Were of constant occurrence*—occurred very frequently. The streets were dark. So predestrians hurt themselves by striking against invisible obstacles. *Till the last year of the*

*reign etc.*—Street-lighting was introduced in London in 1684. In the following paragraph, Macaulay describes the introduction of this reform. *Profound*—deep. *Plied their trade*—carried on their business; practised their profession. *With impunity*—without any fear of punishment; securely. *Another class of ruffians*—not professional thieves and robbers but drunken youths of good families bent on mischief. *Favourite amusement*—pleasant sport or pastime. *Dissolute*—vicious; debauched. *Swagger*—walk with a defiant and insolent air; bluster. *Sedans*—See notes on *chairmen* in the previous paragraph. *Upsetting sedans*—turning over the chairs and throwing their occupants on the ground. *Offering rude caresses*—making vulgar and violent love to. *Caress*—kiss; fondling touch.

*Several dynasties of these tyrants*—different generations of such ruffians; bands of such dissolute young men bearing different names at different periods. These dissolute youths ruled the streets of London like kings; so the mock-heroic use of the word 'dynasties'. *Domineered*—ruled insolently and arbitrarily; exercised tyrannical power. *The Muns*—the name assumed by bands of dissolute youngmen who swaggered about the streets of London at night assaulting innocent men and insulting women. *Tityre Tus*—fashionable rowdies of the London streets at the end of the 17th century. The term is based on the first line of the first eclogue of Virgil—"Tityre tu etc." Tityrus is the name of a wanton shepherd in Virgil's eclogue. *Had given place*—had been succeeded by. *Hectors*—from Hector, the name of the Trojan hero in the Iliad; bullies; blustering turbulent fellows. *Succeeded*—followed. *Scourers*—one who scours or roams the streets at night; this was the name assumed by bands of young scoundrels in the latter part of the 17th century who roamed the streets of London and committed various kinds of mischief. "Shadwell in his play *The Scourers* makes one of the characters say, 'Why, I know the Hectors, and before them the Muns and the Tityre Tus'"—*Salmon*).

*Nicker*—a night-brawler, who, in the reign of Queen Anne, roamed about London by night, amusing himself with breaking people's windows with half-pence. *Haecubite*—one of a band of dissolute youngmen who swaggered about the streets at night during the closing years of the 17th century, insulting

passers-by, breaking windows etc. *Dreaded name*—the very name Mohawk would awaken feelings of terror. *Mohawk*—the name given to certain ruffians who infested the streets of London during the latter part of the 17th century. They were so called from the nation of Indians of that name in America. *Dreaded name of Mohawk*—Macaulay is possibly thinking of Gay's lines on these ruffians :—

"Who has not heard the *scourer's* midnight fame ?

Who has not trembled at the Mohawk's name ?"

*Machinery*—arrangement. *Keeping the peace*—preserving law and order and preventing disturbances and breaches of law. *Common Council*—the council of a city or corporate town empowered to frame bye-laws for the administration of the affairs of the city. The Common Council of London consists of two houses, the upper composed of the Lord Mayor and aldermen elected for life and the lower of the representatives of the citizens elected annually. *Provided*—laid down. *On the alert*—on the watch ; keeping a careful look-out. *Take his turn of duty*—alternately perform this duty one after another. *Executed*—given effect to ; administered. *Summoned*—ordered or called out for the purpose. *Tipple*—indulge in drinking. *Pace the streets*—go the rounds as watchmen.

**Paragraph 93.** Edward Heming obtained a charter for lighting the streets of London in the last year of Charles II's reign. He arranged to place a light before every tenth house from Lady Day to Michaelmas on moonless nights. The proposal met with as much encouragement as opposition.

---

Page 151, Footnote:—*Oldham* (1653-1683)—a poet ; author of some odes and poems in imitation of the Latin writers. *Juvenal* (60-140)—a famous Roman poet ; his '*Satires*' are his finest works. *Shadwell* (1642-92)—a poet and dramatist ; his drama "*Scourers*" appeared in 1690. *It may be suspected etc.*—As Milton was a staunch republican he rendered himself obnoxious to the Cavaliers and ran the risk of assassination after the Restoration. *Pests*—ruffians who were a nuisance. *Noble lines*—*Paradise Lost*, I, 498-502, describing the followers of Belial. *Sons of Belial*—wicked men ; Belial is introduced into *Paradise Lost* as one of the followers of Satan. He represents the spirit of self-indulgence and sensual pleasure.]

[Page 152, Footnote:—*Seymour's London*—Robert Seymour was the pseudonym adopted by an editor of Stow's "*Surrey of London*" that appeared in the 17th century.]

*The police of London*—the administration of the municipal laws and regulations of the city. *Police*—civil administration: city administration (Gk. *polis*, a city). As Salmon says “Macaulay uses the word several times in this chapter in the sense of civil administration, enforcement of law (never in the sense of *policemen*). *Added as much.....people*—made the citizens as much comfortable. *Revolutions of much etc.*—sudden and total changes of much greater note. *Which has perhaps etc.*—This change, though apparently slight and trivial, contributed more to the comfort of the citizens than mightier changes that figure prominently in history. *Ingenious*—clever: skilful. *Projector*—one who forms a clever scheme or design: inventor. The word is now commonly used contemptuously of an author of wild, impracticable designs. *Letters patent*—a document from the crown conferring on a person any right or privilege: charter. *Conveying to him*—conferring on him. *Term*—period. *Exclusive*—sole. *Undertook*—agreed. *Moderate consideration*—small payment; modest return (in money). *Michaelmas*—the feast of St. Michael, the archangel. It falls on the 29th September. *Lady Day*—the day of the annunciation of the Virgin Mary. It is celebrated on the 25th March. *From Michaelmas to Lady Day*—*i.e.*, for six months in the year. *All the year round*—through the whole year and not for six months only. *From dusk to dawn*—through the whole night from evening to morning. *Blazing with a splendour*—shining with a brilliance.

*La Hogue*—a naval battle fought off the coast of France in 1692 in which the French fleet was completely defeated by the English. The news of this victory was received in England with great rejoicings and public illuminations were held to celebrate it. It was on receipt of the news of this victory that Queen Mary (William III's wife) announced her intention of completing the palace that Charles II had begun at Greenwich so that it might be used as a place of refuge for disabled sailors. This was the origin of the famous Greenwich Hospital.

*Blenheim*—a village in Bavaria where the French army under Tallard was completely routed by Marlborough and Prince Eugene in 1704 during the War of the Spanish Succession. It was one of the greatest victories won by the English.

over the French on the Continent and shattered the prestige of French arms. The victory at Blenheim was celebrated in England with public rejoicings including illumination. The battle of Blenheim is the "famous victory" of Southey's poem "*After Blenheim*."

*May perhaps smile to think of*—may be inclined to think very lightly of. *Glimmered feebly*—burned dimly. *During a small part of one etc*—The lamps were lighted only on moonless nights for six months only; besides they burned only from six to twelve and not during the whole night. *Those who now see... one night in three*—In modern times the streets of London are more brightly lighted during the whole night throughout the year than on the past occasions even of public illuminations to celebrate memorable victories like those of La Hogue and Blenheim. Those who are familiar with this modern system of brilliant lighting will think meanly of Heming's lamps that burned dimly before every tenth door for a few hours in one night out of three. Mark how Macaulay pointedly draws attention to the scantiness of the arrangement for lighting. Heming's lamps burned *dimly* in front of *every tenth door*, not all hours of the night but for *a few hours*, and not every night of the year but *one in three nights*. *His contemporaries*—men of his age. *Scheme*—design; project. *Enthusiastically applauded*—warmly praised (by some men). *Furiously attacked*—strongly condemned (by others). *Friends of improvement*—lovers of progress. *Extolled*—loudly praised; highly applauded. *Greatest of all etc.*—the man who has rendered the greatest service or conferred the highest benefit on the city.

*Boasted inventions*—vaunted performances; contrivances of which people make so much. *Archimedes* (287-212 B.C.)—the greatest Greek scientist of ancient times. He was the inventor of an ingenious screw for raising water, named after him Archimedian screw. He discovered besides the useful principles of the lever and of specific gravity. *Achievement*—performance. *The man*—i.e., Heming. *Nocturnal shades*—darkness of night. *Noon day*—i.e., bright light of mid-day. *What, they asked.....noon day?*—**Expl.** Macaulay describes in this sentence how Heming's proposal of lighting the streets of London was viewed by his supporters. They praised him very highly—indeed in extravagant terms. They held that his

project of lighting the streets of London and turning the darkness of night into noon-day light was a much greater performance than the inventions of the Greek scientist Archimedes of which men make so much. *Eloquent eulogies*—fervent praise. *Darkness*—used in a two-fold sense: (1) darkness of night, (2) ignorance and aversion to progress. *Undefended*—unsupported. *In spite of these eloquent etc.*—Though Heming's proposal was strongly supported and extravagantly praised by some men yet it was not without its opponents. There were some men averse to progress who condemned the proposal preferring that the streets should remain dark at night. *There were fools in that age*—an instance of what Matthew Arnold would call Macaulay's want of urbanity. Macaulay has no patience or toleration for those whose views differ from his. He does not hesitate to condemn them in uncivil language.

*The new light*—the name given in those times to Heming's lights. *Strenuously*—zealously; obstinately. *Vaccination*—the practice of inoculating persons with the cow-pox for the purpose of securing them immunity from small-pox; বসন্তের টিকা। It was discovered by Jenner, an English physician, towards the end of the 18th century. Vaccination began to be practised in England early in the 19th century but was not made compulsory before 1853. As vaccination had been introduced into England only a few years before the publication of Macaulay's History, it was natural that there should be a powerful body of opinion against this practice. N.B. It should be also remembered that though Macaulay condemns the opponents of vaccination of his day as fools, there are still some highly qualified medical men who do not acknowledge the utility of vaccination. *Railroads*—The first railway was opened in England in 1825. The next railway, that between Manchester and Liverpool, was opened in 1829. Though the opponents of railroads are called fools by Macaulay yet some great English authors did not view them with favour. The poet Wordsworth opposed the introduction of railway into the lake district.

*Anterior*—prior. *Age anterior to the dawn of history*—pre-historic age. *The plough*—This was an improvement on the older method of cultivation with the spade and the hoe. *Alphabetical writing*—writing with the help of the letters of

the alphabet. Alphabetical writing developed out of picture-writing that prevailed in pre-historic times. The letters of the alphabet stand as symbols of sounds, but the figures in picture-writing stand as symbols of ideas. The best illustration of picture-writing is the Egyptian hieroglyphics. The Greeks were the first people in Europe to learn the use of the alphabet. They derived it from the Phœnicians. *There were fools..... alphabetical writing*—**Expl.** In this sentence Macaulay expresses his scorn of those men who opposed Heming's proposal of lighting the streets of London at night. The proposal was an eminently reasonable one. It was expected to prove convenient to everybody. Yet some people out of sheer folly opposed it simply because it was a new thing. There have been such fools in every age. As Heming's project had its opponents in the 17th century, so vaccination and railroads, that have proved such invaluable blessings to men, had their foolish opponents when they were first sought to be introduced in the 19th century. We are also certain that in pre-historic times the introduction of the plough and alphabet writing must have been foolishly opposed in certain quarters. The fact is that in every age there have been men who have opposed the most beneficial reforms on the simple ground that they are new experiments. *Extensive districts*—large parts of the town.

**Paragraph 94.** The district of Whitefriars stood on the confines of the Temple and the City. It was originally a monastery inhabited by Carmelite Friars. It afforded an asylum to insolvent debtors but in course of time it became a refuge of the worst criminals of the town. The utmost lawlessness prevailed in this quarter. Warrants from the highest courts of justice could not be executed without the help of a company of musketeers.

*We may easily imagine etc.*—From the above description of the respectable quarters of the City, one can easily understand how deplorable and terrible must have been the condition of the districts inhabited by the poorer and criminal section of the society. *State of the quarters*—condition of the districts. *Outcasts of society*—men who were outside the pale of society; the scum or the dregs of the people. *Scandalous pre-eminence*—shameful notoriety. *Confines*—border. *Temple*—on the



Thames south of Fleet Street and to the east of Somerset House. The two Inns of the Court, Inner Temple and Middle Temple, are situated in this quarter. *In the thirteenth century*—the Whitefriars' church was founded in 1241. *House*—religious establishment: monastery. *Carmelite Friars*—an order of mendicant friars named from Mount Carmel where it was first established in 1156. Being persecuted by the Saracens they migrated to Europe where they founded churches and monasteries in various countries. *Distinguished by their white hoods*—The Carmelite monks are commonly called Whitefriars on account of the white cloak worn by the members of this order. *Hood*—"covering for head and neck, whether part of cloak or separate"—(*Oxford Dictionary*.) *Precinct*—properly boundary or limit; hence a district or area within certain boundaries.

*Reformation*—See notes on paragraph 55. *Sanctuary*—a church or other holy place that afforded a safe refuge to criminals. Since the days of the Emperor Constantine certain churches were, in Catholic countries, set apart as asylums for criminals from the hands of justice. In England down to the Reformation, any person who had taken refuge in a sanctuary was secured against punishment except when charged with treason or sacrilege. By an Act, passed in the reign of James I, the privilege of sanctuary for crime was abolished. But sanctuaries for debtors continued to exist in or about London till 1697. *Criminals*—offenders against law: persons guilty of any offence. *Retained*—continued to enjoy. *Protecting*—sheltering. The privileges of sanctuary, enjoyed by Whitefriars, were derived from the religious establishment of the Carmelite Friars, founded there in 1241. James I confirmed them by a charter in 1608. It has been pointed out above that these privileges were abolished in 1697.

*Insolvents*—persons unable to pay their debts. *From cellar to garret*—from the ground-floor to the attic. A cellar is a vault on which a house stands. It is generally used for storing lumber or other articles; in the overcrowded parts of towns, the cellars are used as dwelling-places by very poor people. [*cellar*, n. underground room—*Oxford Dictionary*]. [*garret*, n. Room on top floor, room partly or entirely in roof. attic—*Oxford Dictionary*]. *Knaves*—rogues; scoundrels; not merely insolvent debtors but criminals guilty of very serious

offences. *Libertines*—rakes; dissolute or licentious men. *Asylum*—place of refuge or shelter. *Abandoned*—depraved; wicked. *Civil power*—authorities entrusted with the duty of the administration of the town; magistrates. *Civil*—as opposed to *ecclesiastical*.

*Keep order*—preserve peace and public tranquillity. *Swarming*—abounding; thickly peopled. *Resort*—haunt. *Emancipated*—freed. *Restraints*—bonds. *Who wished to be emancipated etc.*—lawless men who desired to escape the punishment for their crimes. *Immunities*—exemption from the penalties provided by law; special privileges. *Legally belonging to the place*—which the place could rightfully claim; which had been conferred on the place by a charter. *Extended*—applied. *Though the immunities etc.*—though the place could according to a royal charter provide a safe asylum for only insolvent debtors. *Cheats*—persons guilty of fraud; swindlers; জুয়াচোর। *False witnesses*—persons guilty of bearing false witness or perjury; শপথ করিয়া মিথ্যা বাক্য দেওয়ার অপরাধকারী। *Forgers*—persons guilty of making counterfeit documents; জালিয়াত। *Highwaymen*—persons who commit robbery on the public road; robbers; ডাকাত। *Found refuge there*—obtained a safe asylum at this place.

"*Rescue*"—a legal term for the liberation of a prisoner from lawful custody by force or other illegal means. *At the cry of "Rescue"*—as soon as a prisoner arrested by the police shouted for rescue. *Bullies*—See notes on paragraph 90. *Termagant*—boisterous; turbulent. *Hags*—ugly old women. *Spits*—long, pointed rods on which meat is roasted. *Broomstick*—the stick or handle of a broom. A broom is a brush with a long handle for sweeping floors. *Poured forth etc.*—came out in large numbers. *Intruder*—unwelcome visitor, i.e., the law-officer who had entered Whitefriars to arrest a criminal. *Fleet Street*—the well-frequented public road close to Whitefriars. It connects the Strand with Bridge Street. *Hustled*—roughly handled. *Stripped*—robbed of his clothes. *Pumped upon*—soused; was given a ducking. *The intruder was fortunate etc.*—The inmates of the district, men and women, attacked the law-officer with such weapons that they could lay their hands on. The poor fellow was roughly handled, had his clothes stripped

from his body and had the pump turned on him. He had good reason to consider himself fortunate if he could with his bare life escape into Fleet Street—where he was safe against the pursuit of his assailants.

*Chief Justice*—the chief judge of the King's Bench Division of the High Court of Justice. *Executed*—given effect to. *Company of musketeers*—party of soldiers. *Musketeers*—soldiers armed with muskets. *Relics*—traces. *Barbarism*—rude and uncivilised condition. *Darkest ages*—historical periods of gross ignorance and misrule. *Relics of the barbarism etc.*—state of things characteristic of extremely rude and uncivilised societies. *Within a short walk of*—within a few steps of; close to. It has been pointed out before that the district of Alsatia or Whitefriars was situated close to the Temple. *Chambers*—the rooms where professional men especially lawyers conduct their business. In this sense the word is generally used in the plural. *Where Somers was studying history and law*—The lawyers have their chambers in the Temple. *Somers* (1652-1716)—a famous English lawyer and statesman. He studied law at Middle Temple and was one of the ablest defenders of the seven bishops in 1688. He presided over the drafting of the Declaration of Rights and became Lord Chancellor of England in 1697. Macaulay was a staunch admirer of Lord Somers; he held Somers to be not only one of the greatest lawyers of the day but also a great statesman. *Was studying history and law*—because Somers was well versed in constitutional law which requires a thorough mastery of history. *Cf.* What Macaulay says of him in Chapter VIII of his History—"The importance of obtaining his (Somers's) services had been strongly represented to the Bishops by Johnstone; and Pollexfen, it is said, had declared that no man in Westminster Hall was so well qualified to treat a historical and constitutional question as Somers."

*Chapel*—a church attached to a palace or a corporation. The reference is to the chapel attached to Lincoln's Inn where Tillotson officiated as the minister. *Tillotson*—See notes on paragraph 58. *Coffee house*—a house of entertainment where guests are provided with coffee and other refreshments. The coffee houses of those times held a position somewhat resembling that of the modern clubs. Macaulay describes the coffee

houses at length in paragraph 99 of this chapter. *Dryden*—the greatest English poet of the day; see notes on paragraph 18. Dryden frequented Will's coffee house at Covent Garden within a very short distance from Whitefriars. *Passing judgment etc.*—criticising the merits of literary works. *Plays*—dramas. *The hall*—The Royal Society was originally located at Gresham College, Bishopsgate in the city. After the fire of London the society held its sittings at Arundel House on the Strand till 1667 when it returned to its original home. It was removed to Somerset House in 1780 and since 1857 it has occupied rooms in Burlington House, Piccadily. Macaulay is thinking of the location of the Royal Society at Arundel House on the Strand because it was within a short distance from Whitefriars. *Royal Society*—the famous society in London for scientific research. It was founded in 1660 and received a royal charter two years later. A fellowship of this society, indicated by the letters F. R. S., is the highest distinction that a scientist can achieve.

*Astronomical system*—theories about the motions of the heavenly bodies. Newton made valuable reserches in Astronomy to establish his laws of gravitation. *Isaac Newton* (1642 - 1727)—the greatest mathematician and scientist of the age. His greatest discovery was the law of gravitation. He had to his credit a number of other discoveries in Mathematics and Optics. *Principia*, Newton's greatest work, was submitted to the Royal Society in 1686 and published the following year

*Such relics.....Isaac Newton*—**Expl.** Macaulay vividly contrasts two sides of 17th century London life—wild lawlessness and barbarism in some areas of London by the side of the pursuit of culture and knowledge in neighbouring areas. The district of Whitefriars abounded with criminals of the worst type. It was, indeed, a place where men were still in a rude, savage state, untouched by the refinements of civilisation. Very close to this den of savage criminals were places which were the haunts of men of literature and culture. Within a stone's throw was the Middle Temple where Somers, a distinguished lawyer, carried on his studies in history and law. Very near also were the chapel of Lincoln's Inn where Tillotson, a famous clergyman, preached on moral and religious subjects; Will's coffee house

where Dryden, the greatest poet and dramatist of the age, discussed the literary merits of poems and plays; and Arundel House where the sittings of the Royal Society were held and such momentous subjects as Newton's law of gravitation and motions of heavenly bodies were discussed. Men, like Somers, Tillotson, Dryden and Newton, were engaged in the pursuit of law, religion, literature and science—that contributed to the highest culture and refinement of the human mind. The inhabitants of Whitefriars, on the other hand, were still steeped in acts of wicked and savage lawlessness.

**Paragraph 95.** The two chief centres of attraction in London were the Palace and the Exchange, the one a centre of fashionable life and the other that of commercial life. The influence of the Palace declined after the Revolution because candidates for honours and offices knew that these favours could be granted by the ministers and not by the King. The change, introduced by the Revolution, was completed during the reign of the first two Georges. These German princes on account of their birth and training and ignorance of the English language could not happily accommodate themselves to their position as the heads of English Society.

*Two cities—viz., London and Westminster; the City proper was the centre of commerce, and Westminster was the centre of fashionable life. Made up—constituted; formed. The capital of England—London, the capital of England, consists of two towns—the city that has grown round the business centre and Westminster that has grown round the royal palace and seat of government. Had its own centre of attraction—had its different point of concentration or centre which drew people around it. The metropolis of commerce—the town that was the seat of trade or business activity. Convergence—meeting; concentration. Exchange—the Royal Exchange; see notes on paragraph 83. Metropolis of fashion—Westminster,*

---

[Page 155, Footnote—*Stowe*—John Stowe was a famous author and historian of the 17th century. His best known work was "*A Survey of London*" published in 1598. It is a detailed work on the topography of London in his age. *Shadwell*—an English poet; see notes on paragraph 92. *Squire of Alsatia*—one of Shadwell's dramas published in 1688. *Alsatia*—was a cant name for Whitefriars. *Ward's London Spy*—See notes on paragraph 78.]

the town inhabited by men of rank and of good social position. *The Palace*—Whitehall was the palace of the English Kings until it was burned down in 1691. After its destruction by fire, St. James's became the principal London residence of the English Kings. *Influence*—authority; ascendancy. *The Revolution*—See notes on paragraph 10. *Completely altered*—changed entirely. *The court*—the Palace, i.e., the King. *Completely altered etc.*—i.e., the palace ceased to be the centre of attraction for men of rank and position.

*The Revolution.....classes of society*—**Expl.** Macaulay is speaking of the decline in the power and influence of the English King. The Revolution of 1688 effected a great change in the power and prestige of the King. Formerly the King exercised a vast political authority. He had, moreover, a direct hold upon the higher classes of society by the power he enjoyed of granting offices and honours. This power of patronage passed from the King to his ministers after the Revolution. For, though the King formally bestowed offices and honours, his ministers actually selected the persons on whom such patronage would be conferred. *By degrees*—gradually. *Discovered*—found. *In his individual capacity*—by reason of his personal authority; personally without consulting his ministers. *Had very little to give*—enjoyed very little patronage; could not bestow any office or rank. *Coronets*—properly small crowns, i.e., head-dresses worn by princes and nobles; hence ranks in the peerage. *Garret*—properly a band used to fasten the stocking on the leg. Hence the badge of the highest order of knights in Great Britain called the *Order of the Garter* because the emblem of this order is a dark blue ribbon edged with gold worn on the left leg below the knee. It is the most coveted distinction to which an English nobleman can aspire. The order is said to have been founded by Edward III and is confined to only twenty-six members besides the princes of the blood royal. *Bishoprics*—i.e., promotion to the see of a bishop. *Lordships of the Treasury*—offices of the lords of the Treasury; see notes on paragraph 38. *Tellerships of the Exchequer*—the situations of the Tellers of the Exchequer. The Tellers of the Exchequer were four in number; their duties were to receive money payable to the King, and to pay all money payable by the King. These offices were abolished in 1834 and the duties of the tellers are now

performed by the Comptroller-General of the receipt and issue of exchequer.

*Charges*—offices ; situations. *Stud*—stable. *Charges in the royal stud*—The reference is to the office of the Master of the Horse. He is the third great officer in the English court and has the management of the royal stables and horses and exercises authority over the pages, grooms and footmen. In solemn processions he rides next to the sovereign. *Bed-chamber*—The reference is to the officers of the royal household called Lords of the Bed-chamber. See notes on paragraph 38. *Bestowed*—conferred. *Advisers*—i.e., ministers ; according to the English constitution the ministers are the official advisers of the King. *Bed-chamber*—The controversy over the *Bed-chamber* question had occurred shortly before the publication of Macaulay's History. When after the fall of Melbourne ministry in 1839 Peel was invited to accept office he asked the young queen Victoria to dismiss those ladies of the bed-chamber who were the close relations of the former minister. As the Queen was unwilling to part with her friends, Peel declined to form a ministry. *It was by degrees discovered etc.*—People gradually came to understand that the King enjoyed very little patronage and that honours and offices were not bestowed by the King personally but by his ministers. Not merely public offices in the administration of the country but also situations in the royal household were at the disposal of the ministers.

*Every ambitious and covetous man*—i.e., candidates for honour and emoluments. *Covetous*—avaricious ; greedy of gain. *Consult his own interest*—promote his interest ; achieve his end. *Far better*—more effectively. *Dominion*—control. *Cornish borough*—a borough in Cornwall. A borough is a town enjoying the privilege of sending representatives to Parliament. Macaulay is thinking of what were called "pocket boroughs" or "rotten boroughs" of the days preceding the Reform Bill of 1832. These were boroughs which had fallen into decay with greatly decreased population though they retained the right of sending members to Parliament. Old Sarum for example had no inhabitant though it returned two members to Parliament. The proprietors of these villages had therefore the right of nominating any man they pleased, as their members of Parliament. This was a great political wrong.

By the Reform Act of 1832, fifty-six such boroughs, returning one hundred and eleven members were disfranchised.

Cornwall was notorious for containing a large number of such boroughs. The local magnates who controlled the elections of these boroughs were sure to have great influence with the ministers because the fate of the ministry depended on their own votes and those of their nominees. *Good service*—useful service. *Ministry*—body of ministers. *Critical session*—a session in which the fate of the ministry hung in the balance; a session in which the ministerial party narrowly ran the risk of being defeated or outvoted over a hotly debated question. A *session* is a period or term during which Parliament meets daily to transact business.

**N. B.** The Parliamentary practice of England requires a ministry to resign when it is defeated or outvoted in the House of Commons. Because the defeat indicates that the ministers do not enjoy the confidence of the House. Therefore at the time of voting over a question on which the opinions of the House are almost equally divided, every vote is of great use. An influential man, who can under such circumstances by means of his own vote or that of his creatures whom he had returned from the pocket boroughs, help the ministers out of a defeat, has naturally a strong claim on their patronage.

*Minion*—(Fr. *mignon*, a darling) originally a favourite; now generally used to mean an unworthy favourite; one who gains favour by flattery or other base means. *Every ambitious and covetous.....of his prince*—**Expl** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's observations on the decline of the influence of the English King after the Revolution of 1688. The Revolution transferred political power from the crown to his ministers. Accordingly candidates for honours and offices sought to achieve their ends not by flattering the King and courting his favour but by rendering useful political services to the ministers in difficult hours. They knew that the King had very little to give. The best way of pleasing the ministers was to give them political support. The man who sought for honours and offices, therefore bought up rotten boroughs in Cornwall and sent representatives from them to Parliament who helped the ministers by voting with them. The ministers rewarded such useful political service by the grant of patronage.



*Antechambers*—chambers leading to the apartment occupied by any great or powerful man where persons have to wait for audience. *George the First and George the Second*—the first two Kings of the Hanoverian line, *i.e.*, the family to which the present English King belongs. The former reigned from 1714 to 1727 and the latter from 1727 to 1760. *Walpole*—Sir Robert Walpole (1676-1745), a famous English statesman, who held the office of the First Lord of the Treasury from 1721 to 1742. The English Kings of those times being foreigners, ignorant of English ways, left him in sole charge of the administration. Thus Walpole became the first English Prime Minister though this office was not then officially recognised. He was an able statesman who by following an enlightened policy greatly developed English commerce. *Pelham*—Henry Pelham (1695-1754), an English statesman, who became the First Lord of the Treasury in 1744 after Carteret's fall. He continued to hold this office till his death in 1754. The present Cabinet system of administration was developed during the ministries of Walpole and Pelham.

*The daily crowd of courtiers etc.*—The candidates for favours thronged every day. *It was therefore in the antechambers etc.*—For this reason the Palace of the English Kings ceased to attract crowds of visitors; the seekers of favours transferred their attentions to the ministers. *The same revolution*—the Revolution of 1688 referred to above. *Patronage of the state*—help or favour conferred by reason of their administrative authority; government support or favour. *Gratifying*—satisfying. *Predilections*—liking. *Several Kings—viz.*, George I and George II. They were Germans by birth and education and never felt quite at home in England. *Habits*—ways. *Gracious and affable*—kind and agreeable. *Unfitted by their etc.*—These German princes on account of their training and ways could not receive their English visitors in a pleasant manner. They were foreigners, *i.e.*, Germans by education and upbringing. So they could not easily adapt themselves to the English ways of life.

*It is also to be remarked etc.*—Macaulay suggests that the accession of the Hanoverian dynasty after the death of Queen Anne was an effect of the Revolution of 1688. This view can be justified on the ground that the Revolution implied the

constitutional principle that the English nation had the right of choosing its sovereign irrespective of dynastic claims. The Act of Settlement of 1701 by which the English throne was settled on Sophia, Electress of Hanover and her descendants after Anne's death, was only an application of this important constitutional principle. *Bred*—educated. *On the Continent*—George I was the Elector of Hanover in Germany. *They had been born etc.*—George I was 54 years old when he came to England as its King. His son George II was then 31 years old. So both of them had their character and habits formed in a foreign country. *At home*—happy or comfortable. *Inelegantly*—without polish or grace. *With effort*—with painful labour and not with ease and naturalness. George I could not speak English at all in the early years of his reign and carried on communications with his ministers in Latin. *Our national manners etc.*—They never tried to learn or cultivate English ways and habits. *The most important part of their duty—viz., their duties as the constitutional kings of England. They performed better etc.*—The performance of this duty consisted in simply not interfering with the decisions of their ministers, their constitutional advisers. **N.B.** “George I could not speak English and all communications between himself and his ministers were carried on in bad Latin. He, therefore, set the example, which all subsequent sovereigns have followed, of abstaining from attending Cabinet meetings, when the discussion took place in a language unintelligible to him. This abstention had important constitutional results. The Cabinet, which for sometime had been growing independent of the sovereign, became still more independent, especially as George knew no more of English ways than he knew of the English language, and was obliged to take most of the advice of his ministers on trust”—*Gardiner*.

*They governed strictly according to law*—They were never guilty of any unlawful or any unconstitutional conduct. *The first gentlemen of the realm, the heads of polite society*—This is another of the functions of the English sovereigns, a social function. They serve as the models of correct conduct and gentlemanliness to polished society. *Unbent*—were freed from constraint; acted in a free and natural manner. *Small circle—i.e., the society of the few intimate friends and relations they had in England. Where hardly an English etc.*—which rarely

included an Englishman. This implies that these Kings felt themselves to be strangers in a foreign land and could not count any Englishman among their intimate friends. *Native land*—Hanover in Germany. The Act of Settlement of 1701 included the condition that the Kings were not to leave the three kingdoms (England, Scotland and Ireland) without the consent of Parliament. This article was repealed in the first year of George I's reign. *Days of reception*—ceremonial entertainments like levees. *Mere matter of form*—simply formal or a matter of external ceremony. *Solemn*—grave and cheerless. *Ceremony*—function. *As solemn a ceremony etc.*—i.e., the entertainments had no life or gaiety in them; they were utterly dreary and cheerless, because the Kings, with their German birth and training and ignorance of English ways, could not talk or mix freely with their English guests.

**Paragraph 96.** But things were different in King Charles II's time. The Palace was thronged with visitors. Candidates for honours and offices attended the court in large numbers and tried to win the good graces of the King and his mistresses. The King was accessible to everybody except the extreme Whigs. His liberal hospitality and gracious manners rendered him very popular.

*Not such was the court of Charles the Second*—i.e., the palace was thronged with visitors during the reign of Charles II. *Whitehall*—See notes on paragraph 31. *Focus*—centre. *Political intrigue*—scheming and planning for political purposes; (abstract for concrete) scheming politicians. *Fashionable gaiety*—gay and rich men of rank and fashion; pleasure-loving persons, belonging to the upper classes. *Jobbing*—corrupt transactions. *To job* is to turn public service to private advantage. *Flirting*—coquetting; love-making. *Went on under his roof*—were carried on in his palace. *Half the jobbing and half etc.*—The royal palace was the great haunt of the candidates for favours and the rakes of the capital. The former assembled there in large numbers in pursuit of their selfish schemes and the latter in search of pleasure.

*Agreeable*—pleasing. *Secure*—obtain. *Good offices*—good graces; favour. *Rise in the world*—prosper; advance himself in wealth and position. *Without rendering etc.*—without having done any good or benefit to the government. *Without being*

*even known etc.*—though they were utter strangers to the ministers and never came in contact with them. So honours and offices came not as rewards of service to the government or the ministers, but as favours from the King. *This courtier*—*i.e.*, one man. *A courtier* is one who frequents the court or the palace of a King; here it means a man who frequents the court to win some favour for himself. *Got a frigate*—obtained the command of a vessel in the navy. *Frigate*—See notes on paragraph 28. *And that a company*—Another man got the command of a company in a regiment, that is, he was appointed a captain in the army.

*The pardon of a rich offender*—According to the law of England, the King possesses the privilege of granting pardon to any criminal. A rich man guilty of any serious crime engaged a courtier to obtain pardon for him. This man by bribing the King's mistresses or by other means was able to win this pardon for his employer. *Crown land*—land or estate belonging to the King. A number of estates belongs to the British crown as his private property; these were formerly managed like private estates. These are now surrendered by the sovereign at the beginning of his reign in return for an allowance fixed at a certain amount for the reign by the Parliament. *Easy*—not heavy or burdensome: convenient. *Terms*—conditions. *A fourth, a lease of crown land etc.*—Another man had lands from a royal estate let out to himself on a low rent. *Notified his pleasure*—was pleased to declare. *A briefless lawyer*—a lawyer without any brief or practice. A *brief* is an abridged account of the facts of a case drawn up for the instruction of an advocate in conducting the proceedings in a court of justice. *Should be made a judge*—in England judges are recruited from the ranks of barristers. *Libertine*—licentious; dissolute. *Baronet*—one possessing a hereditary rank next below a baron; a baronet is not regarded as a member of the peerage. This order was founded by James I in 1611. The baronet enjoys the privilege of prefixing *Sir* before his name. This title is hereditary in the case of baronets but not so in the case of knights. *Peer*—nobleman. The members of the five degrees of English nobility, duke, marquis, earl, viscount, baron, are called peers. *Gravest*—most solemn or thoughtful. *Counsellors*—advisers, *i.e.*, ministers. The ministers of an English King are regarded as his only

constitutional advisers. *Little murmuring*—slight opposition or complaint. *Submitted*—yielded; acted as the King directed.

*Interest*—considerations of self-interest; regard for one's advantage or profit. *Constant press of suitors*—ceaseless crowd of petitioners or applicants for favour. *Press*—crowd. *Those gates stood always etc.*—i.e., no one was denied admittance into the palace; every one had access to the King. *The King kept open house etc.*—The King was ready to receive and entertain visitors belonging to the polite society of London at all hours of the day. *To keep open house (or doors)* is to entertain all comers, to be hospitable. *The extreme Whigs only excepted*—only politicians professing rabid Whig principles were denied admittance into the palace. Charles II's dislike for Whigs has been referred to in previous paragraphs. *Hardly any gentleman etc.*—any man of good social standing could easily have an access to the King; the King was readily accessible to every member of genteel society. *Levee*—a morning reception held by a prince or any other person of exalted rank. The word is now used to mean a public ceremony during which the sovereign receives visits from persons of rank and wealth who are entitled to this honour.

*Exactly*—precisely. *Imports*—signifies; means. *Was exactly what the word etc.*—The word *levee* means a morning reception because it is derived from the French verb *lever*, to get up or dress. The King used to receive visitors even on rising from bed. So at all hours of the day the King would receive and entertain guests. *Levee* properly means a gathering or assembly. *Quality*—superior rank or social position. *Master*—

---

[Page 158, Footnote—*Wright*—Sir Nathan Wright (1654–1721), a lawyer and judge; he was a junior counsel for the crown against the seven bishops in 1688; he became lord keeper of the great seal and privy councillor in 1700. He was dismissed from his office in 1705. North says that it was through the intrigues of Jeffreys that Wright became a judge but it is difficult to see how this could be because Jeffreys died in 1689 and Wright became a judge in 1700. The reference is more probably to Sir Rober Wright, the lord chief justice, who had accompanied Jeffreys on western assize after Mounmouth's rebellion. He was chief justice of Glamorgan in 1681 and was removed to King's bench in 1685. *Sir George Savile*—(1633–1695) son of Sir William Savile; he was created Earl of Halifax in 1679 and was elevated to the rank of a Marquis in 1692; see notes on Halifax in paragraph 59.]

*i.e.*, the King. *Chat*—hold idle or familiar talks ; গল্পগুজব করা ।  
*Wig*—an artificial covering of hair for the head ; wigs were fashionable in the 17th and 18th centuries ; পরচুলি ।  
*Combed*—properly arranged. Note how Macaulay picturesquely describes the morning occupations of the King. The combing of the wig and the tying of the cravat give us clear and vivid pictures of the King dressing himself. *Cravat*—a piece of muslin, silk or other stuff worn by men round the neck ; neck-cloth. *Tied*—fastened. *The Park*—Hyde Park, the largest park in London extending from Mayfair to Kensington Gardens. The park is so named because it originally formed part of the manor of Hyde attached to Westminster Abbey. In the 17th century it was the great "rendezvous of fashion and beauty." See Map of London. *Properly*—in due form. *Introduced*—presented to the King. *Hazard*—a game at dice generally played for money.

*Might have the pleasure etc.*—might enjoy the pleasure of listening to his stories. *Which indeed he told remarkably well*—*i.e.*, Charles II was an excellent story-teller ; his stories interested and amused everybody who listened to them. *Worcester*—In 1650 Charles II reached Scotland and hoping to recover his father's throne with Scotch help he promised to introduce the Presbyterian form of worship into England. On this the Scotch took up arms to restore him to the throne of England, but were defeated at Dunbar in 1650. Another Scotch army with King Charles marched into England where they hoped to raise an insurrection in his favour. The Scots advanced as far as Worcester where they were completely defeated by Cromwell in 1651. Charles II escaped to France and had on one occasion to conceal himself on an oak tree to avoid capture by Cromwell's soldiers. *State prisoner*—a man who is kept in confinement for political reasons. After his arrival in Scotland Charles was to all practical purposes a state-prisoner in the hands of the Presbyterian party.

*Canting*—affecting piety : shamming holiness ; hypocritical. *Meddling*—interfering with things with which one has nothing to do : taking part in another man's affairs in an offensive manner. This expression is used of the Scotch clergymen because they thrust their religious views into political questions. They

wanted Charles II to accept Presbyterianism and to introduce it into England as a condition of Scotch help for his restoration. The two adjectives "canting" and "meddling" are used to describe the Scotch Presbyterian clergy. They appeared to the King as hypocritical and as unduly interfering the political questions. In fact they promised the King help on condition that he would introduce Presbyterianism into England. This mixing up of political and religious questions proved them not merely hypocrites but as meddlers in politics. *Preachers of Scotland*—Scotch clergymen. It may easily be understood that Charles II with his lax notions of morality and religion must have felt extremely uncomfortable in the society of the rigid Scotch Puritans.

*Bystanders*—persons who stood near on the road or in the park to see the King pass. *His Majesty*—the title used of kings; the reference is to King Charles II. *Recognised*—knew to be old acquaintances. *Came in for a courteous word*—were politely accosted by the King. *Kingcraft*—art of government; wise policy; statesmanship. *Father*—Charles I. *Grandfather*—James I. *This proved a far more successful etc.*—**Expl.** This is Macaulay's remark on the polite manners of King Charles II. Whenever he saw any man on the road whom he recognised as an old acquaintance, he talked with him in a pleasant and courteous manner. Such courtesy rendered him very popular with his subjects and won him their good will. This art of government, i.e., winning the hearts of men by courteous manners, he practised more successfully than his predecessors. It was for this reason that in spite of various shortcomings he was able to enjoy his throne in peace. James I and Charles I had never been so popular because they were wanting in such pleasing manners. *Austere*—severe; rigid. *Republican*—an advocate of a republican or commonwealth form of government. The Puritans of the period of the Commonwealth before the Restoration were republicans. They deeply hated monarchy because they held it to be tyranny. *Marvel*—Andrew Marvel (1621-1678), a well-known English poet and wit, distinguished for his spotless integrity. During the Commonwealth he became assistant to Milton as Latin secretary. After the Restoration he represented Hull in Parliament and made his mark by his ability and integrity. On one occasion Charles II sent Danby to Marvel offering

him a lucrative post in the administration which Marvel at once refused. Danby then gave Marvel to understand that the King had sent him a thousand guineas as a mark of his esteem. Marvel refused this present also, though on Danby's departure he sent to a friend for the loan of a guinea. *To resist the fascination*—to withstand the spell of; to avoid being charmed by. *Affability*—condescension, courtesy. *It was not easy.....affability*—even staunch republicans, like Andrew Marvel, could not fail to be charmed by the jolly spirits and courteous manner of the King, though they were opposed to the monarchical form of government. *Veteran Cavalier*—old Royalist who had fought during the Civil War. *Cavalier*—See notes on paragraph 18. *Unrequited*—unrewarded; uncompensated. *Sacrifices and services*—the losses they had undergone and the battles they had fought to support his father's cause during the Civil War. **N.B.** The Royalists had suffered grievously both in person and property in supporting Charles I's cause during the Civil War. Many were slain and wounded in battles. Others had their property confiscated by the Commonwealth government after the war. The survivors of these Cavaliers and their descendants had hoped at the time of the Restoration that they would receive ample compensation from Charles II for all their losses and sufferings. But they received no redress. This ingratitude of the King towards his father's faithful followers was one of the darkest blots on his character. *Festering*—rankling. *During twenty years—i.e., since 1660.* *Was compensated*—felt amply rewarded or repaid. *Wounds*—received in battles in supporting his father's cause. *Sequestrations*—confiscations. *Kind nod*—bow of recognition. *"God bless you, my old friend"*—the most affable remark with which a King can accost his subject.

*It was not easy....."God bless you, my old friend!"—Expl.* Macaulay describes in this sentence how Charles II's courteous manners won him the good will of his subjects. The King's manners were so polite and gracious that even rigid republicans like Marvel could not help being charmed by them. The old Royalists nursed in their hearts a sense of bitter grievance against the King because he did not care to award them any compensation for the losses and sufferings they had undergone in supporting his father's cause. But the King disarmed all their anger with a nod of recognition and a



kindly remark as he met them on the way. At this the sense of injustice and wrong that had been rankling in their hearts for over twenty years disappeared in a moment. And they felt themselves amply repaid for what they had done and suffered for his father.

**Paragraph 97.** Whitehall was the great fountainhead of news. People resorted to it in large numbers to learn the latest information on important foreign and domestic political questions. Questions on foreign politics were openly discussed. Important domestic problems were discussed in whispers and people drew their conclusions from the way in which the King spoke to his different ministers.

*Staple*—used in its older sense of a market or emporium. *Intelligence*—information. *Fountain head*—original source. *Galleries*—halls. *Presented the appearance of*—looked like. *Club room*—the apartment in which a club meets. A *club* is an association of men who are in the habit of meeting together for the promotion of some common object, as social intercourse, literature, politics, sport etc. Different political parties have their different clubs. *Anxious time*—i.e., when the country is faced with a grave political problem. *The galleries... time*—The halls of the palace were full of people anxious to get the latest information about contemporary political events; just as in modern clubs men gather together to know and discuss the latest political happenings. *The Dutch mail was in*—letters from Holland had reached the town. Louis XIV was then engaged in an aggressive war against Holland and the mail would bring the latest intelligence (news) of the war. *Tidings*—news. *Express*—messenger sent on any special occasion; courier sent to deliver important despatches. *Express from France*—The latest news from France was anxiously awaited, because Charles II was receiving a subsidy from Louis XIV of France and shaping his foreign policy to the dictates of the King of France. Louis XIV was engaged in an open hostility with Holland, and Charles II was, therefore, inclined to support him. Parliament stood, however, in the way of the King. *John Sobiesky*—(1624–1696) the heroic King of Poland who defeated the Turks before the walls of Vienna and compelled them to raise the siege of the town. See notes on paragraph 18.

*Doge*—an Italian word corresponding to *duke*: the title of the chief magistrates of the Republics of Venice and Genoa. *Genoa*—in northern Italy; it was an independent Republic till it was added to France by Napoleon Bonaparte. *Whether the Doge of Genoa was really at Paris*—The reference is to the following event:—"The Genoese in the same century experienced a great calamity. On the 18th of May 1684, their capital was bombarded by the fleet of Louis XIV; who felt his royal dignity offended by so small a people daring to resist his will. He demanded the establishment of a depot at Savona, to provision with salt and ammunition of war his fortress of Casal de Monferrat. The senate of Genoa refused their consent to an establishment alike contrary to their neutrality and independence. The marquis de Siegnelay punished them by pouring on this city 14,000 bombs in three days; the public palace was more than half destroyed; and the whole town would have been ruined, if the Doge had not consented to proceed to Paris with four senators to make his apology to the King."—Sismondi's *Italian Republics*. *These*—such questions of foreign politics. *About which it was safe etc.*—no one was likely to offend anybody by discussing these questions openly. *Subjects*—i.e., questions on domestic politics. *Concerning*—regarding. *Given in whispers*—because the opinions expressed on these questions might give offence to men in power. *Halifax*—See notes on paragraph 59. *Got the better of*—been able to overcome. *Rochester*—Lawrence Hyde, Earl of Rochester (1641—1711), was the second son of the Earl of Clarendon. He entered politics early in his life and became privy councillor and First Lord of the Treasury in 1679. He rose to be the Lord President of the Council in 1684. **N.B.** In the concluding years of Charles II's reign there were two parties in the court, one headed by Halifax and the other by Rochester. Halifax strongly advised the King to summon a Parliament while the Earl of Rochester strongly opposed it.

*Was there to be a Parliament?*—In 1684 this was one of the burning questions of the day. No Parliament had been summoned after the dissolution of the Oxford Parliament in 1681. The Statute repealing the Triennial Act in 1664 had provided that there should be no intermission of Parliament for more than three years. The views of the different parties

in the court on this question are given in the previous note. *Was the Duke of York etc.*—The Duke of York was sent to Scotland as Lord High Commissioner. He went there to check the disturbances created in that country by the Covenanters, a party of Scotch fanatics, who held episcopacy to be sinful. *Monmouth*—an illegitimate son of Charles II. See notes on paragraph 84. In consequence of the Tory re-action that set in after the suppression of the insurrection in Scotland, he was banished in 1679. He retired to Holland whence he shortly returned to England, but was deprived of all his offices. *The Hague*—the seat of the Dutch government in Holland. *Men tried to read the countenance of every minister*—They tried to find an answer to these questions from the expressions of the faces of the ministers. *Royal closet*—the King's private chamber.

*Auguries*—originally the art of foretelling future events from the movements of birds that prevailed amongst the ancient Romans: hence signs; indications. *All sorts of auguries were drawn*—Men formed various conjectures about the course of future events. *Lord President*—a great officer of state in England in former times. His duty was to attend upon the sovereign, to propose business to the council, and to report to the sovereign the matters transacted there. Rochester was the Lord President in the concluding years of Charles II's reign. *Honoured a jest*—showed his favour of the Lord Privy Seal by laughing at his jest. *Lord Privy Seal*—the fifth great officer of state in England; he applies the private seal to all grants and charters before they come to the great seal. This office was then held by Halifax. He was a man of polished wit and agreeable conversation. *Hopes and fears*—according as the indications were favourable or otherwise to the different parties. *Inspired*—suggested. *Slight*—trivial; of little importance. *Indications*—marks; signs. *Coffee houses*—See notes on paragraph 94. *From St. James's to the Tower*—throughout the whole length of the town from the west to the east. St. James's marked in those times the western limits of Westminster and the Tower stood to the east of the City of London.

---

[Page 161, Footnote—*Are too numerous to recapitulate*—are so many that they cannot be enumerated here. *Despatches*—official letters. *Barillon*—the

**Paragraph 98.** The coffee houses of the age could justly be called important political institutions. They were the chief organs for the expression of public opinion.

N.B. "*The coffee-house was the lineal descendant of the barbers' shops (monastic or lay), the university dining and debating halls, and the taverns of the Middle Ages.* Here had been the home of the idea; the 'baiting-place of wit', the forge where the rough thought was welded into policy. Coffee was introduced into London in 1657 by a Turkish merchant who set up his coffee-house in Lombard Street, with a portrait of himself as a sign over the door. 'That excellent, and by all physicians approved, China drink Tea' was to be had, as well as 'Cophee', but the former was a very expensive luxury as yet, and was regarded much as tobacco was on its introduction, as a medicine. Coffee-houses now multiplied rapidly, and soon each house had its distinctive clientele—lawyers favouring one, politicians another, and so forth. The famous 'Wills' in Covent Garden (the west corner of Bow Street) was patronised by Pepys and Dryden. It was a home for scandal and lampoons. The host of the coffee-house hears all the town gossip, and to him naturally the visitor turns upon his entrance: 'What news have you, master?' Politicians met here, but they had little circles or clubs of their own, and these met often in taverns. The Tory 'October Club' met in a tavern at Westminster; the Whig 'Kitkat Club' in a Strand tavern. Theologians and scientists did not disdain the coffee-house. Sir Isaac Newton repaired of an evening to the 'Grecian'; and Laurence Sterne preached lay sermons there. Here is a handbill which extolled the virtue of coffee:

'A simple, innocent, thing, and makes the heart lightsome; it is good against sore eyes, and the better if you hold your head over it and take in the steam that way. It is good for a cough. It is excellent to prevent and cure the dropsy, gout and scurvy'.

Often coffee was cried down. A satirist of the day wrote: 'These coffee men, these 'sons of nought', gave up the pure blood of the grape for a filthy drink—syrup of soot, essence of old shoes'. In 1657 some of the burghers complained of

---

French ambassador in the court of Charles II and James II. *Reresby*—(1634-1689) a traveller and a politician. He entered Parliament in 1675. His "*Memoirs*" appeared in 1734.]

a barber, Barr, who sold coffee and offended them by the "stink" while it was being manufactured." The importance of the coffee-house is thus summed up by Defoe :

"The best company (after the play) generally go to Tom's or Wills's coffee-house near adjoining, where there is playing at piquet and the best of conversation till midnight. According to a contemporary, *a man is sooner asked about his Coffee-house than about his Lodgings.....* They smoke Tobacco, game, and read papers of intelligence; here they treat of matters of state, make Leagues with Foreign Princes, break them again, and transact affairs of the last consequence to the whole world"—(*Compton Rickett*).

*Dismissed*—done with. *Cursory mention*—hasty or slight notice. *Must not be dismissed etc.*—i.e., the subject deserves exhaustive treatment. *Not improperly*—justly. *Political institution*—society or organisation for promoting political objects or ends; organisations for expressing the views of the public on questions of government and of public policy. *No Parliament had sat for years*—Charles II's third Parliament or Oxford Parliament as it was called—had been dissolved in 1681 after only a week's sitting. *Municipal council of the City*—the common council of the City of London. *Had ceased to speak the sense of the citizens*—did not reflect the views of the London public on questions of public policy. The reference is to the forfeiture of the charter of the City in 1683 and the filling up of all the corporation offices with Tories. As the Whigs exceeded the Tories both in number and influence, the views of the remodelled corporation could not represent the opinions of the bulk of the London citizens. *Harangue*—"speech to an assembly; loud or vehement address"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Resolutions*—decisions arrived at in public meetings. *Modern machinery of agitation*—means employed in the present age for ventilating public grievances. *Agitation*—drawing public attention to social or political questions by means of public meetings, speeches, newspaper articles etc. *Come into fashion*—become popular. *Nothing resembling the modern etc.*—No doubt there were newspapers in those days, but they were not like modern newspapers, organs for the expression of public opinion. The nature of the newspapers of those times is described at length in paragraph 119. *Organs*—mediums or means for the expression of opinions, the word is now commonly used in the sense of newspapers. *Public opinion of the metropolis*—views

of the citizens of London on political questions. *Vented*—expressed.

**Paragraph 99.** Coffee houses made their first appearance in London during the time of the Commonwealth. The first coffee house is said to have been established by a Turkey merchant, who acquired a taste for this drink from the Mahometans. The convenience of spending an agreeable evening at a small charge made the coffee houses very popular. The fashion quickly spread among the middle and the upper classes. And the coffee houses soon became a power in the land. The government viewed them with dislike, yet they did not venture to suppress them. Men of different classes, opinions and professions, had their different coffee houses. There were coffee houses for well-dressed dandies, literary men, doctors, Puritans and even Jews.

*Establishment*—house of business ; public institution. *Establishments*—*vi.*, coffee houses. *Commonwealth*—This is the name given in the history of England to the Republic established in that country after the execution of Charles I. England was ruled by this Commonwealth from 1649 to 1660. *A Turkey merchant*—an Englishman who carried on business in Turkey. *The Mahometans*—*i.e.*, the Turks. *Taste*—relish ; liking. *Beverage*—drink. **N.B.** The first coffee house was opened in London by a Greek in 1652. He came from Smyrna with Mr. D. Edwards, a Turkey merchant, and in the capacity of a servant he daily prepared coffee for his master and his visitors. The new drink became very popular with Mr. Edwards' friends. They visited him every day for this drink. To avoid the inconvenience thus caused, Mr. Edwards directed his servant to establish a coffee house which he accordingly did. The original establishment was in St. Michael's Alley, Cornhill. *Appointments*—arrangements to meet together. *In any part of the town*—because the coffee houses were scattered all over the town. *Socially*—in the company of one's friends. *Charge*—cost. **N.B.** The rapid spread of the coffee houses was due to several advantages that they brought ; (1) they were scattered in all parts of the city ; hence appointments could be made at any place, (2) friends could meet one another and pass an enjoyable evening at a very, small cost. The coffee houses promoted social intercourse first, and then

stimulated the growth of organised public opinion. *Middle class*—the class holding a social position between the aristocracy and the labourers. This class includes professional men, smaller landed proprietors, merchants and the like. *Discuss it*—debate or argue on it with his friends. *Orators*—select speakers. Johnson, for example, was the orator at Turk's Head, Dryden at Will's. *Eloquence*—fluent and powerful speeches. *The crowd*—i.e., the other guests in the coffee house. *Journalists*—editors of newspapers. *Estate*—an order or class of men constituting a state. The three estates of England are the Lords Spiritual, the Lords Temporal and the Commons. *The fourth estate of the realm*—an expression used of the newspaper press on account of the powerful influence it exercises over the government. It is said to have been first coined by Burke and is generally used with a touch of humour. The Press is called the Fourth Estate because it not only reflects but moulds and directs public opinion which is the foundation of all modern governments.

*The court*—the King and his ministers. *Uneasiness*—anxiety; disquiet. *This new power in the state*—power of public opinion that was now proving a new factor in the politics of the country. Discussion of public questions by men of importance in the coffee houses was a sign of the growth of organised public opinion. *During Danby's administration*—when Danby was minister. *Danby*—See notes on paragraph 14. *An attempt had been made etc.*—The reference is to the attempt made in 1675 to suppress the coffee houses. A royal proclamation was issued that year in which it was stated that they were the resort of disaffected persons "who devised and spread abroad divers false, malicious and scandalous reports to the defamation of His Majesty's Government and to the disturbance of the peace and the quiet of the nation." The declaration of object of the regulation ran as follows:—"Because the multitude of coffee-houses lately set up and kept within this kingdom, and the great resort of idle and dissipated persons in them, have produced very evil and dangerous effects, whilst they tended to spread disunion, and to tempt tradespeople to neglect their business, and that this idle waste of time and money was becoming an injury to the Commonwealth." *All parties*—i.e., both Whigs and Tories. *Missed*—felt keenly the want of; were greatly inconvenienced

by the absence of. *Their usual places of resort*—the places where they were accustomed to assemble. *Universal outcry*—clamour or loud opposition from all quarters. *Enforce*—put in execution; insist on the observance of.

*Regulation*—order. *Legality*—lawfulness. *Might well be questioned*—was doubtful. *To enforce etc.*—to give effect to an executive order that was believed to be illegal. The order entailed serious practical hardships on all people and was besides illegal. The government, therefore, did not enforce it. *Elapsed*—passed. *Ten years had elapsed*—This brings us to 1685, the year of Charles II's death, because the proclamation was issued in 1675. *The number and influence etc.*—The coffee houses were becoming more numerous and their power was steadily growing. *Remarkd*—observed. *The coffee house was that etc.*—The coffee houses were the distinctive characteristic of London and marked it out from other cities of Europe. *The Londoner's home*—the place where a Londoner was sure to be found and where he resorted for rest and comfort. *Fleet Street*—See notes on paragraph 94. *Chancery Lane*—runs from north to south connecting Holborn with Fleet Street. *Frequented*—visited. *The Grecian*—a coffee house in the Strand; it was the resort of the barristers from the Temple. *The Rainbow*—situated in Fleet Street; it was believed to be the second coffee house in London; it was established in 1656. *Excluded*—refused admission. *His penny*—the usual charge paid by each visitor. *Bar*—the counter in a tavern or coffee house where articles are served out to customers and payments made.

*Laid down his penny at the bar*—evidently a reminiscence of the following passage in Addison—"I was under some apprehension that they would appeal to me; and therefore *laid down my penny at the bar*, and made the best of my way."

*Rank*—class; order. *Profession*—occupation. *Shade*—degree; grade; the metaphor is from colour. *Every shade of religious and political opinion*—men professing religious and political principles of all varieties. *Headquarters*—centres. *Yet every rank etc.*—Though no man was refused admission into a coffee house, yet there were different coffee houses for men belonging to different classes, professions, religious sects or political parties. **N.B.** The following were some of the



famous coffee houses of the age:—(1) Will's coffee house—named after the landlord William Urwin, was the resort of literary men and wits: it was the coffee house of Dryden. (2) Child's coffee house in St. Paul's churchyard was the special resort of the clergy, physicians and members of the Royal Society. (3) St. James's coffee house in St. James's Street was the great resort of Whig politicians. (4) the Cocoa tree or Chocolate house in St. James's Street was the resort of the Tories. (5) Jonathan's coffee house was the resort of the Jews and the less respectable stock-jobbers. *St. James's Park*—in the western district of London between the Mall and Bird Cage Walk. It was laid out as a pleasure ground by Charles II. *Fops*—dandies; gaily dressed men; the word is used with a touch of contempt of men who desire to excite admiration by their showy dress; ফুলবাৰু। *Congregated*—assembled. *Their heads and shoulders etc.*—i.e., wearing full-bottomed wigs; these wigs reached down to the shoulders. *Flaxen*—of the colour of flax: of a pale brown colour. *Ample*—large. *Now worn by the Chancellor etc.*—Curled wigs are still worn by judges and lawyers as parts of their official or professional dress. *Chancellor*—or Lord High Chancellor as he is called is the keeper of the Great Seal and a judge of the High Court of Chancery. He is the Speaker of the House of Lords. *Speaker*—the designation of the official who presides over the deliberations of the House of Commons.

*Paris*—was then as now the centre of fashions. It is no wonder that wigs of men of fashion should come from France. *Fine gentlemen*—richly dressed men: fops. *Embroidered*—adorned with needle-work. *Fringed gloves*—gloves adorned with fringes. A fringe is an ornamental appendage to the borders of garments in the form of loose threads. *Tassel*—cord adorned with a tassel. A tassel is a roundish ball covered with twisted threads of silk or wool hanging down in a thick fringe.

*Upheld*—supported. *Pantaloons*—trousers. *Dialect*—language peculiar to a class or province; the reference is to the peculiar pronunciation affected by the fops of those times. *Fashionable circles*—men of wealth and social position who in their dress and behaviour conform to the prevailing mode. *Lord Foppington*—a self-explaining name. He is a character

in Vanburgh's drama, *The Relapse*, and is represented as a foolish coxcomb caring only for dress and fashion. *The Relapse* was adapted and abridged by Sheridan into *A Trip to Scarborough*. Lord Foppington appears in the play and is represented as affecting to pronounce "o" as "a". The following speech of Foppington's may be quoted to illustrate his mode of pronunciation:—"Thau art willing to receive it any haw, strike me speechless..... Taxes are so great, repairs so exorbitant, tenants such rogues, and *perriwigs* so dear, that the devil take me, I'm reduced to that extremity in cash, I have been *farced* to retrench in that one article of sweet *pauder*, till I have *brought* it *dawn* to five guineas a *manth*. Naw judge Tam whether I can spare you five hundred *paunds*." *Excite the mirth of*—amuse; rouse the laughter of. *Theatres*—the theatre-going public. *The conversation was in that... theatres*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the fashionable coffee houses of the 17th century. The fops assembled there spoke with an affected pronunciation changing "o" into 'a' as was fashionable in those times. Lord Foppington, a foolish coxcomb, in the drama, *The Relapse*, by Vanburgh, is represented as speaking in this fashion. After this mode of speech had ceased to be fashionable, the affected pronunciation became the subject of ridicule and laughter. In fact, characters, like Lord Foppington, were introduced into dramas to move the audience of a theatre to laughter.

*Was like that of a perfumer's shop*—because the visitors made a liberal use of perfumeries or rich scents. *Richly scented*—highly perfumed. *Abomination*—deep loathing or disgust. *Tobacco in any other etc.*—the visitors to this coffee house loathed smoking; the only way in which they used tobacco was to take it in the form of highly perfumed sunff. *Clown*—boor: a man without refinement or of coarse manners. *Usages*—customs; ways. *Called for a pipe*—demanded tobacco for smoking. *Sneers*—contemptuous or scornful looks. *Short*—curt; dry. *Waiters*—servants belonging to the establishment who attended on the guests and supplied them with what they wanted. If a rude and ignorant visitor called for tobacco, the waiters, knowing the tastes of their usual patrons, returned a brief and curt 'no'. *He had better go somewhere else*—i.e., if he wanted to smoke. *Nor indeed would he have had*

*far to go*—he would find near at hand a coffee house where no objection was taken against smoking.

*Reeked with tobacco*—was filled with unpleasant smell of tobacco smoke. *Guardroom*—a room for the soldiers who serve as guards. Soldiers are commonly very hard smokers. *Strangers*—foreigners. *So many people*—referring to the persons assembled in the coffee house. *Firesides*—homes. *Eternal fog and stench*—the foul-smelling tobacco smoke that always filled the coffee house. *Stench*—foul smell; offensive odour; the reference is to the smell of tobacco smoke. *Will's*—i.e., Will's coffee house. It was situated in Russell Street. It was originally called the "Red Cow" and then the "Rose." It finally obtained its name from William Urwin, its keeper. This coffee house became famous by its association with Dryden. *Covent Garden*—See notes on paragraph 84. *Bow Street*—runs parallel to Drury Lane and connects Shaftesbury Avenue with Strand. *Was sacred to*—was dedicated to the service of; was reserved for. *Polite letters*—elegant literature; *belles lettres* as it is commonly called. It is an expression of somewhat vague meaning and is commonly understood to include branches of literature like Rhetoric, Poetry, History, Criticism etc. *Was sacred to polite letters*—was the usual resort of literary men and authors.

*Poetical justice*—the reward of the virtuous and the punishment of the wicked characters in poems and popular stories. **N.B.** In the Restoration period, the problem of poetic justice in literature was warmly debated by all literary men and very often crudely interpreted. Poetic justice was often meant to involve reward of the righteous and punishment of the wicked. There was a general lack of appreciation of the finer and subtler conception of poetic justice as reflected in the dramas of Shakespeare and the great Elizabethans. The dramas of Shakespeare were retouched and 'improved' in accordance with the prevailing conception of poetic justice. Dryden recast Shakespeare's *Antony and Cleopatra* into *All for Love* changing the whole tone and spirit of the original play. Many tragedies were made to end happily in order to pander to the crude and narrow notion of poetic justice.

*Unities of place and time*—the famous principle laid down by Aristotle for the composition of dramas. According to this

principle, there should be no shifting of the scene from place to place, and the whole series of events, described in a drama, should be such as may probably occur within the space of a single day. Besides the law about these two unities, Aristotle laid down a third law, *viz.*, the law of the unity of action. This law lays down that no incident, irrelevant to the development of the single plot, should be introduced in a drama. Most of the classical dramas and a number of French dramas were constructed on these principles. But the English dramas do not observe these rules. *There the talk was....time*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of Will's coffee house. He says that this house was the resort of authors and literary men. Literary questions formed the main topics of the conversation held there. The visitors, assembled at the coffee house, debated amongst themselves on the merits of different literary works. They discussed whether the characters of a play or a poem were treated by the author according to the rules of poetical justice and whether a drama had properly observed the rules about the unity of place and time.

**Faction**—party. *Perrault* (1628-1703)—a celebrated French writer who after practising as a barrister for sometime became the Comptroller General of the royal buildings. He was admitted into the French Academy in 1671; soon after this he had a famous controversy with the famous Boileau, respecting the comparative merits of the ancients (*i.e.*, Greek and Latin writers) and the moderns. Perrault maintained the superiority of the latter while Boileau as vigorously asserted that of the former. The dispute was carried on with great asperity and personal rudeness on both sides. The work by which Perrault is best known is entitled "*The History of the Illustrious Men of the age of Louis XIV.*" Boileau—Nicholas Boileau (1636-1711) was a famous French poet, satirist and critic. He was a contemporary of Moliere and exercised a powerful influence on the literature of the age both of France and of other countries in Europe. His best known works are his *L'art poetique* and *Satires*. *There was a faction etc.*—The controversy about the comparative merits of the ancient and modern authors gradually spread to England. In England the controversy began with the publication of Sir William Temple's *Essay on Ancient and Modern Learning* in 1692.

*Group*—party. *Debated*—argued. *Paradise Lost*—Milton's famous poem on the fall of man. It is regarded as the greatest epic in the English language. *Paradise Lost* was published in 1667. *Ought not to have been in rhyme*—*Paradise Lost* is written in blank verse. Dryden transformed it into a rhymed opera under the name of *State of Innocence*. Dryden's work bears no comparison with Milton's poem. N. B. In fact, the craze for rhyme or rather the rhyming heroic couplet blinded even men of literary genius to the beauty and majesty of blank verse. Milton in the preface to *Paradise Lost* had attacked the heroic couplet in scathing terms as "the invention of a barbarous age to set off wretched matter and lame metre." Dryden, on the other hand, wrote in this strain about the excellence of the rhyming couplet:—"The advantages which rhyme has over blank verse are so many that it were lost time to name them. Sir Philip Sidney, in his *Defence of Poesy*, gives us one, which, in my opinion, is not the least considerable; I mean the help it brings to memory, which rhyme so knits up, by the affinity of sounds, that, by remembering the last word in the line, we often call to mind both the verses. But that benefit which I consider most in it, is that it bounds and circumscribes the fancy. The great easiness of blank verse renders the poet too luxuriant; he is tempted to say many things which might better be omitted, or at least shut up in fewer words; but when the difficulty of artful rhyming is interposed, where the poet commonly confines his sense to his couplet, and must contrive his sense into such words that the rhyme shall naturally follow them, not they the rhyme, the fancy then gives leisure to the judgment to come in, which, seeing so heavy a tax imposed, is ready to cut off all unnecessary expenses."

*To another*—i.e., to another group. *Envious*—mean and malicious; jealous of the literary genius of Otway, the author of *Venice Preserved*. The age was notorious for the malice and spite that authors displayed for one another. Poets and dramatists of lesser note were often engaged in personal bickerings and even vehement attacks, writing lampoons and satires to hold up rivals to ridicule. Even Dryden, the greatest literary man of the age, was not spared. *Poetaster*—poet of little worth or merit; a pitiful rhymist. *Demonstrated*—proved. '*Venice Preserved*'—one of Thomas Otway's famous dramas, produced in 1628. *Ought to have been hooted from the*

*stage*—The drama was so worthless that its representation should have been stopped by the audience with shouts of contempt; it was so bad that it did not deserve to be staged at all. It was the malice of the critic that led him to hold such a poor opinion of such a great work of art as *Venice Preserved*. This drama is rightly regarded as one of the greatest dramas in the English language. *Under no roof*—in no coffee house. *Variety of figures*—persons of different social position and character. *Stars*—decorations rayed like a star and worn on the breast to indicate rank or honour; Cf. *Star of India*. *Garters*—See notes on paragraph 95. *Cassock*—See notes on paragraph 57. *Bands*—linen ornaments worn by clergymen about the neck; in this sense the word is commonly used in the plural.

*Pert*—forward; smart. *Templars*—barristers and law-students; they are so called because they have their chambers in the Temple. *Sheepish*—opposite of pert; diffident; bashful and embarrassed. *Index makers*—makers of indexes; an *index* is a table of references to the contents of a book attached at the end. *Translators and index makers*—i.e., literary men of humble ranks; hack writers. *Frieze*—a sort of coarse woollen cloth with a shaggy nap on one side; it may roughly be compared to the *puttoo* of our country. *Under no roof was a greater.....frieze*—Men belonging to different ranks of society and of different occupations were to be found in Will's coffee house. The visitors to this house included noblemen of the highest distinctions, clergymen, clad in their professional gowns smart barristers, diffident young students from the universities and poor literary men of the humblest rank, clad in their tattered coarse dress.

*Press*—crowding; pushing forward. *John Dryden* (1631-1700)—the greatest poet and author of the age. *The great press was etc.*—The visitors crowded near Dryden's chair, every one trying to come near the great poet and listen to his conversation. *Nook*—corner. *By the fire*—close to the fire-place. *Balcony*—a platform projecting in front of a building. *In winter that chair.....balcony*—Dryden was always given the most comfortable seat in the coffee house. In the cold weather his chair stood by the fire-place in the warmest spot in the room. In summer he took his seat in the cool balcony before the window. *To bow to him*—to come near the great

poet and have the privilege of shewing him respect. *Racine* (1639—1699)—an eminent French tragic dramatist. His *Andromaque*, *Athalie* and *Berenice* are some of his best productions. He was a contemporary of Moliere, the greatest of the French comic dramatists. *Tragedy*—drama ending in a mournful catastrophe; বিয়োগান্ত নাটক। *Bossu*—an eminent French critic of the age: his best known work was a *Treatise on Epic Poetry*. Dryden's opinions on drama and poetry of the age were published in his "Essay of Dramatic Poesy" and in the various prefaces to his poems and plays.

*Treatise*—essay. *Epic poetry*—poetry which deals with the fortunes or achievements of distinguished heroes in elevated language. The *Iliad* in Greek, the *Aeneid* in Latin and *Paradise Lost* in English are the best examples of epic poems; মহাকাব্য। *Privilege*—great pleasure and honour. *A pinch*—a small quantity of snuff, held between the thumb and fore-finger. *Snuff-box*—Macaulay has previously referred to the fact that the use of snuff was common in respectable societies in those times. *Turn the head of*—infatuate; inspire with wild enthusiasm. *Enthusiast*—admirer. *A pinch from his.....enthusiast*—Macaulay describes in this sentence the high esteem in which Dryden was held by his contemporaries. The visitors to Will's coffee house would crowd round him. They would listen eagerly to his conversation on literary topics. If the poet offered his snuff-box to any of his young hearers, then the latter felt it to be a rare honour and ran wild with enthusiasm. *The first*—the greatest.

*Doctor John Radcliffe* (1650-1714)—was one of the most eminent physicians of his age. He settled in London in 1684. He soon acquired a great reputation to which his ready wit and conversational powers greatly contributed. He was frequently consulted by William III, Queen Mary and Queen Anne. He amassed a considerable fortune and left £40,000 for the foundation of the Radcliffe Library in Oxford. *Exchange*—See notes on paragraph 95. *When the Exchange was full*—when the business activity of the city was at its height and the Exchange was full of business men. *Then a fashionable part of the capital*—i.e., this quarter of the town was then inhabited by men of rank and wealth. *Garraway's*—a coffee house in

Change Alley in Cornhill. Tea was first retailed in this house. *Apothecaries*—practitioners of an inferior grade who are permitted to practise medicine and deal in drugs. *A particular table*—A table was specially reserved for the famous doctor.

“Regular customers had their own seats, and were of course the objects of special attention from the lady superintendent at the bar and her attendant satellites.”—*Sidney*.

*No oath was heard*—because the Puritans condemned it as sinful. *Lankhaired*—with thin or meagre hair on their heads. The Puritans were generally in the habit of clipping their hair very short. See notes on ‘Roundheads’. *Discussed*—held debates on. *Election*—the doctrine of pre-destination that forms the distinctive feature of Calvinistic theology. The Puritans followed the doctrines of Calvin, one of which lays down that God has pre-destined some men for salvation. These are the objects of God’s special favour and grace and are sanctified and prepared for heaven. *Reprobation*—the opposite of election. As the Calvinistic doctrine lays down on the one hand that certain men are pre-destined to eternal life so it lays down on the other that some men have been set apart for eternal punishment or perdition. The men so fore-ordained are called reprobates. *Through their noses*—A nasal twang is popularly supposed to be a mark of superior sanctity.

*Jew coffee houses*—for example Jonathan’s. *Dark eyed*—a Jewish feature. The Jews being an oriental race possess darker eyes than the Europeans. Though these men were like Europeans in dress and complexion, their dark eyes betrayed them to be Jews. *Money changers*—money-brokers. These men performed the function of Exchange-banks of modern times, *i.e.*, they changed foreign coins into the currency of the country. In those times the business was mostly in the hands of the Jews. *Venice*—in Italy at the head of the Adriatic Sea. In those times Venice was an independent republic and one of the most advanced of European states. She was a great centre of commercial activity and of arts. *Amsterdam*—capital of Holland; see notes on paragraph 76. *From Venice and from Amsterdam*—These towns being in those times centres of extensive trade naturally contained large Jewish colonies. *Greeted each other*—welcomed each other as being of the same race and profession.



*Popish*—Roman Catholic *Good*—used here with a touch of humour for 'bigoted'; 'fanatical.' *Jesuits*—members of the famous Roman Catholic order founded by Ignatius Loyola in 1534. This order exercised a very powerful influence in checking the progress of the Reformation. The members have to take the vow of poverty, chastity, perfect obedience and complete submission to the Pope. They were accused of meddling with political affairs and fomenting plots to attain their ends. For such intrigues they were several times expelled from even Catholic countries like France and Spain. *Planned*—plotted. *Another great fire etc.*—The reference is to the wild tales circulated against the Roman Catholics in general and the Jesuits in particular by Titus Oates, the notorious discoverer of the Popish Plot in 1678. He declared that the Catholics had formed a plan for murdering the King and his ministers and landing in England with a large army in order that the country might be converted back into Catholicism. The last fire had been, as he said, the work of the Catholics and they proposed to burn down London once more. "The Pope he (Titus Oates) said had entrusted the government of England to the Jesuits. The Jesuits had by commissions under the seal of their society, appointed Roman Catholic clergymen, noblemen and gentlemen to all the highest offices in Church and State. The Papists had burned down London once. They had tried to burn it down again. They were at that moment planning a scheme for setting fire to all the shipping in the Thames. They were to rise at a signal and massacre all their Protestant neighbours. A French army was at the same time to land in Ireland. All the leading statesmen and divines of England were to be murdered. Three or four schemes had been formed for assassinating the King. He was to be stabbed. He was to be poisoned in his medicine. He was to be shot with silver bullets."—Macaulay's *History of England*, Chap. II.

So widespread was the belief that the Great Fire in London was the work of Roman Catholics that the inscription on the monument that was raised to commemorate it attributed it to "papistical malice."

These lying allegations of Oates naturally inflamed the public mind to fury and very cruel measures were taken against innocent Catholics in England.

*Cast*—found; form into a particular shape by pouring liquid metal into a mould; ঢালাই করা। *Silver bullets*—The reference is to the wide-spread popular superstition of former times that certain wicked men were under the special protection of the infernal powers and that therefore they were immune against leaden bullets. To a fanatical Roman Catholic, Protestantism was the greatest sin and impiety of which a Christian could be guilty. Therefore the King of an impious country like England must be under the special protection of Satan and the spirits of darkness. He could therefore be killed only with silver bullets. There was a tradition that Dundee was killed with a silver bullet in the battle of Killiecrankie.

*Popish coffee houses.....the King*—There were coffee houses where Roman Catholics especially the Jesuits assembled. Their only aim was to bring back England to Roman Catholicism and into the fold of the Roman Catholic Church. So while drinking coffee they plotted how they would destroy London by fire and even manufacture silver bullets with which to shoot the King, who, they believed, was immune against leaden bullets. [Of course, this sort of idea about the supposed evil tendencies of Roman Catholics and Jesuits was based upon the ignorance and prejudices of the English people. The English people were mostly Protestants and greatly disliked and distrusted the Roman Catholics.]

**Paragraph 100.** The character of the Londoners differed widely from that of the rustic Englishmen. This was due to

Page 164. Footnote.—*Vanbrugh*—Sir John Vanbrugh (1664-1726) was a famous English architect and dramatist. The palatial edifice of Blenheim was designed by him. Amongst his dramas the best known are "*The Relapse*" and "*The Provoked Wife*." *Lord Sunderland* (1640-1702) was perhaps the most unscrupulous of English politicians of his age. Though a Secretary of State in the reign of Charles II, he joined the Exclusionists for which he was dismissed from his office. By his subtle contrivances he afterwards won the favour of James II and became the Lord President of his Council. After the Revolution he fled to Holland but subsequently returned to England and regained some of his former influence. *Court tunc*—contemptuous for fashionable pronunciation. *Titus Oates* (1649-1705)—the notorious liar who fabricated the "Popish Plot" of 1678 that led to the persecution of the Catholics and the execution of a number of innocent men. *Affected*—imitated in an unnatural manner. *Passing*, for—being regarded as. *Chitl* (1675-1747)—a bookseller and pamphleteer. *The City and Country Mouse*—a parody by Prior of Dryden's *Hind and Panther*, published in 1687.]

the absence of any intercourse between the town and the country. Londoners were seldom seen in the villages. Also a rustic Englishman could be quickly distinguished in London by his uncouth dress and ways. He was easily recognised by cheats and bullies as a suitable victim and he had to undergo no end of vexation and humiliation.

*Gregarious habits*—properly habits of living in flocks and herds like the lower animals; hence sociable habits; disposition to live in company. *Had no small share*—had a very powerful influence. *Forming*—shaping. *Londoner*—citizen of London. *A different being*—a man quite unlike. *Rustic Englishman*—Englishman who lived in the country or a village. *Intercourse*—communication. *Two classes*—viz., the townsmen and the villagers. *Dividing the year between town and country*—spending a few months every year in the town and living during the remaining period in the country. N.B. It is now the fashion for respectable and well-to-do families to visit London during the season, i.e., the winter months. *Esquires*—(Lat. *scutum*, a shield) originally a shield-bearer or an attendant on a knight; hence in modern times a title of dignity next in degree below a knight; the title is now popularly given to a country gentleman; in this sense the word is shortened into *squire*. *Nor was it yet the practice*—as it has since become. *Citizens*—i.e., of London. *Easy*—well-to-do; comfortable. *Nor was it yet the practice of all citizens etc.*—It had not yet become the fashion of well-to-do Londoners to spend a few weeks of summer in the country as they do now.

*Cockney*—a word of doubtful origin formerly used of a foolish effeminate person; now used to mean a Londoner (sometimes by way of contempt). *Stared at*—gazed at with wonder and surprise. *Intruded*—thrust himself. *Kraal*—a word used by the natives of South Africa for a village or a collection of huts. *Hottentots*—a degraded tribe of the natives of South Africa. *A cockney etc.*—If a Londoner ever found his way into the country he was viewed with as much astonishment by the villagers as if he had entered into a village inhabited by the most backward tribes of South Africa. His smart dress and polished manners would strike the rustics as strange and new, just as the bearing of a civilised man would excite curiosity and wonder in the minds of the savage Hottentots.

**N.B.** This sentence may be mentioned as an instance of exaggeration in which Macaulay frequently indulged for artistic purposes. *Lincolnshire*—See notes on paragraph 40. *Shropshire*—an English county bordering on Wales. *Manor*—See notes on paragraph 18. *Distinguished*—marked out. *Resident population*—people who resided in the city. *Lascar*—(Hindustani *lashkar*, an army or crew) commonly used to mean an Indian sailor serving on a merchant vessel. *Dress*—*viz.*, of an obsolete fashion.

*Gait*—style of walk. *Accent*—pronunciation; Londoners speak with a peculiar intonation commonly known as the cockney accent. *The manner etc.*—the gaping wonder with which he gazed at the richly decorated shops. *Stumbled into*—fell into as he walked staring at curious objects. *Ran against*—collided with as he walked with his eyes fixed on the shop fronts or other noticeable objects on the road. *Waterspouts*—pipes through which the water on the roofs of houses is discharged on the ground. *Marked him out*—pointed him out. *Excellent subject*—suitable victim. *Operations*—tricks; pranks. *Scoundrels*—cheats. *Banterers*—persons inclined to jest at or to make fun of others; ভাষা বা কৌতুককারী। *Bullies*—See notes on paragraph 90. *Jostled*—pushed; hustled. *Kennel*—See notes on paragraph 90.

*Splashed him etc.*—spattered him with water and mud all over by mischievously driving their coaches close to him. *Explored*—rummaged; searched; *ie*, picked. *With perfect security*—quite safely. They knew from the way in which the rustie stared at the show that he would not be able to perceive that his pocket was being picked. *Horseman's coat*—riding cloak. *Entranced*—charmed; fascinated. *Lord Mayor's show*—Lord Mayor's procession—a public pageant in which the citizens of London find great delight and amusement.

*Moneydroppers*—cheats or sharpers who form acquaintance with their victim by asking him about a coin which they pretend to have picked up and thus try to win his confidence. They drop their own coin on the street and ask an intended victim whether it belonged to him. In this way they strike up an acquaintance with their victim. *Sore from the cart's tail*—recently undergone a sentence of whipping for such crimes.

Cheats and sharpers were tied to a cart and were drawn through the town when they underwent the sentence of whipping. *Sore*—still suffering from the pain caused by the lashes. *Introduced themselves to him*—struck up acquaintance with him. *Appeared to him etc.*—These cheats generally sought to win their victim's confidence by professions of friendship in order that they might securely defraud him. *Painted women*—women of the town (prostitutes) who applied artificial colour to their faces in order to beautify them. *Refuse*—dregs; scum. *Lewkner Lane and Whetstone Park*—quarters of London inhabited by women of the class referred to above. Lewkner Lane is near Drury Lane, and Whetstone Park is near Lincoln's Inn Fields. *Passed themselves on him for*—palmed themselves off on him as; fraudulently represented themselves as. *Maid of honour*—high-born ladies who attend on the queen.

*Saint James's*—in the west end of London. *Informants*—persons whom he asked for directions. *Mile End*—in the east end of London. *Instantly discerned*—at once recognised by the shop-keepers. *Everything that nobody else would buy*—all the unsaleable rubbish that the shop contained. *Embroidery*—cloth with ornamental needlework. *Secondhand*—not new; having been used or worn. *Copper rings*—gilded rings passed off as being made of gold. *Would not go*—was out of order.

*Rambled*—wandered. *Mark*—butt; target; object of attack. *Derision*—contempt; ridicule. *Waggery*—sarcasm; pleasantry. *Templars*—See notes on paragraph 99. *Mortified*—humiliated; chagrined. *Mansion*—country residence. *Homage*—(Lat. *homo*, a man) was in feudal time a formal acknowledgment of submission made by a tenant to his feudal lord; hence respect; deference. *Boon*—(Fr. *bon*, good) merry; jovial. *Consolation*—comfort; solace. *Vexations and humiliations*—troubles and insults. *Undergone*—endured in the town. *A great man*—a man of importance and consequence.

*He saw nothing above him*—because he was the most important personage in his village. *Assizes*—See notes on page 65. *He took his seat on etc.*—He being the sheriff of his district had to attend the assize court when it held its sittings within his jurisdiction. *Muster*—assembling of troops for drilling and inspection. It has been pointed out in paragraph 17 that the militia was mustered once every year to undergo training for

a period of fourteen days. *Militia*—See notes on paragraph 16. *Salute*—show respect or honour to a superior officer in the manner prescribed for soldiers. The country gentlemen, holding commissions in the militia, had to salute the Lord Lieutenant at the annual muster of the troops.

*Lord Lieutenant*—See notes on paragraph 17. The Lord Lieutenants are the officers commanding the militia of their counties. *There he once more*.....*Lord Lieutenant—Expl.* After undergoing various humiliations in the town, the country squire returned to his village home. Here he was again a man of great importance. Indeed he was the highest personage in his district. The only persons whom he knew to be his superiors were (1) the judge upon whom he had to attend during the session of the assize courts (2) and the Lord Lieutenant of the shire whom he had to salute as a subordinate military officer when the militia was mustered for annual review and training.

**Paragraph 101.** The difference in life and manners that separated Londoners from rustic Englishmen was mainly due to bad roads and other difficulties of communication. Improved means of transport—better roads, etc.—have been a very important factor of the advance of civilisation.

*Fusion*—union. *Elements*—classes; sections. *Imperfect*—incomplete. *Extreme*—serious; great. *Our ancestors*—Englishmen of former ages. *Passing from place to place*—travelling from one place to another. *The chief cause which etc.*—The difficulty of travelling from one place to another was the main cause that kept the different sections of the people apart and prevented them from mingling with one another to form a homogeneous whole. Thus the people of the town and the people of the country (*i.e.*, villages) were so utterly different, because absence of the facility of intercourse made them strangers to one another. *The alphabet*—*i.e.*, the system of writing with the help of letters. See notes on paragraph 93. *Printing press*—machine for printing books. The art of printing was invented by Gutenberg, a German, about 1450; the first printing press in England was established by William Caxton about 1474. *Abridge*—shorten. *Inventions which abridge distance*—Improved means of locomotion by lessening the time taken in travelling from one place to another practically serve to bring the two

places nearer to each other. *Have done most for*—have rendered the greatest help to. *Our species*—i.e., the human race. *Of all inventions etc.*—**Expl.** The invention of improved means of travel has, by lessening distance, greatly advanced human civilisation. The progress of human civilisation owes a greater debt to this invention than to any other except the alphabet and the printing press. **N.B.** It should be remembered that Macaulay wrote this book only a few years after the invention of Stephenson's steam-engine and the establishment of the railroad in England. Stephenson's steam-engine effected a revolution in the means of locomotion.

*Locomotion*—movement from place to place. *Morally*—because by travelling to distant countries a man is cured of his narrow prejudices. *Intellectually*—because travel stores the mind with knowledge. *Materially*—because improved means of locomotion help the growth of commerce and the interchange of productions between distant countries. *Facilitates*—helps; renders easy. *Interchange*—exchange. *Productions of nature and art*—agricultural and factory produce; raw materials and finished articles. *Tends*—contributes. *Antipathies*—hostility; feelings of aversion and enmity. *National and provincial antipathies*—hostility between different nations and between the different provinces of a country. *Bind*—unite. *The branches of .....family*—the different races of mankind. *Every improvement of the means etc.*—Any progress, made in the means of communication (roads, conveyances, etc.) between distant places, confers great blessings on man. It broadens his outlook, stores his mind with knowledge and helps the exchange of the articles produced in different countries. By means of such inventions the rivalry and prejudice between the different nations or between one province of a country and another are removed. The different races of mankind are united together by the ties of brotherhood and love. *For almost every practical purpose*—so far as the time taken in or the difficulty experienced in travelling from one place to the other was concerned. *Farther*—at a greater distance. *Reading*—a town near the eastern border of Berkshire. *Than they now are*—i.e., after the establishment of the railway connecting London with Edinburgh. *Edinburgh*—capital of Scotland. *Vienna*—capital of Austria.

**Paragraph 102.** The principle of the steam-engine, that has effected a revolution in human affairs, was not unknown in

the time of Charles II. The Marquess of Worcester had noticed the expansive power of steam and constructed a rude sort of steam-engine. His invention did not meet with favourable reception because he was suspected to be a mad man and a Papist. In fact, the improved means of communication, which the invention of the Marquess offered, were not taken advantage of. And the other means of communication were not developed. No canals were in existence to facilitate communication.

*Unacquainted with*—ignorant of. *That principle*—that law of nature on which the steam-engine is based, *viz*, the use of steam as a motive power. This principle in a rudimentary form is said to have been known even to some of the ancient Greek scientists. *Unprecedented*—unexampled. *Human affairs*—human life and concerns. *Produced an unprecedented etc.*—radically changed human life and society. *Advance*—move forward. *In the teeth of*—against. *Which has enabled etc.*—Formerly sailing ships were moved by wind and tide, but the modern steam-ships are independent of these. *Battalions*—regiments of soldiers. *Baggage*—tent, clothing and other necessities of an army on the march. *Artillery*—ordnance; great guns. *Traverse*—pass over; cross. *Pace*—rate. *Fleetest*—swiftest. *Battalions attended etc.*—The reference is to soldiers carried in railway trains.

Macauley speaks only of two benefits derived from the use of the steam-engine. Whole fleets are now driven by steam-power and do not depend on the mercy of wind and tide. Regiments of soldiers with all their arms and ammunitions can now be moved from place to place quickly in steam-driven railways. The speed of a railway train was in Macauley's time probably equal to that of the swiftest race-horse, but it is very much greater now.

*Marquess of Worcester*—Edward Somerset, Marquess of Worcester (1601—1667), fought on the side of Charles I during the Civil War. After the Restoration he recovered his estates that had been confiscated during the commonwealth and devoted himself to mechanical experiments. His "*Century of Inventions*" appeared in 1663 in which he suggested a machine for "driving up water by fire" "This was a very ingenious adumbration of a steam pumping-engine but



there is no evidence of any practical attempt by Worcester to give effect to such an idea." *Expansive power*—power of expanding or of growing in volume. *Moisture*—water. *Rarefied*—rendered thin or less dense. *Expansive power etc.*—The tendency of steam is to expand in volume and thus to act as a motive power. *Experiments*—trials. *Rude*—as opposed to 'well-finished'. *Fire water work*—machine worked by the power of fire on water. *Pronounced*—declared. *Admirable*—useful. *Forcible*—powerful. *Instrument of propulsion*—engine for the production of motive power. *Propulsion*—act of driving forward; motion. *Papist*—N.B. Roman Catholics were so much hated that even the inventions of the Marquess who was a Catholic were not seriously considered. *Found no favourable reception*—was not warmly received by the public. *Conversation*—discussion. *Furnish matter for.....society*—serve as a suitable subject for the learned discussions of a body of scientists. *Practical purpose*—actual use. *Royal Society*—See notes on paragraph 94.

*There were no railways etc.*—The only railroads then existing were a few short wooden tram lines over which carts were drawn by men or animals. *Northumbrian*—pertaining to Northumberland. *Pits*—mines. *The banks of the Tyne*—i.e., the place of shipment. *Tyne*—a river in Northumberland on which the port of Newcastle stands. *Internal communication*—communication between different parts of the country. *Deepen*—remove the silt from the bed; dredge. *Embank*—to enclose a river within banks to ensure a deep flow of water. *Natural streams*—i.e., rivers (as distinguished from canals). *With slender success*—i.e., all these attempts failed. For example, several attempts were made to maintain the flow of the Fleet river in London but all such attempts proved unsuccessful. *Navigable canal*—canal on which boats may ply. *Projected*—proposed; planned. *With mingled admiration and despair*—because they considered such a great feat to be beyond their powers. *Trench*—canal. *Lewis the Fourteenth*—the great King of France who ruled that country from 1643 to 1715. He raised France to a leading position amongst the countries in Europe. *Had made a junction between*—connected.

*Junction between the Atlantic and the Mediterranean*—The reference is to the great canal known as Langue doc Canal or

Canal de Midi (south) constructed in 1666—81. The rivers Gironde and the Garonne give access from the Atlantic to Toulouse; from this point Langue doc Canal gradually rises by locks to a summit of 600 feet at Naurose and then descends in a similar manner to Narbonne on the Gulf of Lyons. The canal is 148 miles long and the number of locks is 119. This canal is also called *Canal des deux mers* (canal of two seas) because it connects the Atlantic with the Mediterranean Sea. *In the course of a few generations*—The construction of canals in England received a great impetus in the latter part of the 18th century. The famous Bridgewater canal was constructed in 1761: this was shortly followed by other canals in other parts of the country. *Intersected*—divided. *At the cost of private adventurers*—The English canals unlike those in France were constructed by private parties and not by the state. The Bridgewater canal was dug at the cost and initiation of the Duke of Bridgewater. *Artificial rivers*—canals. *Making up more than etc.*—In modern times there are over 300 miles of canals in England. *The Thames, the Severn and the Trent*—the largest rivers in England.

**Paragraph 103.** Highways were the only means of communication and transport. Their condition was unsatisfactory and in places dangerous. Often they could not be distinguished from the surrounding fields. So people ran the risk of losing their way in the dark. In wet weather, mud would settle deep on both sides of the road leaving only a narrow strip in the middle available for traffic. In bad seasons they would become impassable for floods. Coaches would frequently stick fast in the mire. Horses would be brought from the neighbouring farm to pull them out. The produce of the markets would sometimes fail to reach the market on account of the badness of the roads. In some districts wheeled carriages were pulled by oxen.

*Highways*—public roads. *Attained*—reached; acquired. *Appear to have been far etc.*—were much worse than what a country like England, as it was in those times, should have possessed. The country was rich and much advanced in civilisation. The roads, therefore, should have been well-kept so as to afford easy means of communication between different parts of the country. *Best lines of communication*—

best-kept roads. *Ruts*—tracks left on the road by the wheels of a coach. *The descents precipitous*—i.e., the downward slopes were steep. (England is not a level country; so the roads have ups and downs.) *Distinguish*—recognise. *Dusk*—evening. *Uninclosed*—not surrounded with fences. *Ralph Thoresby* (1658—1725)—an antiquary and topographer; he wrote a number of topographical works on Leeds. His diary was published in 1830. *Antiquary*—one devoted to the study of ancient society and civilisation; *ঐতিহাসিক*. *The great North road*—the highroad connecting London with York and the other towns in the north. This was one of the most important roads in the country. *Barnby Moor*—at a short distance from East Retford in Nottinghamshire. *Tuxford*—about 12 miles north of Newark in Nottinghamshire.

*Was in danger of losing his way etc.*—a slight exaggeration on Macaulay's part to serve his purpose. Thoresby only says that he happened to be separated from his companions and had to ride a long distance alone in a place where it was easy for a man to lose his way in a dark evening. *Doncaster*—a town in the West Riding of Yorkshire; now famous for the horse-races held there. *Actually lost his way etc.*—This occurred on 31st August, 1712. The day happened to be a Sunday Thoresby attributed the mishap to his having impiously undertaken a journey on that day. *Travelling in their own coach*—This was the way in which respectable people travelled in those times. *Newbury*—a town in Berkshire. *Reading*—See notes on paragraph 101. *Lost their way etc.*—This occurred on 16th June, 1668. This was a very trivial incident as will appear from Pepys's description—"So out and lost our way but come into it again; and in the evening betimes come to Reding."

*Tour*—journey. *They lost their way near Salisbury*—This incident occurred on 11th June, 1668. The following is Pepys's account of it. "Thence about six o'clock, and with a guide went over the smooth plain indeed till night and then by a happy mistake, and that looked like an adventure, we were carried out of our way to a town where we would lie, since we could not go as far as we would. By and by to bed, glad of this mistake, because it seems had we gone on as we pretended, we could not have passed with our coach,

and must have lain on the plain all night." *Salisbury*—a town in Wiltshire. *Were in danger of having etc.*—but the fact was quite the other way about, as will appear from Pepys's remark quoted above. *Was available*—could be utilised. *Vehicles*—conveyances; carriages. *Track*—path; way. *Quagmire*—properly bog or fen; here soft, wet ground; mass of mud. This is based on Pepys's account as Macaulay points out in the footnote. His account runs as follows:—"Then to London through the forest, here we found the way good, but only in one path, which we kept as if we had rode through a kennel all the way." *Obstructions*—obstacles. The carriages facing each other in the middle of the way would not permit either to proceed on its way. *Blocked up*—barred; obstructed. *Carriers*—persons who carry goods or passengers for hire. *Break the way*—leave the firm central ground of the road and swerve to allow another to pass; force a passage through obstacles, *i.e.*, would not leave the firm ground to drive their carriages through the mud that lay deep on both sides of the road. *Stuck fast*—the wheels lay deeply embedded in the mud. *A team of cattle*—a number of horses. *Procured*—obtained. *Tug*—pull with great effort; draw with labour. *Slough*—a place full of deep mud or mire.

*Bad*—foul; inclement. *Encounter inconveniences*—face or meet with difficulties. *Leeds*—See notes on paragraph 69. *Capital*—London. *Diary*—record of daily observances and occurrences. *Series*—long list. *Perils*—dangers; risks. *Disasters*—sudden misfortunes or calamities. One entry in his Diary reads as follows:—"The next day the road was full of snow. and, which was worse, upon a continued ice almost the melted snow being frozen again, that made it dangerous and very troublesome." *Suffice for*—benefit. *Frozen ocean*—the ice-bound seas in the extreme north or south of the earth. A large number of voyagers perished in attempting to discover the north-east passage through the Arctic Seas. *Desert of Sahara*—the great desert between the Soudan and the Barbary States extending along the whole breadth of Africa. *Has recorded in his Diary etc.*—The dangers and the risks were so many in number that they might well suit the description of a journey to a dangerous region like the Arctic Seas or the Desert of Sahara.

*The floods were out*—a flood had occurred. *Ware*—a town in Hertfordshire. *Swim for their lives*—swim as hard as they could; make the greatest exertions to save themselves by swimming. *Higgler*—hawker of provisions. *Perished*—been drowned. *Turned out of*—left. *Conducted*—led; guided. *Saddle skirts*—border or edge of the saddle. *Ride to the saddle etc.*—ride through water reaching up to the saddle. *Narrowly*—barely. *Swept away*—carried off. *Inundation*—flood. *Trent*—a river in England; see notes on paragraph 9. *Detained*—stopped; delayed. *Stamford*—a town on the border of Lincolnshire. *The state*—the flooded condition. *Fourteen members etc.*—From Thoresby's account it appears that there were altogether fourteen men in the party including the members of the House of Commons. *Going up in a body*—travelling in a party. *Took him into their company*—permitted him to travel with them. *Derbyshire*—This county is mostly hilly and so the roads are often steep and precipitous. *Were in constant fear of their necks*—ran the risk of falling from their horses and breaking their necks because of the steep and abrupt descents of the roads. *Alight*—dismount from their horses. *Lead their beasts*—walk on foot with the horses by their side.

*Route*—road. *Holyhead*—a town in the Island of Holyhead at the north western extremity of Wales. *Such a state*—such an impassable condition. *A Viceroy*—The reference is to Henry Hyde, second Earl of Clarendon, who acted as the Viceroy of Ireland in 1685-86. *A Viceroy* is a high officer of state who rules a country as the King's substitute. *Was five hours*—took five hours. *Saint Asaph*—a town in Denbighshire in North Wales. *Conway*—a town in Carnarvonshire in North Wales. *Beaumaris*—capital of Anglesey in Wales. *Litter*—a conveyance in the form of a bed between two shafts on which a person may be borne by men or horses; शिबिका।

*Hands*—men; labourers. *Entire*—i.e., without being pulled to pieces. *Taken to pieces*—dismantled; divided into different parts. *Welsh*—adjective from 'Wales.' *Menai Straits*—the narrow strait separating Anglesey from the mainland of Wales. It is now crossed by a suspension bridge. *Kent and Sussex*—counties in the south of England. *In winter*—Winter is not a dry season in England as it is with us. It is the season

of rain and snow. *Bog*—morass; deep mud. *Were often inaccessible*—could not frequently be reached. *Fruits of the earth*—agricultural produce: corn, fruits and vegetables. *Were suffered to*—had to be allowed to. *Rot*—to be decomposed or to decay. *Fell far short of*—was much less than. *The supply fell far short of etc.*—These articles were badly needed; the people did not receive an adequate supply of these articles. *Wheeled carriages*—conveyances moving on wheels as distinguished from litters or chairs carried by men.

*Prince George of Denmark* (1653—1708)—husband of Queen Anne whom he married in 1683. He deserted James II in 1688 and was refused the title of a king on his wife's accession. *Stately mansion*—magnificent palace. *Petworth*—near Chichester in Sussex. The palace belonged to the Duke of Somerset. *He was six hours in going nine miles*—He took six hours in travelling nine miles. *A body of sturdy hinds*—a number of strong peasants. *Sturdy*—strong. *Hinds*—peasants. *Prop*—support. *Retinue*—attendants; followers. *Upset*—overturned. *His gentlemen in waiting*—officers of the prince's household. *Courtier*—attendant on the prince. *Never once alighted*—because the roads were full of mud. *Overturned*—upset. *Stuck fast*—firmly fixed. *Stuck fast in the mud*—When this happened, the passengers had to dismount to lighten the coach so that it might be pulled out of the mud.

**Paragraph 104.** Bad law was responsible for the badness of the roads. The law of those times required every parish to repair the road passing through it by the voluntary labour of the peasants. Hired labour, employed for mending the roads, had to be paid for by a parochial rate. But the poor people of the parishes were unwilling to pay for the repair of roads which primarily benefited the rich people of the cities. Soon

[Page 174, Footnote—*Cotton*—Charles Cotton (1630—87) was a poet and miscellaneous writer. He published a second part of Walton's "*Complete Angler*" in 1676.]

[Page 175, Footnote—*Henry Earl of Clarendon* (1638—1709)—was the eldest son of the first Earl of Clarendon. He played an active part in the politics of his age. His "*Diary and Correspondence*" appeared in 1828. *Postlethwaite* (1707—1767)—a writer on economics; was the author of "*The Universal Dictionary of Trade and Commerce*" published in 1751. *Hawkhurst*—a town in Sussex and Kent near Cranbrook.]

after the Restoration, a Turn-pike Act was passed levying a small toll on travellers and goods for the repair of the roads.

*Defective*—faulty. *Parish*—originally an ecclesiastical district under the jurisdiction of a priest. In modern times a parish is an important subdivision of the country for the purposes of local self-government; the local rates and taxes are mostly raised within its area. [*parish*, n. Subdivision of county, having its own church and clergyman; (also *civil p.*) district constituted for administration of Poor Law etc.—*Oxford Dictionary*.]

*Bound*—required by law. *Gratuitous*—free; voluntary. *Hired labour*—labourers who had to be paid for their work. *Parochial rate*—tax levied on the inhabitants of the parish. *Thriving*—flourishing; prosperous. *Maintained*—kept up. *Rural population*—inhabitants of villages. *Scattered*—thinly spread. *Obviously*—manifestly. **NB.** The parishes were thinly peopled and the parishioners were poor. The towns were thickly populated and were rich and prosperous. The roads that facilitated trade between towns should in all fairness have been maintained by the townsmen. *Peculiarly glaring*—particularly manifest. *The great North road*—See notes on paragraph 103. *Traversed*—passed through. *Thinly inhabited*—sparsely peopled. *Populous*—thickly peopled. *Huntingdonshire*—an inland county between Cambridgeshire and Northamptonshire. *Mend*—repair. *Worn*—damaged. *West Riding*—one of the three divisions of Yorkshire. Leeds is situated in the West Riding. *Riding* in this sense is only an abbreviated form of *thriding*, i.e., a third part. The road, passing through the Huntingdon parishes, was damaged by the heavy commercial traffic that passed between London and Leeds. It was unfair that the poor Huntingdon parishes should be asked to repair the road that chiefly benefited the London and Leeds merchants.

*Grievance*—hardship; complaint. *Attracted the notice*—drew the attention. *Act*—law. *Turnpike*—a gate across a road for the purpose of stopping coaches and waggons to levy a small tax or toll from them for using the road. The toll so levied is used for keeping the road in repair. *Turnpike acts*—laws permitting the establishment of toll-gates on roads. "Acts of Parliament followed each other in quick succession so that the immediate charge of maintaining the roads was levied

upon travellers, the necessary funds being raised by means of tolls. This led to the erection of numerous barriers consisting of either poles or bars, swung on pivots one way or the other, as the tolls were paid" (*Sidney*). *Imposing*—levying. *Toll*—tax; duty. *This important line of communication*—the great North road. *Innovation*—change. *Excited many murmurs*—roused much discontent. *Avenues*—roads. *Under the old system*—viz., no turnpike was established and the repair of the roads was left to the parishes through which they passed. *Effected*—accomplished. *But not without much difficulty*—i.e., the reform had to meet with fierce opposition. *Absurd*—stupid. *Impost*—tax. *For unjust... which is new*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this remark in connection with his description of the opposition which the turnpike system met with from the public. He says that men do not grumble against the most unjust tax which they have been paying for a long time. They get so accustomed to it that they fail to see its injustice. The imposition of a new tax, however reasonable, rouses bitter opposition and discontent. The English public cheerfully paid the old and unjust parish rates for the maintenance of the roads. But they loudly protested when a small toll was justly levied on the users of the roads for keeping them in good repair.

*Toll bars*—turnpikes. *Till the troops had.....people*—till the soldiers were called out to quell popular disturbances in many places. *Much blood had been shed*—Many lives had been lost. *A good system was introduced*—i.e., the turnpike road came into use. **N.B.** "When turnpikes were introduced, one Chapple, a political economist of the day, predicted that two of the innumerable consequences which would inevitably arise from turnpike roads would be a rise in the price of oats and a reacting fall in the price of wheat. Demagogues now began to travel about the country, pointing their morals and adorning their tales by assuring their hearers that the erection of the turnpikes was part of a covert design on the part of the Government to enslave the people and to deprive them of their liberty. In many parts of the country, there was a decided refusal to pay the toll, and during the months of July and August 1749, organised bands of rioters demolished all the turnpike gates on the roads leading to and from Bristol,



repeating their experiment as fast as the gates were re-erected. The contagion spread, and it was found necessary to quarter troops in many districts, to repress the disturbances. The passing of a general Turnpike Act in the year 1755 rendered the construction of turnpikes 'compulsory all over the country.' — (*Sidney*).

*By slow degrees*—gradually. *Prejudice*—blind hatred or opposition. *Reason triumphed over prejudice*—Men perceived the usefulness of the turnpike roads and their opposition against them died down. *Crossed*—intersected. *Near*—nearly. **NB.** The opposition to the turnpikes did not disappear as early as Macaulay represents. Even as late as 1843, a secret Welsh organisation, called Rebeccaites, was formed whose object was to destroy toll-gates. They were so called because they dressed themselves as women and called themselves "Rebecca's daughters" in allusion to a well-known passage in the Bible. They went out at night and caused much mischief to the gates. A commission of inquiry followed, after which the tolls were repealed.

**Paragraph 105.** Heavy goods were carried from place to place by stage waggons. Poor people who could not afford to travel in coaches or on horseback availed themselves of these conveyances. The expense of carrying goods in this manner was very heavy. Many useful articles were heavily taxed in this way. Coal was used only in the districts where it was produced or where it could be carried by sea.

*Conveyed*—carried; transported. *Stage waggons*—waggons that stop at appointed stations for changing horses; a waggon is a four-wheeled carriage for the transport of goods. *In the straw*—i.e., straw spread on the floor of these vehicles. *Nestled*—lay snug and comfortable. *Could not afford*—had not the means. *Infirmity*—weakness. *Luggage*—packages; baggage. *Transmitting*—sending from one place to another. *Enormous*—very heavy. *Charge*—cost. *This was about*—this amounted to or worked out to. *More by a third*—was  $1\frac{1}{3}$  times. *Fifteen times what is etc.*—the rate charged by railway companies being 1d. a mile. Bowley notices that Macaulay's estimate is exceptionally low and that in his days the average rate varied from  $1\frac{1}{6}$ d to  $3\frac{1}{2}$ d. *Cost of conveyance*—expense of carriage.

*Prohibitory tax*—A heavy tax that by raising the price of goods interferes with their sale and consequently prevents their importation. *Seen*—i.e., used. *To which it could be carried by sea*—because such carriage was much less expensive than carriage by land. *Sea coal*—mineral coal as distinguished from charcoal. “Sea-coal fire” occurs in Shakespeare.

**Paragraph 106.** Goods were carried on the backs of packhorses on byroads and in the extreme north and west. Poor men travelled on these horses. The expense was small but progress was very slow.

*Byroads*—roads other than the main highways; less frequented roads. *North of York and west of Exeter*—i.e., in the extreme north and south-west. *Exeter*—a town in Devonshire. *Trains*—series. *Packhorses*—horses employed in carrying goods or baggage. *Breed*—race; class. *Is now extinct*—has now died out. *Resemblance*—likeness. *Muleteers*—drivers of mules. The mule is commonly used for purposes of riding in Spain. *Humble condition*—poor circumstances. *Packsaddle*—a saddle on which loads are placed for conveyance. *Hardy guides*—viz., the drivers of the packhorses. *Caravan*—properly a number of pilgrims or merchants travelling together through deserts or regions infested by robbers; hence a party of travellers. *Foot's pace*—or foot pace, i.e., very slowly. *Insupportable*—unbearable.

**Paragraph 107.** A coach and four was commonly used by the rich for purposes of travelling. Six horses had often to be used on account of the badness of the road.

*Commonly travelled in their own carriages*—In paragraph 103 Pepys is described as riding in his own coach. *Cotton*—Charles Cotton (1630-87) was a poet and miscellaneous writer. He published burlesques of Virgil and Lucian. His “*Wonders of the Peak*” appeared in 1681. *Facetious*—humorous. *The Peak*—the mountainous district in the centre of England extending from Chesterfield to Buxton. *A single pair*—two horses. *St.*

[Page 179, Footnote—*Marshall*—William Marshall (1745-1818), agriculturist and philologist; was author of “*General Survey of the Rural Economy of England*”, published in 1787-98. *Roderick Random*—hero of Smollett's novel of the same name; the journey is described in Chapter VIII of this book.]

*Albans*—a town in Hertfordshire. *Insupportably tedious*—unendurably tiresome. *Pageant*—public show ; procession. *Equipages*—carriages. *Mislead*—lead astray ; produce a wrong impression. *Attribute*—impute ; ascribe. *Magnificence*—love of pomp and splendour. *Disagreeable*—painful. *We attribute to etc.*—The use of six horses was not due to any love of pomp or show, but to the unsatisfactory condition of the roads that rendered this necessary. *Mire*—mud. *Vanbrugh* (1664-1726)—a well-known English dramatist. See notes on paragraph 99. *Succeeding generation*—next age. Vanbrugh left his play "*A Journey to London*" incomplete. It was completed by Colley Cibber and appeared under the title of *Provoked Husband* in 1728. *With great humour*—very wittily. *Exertions*—efforts. *Being imbedded*—being fixed ; sticking fast. *Quagmire*—See notes on paragraph 103. **N.B.** The journey, referred to by Macaulay, is described in Act I, scene i of the play, but the passage does not prove his point. The coach did not stick in the mud. The coach was heavily loaded and two cart horses were added to the usual team in order that the lady might drive to the town in a coach and six as was then the prevailing fashion. The adventures on the road were summed up in the servant's following account of the journey—"Some mischief or other, aw (all) the day long. Slap goes one thing, crack goes another ; my Lady cries out for driving fast : the awd (old) cattle are for going slow : Roger (the coachman) whips, they stand still and kick ; nothing but a sort of contradiction aw (all) the journey long."

**Paragraph 108.** At the time of the Restoration, a stage coach ran from Oxford to London. A Flying Coach service was introduced between these towns in 1669 which covered the distance in one day. At the close of the reign of Charles II flying coaches ran thrice a week from London to the chief towns. They ran 50 miles a day in summer and thirty miles in winter. Each coach carried six passengers and the usual fare was two pence and a half per mile in summer and slightly more in winter.

*Public carriages*—as distinguished from private coaches were conveyances intended for the use of the travelling public. *Diligence*—a four-wheeled stage coach. *Slept*—because coaches did not run at nights. *Beaconsfield*—a town in Buckingham.

shire about 10 miles from Windsor. *A great and daring innovation*—a striking and bold change. *Announced*—proclaimed ; advertised. *Flying Coach*—the name given to the fast-going stage coaches of those times. *Spirited*—bold. *Spirited undertaking*—bold project. *Sanctioned*—approved. *Heads of the University*—authorities of Oxford University. *Excited the same sort etc.*—roused keen public interest. *Vicechancellor*—the executive head of the University. *Prescribed the hour etc.*—fixed the time and the place of starting. *The success of the experiment etc.*—the undertaking proved completely successful. *All Souls College*—a famous college in Oxford occupying a central position in the town with fronts to Radcliffe Street and High Street. It was founded as early as 1437 by Archbishop Chichele.

*Adventurous*—daring. *Deposited*—brought ; landed. *Emulation*—rivalry. *Sister University*—i.e., Cambridge. *Moved*—roused. *The emulation etc.*—The example of Oxford led the University of Cambridge to establish a similar Flying Coach service between that town and London. *Set up*—established. *Proceeded*—gone. *Ordinary day's journey*—average distance travelled in one day. *Ways were bad*—roads were muddy on account of rain and snow. *Chester*—capital of Cheshire on the west coast of England.

*Reached London in four days*—In modern times a journey from York to London by rail takes only three hours and a half. *Fine season*—i.e., in spring and summer when the roads are dry. *Christmas*—the greatest of the Christian festivals, celebrated on the 25th December. *Were so frequent*—occurred so often. *Ordinary fare*—usual charge for a passenger. *Twopence halfpenny*—two pence and a half.

**Paragraph 109.** The Flying Coaches were the swiftest conveyances of the age. But though generally regarded as reasonable subjects of national boast, they were not without critics. Various objections were raised against them from interested quarters. Petitions were submitted to the king in council praying that no coach should be permitted to use more than four horses and to travel more than 30 miles a day.

---

[Page 182, Footnote—*Anthony A Wood* (1632-1695)—an antiquary and historian : wrote an account of Oxford.]

*Mode*—manner. *Insufferably*—intolerably. *Alarmingly rapid*—dangerously swift. Travelling at such a quick rate was considered to be risky. "To travellers who were accustomed to find the roads in a most miserable state, the stage-coach moving at the rate of four or five miles an hour must have appeared nothing short of a miracle. Only neck-and-nothing mortals, as they were called, travelled by them"—(*Sidney*). *Work*—book *Extolled*—praised. *Any similar vehicles*—all conveyances of the same class. *Velocity*—swiftness. *Special commendation*—particular praise. *Triumphantly contrasted etc.*—The superiority of the Flying Coaches to the stage coaches of the Continent was pointed out with joy and exultation. *Sluggish pace*—slow movement. *Continental posts*—stage coaches of the other European countries. *Posts*—were coaches travelling quickly by the use of fresh horses taken at appointed stations. *Mingled*—combined. *Complaint*—murmur; censure. *Invective*—bitter reproach; violent abuse.

*But with boasts like these etc.*—Though these coaches were loudly praised by some, yet there were others who bitterly condemned them. *Classes*—bodies of men. *Unfavourably—prejudicially: injuriously.* *The interests of large classes etc.*—The introduction of these swift coaches caused loss to large bodies of men. *As usual*—as it often happens. *Obstinacy*—disinclination to change one's opinions or habits; perverseness. *Disposed*—inclined. *Clamour against*—loudly protest against or condemn. *Simply because it etc.*—condemned it for no other reason than that it was something new. **N.B.** In this and the previous sentence Macaulay describes the two classes of men who objected to the Flying Coaches. They were first those men whose vested interests were affected and who condemned these coaches because the stage coaches caused them loss. Secondly the stage coaches were condemned by men of orthodox habits, men constitutionally averse to change, who disliked all novelties. *Vehemently argued*—strongly urged. *Be fatal*—prove destructive. *Be fatal to the breed of horses*—The quality of the English horses would suffer because men would not keep good riding horses for their journeys. Accordingly horse-breeders would not care to rear such animals.

*Nursery*—breeding-ground. *Seamen*—sailors. *Chief thoroughfare*—main passage or means of communication. *Windsor*—a

well-known town on the Thames in Berkshire. It contains a famous royal castle said to have been founded by William the Conqueror. *Gravesend*—a town in Kent at the mouth of the Thames. *The Thames which had etc.*—In former times the Thames was the chief means of communication between London and the towns situated on the river. If people travelled in stage coaches instead of in boats, then the Thames sailors would be left without employment and fall off in number. As the English navy recruited its crew from the sailors plying in the rivers, the fall-off in the number of these sailors would prevent the English navy from receiving an adequate supply of capable sailors. *Saddlers and spurriers*—makers of saddles and spurs. A *spur* is “a pricking instrument with point or rowel worn on horseman’s heel” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Would be ruined by hundreds*—because no riding horses would be used in journeys. *By hundreds*—in large numbers. *Mounted*—riding on horseback. *Deserted*—left without customers. *Would no longer pay rent*—thus causing loss to the landlords. *That the new carriages etc.*—This and the following arguments prove the utter hollowness of the complaints against the new coaches. The complaints are extremely frivolous. *Grievously*—seriously. *Annoyed*—disturbed; troubled. *Invalids*—sick persons. *Supper*—evening meal. *Breakfast*—morning meal.

*On these grounds*—for these reasons. *Gravely*—seriously. *Recommended*—suggested. *Regulation*—rule. *Adopted*—enforced. *Return to*—resume; fall back upon. *The old mode of travelling*—*viz.*, on horseback. *Petitions*—applications. *Embodying*—giving expression to. *Presented*—submitted. *The king in council*—not individually to the king but to him in his public capacity as the President of the Privy Council. *Companies*—guilds; see notes on “great companies” in paragraph 81. *Justices*—Justices of the Peace. *We smile at these things*—The unreasonable agitation against the new coaches moves us to laughter. It strikes us as quite childish and absurd. *Cupidity*—greed; avarice. *Prejudice*—unreasonable dislike. *Cupidity and prejudice*—abstract for concrete; meaning avaricious and unreasonable men. *Opposition offered etc.*—Macaulay was probably thinking of the opposition to the introduction of railways and of the Tory opposition to the Reform Bill of 1832. The last measure was in his opinion so manifestly just

and necessary that opposition to it could only have been prompted by motives of self-interest and blind unreason. *In their turn*—when their time will come. Cf. Pope's well-known lines—

“We call our fathers fools so wise we grow,  
Our wiser sons will no doubt think us so.”

**Paragraph 110.** Even after the introduction of the Flying Coaches, healthy men, not encumbered with luggage, journeyed on horseback. Those who wanted to travel quickly rode post and fresh saddle horses and guides were available at convenient distances along all the great roads. Post-chaises had not yet come into use. Those, who rode in their own coaches, could not easily procure relays of horses.

*Attractions*—i.e., conveniences. *Men who enjoyed health and vigour*—strong healthy men. *Encumbered*—burdened. *Baggage*—luggage. *Expeditionously*—quickly. *Rode post*—travelled quickly by the use of fresh horses at appointed stations; *to ride post* is now commonly used to mean to travel in haste. *Saddle horses*—riding horses. *At convenient distances*—i.e., not very far from each other. *Stage*—the distance between two places of rest on a road. *When the ways were good*—i.e., in fine weather when the roads were not covered with mud. *Considerable*—long. *Conveyance*—vehicle; carriage. *Propelled*—moved. *Till vehicles were propelled etc.*—till the introduction of the railway. *Post chaises*—hired coaches for conveying travellers from one station to another. A *post chaise* is a “travelling carriage hired from stage to stage or drawn by horses so hired”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Ordinarily*—commonly. *Great officers of state*—ministers or other government officials of high rank. *Command relays*—obtain change of horses at different stages. *Relay*—“set of fresh horses substituted for tired ones”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Newmarket*—in Cambridgeshire; a famous racing centre from the days of the Stuarts. *A proof of great activity*—a great feat; an illustration of most quick journey.

*Clifford* (1630-73)—one of the members of the Cabal ministry. He was appointed Lord Treasurer in 1672, but had to resign it in the following year under the operation of the Test Act. *Evelyn performed the same etc.*—described in the entry under the 9th and 10th October, 1671.—“I went after

evening-service to London, in order to a journey of refreshment with Mr. Treasurer, to Newmarket, where the king then was, in his coach with six brave horses, which we changed thrice, first at Bishop Stortford, and last at Chesterfield; so by night we got to Newmarket, where Mr. Henry Jermyn lodged me very civilly." *Bishop Stortford*—a town on the Stort in Hertfordshire. *Chesterford*—a town on the Stort in Hertfordshire. *Chesterford*—a town situated midway between Bishop Stortford and Cambridge. *Mode of conveyance*—manner of travel. *Rare luxury*—unusual convenience or pleasure. *Confined*—limited.

**Paragraph 111.** The roads were infested by robbers. Men had to travel well armed and in parties. The most dangerous spots were the waste tracts on the outskirts of London. Sailors, paid off at Chatham, were plundered at Gadshill. The government was at a loss how to deal with the robbers. The innkeepers were suspected to be in league with them.

*Whatever might be the way*—in whatever manner men might travel, viz., whether on horseback, in stage-coaches or in other ways. *Were numerous*—were many in number, i.e., travelled in companies or parties. *Ran considerable risk*—were in great danger. *Mounted highwayman*—robbers mounted on horses who plundered travellers on the roads. *Marauder*—robber. *Only from books*—They have now become extinct but frequent reference to these robbers is to be found in the literature of those times. *Waste tracts*—uninhabited regions. *Great routes*—principal roads. *Haunted*—infested. *Hounslow Heath*—an extensive meadow to the west of London. The modern town of Hounslow in the western suburb of London has grown on this heath. *Finchley Common*—an uninhabited tract to the north of London. Finchley has now grown into a town in the northern suburb of London. *The most celebrated etc.*—the best known haunts of these robbers.

*The Cambridge scholars*—the professors and students of Cambridge University. *Epping Forest*—a large forest in Essex extending over about 60,000 acres. *Even in broad daylight*—i.e., travellers ran the risk of being robbed even in open daylight. *Paid off*—were paid their wages on their discharge from service. *Chatham*—sea-port and naval arsenal on the river



Med-way in Kent. *Compelled to deliver their purses*—robbed of their money. *Deliver their purses*—make over their money to the robbers at the point of the dagger or pistol. *Gadshill*—a village in Kent between Gravesend and Rochester. *Celebrated*—immortalized. *Near*—nearly. *A hundred years earlier*—because Shakespeare lived in the 16th century. *The greatest of poets*—Shakespeare, the greatest poet and dramatist of England and perhaps of all the world. *Depredations*—ravages ; plunders. *Poins and Falstaff* boon companions of Prince Henry (who afterwards became King as Henry V) in Shakespeare's drama of *Henry IV*. Falstaff, the fat knight is one of the most famous characters painted by the great poet. He is represented as a sensual man of mature years full of the richest humour. **N. B.** The reference is to the following incident in Shakespeare's *King Henry IV*, Part I. The Prince forms a plan with his boon companions to waylay and attack a party of travellers at Gadshill. Falstaff with his companions with the exception of the Prince and Poins robs the travellers. But as they are sharing the booty amongst themselves, the Prince and Poins disguised set upon them and rob them of their spoils. This incident subsequently furnishes Falstaff with an occasion for the display of his rich humour. *The public authorities*—the officers entrusted with the task of administration. *Were at a loss*—were puzzled ; were unable to discover any means. *How to deal with the plunderers*—what steps were to be taken for the arrest of the robbers and to put a stop to these crimes. *Gazette*—London Gazette, the official newspaper of those times. *Paraded*—produced before the public for identification. *Newgate*—a well-known prison of London. It was of very old date and was situated, as the name indicates, on the site of one of the old city gates. It ceased to be used as a prison in 1881. *Invited*—requested. *Inspect*—examine. *Singular exhibition*—curious show, *viz.*, the parade of men suspected to be robbers. *Publicly offered*—openly promised. *Rough diamonds*—uncut or unpolished diamonds. *Harwich*—a sea-port and watering place in Essex. *Harwich mail*—a stage-coach carrying letters from London to Harwich.

*Proclamation*—announcement. *The eye of the government etc.*—The government kept a careful watch on them. *Criminal*—felonious. *Connivance*—league ; abetment. *Affirmed*—declared. *Banditti*—robbers. *To infest the roads etc.*—rob travellers on

the road without being detected and punished. *Their criminal connivance etc.*—It was stated that the inn-keepers abetted the highwaymen with whose help they could commit their crimes without being detected and punished. *Were not without foundation*—were well-founded ; were based on reasonable grounds.

*Dying speeches*—speeches made from the scaffolds when they were about to be hanged. The execution of criminals took place in those days in public places and sometimes the criminals addressed the spectators before they were hanged. *Penitent*—repentant. *Services*—assistance. *Farquhar* (1678-1707) —was a comic dramatist of the Restoration period ; was the author of "*The Recruiting Officer*", "*The Stage Coach*", "*The Beaux' Stratagem*" and other plays. *Boniface*—the rascally landlord of the inn at Lichfield in *Beaux' Stratagem* who is in league with highwaymen. The name is now used as a common term for an innkeeper. *Rendered*—performed. *Gibbet*—a highwayman and convict in *Beaux' Stratagem*. He prided himself on being "the best-behaved man on the road." *That these suspicions.....Gibbet*—**Expl.** This is Macaulay's remark on the suspicions that lay on the inn-keepers of the 17th century that they were in league with the highwaymen. He says that these suspicions were based on reasonable grounds. The speeches, made by some of the robbers who repented for their past conduct at the time of their execution, go to prove that the inn-keepers of those days gave them the information necessary for the commission of their crimes—as Boniface, the landlord of Lichfield Inn in Farquhar's *Beaux' Stratagem*, gave to Gibbet, the highwayman in that play.

**Paragraph 112.** The highwaymen were bold and skilful riders and their appearance and manners were like those of gentlemen. They frequented fashionable coffee houses and mixed freely with men of fashion in the gaming houses. Some of them were of good families and education. Extravagant tales of their courage and generosity were current amongst the people. Nevison and Claude Duval were two prominent highwaymen of those times.

*It was necessary to the success etc.*—The highwaymen were required to be bold and clever riders because otherwise their plundering expeditions could not be successful. Nor could they, after the commission of the crime, escape detection.

*Manners*—bearing; ways. *Suited*—became. *The master of a fine horse*—i.e., a gentleman of easy circumstances. *Aristocratical*—respectable; honourable. *Community*—society. *Gaming*—gambling. *Betted*—laid bets or wagers on the results of the races. *Quality*—superior rank or station. *Romantic*—pertaining to romances, i.e., stories of extravagant adventures or mysterious events; hence wild; fantastic. *Attached to*—surrounded. *Freebooters*—robbers; marauders. *A romantic interest etc.*—The lives of these highwaymen and their strange adventures possessed and still possess a strong attraction for the public. *The vulgar*—the common people. *Drank in*—listened with absorbing interest. *Tales*—wild stories.

*Ferocity*—cruelty; fierceness. *Audacity*—boldness; daring. *Occasional acts of generosity and good nature*—generous and kind deeds performed at times. *Amours*—love affairs. *Miraculous*—strange; marvellous. *Desperate struggles*—fierce resistance offered by them when they were captured. *Manly bearing*—brave demeanour or conduct. They did not betray the least trace of fear at the time of their trial or execution. *At the bar*—i.e., when they were tried in a court of justice. *Bar*—is the place in a court where prisoners are kept during their trial. *In the cart*—when they were taken in a cart to the place of execution. Before the reform of criminal law in the 19th century, highway robberies were punished with death.

*William Nevison* (1639-84)—After serving as a soldier for sometime in Holland he took to highway robbery. He was convicted and imprisoned at York in 1676. He escaped but was captured and hanged at York in 1685. In the *Dictionary of National Biography* his Christian name is given as John and not William. *Levied*—imposed. *Quarterly*—paid every quarter, i.e., once in three months. *Drovers*—persons who drive cattle or sheep to market. *In return*—in consideration of this payment. *Spared them*—forbore to plunder them. *Demanded purses*—asked his victims to deliver their money. *Courteous*—polite. *That he gave largely etc.*—The wealth he obtained by plundering the rich was freely bestowed in alms on the poor. This was characteristic these highwaymen had in common with Robin Hood, the famous English robber of the Middle Ages. *Spared*—saved. *Royal clemency*—mercy of the King. The King can, in the exercise of his prerogative, pardon any

criminal. It will appear from the note on Nevison's life that he was sentenced to imprisonment only on the first occasion. Probably the death sentence was commuted to imprisonment by the King's order. *Tempted his fate*—invited his doom; brought about his death by escaping from prison and committing robberies again. *Died in 1685 etc*—was hanged at York in 1685.

*Claude Duval* (1643--1670)—a Frenchman who came to England at the time of the Restoration as an attendant on the Duke of Richmond. Subsequently he took to the road and became notorious for his gallantry and daring. He was captured in London and hanged in 1670. *Duke of Richmond* (1639-72)—Charles Stuart lived principally in France; he returned to England with Charles II and succeeded his cousin as Duke of Richmond in 1660. *Page*—a young attendant on kings, nobles and other persons of distinction. *Took to the road*—became a highwayman; took to robbing travellers on the road. *Formidable gang*—terrible party of robbers. *Had the honour to be etc.*—His name occupied the first position in the list of noted criminals published by the government. *At the head of his troop*—i.e., as the captain of his gang. *Booty*—spoil; plunder. *Suffered*—permitted. *The fair owner*—the lady who owned the sum. *Ransom*—properly to release from captivity or forfeit; hence to regain something by paying its equivalent. *Coranto*—(From French *courir*, to run) a sort of dance with sprightly movements. *Suffered the fair etc.*—allowed the lady to keep the balance on condition that she would dance with him on the meadow. *Vivacious gallantry*—gay and sprightly attentions he paid to ladies. *Gallantry*—is now commonly used to mean attentions shewn to ladies; "courtliness, devotion to women"—*Oxford Dictionary*. *Stole away the hearts of all women*—made all women with whom he came in contact fall in love with him.

*Overcome by wine*—intoxicated with drink. *Dames of high rank*—ladies of high social position. *Interceded*—pleaded. *Interference*—opposition. *Judge Morton*—Sir William Morton had been a barrister who had fought on the Royalist side during the Civil War. He was appointed a judge of the King's bench in 1665. He died in 1672. *The law were carried into full effect*—The sentence of the court was fully carried out, i.e., the man was executed. *Lay in state*—was not buried at

once but remained properly decked out so that it might be visited by admirers and friends. *Pomp*—dignity. *Scutcheons*—name plates on the coffin. *Wax lights*—candle made of wax usually kept lighted in the room where the corpse lies in state. *Hangings*—tapestry hung before the walls; the room where the corpse lies is draped in black. *Mutes*—hired mourners or attendants at funerals. *Pomp of scutcheons etc.—i.e.*, the corpse of the robber was honoured with all the tributes of respect that are paid to the dead bodies of men of high rank and social position. *The same cruel judge—viz.* judge Morton. *Intercepted*—stopped; obstructed. *Intercepted etc.*—prevented the King from pardoning the criminal. *Obsequies*—funeral rites or ceremonies; the word is always used in the plural.

*Anecdotes*—stories. *Fable*—legend, *i.e.*, falsehood. *There is doubtless a large mixture of fable*—There is certainly a large element of untruth; these stories contain a large element of exaggeration. *On that account*—for that reason. *Authentic*—true; reliable. *Were heard by our ancestors etc.*—Englishmen of these times listened to these stories with great interest and believed in them.

**Paragraph 113.** From very early times, the English inns were famous for the comforts they provided to the guests. They were decidedly superior to the similar establishments of the Continent. The small village inns were neat and tidy; and the larger inns provided all the luxuries that a guest could want. Indeed an Englishman never felt more at home than when at an inn.

*Various dangers*—dangers of different kinds, *viz.* (1) dangers due to the unsatisfactory condition of the roads, and (2) dangers from the robbers. *Beset*—surrounded. *Having the shelter of a roof*—taking refuge in a house. *Our first great poet*—Geoffrey Chaucer; for particulars about this poet see notes on paragraph 70. *Accommodation*—conveniences of board and lodging.

[Page 189, Footnote—*Ainwell*—the hero of the play *Beau's Stratagem*. *White's*—a fashionable Tory club founded in 1698.]

[Page 190, Footnote—*Gent* (1693-1778—an English printer and topographer. He settled at York in 1724 being the only printer of that age in the county. He printed his own history of York in 1700.)]

*Pilgrims*—travellers to a shrine or holy place. The design of *The Canterbury Tales*, Chaucer's greatest work, is the description of the journey of a party of pilgrims to Becket's tomb at Canterbury. The Tales are the stories related by the different pilgrims to beguile the tedium of the journey. *Fourteenth century*—Chaucer was born about 1340 and died in 1400. *Nine and twenty persons*—This was the number of pilgrims assembled in the inn. *Room*—accommodation. *Chambers*—halls. *The Tabard*—the name of the inn in which the pilgrims assembled. The inn was named after the sign which it bore before it. See paragraph 91. A tabard is a sleeveless close-fitting garment formerly worn by nobles but now worn only by heralds. *Southwark*—the old suburb of London south of the Thames. This sentence refers to the following lines in *The Prologue* (ll. 19—29) :

"Bifel (it befell) that, in that sesoun (season) on a day  
 In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay  
 Redy (ready) to wenden (go) on my pilgrimage  
 To Caunterbury with ful devout corage (spirit),  
 At night was come into that hostlerye (inn)  
 Wel (full) nyne and twenty in a compaignye,  
 Of sondry folk by aventure (chance) y-falle (fallen)  
 In felawshipe (fellowship), and pilgrims were they alle,  
 That toward Caunterbury wolden (would) ryde ;  
 The chambres and the stables weren wyde,  
 And wel (well) we weren esed atte beste" (entertained in  
 the best manner).

*Drew*—tempted. *The food was of the best etc.*—The reference is to *The Frologue*, ll. 747-50.

"Greet (great) chere made our hôte us everichon (everyone)  
 And to the soper sette he us anon ;  
 And served us with vitaille (victuals) at the beste.  
 Strong was the wyn (wine), and wel to drink us leste"  
 (it pleased us to drink).

*William Harrison* (1534-93)—topographer and chronologist. His "*Description of England*" was published with Holinshed in 1577. *Lively*—vivid. *Plenty*—abundance of food and drink. *Hostelries*—inns. *The Continent etc.*—The inhs of the Continent

were decidedly inferior to those of England. *Lodged*—accommodated. *Tapestry*—wall hangings. *Linen*—cloth made of flax or hemp; the reference here is to the bed-sheets usually made of this cloth. *Valuable*—costly, perhaps because made of silver. *Plate*—utensils or instruments used during meals like dishes, cups, flagons, spoons etc., made of gold or silver. *Signs*—See paragraph 91. *Abounded with*—was full of. *Rank*—grade; class. *Lighted on*—happened to find; came upon by chance. *Walton* (1593-1683)—one of the most amiable of English writers; was the author of *The Complete Angler*, a famous English classic. *Stuck round*—covered. *Ballads*—popular songs. *Lavender*—a common aromatic plant. *Sheets smelt of lavender*—because clothes not intended for daily use are kept carefully folded with sprigs of lavender among them. *Blazing*—burning brightly. *Trouts*—a common fresh-water fish. The word now does not take an 's' in the plural form. *Were to be procured etc.*—could be had at a small cost. The reference is to the following passage:—"I'll now lead you to an honest ale-house where we shall find a cleanly room, lavender in the windows, and twenty ballads stuck about the wall."—*The Complete Angler*, Chap. II.

*Larger houses of entertainment*—larger inns where guests were provided with lodging and food. *Beds hung with silk*—costly luxuries enjoyed only by the rich. *Choice cookery*—excellent *cuisine*. *Cookery* is the art of preparing victuals for the table. *Claret*—a kind of French wine of a red colour. *Beds hung with silk etc.*—Macaulay is thinking of Pepys's visit to Salisbury in June 1668. The following entry occurs under 10th June, 1668.—"Come to the George Inn, where lay in a silk bed; and very good diet. To supper; then to bed." *Landlord*—inn-keeper; host. *Tyrant*—master. *Those who crossed the threshold*—men who entered the inn; guests.

*On the Continent.....was a servant*—**Expl.** In these sentences Macaulay points out the difference between the English and the Continental innkeepers. The innkeepers of the Continent did not care for the convenience of their guests. The guests had to be contented with such food and lodging as the landlord was pleased to arrange for them. The English innkeeper, on the other hand, made every effort to make his guests comfortable and was always at their service.

*At home*—comfortable; at ease. *Took his ease*—enjoyed rest and comfort. *Took his ease in his own inn*—a reminiscence of Shakespeare's 1 *Henry IV*, III. iii.

"Shall I not take mine ease in mine inn but I shall have my pocket picked?" *Never was an etc.*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the English inns of the 17th century. The English inns were models of comfort and cleanliness. An Englishman never felt so comfortable as when he found himself in an inn. The comforts and the social joys that the inns offered rendered them more agreeable than even one's own home. *Men of fortune*—rich men. *Neighbouring house etc.*—an inn situated near their houses. *Freedom*—i.e., from disagreeable restraints; ease. *In equal perfection*—to an equal degree; so completely. *National peculiarity*—characteristic feature of the English national character. *Liberty*—freedom of action and speech; freedom from the rules of social decorum. *Jollity*—mirth. *Furnished matter etc.*—have been described by a number of English authors. Inns and the merry ways of the guests figure prominently in English literature.

*Johnson*—the famous English author of the 18th century; see notes on paragraph 71. *Tavern*—public house; a place where guests are provided with food, drink and accommodation. *Felicity*—happiness. *A tavern chair etc.*—A man never feels so happy as when seated in a public house. He feels as happy as if he were a king seated on a throne. The reference is to the following conversation in Boswell's *Life of Johnson*. Macaulay's observations on inns are mostly based on Johnson's remarks:—"We dined at an excellent inn at Chapel-house, where he (Johnson) expatiated on the felicity of England in its taverns and inns, and triumphed over the French for not having in any perfection, the tavern life. "There is no private house" said he, "in which people can enjoy themselves so well as at a capital tavern. Let there be ever so great plenty of good things, ever so much grandeur, ever so much elegance, ever so much desire that everybody should be easy, in the nature of things it cannot be; there must always be some degree of care and anxiety. The master of the house is anxious to entertain his guests—the guests are anxious to be agreeable to him; and no man, but a very impudent dog,



indeed, can as freely command what is in another man's house, as if it were his own. Whereas at a tavern, there is a general, freedom from anxiety. You are sure you are welcome; and the more noise you make, the more trouble you give, the more good things you call for, the welcomer you are. No servants will attend you with the alacrity which waiters do, who are incited by the prospect of an immediate reward in proportion as they please. No, Sir, there is nothing which has yet been contrived by man, by which so much happiness is produced as by a good tavern or inn. He then repeated with great emotion, Shenstone's lines :

'Whoe'er has travell'd life's dull round  
Where'er his stages may have been  
Must sigh to think he still has found  
The warmest welcome at an inn."

In a footnote on the above conversation, Boswell adds the following :—"Sir John Hawkins has preserved very few *Memorabilia* of Johnson. There is, however, to be found in his bulky tome, a very excellent one upon this subject. 'In contradiction to those, who having wife and children, prefer domestic enjoyments to those which a tavern affords, I have heard him assert, *that a tavern chair was the throne of human felicity*.'"

Shenstone (1714-63)—an English poet of country life. His best known work is his "*Schoolmistress*". *Gently complained*—mildly regretted *Private roof however friendly*—the house of even a man's warmest friend. *Wanderer*—traveller. *No private roof etc.*—The reference is to Shenstone's lines quoted above. These lines were actually composed by Shenstone at an inn at Henley.

*Johnson.....at an inn*—Expl. Macaulay, in speaking of the "liberty and jollity" of inns, refers to the praises of Dr. Johnson and Shenstone the poet. Dr Johnson thought so highly of the comforts and pleasures to be enjoyed at an inn that he spoke enthusiastically in its praise. A man seated in a chair at an inn was supremely happy. The tavern chair was, as it were, the very throne of human happiness. Shenstone the poet appreciated inns greatly. He considered the welcome at an inn warmer than what one gets even at the house of a friend.

**Paragraph 114.** As a consequence of the improved means of communication, the English inns have decayed. Because other circumstances being equal, the best inns are to be found in countries where the means of locomotion are the worst.

*Conveniences—comforts. At Hampton Court and Whitehall—i.e., at the royal palace. Houses of public entertainment—public houses; hotels. Kept pace with—corresponded to. Has by no means kept pace with—certainly falls below. Conveyances—means of travel or locomotion. As the roads have improved and means of conveyance have become quicker and more comfortable, the inns have declined in importance. Nor is this strange—It is natural that this should be the case. All other circumstances being supposed equal—other conditions remaining unchanged. The inns will be best etc.—The country, that suffers from bad roads and means of travel, will possess good inns. The quicker the rate of travelling etc.—The importance of good inns, where travellers may rest themselves in comfort, diminishes, when they journey quickly from one place to another. Agreeable—pleasant; comfortable. A hundred and sixty years ago—i.e., about 1685. The capital—London. Remote—distant. Remote county—like York or Northumberland. Required generally etc.—i.e., such a journey usually took five or six days. A great man—a man of wealth and good position. Fly—travel quickly by rail. By the light of—so people have not to stop anywhere at night. Winter's day—when days are much shorter than in summer. Interrupts—breaks. Refreshment—meal. Description—class. Are likely to be detained—are expected to stay for some time.*

**Paragraph 115.** The rude postal system, introduced by Charles I, had been swept away during the Civil War. It was re-established at the Restoration. The mails were carried on alternate days except in the more difficult parts of the country. There was daily communication between London and the Downs and the fashionable watering places during their seasons. The bags were carried on horseback at the rate of five miles per hour.

*Mode—manner. Correspondence—letters. Excite the scorn—rouse the contempt. Moved—roused; inspired. Polished notions of antiquity—civilised notions of ancient times like the Greeks and the Romans. Contemporaries of Raleigh and*

*Cecil*—persons living in the age of Raleigh and Cecil, *i.e.*, the 16th century. *Raleigh*—See notes on paragraph 29. *Cecil*—(1500-1598) better known as Lord Burghley; a famous English statesman of his age; he was Elizabeth's chief minister for forty years; see notes on paragraph 55. *Imperfect*—clumsy; primitive. *Posts*—messengers or carriers of mail. *Conveyance*—transmission. *Swept away*—destroyed. *Design*—scheme; project. *Had been set up by Charles I*—A primitive sort of postal system was established in England as early as 1533. Some improvements were made on the accession of James I because of the frequent communication necessary between England and Scotland. An arrangement was for the first time made for carrying mails from London to all parts of Great Britain in 1635 during the reign of Charles I.

*Resumed*—re-established; revived. *Proceeds*—income; revenue. *Settled on*—granted to; bestowed by law upon. *Mails*—letter-bags. *Went out and came in*—were despatched and received. *Cornwall*—lying far to the south-west of London. *Lincolnshire*—This county is mostly flat and fenny. *Cumberland*—See notes on paragraph 9. *Royal progress*—journey in state of the King from one part of the country to another. *Despatched*—sent. *Sojourned*—stayed or resided for a time. *The Downs*—the well-known harbour for ships on the coast of Kent. *Privilege*—special advantage. *The seasons*—the periods of the year when these places were most frequented by visitors.

**Paragraph 116.** The Post Office enjoyed the monopoly of providing travellers with horses. This was an additional source of profit.

*Derived*—obtained. *Charge*—amount demanded. *Transmission*—conveyance. *Was entitled*—had the right. *Post horses*—horses on which one might journey from one station to another. *Monopoly*—exclusive right to carry on any trade or business. *Guarded*—defended; protected. *Supplied*—provided with a horse.

**Paragraph 117.** The Post Office did not carry letters from one part of London to another. William Dockwray, an enterprising citizen, established in the reign of Charles II a penny post in London that delivered letters and parcels several times

a day. In spite of the opposition the scheme met with at the start, it proved successful. It came to an end because the court pronounced it to be an infraction of the Duke of York's monopoly.

*To facilitate correspondence*—to help communication. *William Dockrury*—a London merchant who established the penny post in London in 1683. On a decree being given against him by the court he was appointed Comptroller General of the Duke of York's penny post in 1697. He died in 1710. *Set up*—established. *Busy and crowded streets near the Exchange*—the centre of the commercial activity of London; see notes on paragraph 83. *Outskirts*—borders; outlying parts. *Strenuously*—vigorously. *Porters*—carriers; men who carry messages or parcels. *Attacked*—injuriously affected. *Their interests were attacked*—i.e., the proposed system would cause loss to them. *Placards*—posters; ইস্তাহার। *Scheme*—project. *Announced*—notified.

*Godfrey's death*—Sir Edmund Berry Godfrey was the justice of peace for Westminster before whom Titus Oates made his depositions of the Popish Plot in 1678. A month later he was found dead near Primrose Hill in London. It was not known how he came by his death. But in their highly excited temper, the public imputed this crime to the Roman Catholics. Though a number of persons were executed for their complicity in this crime, the death still remains an unsolved mystery. There are some who believe that the murder was instigated by Oates himself in order that it might lend support to his false stories. *Coleman*—was the secretary of Mary of Modena, the Catholic wife of the Duke of York. His papers were seized because he was accused by Oates of participation in the Popish Plot. The papers only showed that he corresponded with the French King to forward the interests of the Catholic religion. But they did not contain a scrap of evidence that he harboured any criminal design. Yet he was executed on the evidence of Oates and Bedloe.

*At the height*—most intense or violent. *Popish contrivance*—a mischievous project of the Roman Catholics. The mere association with the name of Roman Catholicism was sufficient to excite suspicion in the public mind about the usefulness of

the new scheme. *Doctor Oates*—the notorious Titus Oates who fabricated the story of the Popish Plot. *Hinted a suspicion*—suggested. *Jesuits*—See notes on paragraph 99. *At the bottom of the scheme*—authors of the project. *Treason*—treasonable correspondence. *The bags if examined etc.*—*i.e.* it was suggested that this system was introduced by the Jesuits for the spread of treasonable correspondence. *The great Dr. Oates.....treason*—**Expl.** This was one of the many objections raised against the London penny post, established by Dockwray. It was held to be a part of the Popish Plot for the establishment of Catholicism in England. There were some people who condemned the system, because Titus Oates, the notorious inventor of the Popish Plot, had expressed his suspicions. Oates had suggested that the scheme originated with the Jesuits and that if the mail-bags were opened they would be found to be full of letters and other documents in which the Jesuits carried on their treasonable activities. *Utility*—usefulness. *Obvious*—evident. *Speculation*—business. *Lucrative*—profitable. *Infraction*—breach; violation. *Decided in his favour*—gave a decree against Dockwray.

**Paragraph 118.** The postal revenue rapidly increased. It amounted to £20,000 in the year of the Restoration and rose to £50,000 towards the close of Charles II's reign. The charge for carrying a single letter was two pence for a distance of 80 miles and three pence for longer distances. Judging from the postal revenues of the two ages, there are reasons to believe that the number of letters now carried must be at least 70 times the number then carried.

*A committee of the House of Commons*—a number of members appointed by the House to attend to any particular matter or business. *Strict inquiry*—careful investigation. *Was little short of*—amounted to almost. *Stupendous*—enormous; very large. *Gross receipt*—total income without the deduction of expenses. *In proportion to*—according to. *At present a single letter etc.*—Penny postage was introduced in England in 1840. *Extremity*—farthest limit. *A single letter is carried etc.*—In modern times, the penny postage has been extended to all parts of the British Empire. *The department*—*i.e.*, the postal department. Bowley gives the following table

of the income and and expenditure of the Post Office for the year 1907-8.

*Receipts :*

From Postal Services—	£ 17,880,000
„ Telegraph and Telephone—	£ 4,420,000
	<hr/>
Total...	£ 22,300,000
Expenditure ... ..	£ 16,951,000
	<hr/>
Profit...	£ 5,349,000

He thus concludes that the gross receipts from postal services alone have increased tenfold, and the profits from the whole department sevenfold since Macaulay wrote. *It is, therefore, scarcely possible to doubt*—it may, therefore, be safely concluded. *At the time of etc.—i.e., in 1685.*

**Paragraph 119.** No daily newspaper existed in those times. The law, as it then stood, did not permit the publication of any political news. The only newspaper, that was permitted to appear at the close of Charles II's reign, was the *London Gazette*—a bi-weekly, appearing on Mondays and Thursdays. It did not contain reports of Parliamentary proceedings or of state-trials in which the people felt a keen interest. The coffee houses of London served the purposes of newspapers to some extent. People, who lived in the country, depended for their knowledge of what was passing in the town on newsletters. The writers of these letters obtained their information from coffee houses, law-courts and the palace. The country gentlemen were regularly supplied with these letters. They then quickly passed from hand to hand through the whole neighbourhood.

*Carried out—i.e., carried out of London. Newsletters*—early form of newspapers popular in the time of Charles II. They were issued weekly and contained news and gossip collected by the writers at the coffee houses and other places of public resort. They were mostly written by hand, not printed.

*Nothing like etc.*—no newspaper like the modern dailies. *The necessary capital*—the funds necessary for the publication of such a paper. *The necessary skill*—the ability required to conduct such a paper satisfactorily. *Freedom too was wanting*—Besides, these newspapers did not then enjoy the liberty of publishing political news. *Fatal*—destructive ;

ruinous. *A want as fatal etc.*—The absence of this liberty as effectively prevented the publication of newspapers as the want of capital and skill. *Censorship*—a law which formerly prevailed in most countries of Europe according to which manuscripts and books had to obtain the approval of an officer kept for the purpose before they could be published. This officer was named 'censor'; he had the power of forbidding the publication of any work that he considered undesirable or improper.

*Licensing act*—law requiring an author to obtain the license or permission of the censor before the publication of his work. *Soon after the Restoration*—It was passed in 1662. *Expired*—The law was at first passed for two years and then renewed in succession for a number of years. This period ended in 1679.

*At his own risk*—because the author would be prosecuted if his book was treasonable, or violated the laws of the country in any other way. *Approbation*—sanction. *Public officer*—*viz.*, the censor. *Were unanimously of opinion*—*i.e.*, all of them without any exception held the view. *Gazettes*—newspapers which published political news. A ban was, therefore, placed upon the publication of political news. Previous sanction of the King was necessary for the publication of political news. *Common law*—as distinguished from statute law, is the law which is based on the usages of a country. *Authorised*—empowered. *While the Whig party was still formidable*—*i.e.*, when Whigs were in full power till the commencement of the Tory reaction in 1681. The Whigs were champions of progress and liberty. They, therefore, overlooked minor breaches of this law. For they wanted to encourage the dissemination of political news.

*Expedient*—advisable; prudent. *Connive at*—wink at; overlook the breach of law; indirectly acquiesce. *Violation of this rule*—breach of this law. *Battle*—struggle; controversy. *Exclusion Bill*—See notes on paragraph 60. *Suffered*—permitted. *Intelligence*—news. *Mercury*—in classical mythology was the name of the messenger of the gods. Hence this name is commonly used as the title of newspapers. There is still a paper bearing this name edited by J. C. Squire.

*The quantity of matter which one of them contained—i.e., the amount of its contents. Numbers—issues. The Times—the largest and the most powerful of English newspapers. It was founded in 1785 as “The London Daily Universal Register.” The present title was assumed in 1788. Sparing—chary; cautious. Pronounced—declared. Undoubted prerogative—power that unquestionably belonged to him. The King was so long prevented from using the power of stopping the publication of newspapers.*

*It was no longer necessary for the King etc.—The King freely used his power in stopping the publication of newspapers because the judges had declared that he unquestionably possessed this right. Allowance—permission. Exclusively—solely. London Gazette—This newspaper made its first appearance in 1666. Came out—was published. Contents—matters that it contained. Royal proclamation—announcement or declaration made by the King. Addresses—formal communications made to some distinguished personage by a society or body of men on some special occasion. Notices—orders. Skirmish—desultory fights; engagements between small bodies of troops. Imperial troops—armies of the Emperor of Austria. The Emperor of Austria was regarded as the head of the Holy Roman Empire from the fifteenth century to 1806. Janissaries—Turkish foot-soldiers who acted as the body-guard of the Sultan. These regiments, raised in the 14th century, became subsequently notorious for their turbulence and cruelty. They rose in revolt in 1826 when they were massacred in large numbers and disbanded. Danube—the well-known river in eastern Europe that flowing through Austria, and Hungary falls into the Black Sea. Vienna, the capital of Austria, stands on this river. A skirmish between the imperial troops etc.—At this time there was constant fighting between the Turks and the Austrians in Hungary. The Turkish territories in Europe extended up to Buda on the Danube. Vienna was besieged by the Turks in 1683. See notes on paragraph 18.*

*Cockfight—a match of cocks. This is a barbarous sport in which the cocks are set to fight against each other until one is killed or conquered. It was one of the favourite sports of the age. Persons of honour—This shows the spirit of those times; even respectable men did not think it beneath their dignity to take part in these sports. Strayed dog—dog that is lost or has*



gone astray. *Moderate*—i.e., not very large. *Moment*—importance. *Communicated*—published.

*Meagre*—scanty. *Formal style*—conventional manner. *Disposed*—inclined. *Gratify*—satisfy. *Transaction*—affair. *Broadside*—a sheet of paper of which only one side is printed; broadsheet. *Put forth*—issued. *Fuller details*—more minute description. *Supplementary broadside*—broadside issued to publish additional information. *By authority*—i.e., under the sanction of the government. *Which did not suit the purpose etc.*—which it was not in the interests of the court to publish.

*Parliamentary debates*—The law as it stood in those times, did not permit the publication of the Parliamentary discussions. The publication of these debates, in any form by any persons other than the printers of the journal of the two Houses, is still in theory a breach of privilege, but in practice they have been fully reported since 1771. *State trials*—trials of political offenders, e.g., the trials of the Whig lords in the reign of Charles II or that of the Seven Bishops in that of his successor. *Were passed over in profound silence*—No report whatsoever of these proceedings appeared in the newspapers. *In some measure*—to some extent. *Journal*—newspaper. *Slipped in some measure etc.*—served like newspapers to some extent because public events were known and discussed there. *Fl'ocked*—assembled. *Of old*—of ancient times. *Market place*—i.e., *agora* corresponding to the *forum* of the Romans. The market place of a Greek or Roman town was a square where the citizens assembled for public purposes, and speeches were delivered to the public. *To hear whether there was any news*—Macaulay is evidently thinking of the description of the Athenians in the Bible. "For all the Athenians and strangers which were there spent their time in nothing else, but either to tell or to hear some new thing."—*Acts*, XVII. 21. *Brutally*—cruelly; savagely. *Thither the Londoners.....any news*—**Expl.** Macaulay is speaking of the importance of London coffee houses which, in the reign of Charles II, served the purpose of newspapers. The coffee houses were the focus of public opinion. Just as in ancient Athens the *agora* or the market-place was the common meeting place of all citizens where events of public importance were discussed, so the London coffee houses were places where men gathered together for discussing current events of importance.

*Westminster Hall*—said to have been founded by Edward the Confessor; it was afterwards enlarged by William the Conqueror and his son Rufus. The law-courts were established there in the reign of King John. The meetings of Parliament were formerly held in a part of the palace known as St. Stephen's Chapel. *In Westminster Hall*—i.e., by the presiding judge of a court where a Whig was tried for a political offence. *Covenanters*—a term used of the Scotch Presbyterian fanatics who condemned episcopacy as a breach of the Covenant. They rose in insurrection in 1679 but were defeated by the Duke of Monmouth at Bothwell Bridge. They were afterwards cruelly tortured under orders of the Duke of York for adherence to their faith. *Grossly*—shamefully; flagrantly.

*Navy Board*—the committee that controls the affairs of the navy; it is now called the Admiralty Board and consists of six members. *Victualling the fleet*—supplying the fleet with provisions or stores of food. In this and the following clause Macaulay refers to the gross corruption that prevailed in all branches of administration in those times. *Grave charges*—serious accusations, *viz.*, of misappropriation. *The Lord Privy Seal*—See notes on paragraph 97. *In the matter of*—about. *Hearth money*—a tax of two shillings levied on every householder liable to pay poor-rates. It was abolished in 1689. *Theatre of political contention*—scene of the struggles of the politicians, *i.e.*, London. *Regularly*—at stated intervals. *Calling*—occupation; profession. *To prepare such letters*..... *London*—In London some men cultivated the art of the writing of such letters and adopted it as the profession of their lives. *As it now is among etc.*—It was by means of such letters that people living in different parts of India were formerly kept informed of what was passing in the different provinces. This practice fell into disuse with the establishment of newspapers in this country. *Rambled*—wandered. *Squeezed himself*—made his way through a crowd. *Old Bailey*—the name commonly given to the Sessions Court in the neighbourhood of Newgate Prison for the trial of criminals in the City of London and throughout the county of Middlesex. *Gallery*—See notes on paragraph 97. *Materials*—information. *Epistles*—letters. *Weekly epistles*—because the newsletters were published once a week. *Destined to enlighten*—intended to communicate information to.

*Bench*—the seat where Judges or Magistrates sit in court. *Bench of rustic magistrates*—body of justices of peace. *Largest provincial cities*—like Bristol, Norwich or York. *The history of their time*—important contemporary events. *Cambridge*—the seat of a university and the residence of some of the greatest scholars of the country. *In the world*—in other parts of the country. *Doctors of Laws and the Masters of Arts*—persons holding the highest degrees of the University. *Collectors of intelligence*—writers of newsletters. *Memorable*—worthy of being remembered. *The only coffee room in Cambridge*—because there was then only one coffee house in that town; it was kept by a man named Kirk who “got a written newsletter circulated by one Muddiman.” *At the seat of etc.*—at the country residences of the wealthy men. *Impatiently*—eagerly. *Expected*—awaited. *Thumbed*—properly soiled with the thumb or the fingers; hence handled; read. *October*—ale or cider brewed in the month of October; hence good ale or cider is jocosely so named. *It furnished the neighbouring etc.*—The country gentlemen of the neighbourhood discussed the news supplied by these letters as they drank their ale.

*Rectors*—clergymen. [*rector* n. Parson of parish etc.—*Oxford Dictionary*]. *Topics*—subjects; texts. *Sharp*—bitter; acrimonious. *Sharp sermons etc.*—pulpit addresses in which they bitterly condemned the Whigs and the Roman Catholics. Macaulay has previously described that the country clergymen were the staunch supporters of Tory principles in politics and episcopalian principles in religion. They bitterly hated the Whigs, Catholics and Dissenters. *Whiggery*—the principles of the Whigs; Whiggism. *Popery*—a term generally used with a touch of contempt for Catholicism. *Journals*—newsletters. *Detected*—discovered. *Archive*—a chamber where old documents are kept. *One series*—a group of successive numbers. *Not the least valuable*—highly valuable. *Literary treasures collected*—collections of great merit from the point of view of literature. *Sir James Mackintosh* (1765—1832)—a well-known philosopher and politician; his best known works are *Vindiciæ Gallicæ* and *History of the Revolution*. *Occasionally*—at times. *This work*—History of England. Macaulay’s book was practically a history of the Revolution of 1688 that

Mackintosh had already dealt with in his work. Mackintosh's book had appeared in 1834.

**Paragraph 120.** No provincial town of those times possessed a newspaper. No printers were to be found except in London and at the two Universities.

*It is scarcely necessary to say—i.e., it may be readily understood from what has been said about the London newspapers. Provincial newspapers—newspapers published in county towns. Two Universities—viz., Oxford and Cambridge. North of the Trent—See notes on paragraph 9. At York—This was established by Thomas Gent in 1724. He printed his books at his own press.*

**Paragraph 121.** *The Observer*, published under the authority of the court, contained comment without any news. It was a violent Tory paper, edited by Roger Lestrangle and betrayed the most virulent hatred against the Whigs and the Dissenters.

*Furnish political instruction etc.—impart political education to the public. The function of a newspaper is not merely to supply news but to educate public opinion on political questions. Scanty—small; meagre. Comment—discussion or remark on current political questions. Patronage—support and authority. A modern newspaper contains both news and comment; its double function was divided between *The London Gazette* and *The Observer*. *Observer*—spectator. *Edited*—conducted. *Pamphleteer*—an author of pamphlets, i.e., short treatises on subjects of temporary political and other interest. *Roger Lestrangle* (1616-1704)—journalist and miscellaneous*

[Page 202, Footnote—*Parliamentary proceedings of November 1685*—It was a stormy session because King James II had appointed some Catholic officers to important posts against the provisions of the Test Act and expressed his determination not to part with them. The House of Commons strongly remonstrated against the conduct of the King. This Parliament met on 9th November, 1685.]

[Page 205, Footnote—*Meditated*—contemplated. *A work similar etc.—viz., Mackintosh's History of the Revolution of 1688. Compass*—limits. *Great masses of the rudest ore*—large quantities of worthless stuff. *Toiled in the same mine*—laboured to collect materials for similar work.]

[Page, 205, Footnote—*Life of Thomas Gent*—Gent's autobiography, edited by Rev. Joseph Hunter, appeared in 1832.]

writer; wrote *The Fables of Æsop* and *A Brief History of the Times*. He "was fighting or writing or plotting on behalf of the Stuarts the greater part of his life. He was made surveyor of printing presses and licenser of the press in 1663 and knighted in 1685"—(*Salmon*).

*Deficient in*—wanting in. *Readiness*—facility; alertness. *Shrewdness*—sagacity; discernment. *Diction*—language; style. *Coarse*—rude; inelegant. *Disfigured*—marred. *Mean*—vulgar. *Flippant*—The modern sense of the word is 'light, frivolous'. *Jargon*—language or phraseology peculiar to a sect or profession; "barbarous or debased language, mode of speech full of unfamiliar terms"—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Passed for wit*—was regarded or accepted as wit. *Green room*—a room near the stage of a theatre where actors and actresses retire during the intervals of their parts in the play. It is so called because formerly such rooms were painted green. *Was not without etc.*—was penetrating and forcible.

*Lestrangle was by no means etc.*—Lestrangle was a facile and intelligent writer; his language was forcible and incisive though it was marred by attempts at coarse humour then current amongst actors and tavern-goers. *At once ferocious and ignoble*—both savage and mean. *Ignoble*—mean. *Penned*—wrote. *But his nature at once etc.*—Every line that he wrote betrayed the cruelty and meanness of his character. *The first Observer*—the early numbers of this paper. The *Observer* first appeared in 1681. *Excuse*—justification. *Acrimony*—bitterness; virulence. *Contend*—fight. *Numerous adversaries*—many enemies. *Unscrupulous*—unprincipled. *Violence*—fury; outrage. *Unsparring retaliation*—merciless reprisal or revenge. *Whose unscrupulous etc.*—His enemies, the Whigs, were shameless and unprincipled in their attacks upon Tories. He was therefore justified in pursuing a policy of relentless revenge. *All opposition*—i.e., the power of the Whig party. *Crushed*—broken down. *Disdain*—despised; thought beneath oneself. *Insult*—vilify. *A party*—the Whig party. *Reply*—retaliate. *A generous.....reply*—A noble mind would have refrained from insulting a defeated enemy who was powerless to retaliate. *Aggravate*—increase; heighten. *Prisoners, of exiles etc.*—the leaders of the party who were either cast into prison, banished or executed. *Bereaved families*—families that mourned

the death of some of their members through execution. *Malice*—spitefulness: ill-nature. *Sanctuary*—refuge or shelter. *But from the malice etc.*—**Expl.** Lestrange was so ill-natured that he did not abstain from insulting and vilifying his opponents even after their death; nor had he any respect for the grief of families who were mourning the death of their members. Common decency requires a man not to speak ill of the dead and to avoid giving pain to mourning families by calumniating their dead relatives. But Lestrange had no such scruples.

*In the last month of the reign of Charles the Second—i.e., in January, 1685.* *William Jenkyn* (1613-85)—vicar of Christ Church, Newgate, London. He was deprived of his living in 1650 for having remonstrated against the trial of Charles I. He was restored to it in 1655 but was again ejected under the provisions of the Act of Uniformity of 1662. He was arrested in 1684 for preaching at a religious meeting of the Dissenters and died in Newgate. *Dissenting pastor*—clergyman who did not conform to the provisions of the Act of Uniformity.

*Of great note*—well known. *Cruelly persecuted*—He had been expelled from his living and then arrested and imprisoned. *For no crime but that of worshipping etc.*—His only crime was that he followed the form of worship practised by most of the Protestants of Europe. *Fashion generally followed throughout Protestant Europe*—form of worship followed in the Protestant countries of the Continent like Holland, Germany and Sweden. The continental Protestants are either Calvinists or Lutherans. They do not believe in the episcopalian form of worship. *Privations*—wants. *Newgate*—the old prison of London. It was so named because it stood on the site of one of the old city gates. It was pulled down in 1881 and was replaced by a new jail.

*Outbreak*—outburst: sudden and strong manifestation. *Repressed*—checked. *Train*—procession. *Unthinking*—thoughtless. *Concern*—compassion: sympathy. *Set up a howl of savage exultation*—raised a shout of brutal triumph. *Lestrange alone etc.*—Lestrange was the only man who happened to be unaffected by this pathetic incident. It was only he who considered it to be a subject of joy and triumph. *Weak compassion*—the sympathy shewn for Jenkyn was nothing but weakness in Lestrange's opinion. *Trimmers*—This name was given to the

members of the party led by Halifax. They were so called because they refused to identify themselves with either of the two political parties, the Tories and the Whigs, and did not support their extreme views and measures. Halifax published a pamphlet on the character of a *Trimmer*. *Blasphemous old imposter*—old impious hypocrite; this was the vulgar abuse applied to Jenkyn by Lestrange. *Blasphemous*—guilty of blasphemy, *i.e.*, irreverence towards God. *Righteous*—just. *Vowed*—swore. *Wage war with*—fight against. *Wage war not only etc.*—Ordinarily men fight against their opponents till death, but Lestrange's vindictive bitterness would pursue them even after their death. He would not scruple to abuse their memory even after they were laid in their graves. *Mock*—sham; counterfeit. *Mock saints and martyrs*—persons who pretend to superior sanctity and pose as champions of their faith. *Martyrs*—(Greek *martyr*, a witness) properly one who bears witness to the truth of his religion; hence one who suffers persecution and death in the cause of his religion. *Oracle*—a person or thing whose authority cannot be disputed; infallible guide. The oracles of ancient times were the answers given by a god or his priest to inquiries concerning future events. *Parochial clergy*—clergymen of the rural parishes. Macaulay has given a description of these clergymen and their political views in paragraph 59.

**Paragraph 122.** The newspapers and newsletters constituted the only literature then available to the rural clergy and country gentlemen. The conveyance of bulky packets was both expensive and difficult. Consequently the country gentlemen had very few books in their libraries. Even scholars and learned men could boast of very few books. No circulating libraries were then in existence. In London the booksellers allowed their known customers to carry books home for study but no such convenience was available in the country.

[Page 208, Footnote—*Calamy*—Edmund Calamy (1671-1732) was the Presbyterian minister at Westminster. He published sermons and biographies including "*An Account of the ministers ejected by the Act of Uniformity*." *Baxter*—Richard Baxter (1615-91) was a famous Presbyterian divine. He retired from the Church of England on the passing of the Act of Uniformity and suffered much ill-treatment during the reigns of Charles II and James II.]

*Literature which could be carried by the post bag*—i.e., newspaper and newsletters. *Nutrimment*—food; pabulum. *Intellectual nutriment*—things that supply food for the intellect, i.e., help its culture. *Ruminated*—read over and over again because of the few books they had to read. *To ruminate* is properly to chew the cud as some animals do; ব্রোমহন করা। *Divines*—clergymen. *Country divines etc.*—rural clergy and country gentlemen. *Extensive work*—bulky volume. *Making its way*—travelling. *Paternoster Row*—a street in London in the neighbourhood of St. Paul's, running parallel to Newgate Street. Most of the publishers had their places of business in this street in those times. Some of the famous English publishing firms, like that of Messrs. Longmans, Green & Co., are still situated in this street. *Kentucky*—one of the central states in the Mississippi valley of the United States of America. *Scantily*—meagrely; poorly. *A rural parsonage*—the residence of a country clergyman. *Theologian*—a student of divinity. *Has already been remarked*—in paragraph 57. *Were not more plentifully supplied*—were not better stocked with books. *Knights of the shire*—members returned to Parliament as the representatives of counties or districts (as distinguished from those who are returned from towns). In those times county representatives were generally country gentlemen. *Perpetually*—continually. *Back parlour*—a sitting room behind the shop.

*Passed among his neighbours*—was regarded as a very learned man in his locality. **N. B.** Macaulay now names some books that were very popular at that time especially with the country gentlemen, viz., a book of satire on the Puritans, a popular History, a book of jests, and a religious book dealing with the lives of saints. These books clearly indicate the narrow range of the country gentleman's interests.

*Hudibras*—a satire in verse against the Puritans by Samuel Butler. It was published in three parts in 1663, 1664 and 1678 and was very popular in those days. *Baker's Chronicle*—A chronicle of the kings of England from the Roman period to 1625 was published by Sir Richard Baker in 1643. Though this book cannot be regarded as accurate history, it enjoyed great popularity in those times. *Tarlton's Jests*—Tarlton was the name of a comic actor attached to the household of Queen



Elizabeth. A book of jests, relating fictitious anecdotes about the actor, was published in three parts under the name of *Tarlton's Jests*. It was a popular jest-book from the time of Queen Elizabeth downwards. *Seren Champions of Christendom*—The reference is to *The Famous History of the Seren Champions of Christendom*, published in 1617 by Richard Johnson. The seven champions were (1) St. George for England; (2) St. Andrew for Scotland; (3) St. Patrick for Ireland; (4) St. David for Wales; (5) St. Denis for France; (6) St. James for Spain and (7) St. Anthony for Italy. *Fowling pieces*—light guns for shooting birds. The clergyman's books lay among pots and pans, the country gentleman's among implements of sport. *Circulating library*—a library, the books of which pass from hand to hand among the subscribers. *Book society*—a society for supplying books to readers on easy terms. *Resource*—means of borrowing books from book-sellers. *Customer*—one who had dealings with the shop; purchaser. *Accommodation*—convenience.

**Paragraph 123.** The ladies, belonging to the families of the country gentlemen, possessed very little education. This was not because they lived in seclusion but because female education was grossly neglected in that age. Very few ladies of those days could write a single line in correct English.

*The lady of the manor*—i.e., the wife of the country gentleman. *Library stores*—stocks of books. *The prayer book*—the Book of Common Prayer containing the forms of devotion, public or private. Every Christian belonging to the Church of England possesses at least one copy of this book. *Receipt book*—book containing the directions for cookery. *Receipt*—recipe; prescription of ingredients for any composition. *They*

---

[Page 209. Footnote—*Cotton*—"the facetious poet", referred to in paragraph 107. *Angler*—*Cotton* wrote the second part of *Walton's Complete Angler*. A man of letters—a literary man. A critic points out the fallacy of *Macaulay's* arguments and says that the mere fact that *Cotton* had a few books in his hall window does not prove that he had none in his library. *Cotton* himself was a voluminous writer and his own books would have filled up a great part of the window. *Franklin*—*Benjamin Franklin* (1706—1790), a famous American statesman and philosopher. He played an important part in framing the constitution of the United States. *Little Britain*—close to Newgate Street; old book-shops were mostly situated in this street.]

*lost little etc.—i.e.*, it was in no way due to their living in retirement in the country. *Situations*—positions. *Facilities*—conveniences; advantages. *Mental improvement*—intellectual culture. *Decidedly*—undoubtedly; certainly. *Revival of learning*—or Renaissance is the term commonly used of that movement in Europe in the 15th century which marked the end of the Middle Ages and the commencement of the modern period. (A conspicuous feature of this movement was the eager study of the classical models both in arts and literature. The immediate cause of this movement was the capture of Constantinople by the Turks in 1453 and the dispersion of the Greek scholars with their old books to the western countries of Europe. The study of Greek became popular after this event and opened before their readers a new world of beauty and wisdom). *At an earlier period—i.e.*, in the 16th century. *Masterpieces of ancient genius*—greatest works of the Greek and Latin authors. *Dead languages*—languages that have ceased to be the vernaculars or spoken languages of any people; the reference is to ancient Greek and Latin. *Tongue*—language. *Tongue of Pascal and Moliere*—French. *Pascal*—(1623-62) a famous French philosopher, scientist and author; his best known work is his *Provincial Letters*. *Moliere*—(1622-73) the greatest of the French comic dramatists. "*Le Tartuffe*", "*Le Misanthrope*", "*Le Medecin*" are some of his best known plays. *Tongue of Dante and Tasso*—Italian. *Dante* (1265-1321)—the greatest of the Italian poets; his epic "*La Divina Commedia*" is one of the greatest poems of the world. *Tasso* (1544-1595)—the greatest Italian poet of his age; his best known work is "*Jerusalem Delivered*." *Tongue of Goethe and Schiller*—German. *Goethe* (1749-1832)—the greatest of the German poets and authors; his drama *Faust* is justly regarded as one of the greatest literary works of the world. *Schiller* (1759-1805)—a famous German poet and dramatist; author of *Wallenstein*, *Mary Stuart* and *William Tell*.

*Accomplished*—well-educated. *Nor is there any purer or more etc.*—The name of George Eliot, the greatest of the English novelists of the 19th century, sufficiently justifies this remark. Jane Austen had died in 1817.

*In the present day.....speak and write*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this remark on the education of English ladies in modern

times. He means to say that English ladies of the present day do not devote much attention on the study of ancient languages and literature as their ancestresses did in the 16th century. They do not study Latin, Greek and Hebrew but they have a thorough acquaintance with the modern European languages, like French, Italian and German. They study the great works, composed in these languages, and have besides a perfect mastery of English. In fact the English they speak and write is more elegant than the English of men. *Damsel*—a young unmarried woman; the use of this word is now mostly confined to poetry. *Had the least smattering of literature*—possessed the slightest knowledge of books. *Smattering*—slight or superficial knowledge. *A prodigy*—a woman possessed of rare gifts. *Prodigy* properly means a wonder or miracle. *Highly born*—born of noble families. *Highly bred*—possessed of excellent education. *Naturally quick witted*—possessed of keen natural intelligence. *Mother tongue*—their own vernacular, *i.e.*, English. *Solecisms*—grammatical errors. The word is derived from *Soloi*, an Athenian colony in Cilicia, the inhabitants of which in course of time lost the purity of their original language, spoken in Athens. *Charity girl*—girl educated at a charity school. A charity school is an institution founded by benevolent societies for the education of poor children. Such children are not merely taught but also fed and clothed free. The education, imparted in such schools, is naturally of the most elementary kind.

**Paragraph 124.** The sad condition of female education was mainly due to the prevailing immorality of those times. Women were courted and flattered more for their physical charms and immodest ways than for intellectual culture and gifts. Ignorance was then considered lady-like. A lady, who possessed a knowledge of literature and philosophy, was looked down upon as a vain pedant.

*The explanation may easily be found*—One can easily discover the reasons why the condition of female education

[Page 212, Footnote—*Queen Mary*—daughter of James II and wife of William III. *Educated by a Bishop*—*viz.*, by Compton, Bishop of London. *Superior woman*—intelligent and highly accomplished woman. *Superb*—excellent. *Title page*—the page of a book which contains its title or name. *This book was given etc.*—The student will do well to pick out the grammatical and other errors in this sentence.]

was so bad in those times. *Licentiousness*—dissoluteness; immorality. *Effect*—consequence. *Austerity*—severity; rigour. *Mode*—fashion. *Extravagant licentiousness*.....mode—Macauley means to say that the Puritans had, during the period of the Commonwealth, when they had the ascendancy, condemned all enjoyments as sinful. They had banned sports, theatres and other innocent gaieties. This restraint, put on men's natural love of pleasure, was unwise. The consequence was that when Charles II was restored to the throne and the Puritan rule ended in England, there was a violent reaction in the opposite direction. During the Restoration period, English society became grossly immoral. Purity of life was ridiculed as hypocritical. *Ordinary effect*—usual consequence. *Moral and intellectual degradation*—viciousness and ignorance. *Personal beauty*—physical charm. *To their personal beauty etc.*—It was the custom of men to pay court to women in a vulgar and saucy manner for their physical charms. *Desire*—longing. *They*—i.e., women. *Chivalrous sentiment*—noble and refined feeling like the passion cherished by the knights of old for their lady-loves.

*Qualities*—virtues. *Which fit them to be companions etc.*—i.e., which can make them excellent wives. *Repelled*—repulsed. *Libertines*—rakes; debauches. *A maid of honour*—See notes on paragraph 100. *To do full justice to a white bosom*—i.e., to show off her physical charms to best advantage. *Ogled*—cast side-glances with a view to attracting notice ; আড়চোখে চাওয়া । *Significantly*—in a manner full of meaning or suggestiveness. *Voluptuously*—in a manner tending to excite sensual desires. *Pert*—saucy. *Repartee*—smart; witty reply. *Romp*—engage in rude, boisterous games. *Lords of the Bedchamber*—See notes on paragraph 38. *Guards*—i.e., Life-Guards; regiments of soldiers that protected the person of the King and the royal family. *Sly*—arch; full of double entendre. *Sly expression*—suggestive gestures. *Put on a page's dress*—dress herself like a boy. *Frolic*—fun. *Followed*—courted. *More likely to be honoured etc.*—i.e., had a greater chance of winning the favour of the King. Charles II was not very scrupulous about his love-affairs.

*Jane Grey* (1537-54)—the accomplished but ill-fated daughter of the Duke of Suffolk and great-grand daughter of Henry VII.

On Edward VI's death, she was proclaimed Queen of England, but was ousted from the throne by Queen Mary after a short reign of ten days and was executed with her husband six months later. She possessed talents of a superior order. She wrote a very beautiful hand and could play skilfully on different instruments. She was acquainted with Latin, Greek and Hebrew as well as French and Italian. Roger Ascham has left an interesting account of his interview with her at Bradgate (her father's residence). He found her reading Plato's *Phædo* in Greek while the rest of the family were amusing themselves in the park. *Lucy Hutchinson*—the gifted wife of Col. Hutchinson who fought against the King during the Civil War and was one of the judges who tried the King and signed his death-warrant. She made a verse translation of Lucretius early in her life. Her *Life of Colonel Hutchinson*", first printed in 1806, is a valuable work of biography. Her treatise "*On Principles of the Christian Religion*" was published in 1817. *Standard*—measure by which anything is valued. *Attainments*—acquirements. *It was more dangerous etc.*—because superior attainments, instead of being honoured or admired, were likely to be the objects of ridicule.

*Frivolity*—levity; lightness of temper. *Unbecoming*—unworthy. *Slightest tincture*—least tinge. *Pedantry*—display of knowledge. *Extreme ignorance and frivolity etc.*—Deep ignorance and thoughtlessness were not considered so unlady-like as the least display of superior knowledge. Any claim to high attainments on the part of a woman was considered intolerable pedantry and was ridiculed as such. But a lady was not blamed for her utter ignorance or lightness of temper. *Too celebrated*—notorious. *Hampton Court*—See notes on paragraph 31. The palace contains a fine collection of pictures including some of Lely's fine portraits of the beauties of Charles II's court like Nell Gwynn. *Acrostics*—compositions in verse in which the first or the first and last letters of the lines taken in order form a name or motto. *Lampoons*—personal satires; abusive attacks on persons in prose or verse. *Translations*—because these ladies were not able to read the original in French. *Clelia and the Grand Cyrus*—names of two very long and sentimental French romances written by Madame de Scudery (1607-1701). They were very popular in those days.

*Of the two celebrated..... Grand Cyrus—Expl.* This remark occurs in connection with the description of the imperfect education and culture of the women in Charles II's times. Few of the notorious beauties of the age, whose pictures are to be seen at Hampton Court, read anything more serious than satires and acrostics or the English translations of long and dull French novels. Their minds were so light and shallow that they could not take any interest in deeper studies.

**Paragraph 125.** The study of Greek was sadly neglected in the 17th century. Of course, there were some scholars thoroughly acquainted with Greek literature, but these were to be found only amongst the clergy at the Universities. At Cambridge few clergymen could read the Gospels in the original. The state of things was not much better at Oxford. Few statesmen of the day found any delight in the study of a Greek classic.

*Accomplished—well-educated. Solid—sound. Profound—deep. Greek learning—knowledge of Greek language and literature. Flourish among us—thrive in England. Before the civil war—Greek learning was introduced into England early in the 16th century. A number of famous Greek scholars, like Colet, Linacre and More, flourished in England before the Civil War. Long after the Revolution—towards the end of the 18th century and afterwards. From Homer to Photius—from the earliest to the latest author; from beginning to end. Homer—the author of the Iliad and the Odyssey, was the greatest of the Greek poets. His date cannot be exactly ascertained. Photius—the famous Patriarch of Constantinople, lived in the 9th century A. D. He was one of the most learned men of his time and in the midst of a busy life, found time for the composition of numerous works, several of which have come down to modern times. He is the last of the Greek classics.*

*Exclusively—solely. The clergy resident at the Universities—i.e., the Professors of the Universities; most of the members of the teaching staff of the Universities were then clergymen. Not fully appreciated—i.e., their worth was not properly understood. Gospels—the first four books of the New Testament containing accounts of the life and teachings of Jesus Christ. They are named after their authors as Matthew, Mark,*

Luke and John. *In the original*—in the language in which they were first written. The Gospels were originally written in Greek. *Nor was the standard at Oxford higher*—The state of Greek learning at Oxford University was not better. *Christ Church*—a famous college of Oxford. It was originally named Cardinal College, because it was founded by Cardinal Wolsey. It was re-named Christ Church in 1529 after Wolsey's fall. *Rose up as one man*—stood up in a united body; mustered all their strength. *Defend*—support.

*Genuineness*—authenticity. *Epistles of Phalaris*—Phalaris was the name of a cruel tyrant of Agrigentum in Sicily who was believed to have lived in the sixth century B.C. He was said to have invented the brazen bull in which he burnt alive the victims of his cruelty. Later traditions represented him, however, as a man of humane disposition who patronized men of letters. This view of his character is presented in a number of well-known epistles named after him. These epistles are now held to be the compositions of a sophist of later times though their date cannot now be determined. The *allusion* here is to the famous controversy over the question of the genuineness of the Epistles of Phalaris that is commonly known by the name of *Boyle and Bentley Controversy*. A new edition of the Epistles of Phalaris was published by the scholars of Christ Church in 1695 under the name of Charles Boyle who, in the preface, made some unwarranted attacks on Bentley, the King's Librarian. Bentley published a dissertation in 1697 in which he proved that the author of the Epistles was not the Sicilian tyrant but some Sophist of a later age. At this the indignation at Christ Church knew no bounds. Bentley's attack was considered to be an insult to the college. So all the famous scholars of Christ Church combined their talents to give a crushing rejoinder to Bentley. Their answer appeared in 1698 and was received with loud applause. Bentley, unmoved by the outcry against him, resolutely set himself to the preparation of his answer. His book appeared in 1699. His answer was so crushing that his opponents did not attempt any rejoinder. It finally settled the question, and proved the spuriousness of the Epistles.

*The first seat of philology*—Christ Church was then a famous centre of the scientific study of language. *Philology*—science of language; linguistics. *Muster*—collect. *Stock of Attic learning*—amount of Greek learning. *Attic*—pertaining.

to Attica, an ancient state in Greece of which Athens was the capital. *Could not muster such a stock etc.*—It has been pointed out in the notes on the Epistles that all the famous scholars of Christ Church co-operated with one another in composing the answer to Bentley's essay. *Public schools*—a term commonly applied to a number of famous high-grade English schools like Eton, Harrow, Rugby. [*public school*, n. one under p. management, especially endowed grammar (usu. boarding) school preparing pupils chiefly for universities or public services, often maintaining discipline with help of pupils—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *As is now possessed by several youths at every great public school*—This is Macaulay's hackneyed way of expressing his contempt for the ignorance of his opponents. He often ascribes to school-boys a stock of learning which cannot always be found in a ripe scholar. Macaulay's school boy has therefore become a byword for a very well-informed man. *When in the reign..... public school*—**Expl.** Macaulay is speaking of the decline of Greek learning in the University of Oxford in the 17th century. In the reign of William III, a controversy arose over the genuineness of the letters in Greek, attributed to Phalaris a tyrant of Agrigentum in Sicily. An edition of the Epistles, of Phalaris was published by the scholars of Christ Church College in the University of Oxford under the editorship of Dr. Boyle. Dr. Bentley of Cambridge published a dissertation in which he disputed the genuineness of the Epistles. The Christ Church College of Oxford was then reputed for the accuracy and excellence of its philological scholarship. The members of that college, taking the attack of Dr Bentley as an insult to their college, attempted in a body to answer the arguments of Dr. Bentley. But even the scholars of a college, noted at that time for their knowledge of languages, could not gather a sufficient knowledge of Greek to refute the arguments of Dr. Bentley. In fact, their knowledge of Greek was hardly greater than what is now possessed by some intelligent students of public schools.

*Men of the world*—men who do not follow the academic profession; men devoted to business other than the pursuit of learning. *Raleigh*—See notes on paragraph 29. He was one of the best scholars of his age. *Falkland*—Lucius Cary, Viscount Falkland (1610-1643), was a man of amiable disposition



and one of the best scholars of his times. He tried his best to bring about peace between the King and Parliament, but his efforts failed. On the outbreak of the Civil War, he joined the Royalist side and was slain in the battle of Newbury. *Pitt* (1759-1806)—the famous English statesman, who guided the affairs of England during the trying period of the French Revolution and the Napoleonic wars. He entered Parliament when he was only twenty-one years of age, became Chancellor of the Exchequer at twenty-three and Prime Minister at twenty-four. *For* (1749-1806)—entered Parliament at nineteen and became a Lord of the Admiralty in the following year. He opposed the war with France and was Pitt's most formidable opponent. After Pitt's death in 1806, he became Foreign Secretary, but died a few months later. *Windham* (1750-1810)—a famous English statesman and a friend of Dr. Johnson and Burke. He was Secretary for War during Pitt's ministry and held the war and the colonial offices in Grenville's administration, 1806-07. *Grenville* (1712-1770)—an English statesman, educated at Eton and Christ Church. As the Prime Minister of George III, he was responsible for the introduction of the system of colonial taxation which ultimately led to the War of American Independence. *Could read with enjoyment*—could find any delight in the study of. *Sophocles* (c.496-c.405 B.C.)—a famous dramatist of ancient Athens, author of "*Antigone*," "*Electra*," etc. *Plato*—(427-347 B.C.) one of the greatest of ancient Greek philosophers. His "*Dialogues*" and "*Republic*" are still read with profit and admiration.

**Paragraph 126.** Good Latin scholars were to be found in large numbers. The ability to converse in Latin and to compose poems in that language was a more common accomplishment than now.

*The language of Rome*—Latin. *Its imperial character*—its importance as the medium of communication between the different countries and nations of Europe. Latin was the official language of the ancient Roman Empire that included within it various races speaking different languages. After the downfall of Rome, Latin continued to be the medium of international communication in Europe down to the 17th century. *Indispensable*—absolutely necessary. *Negotiator*—**diplomatist**. Representatives of different countries, ignorant of

one another's languages, talked amongst themselves in Latin. *Accomplishment*—attainment. *On a great occasion*—e.g., on the occasion of a national victory or on the birth of an heir to the throne. *Lay at the foot of the throne*—humbly present to the King. *Happy*—skilful. *Virgil* (70-19 B. C.)—the greatest of the Roman epic poets, author of the *Aeneid*. *Ovid* (43 B.C.—A. D. 17)—a famous Roman poet, author of "*Metamorphoses*." Both these poets lived in the Augustan age when Roman literature reached its highest development. The poets were all patronized by Augustus and wrote in his praise. *Augustus*—Caius Octavianus Augustus (63 B. C.—14 A. D.) was the first emperor of Rome. After a triumvirate of twelve years in association with Mark Antony and Lepidus he became the supreme master of the empire in 31 B. C., and ruled it for 45 years with wisdom and skill. Under his wise rule the empire greatly prospered and "*Augustan age*" is now commonly used to mean an age of peace and prosperity.

*And neither Oxford.....of Augustus*—**Expl.** Macaulay is speaking of the cultivation of Latin among the scholars of Oxford and Cambridge. In both the Universities the writing of Latin verses in the manner of the old masters was assiduously practised. Some scholars possessed the poetic gift. They composed verses in praise of the English King on occasions of public moment,—in skilful imitation of the style of the great Latin poets, Virgil and Ovid, who had in the past composed poems in praise of the Roman Emperor, Augustus.

**Paragraph 127.** France was then at the height of her glory. She exercised a paramount influence not only in European politics but also in arts, literature and fashions. The French language was extensively studied in Europe and it was fast replacing Latin as the language of diplomacy. The influence of French literature was felt also in England. Under this influence new canons of criticism were adopted and English prose, losing its former majesty, became more lucid and easy.

*The Latin*—i.e., Latin with its imperial character. *Was giving way*—was yielding place. *A younger rival*—a modern European language. French was a language derived from Latin; but it replaced Latin after the decline of the Roman Empire. *Yet the Latin etc.*—Though Latin was of such importance to travellers and diplomatists, yet it was being

replaced by the French language as the medium of international communication. *United*—combined in herself. *Ascendency*—domination ; influence. *France united at that time etc.*—France exercised in those times a paramount influence in Europe in **every** department of social activity, in politics, in arts and in literature. *Her military glory*—the fame or prestige of her arms. *At the height*—at its zenith. Spain had been the foremost power of Europe till then ; Louis XIV humbled the power of Spain and made France the leading military nation on the Continent. *Vanquished*—defeated. *Mighty coalitions*—powerful alliances. The reference is to the Triple Alliance, concluded between England, Sweden and the Dutch Republic. The Allies demanded that Louis should remain contented with the possession of certain strong towns that he had conquered on his northern frontiers and should not attempt any more conquest. Louis accepted these terms and the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle was concluded on these conditions. Another league was formed against France by the emperor, Spain, Holland, Denmark, Saxony and Lorraine. The allies were, however, unsuccessful in their object, because by the Peace of Nimeguen, concluded between the allies and France, Louis was allowed to retain the greater part of his conquests.

*Dictated*—laid down the terms as the victorious party. *Treaties*—e.g., the treaty of Westphalia concluded in 1648 and Nimeguen concluded in 1672. *Great cities*—like Freiburg, Strasburg and all the important frontier towns of the Netherlands. *Provinces*—like Franche-Comte and the territories in the direction of the Rhine. *Castilian pride*—i.e., proud Spaniards. The Spaniards were a notoriously proud race. For *Castilian*, see notes on paragraph 34. *Precedence*—superiority. *She had forced etc.*—She had compelled the proud Spaniards to acknowledge her superiority. Spain was so long the leading power in Europe. She now yielded the dominant position to France. The reference here is to the wars between France and Spain in the 17th century in which the latter suffered a series of disasters and was compelled to conclude peace with France on humiliating conditions. By the treaty of Pyrenees, concluded between the two powers in 1659, Spain had to cede large slices of her territories to France. *Prostrate*—humble. *Footstool*—a stool for supporting the feet. *Prostrate themselves at her footstool*—make the most humiliating submission. *She*

*had summoned Italian princes etc.*—The reference is to the visit of the Doge of Genoa to Paris, referred to in paragraph 97. The reference is also to Louis XIV's capture of Avignon, the Papal residence, on a complaint from his ambassador at Rome that he had been insulted by the Pope's family. The Pope Alexander VII was compelled to make the most humble submission and sent his nephew, a Cardinal, on a special mission to France. As Voltaire wittily remarked this was the first instance of a Papal legate ever sent to ask for pardon.

*Authority*—influence. *Supreme*—paramount. *Good breeding*—polite life and manners; refined taste and manners. *Duel*—See notes on paragraph 90. *Minuet*—a slow and graceful dance that originated in France in the middle of the 17th century. *Her authority.....minuet*—**Expl.** Macaulay says that France was the model of polite and refined life throughout Europe in the 17th century. Her influence in determining the standards of polite and refined life was supreme and undisputed. In all matters affecting the lives of men and women of polished society, she set the fashion and the standard. A duel was to be fought in the approved French manner, a minuet was to be danced in the correct French style. So in all other matters. *She determined how a gentleman's etc.*—*i.e.*, France set the fashion in matters of dress. *Peruke*—another form of peri-wig, *i.e.*, wig; see notes on paragraph 96. *Heels*—*i.e.*, of his boots. *In literature she gave law etc.*—French literature served as the model that all civilised nations imitated. The reference is also to the great influence on European literature, exercised by Boileau. *Gave the law*—set up the standard of excellence. The reference is probably to the deliverance of the Law of God by Moses to the Israelites. 'To give the law' may also mean to exercise a dominating influence'. France delivered the law of literary taste to the whole world—a law that was supreme and inviolable. She exercised, therefore, a dominating influence in the literary world of Europe. *Racine*—See notes on paragraph 99. *Moliere*—See notes on paragraph 123. *Trifler*—author of light, short compositions. But La Fontaine cannot be regarded as a writer exactly of this class. *Agreeable*—pleasant and interesting. *La Fontaine* (1621-95)—a French poet and fabulist; best known for his inimitable *Tales* and *Fables*. *Rhetorician*—eloquent and elegant writer. *Bossuet*—See notes on paragraph 59. *No other*

*country.....as Bossuet*—**Expl.** Macaulay is speaking of the variety and excellence of the literature that was produced in France in the 17th century. Literary men of supreme merit excelled in all forms of literature. Tragedy, for example, reached its highest development in the hands of Racine—a tragic dramatist, almost unrivalled in that age. Moliere was a writer of comedies to whom there was no equal in any European country. La Fontaine was a writer of dainty, graceful little stories and was without a peer in this form of literature. Bossuet was a writer of eloquent prose and propounder of the principles of rhetoric, extraordinarily subtle and profound.

*Had set*—The metaphor is from the setting of heavenly bodies like the sun and the stars. *The literary glory of Italy etc.*—The age, during which great writers had flourished in Italy and Spain, had come to an end. Italian literature reached its highest development during the age from Dante to Tasso, *i.e.*, from the 14th to the 16th century. The great Italian writers of this age were Dante, Petrarch, Boccaccio, Ariosto and Tasso. Spanish literature blossomed in the 16th and 17th centuries in the age of Cervantes, Lope de Vega and Calderon. *That of Germany had not yet dawned*—No great writer had yet appeared in Germany. German literature began to flower towards the end of the 18th century. A galaxy of brilliant poets, like Goethe, Schiller, Herder and Richter, appeared in Germany about that time.

*The eminent men who adorned Paris*—the famous French authors of the age. *Shone forth with a splendour*—sparkled with a brilliance. *The genius.....by contrast*—The light of the French literary stars shone forth more brilliantly because of the darkness that had fallen on the literatures of Spain, Italy and Germany. The genius of French literary men appeared more striking when contrasted with the comparative want of literary men in other countries. *Set off to full advantage*—displayed very effectively. *Set off*—enhance; make more striking. *The genius, therefore, of the eminent men etc.*—**Expl.** This is Macaulay's remark on the prosperous condition of French literature during the age of Louis XIV. No great writer flourished in that period in any other country of Europe. Italian and Spanish literatures had blossomed in a previous age; the day of German literature was not yet come. France produced in this interval a number of famous authors whose

genius appeared all the more brilliant on account of the darkness which prevailed in the surrounding countries. *Had at that time an empire over mankind*—exercised an influence over the human race in the seventeenth century. *Roman Republic*—the largest empire of ancient times extending from England in the north to the borders of the desert of Sahara in the south and from the Atlantic on the west to the river Euphrates in the east.

*Republic*—commonwealth : a system of government in which the supreme power is not vested in a king or hereditary ruler, but in a body of the representatives of the people. Ancient Rome was a Republic, supreme political power being vested in a body of citizens, called the *Senate*. *Attained*—obtained. *Was politically dominant*—enjoyed political supremacy : ruled over an extensive empire. *Arts*—fine arts, like painting and sculpture. *Letters*—literature. *In arts and letters*—i.e., culturally. *The humble pupil of Greece*—i.e., followed the Greek models with reverence. Greece became a Roman province towards the end of the second century B. C. The brothers Scipio were great admirers of Greek arts and letters, and the culture of the conquered country rapidly spread among the Romans. N. B. In his essay on *Mahon's War on Spanish Succession*, Macaulay mentions that a parallel revolution occurred in Spain after her conquest of Italy. "A revolution took place in the literature of Spain, not unlike that revolution which, as Horace tells us, took place in the poetry of Latium : "The slave took prisoner the enslaver." The reference is to the following famous passage in Horace :—"Captive Greece captured her rugged conqueror in turn, and to unpolished Latium gave her arts"—*Epistles*, II. 1

*The ascendancy which Rome had over Greece*—i.e., political supremacy.

*France had over the surrounding.....over Rome*—**Expl.** Macaulay describes in this sentence the complete supremacy of France over the neighbouring countries of Europe during the reign of Louis XIV. France reached then the zenith of greatness. She was not merely the greatest political and military power in Europe, but exercised a paramount influence on European culture. The other nations of Europe submitted to the political authority of France and were, at the same

time, content to follow the rules, laid down by France in literature and arts, manners and fashions. In this respect France was in a happier position than even ancient Rome. For while Rome exercised political supremacy over ancient Greece, she, in literature and culture, submitted to the influence of the great Greek civilisation. France held the supreme political power and, at the same time, set the standards of art and culture. She had both political and cultural supremacy.

*Universal language*—language studied and cultivated all over Europe. *Language of diplomacy*—language used as the medium of communication between the representatives of different nations; language for international correspondence. French thus took the place of Latin that had been formerly employed for this purpose. *Accurately*—correctly. *Politely*—elegantly. *Servility*—mean submission; slavishness, *i.e.*, in cultivating a foreign language in preference to one's mother tongue. *Neither our good nor our etc.*—Englishmen are naturally unwilling to copy the example set by others and so imitativeness cannot be regarded as a virtue or vice of the English national character. *Even here*—even in England. *Homage*—respect; submission. *Ackwardly*—clumsily. Though Englishmen submitted to the dominating influence of French, their imitation of the language was clumsy. *Sullenly*—as opposed to cheerfully; in a sour and angry manner. *Neighbours*—the French. *Yet even here homage etc.*—Though Englishmen are not naturally fond of imitation, yet they had against their will to follow French literary models. Their imitations were, however, neither successful nor happy.

*Melodious*—sweet; musical. *Tuscan*—pertaining to Tuscany, formerly a grand duchy, in northern Italy with Florence as its capital. The dialect of Tuscany became in the hands of Dante and Petrarch the literary language of Italy. *The melodious Tuscan*—Italian poetry with its sweet music. *So familiar to the..... Elizabeth*—so extensively studied by English nobles and ladies in the 16th century. Acquaintance with Italian poetry, especially the sonnets, was regarded as a mark of good breeding and culture in England in the 16th century. Roger Ascham, the tutor of Elizabeth, tells us that even the Queen had acquired a proficiency in Italian, the language of Petrarch and Dante. Englishmen travelled in Italy and studied the melodious language. The Englishman

'Italianate' was a common figure in the comic dramas of the time. *Sank into contempt*—fell into neglect.

*Horace* (65—8 B. C.)—famous Roman satirist and poet. *Terence* (185—159 B.C.)—a famous Roman poet and dramatist. *Good company*—cultured society. *Pompous pedant*—vain intolerable prig. *Pedant*—'one who overrates or parades book-learning or technical knowledge or insists on strict adherence to formal rules (*Oxford Dictionary*)'. *Garnish*—adorn; set off; interlard. *Scraps*—fragments; bits. *To garnish his conversations with scraps of French*—to add (supposed) distinction to talk by the use of French words; to use French expressions here and there in the course of his conversation. *Parts*—talents; intelligence. *Canons*—rules. *Canons of criticism*—principles applied for judging the merits of literary compositions. *Models of style*—standards of language. *Came into fashion*—came into use; became popular.

**N.B.** The reference here is to the revolution in English literary tastes that substituted the classical model for the romantic in the 17th century. The classical school held its ground in English literature till the end of the 18th century when it was replaced in its turn by the romantic.

*The literature of the Elizabethan age is called 'romantic' because it was the expression of an exuberant imagination unfettered by laws save those of imagination itself. It was an eager and intense search of the beauty and glory of life, stimulated by a newly awakened interest in humanity and faith in human destiny. The literature that reflected this surging and bubbling life tended, therefore, to burst all bounds of formal theory and to be formless and vast. But soon there was a reaction against this reckless extravagance of imagination. In the Restoration period—in the *Days of King Charles II* and after—literature tended to be 'classical', i.e., to be sober, restrained in idea and expression. The form rather than the substance of literature was all that men cared for. Imagination was regarded as a dangerous guide, and a strict observance of formal rules was insisted on the sole condition of success in literature. *Dryden, the poet of the new spirit*, was a scrupulous follower of even the minutest rules and traditions of classical literature. Poetry was shorn of delicacy and subtlety of feeling and imagination. Its chief form was the*



heroic couplet which itself was a mere matter of rule and compass. Artistry in form rather than subtlety of thought or exuberance of imagination became the new ideal. *The result was disastrous for poetry* for it was stripped of the graces and glories of imagination. *Prose, however, gained immensely from this attention to form, for the qualities of clearness, precision and moderation which the new spirit fostered are essentially the qualities of a good prose style.*

*Quaint ingenuity*—odd conceits; far-fetched and strange fancies. These odd and ingenious subtleties of form and expression were merely the results of an exuberant imagination unrestrained by critical formulas. When literature submitted to the guidance of rules and formulas, such oddities were curbed. *Quaint*—far-fetched and strange. *Deformed*—disfigured; marred the beauty of. *Donne* (1573-1631)—Dean of St. Paul's and a well-known English poet of his age. *Deformed the verses of Donne*—Donne is classed by Dr. Johnson among the metaphysical poets. Poets of this school cared more for odd and unexpected analogies and fancies than for sentiment and beauty. This sort of literary taste had formerly prevailed in Italy whence it gradually spread to England. *Blemish*—fault; defect. *Cowley* (1618-67)—a well-known English poet. Besides a number of other poems and odes, composed after the manner of Pindar, he left unfinished an epic, named *Davideis*. He enjoyed great fame in his day and was supposed to be even a greater poet than Milton. His poetry labours under the same defects as those of Donne—there is much intellectual ingenuity but little depth of passion. *Majestic*—grand; sublime. *Involved*—of a complicated or intricate structure. *Variously musical*—possessed of a complex harmony; rich and rhythmic. *Than that of an earlier age*—than English prose of the 16th century. The reference is to the majestic prose style of Bacon, Milton and Sir Thomas Browne. The style is long and involved, but rich and sonorous. *Lucid*—clear. *Controversy*—debate; dispute. *These changes*—*viz.*, changes that come into fashion in the styles of both English prose and poetry. *Not to recognise*—to doubt; to fail to perceive. *French precept*—principles laid down by French critics, like Boileau. *French example*—*i.e.*, compositions of the great French authors. *Great masters of our language*—famous English authors. *Dignified compositions*—works written in a lofty or elevated style.

*Afferted*—preferred. *Quite as expressive etc.*—equally expressive and harmonious. *Were at hand*—were easily available. *Imported*—introduced into England. *Tragedy in rhyme*—The plays of the great Elizabethan dramatists, like Shakespeare and others, were written in blank verse. The tragedies of the Restoration age were written in rhymed verse after the French model. N.B. The reference is to the *Heroic Play*, a drama of love and adventure, written in rhyming couplets. This was the drama that steadily became popular in England during the Restoration period. Dryden's '*Aurangzeb*' and '*The Conquest of Granada*' are notable examples of this new species of drama. "The themes of the heroic play are 'honour won by valour' and 'valour inspired by love'. The personages are of exalted rank, conceived in the dilation of heroic passion. Its background is one of war, conspiracy and court-intrigue. A rhyming play was really no new thing. It was the rhyming heroic play that was the new thing—the form clearly suggested by the practice of French tragedy."—(*Schelling*). *Exotic*—foreign plant. *Soil*—country. *Drooped and speedily died*—did not thrive and quickly became extinct. No attempt was made in subsequent ages in England to compose dramas in rhymed verse. The heroic play was an artificial thing, unnatural in its portrayal of heroic passion and in its use of the rhymed couplet. So it went out of fashion after the Restoration period.

**Paragraph 128.** The immoral tone that pervades the lighter English literature of the age is a blot on the national character. The wits and the Puritans had always been at war with each other. The wits ridiculed the Puritans. The Puritans in their turn condemned innocent amusements as crimes. On coming into power, the Puritans had closed the theatres and had revenged themselves on the mockers. When they fell from power, they were unmercifully ridiculed by their enemies.

*Well*—desirable. *Copied*—imitated. *Decorum*—decency; opposed to levity and licentiousness. *Their great French*

---

[Page 217, Footnote—*Butler*—the author of *Hudibras*. *Asperity*—bitterness. *Words*—changed from *ends* in the original. *Rhetorique*—French form of *rhetoric*. *Counted*—regarded. *Vainglorious*—boastful. *Offensive*—displeasing. *Poverty*—i.e., of language. Dryden could not plead this excuse because he had a rich vocabulary at his command. *Repair*—resort. *Fraicheur*—French for freshness.

*contemporaries etc.*—i.e., almost all the great French writers of the age. *Preserved*—maintained in their works. *Profligacy*—immorality. *Plays*—dramas. *Satires*—literary compositions ridiculing men and manners ; বিজ্ঞপাতক রচনা । *Blot*—stain ; disgrace. *Fame*—credit ; reputation. *Evil*—malady ; hence vicious practice. *The evil may easily etc.* The origin of this vicious practice can be easily explained. *Wits*—properly persons possessed of fancy or humour ; literary men ; the men of culture of those times who held lighter views of life. “‘Wits’ is their favourite self-designation, scholars and gentlemen, with rather more of the gentlemen than the scholars—living in the capital, which forms a kind of island of illumination amid the surrounding darkness of the agricultural country”

—(Leslie Stephen).

*Puritans*—the name by which the Dissenters from the Church of England were generally known in the reigns of Elizabeth and the first two Stuart Kings. The name was given to them in derision for the superior purity of life and religious doctrines that they claimed. *Had never been on friendly terms*—always hated one another. Because the ideals of the two were utterly different. The wits, i.e., men of literary and artistic tastes, loved joy and beauty ; whereas the strict Puritans hated all joy as weakness of the flesh and turned away from beauty as from a terrible snare. *Sympathy*—love ; attraction. *The whole system of human life*—human life and all its concerns. *Points*—i.e., points of view. *Lights*—aspects. *They looked on the whole system etc.*—Their views on the nature and purpose of human life were entirely different. The Puritans viewed human life from the standpoint of duty, the wits from that of enjoyment or gaiety. The Puritans took a *serious* view of life, insisting on purity and holiness of living and strict adherence to moral ideals. The wits, i.e., literary men, took a *joyous* view of life, delighting in the beauty of things and the glory of passion. *The earnest*—the object of serious attention or zealous pursuit, such as moral purity and holiness to the Puritans. *The jest*—sport ; object of laughter and ridicule. *The earnest of each etc.*—Each of these classes despised or ridiculed what the other highly prized or zealously sought. *Torments*—tortures. *The pleasures of each etc.*—What gave pleasure to one was unendurably painful to the other. The wits found no pleasure in the

long prayers and sanctimonious ways of the Puritans and the latter, in their turn, detested the lightness and gaiety of the wits. *Stern*—austere; severe. *Precision*—a term contemptuously used of a man who rigidly adheres to rules; “one who is rigidly precise or punctilious, esp. in religious observance”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). The Puritan was strict in the observance of the Ten Commandments and all the tenets of Calvin. *Innocent sport of fancy*—harmless exercise of the imagination. The study of poetry was condemned by the early fathers of the church. The Puritans followed their example. *Light*—gay; frivolous. *Festive*—joyous.

*Light and festive natures*—men of gay and\* mirthful temper. *Solemnity*—seriousness. *Zealous brethren*—used jocosely of the Puritans, because they always professed to be serious and prompted by religious zeal. *Copious*—ample. *Furnished a copious etc.*—was an endless subject of laughter. *The civil war*—the civil war in the reign of Charles I. *Gifted with a fine sense of the ludicrous*—possessed of a sense of humour. *Assailing*—attacking; ridiculing. The Puritans had become the subjects of ridicule even with the Elizabethan dramatists. Shakespeare, for example, has his fling at the Puritans in the following passage—“but one puritan amongst them, and he sings psalms to hornpipes”—*Winter's Tale*, IV. ii. 47-48. *Straight-haired*—because unlike the Cavaliers the Puritans cropped their hair very short; hence they were contemptuously called Roundheads. *Snuffling*—speaking through the nose—a common Puritanic habit. *Whining*—groaning as if always oppressed by a sense of their sins; they were always complaining against the sinfulness of the world. *Saints*—Puritans because they pretended to superior piety and morality. *Christened*—properly baptised; hence named because Christian children are given their names at the time of baptism. *Book of Nehemiah*—a book in the Old Testament that follows immediately after the Book of Ezra. Chapters from ten onwards of this book contain long strings of names of Jews who returned from Egypt to Jerusalem and sealed the covenant. The reference is to the custom of the Puritans of giving their children scriptural names. Sometimes pious phrases were used as their names. A member of Cromwell's Parliament was named Praise-God Barboness. He had a brother who is said to have borne the name, Christ-came-into-the-world-to-save.

*Groaned in spirit*—felt tormented at heart because he considered indulgence in such sports to be a deadly sin. *Jack-in-the Green*—a stock character in the English May Day sports. The character is represented by a lad decked with flowers and hidden in twigs and leaves. “Dr. Owen Pugh says that Jack-in-the-Green represents Melvas, king of Somersetshire, disguised in green boughs and lying in ambush for Queen Guinevere, the wife of King Arthur, as she was returning from a hunting expedition.”—*Brewer. Plum porridge*—porridge seasoned with plums, raisins etc. Porridge is a sort of food made by slowly stirring oatmeal or similar substance in water or milk while boiling till a thickened mass is formed. It is a dish that is commonly used at the Christmas festivities.

*Christmas Day*—the greatest Christian festival. It is celebrated on the 25th December in memory of the birth of Jesus Christ. The mirth and feasting, with which Christmas is celebrated, are believed to be the relics of the old heathen festival Yule, celebrated on the occasion of Winter Solstice (22nd Dec.). Accordingly the Puritans thought it sinful to celebrate the holy occasion after the manner of the heathens. They held that the best way of observing the day was by prayers, fasting and religious exercises. The following description of the Puritans occurs in Macaulay’s *Essay on Milton*.—“The ostentatious simplicity of their dress, their sour aspect, their long graces, their Hebrew names, the scriptural phrases, which they introduced, on every occasion, their contempt for human learning, their detestation of polite amusements, were indeed fair game for the laughers.”

*From the Reformation..... Christmas day—Expl.* Macaulay is speaking of the ridicule that was poured upon the strictness and piety of the Puritans in literature for a long time. The Puritans were peculiar in their dress and appearance. They cut their hair short in order to avoid all appearance of lightness and gaiety. They spoke in a nasal tone. They were bitterly reproachful of the folly and sin of the world. They chose peculiar names for their children from the names of Jews in the Book of Nehemiah. They suffered terrible spiritual torment in looking upon the heathen festivities of May Day, especially the representation of revived spring in a boy clad in leaves and twigs. They were so strict and austere in observing

the religious character of Christmas Day that they regarded the eating of plum porridge on that day as indicative of a wicked mirthful spirit. All this seriousness and solemnity, this gloomy view of life and this austere piety naturally provoked the humorous attacks of literary men. From the 16th century, when the Reformation began and Puritanism was born, to the middle of the 17th century, writers, who possessed a keen sense of humour, had made fun of the oddities and peculiarities of the Puritans.

*A time came*—The reference is to the triumph of the Puritans in the Civil War and the establishment of the Commonwealth when they ruled over their enemies. *Laughs*—i.e., the wits, the literary men who had laughed at and made fun of the Puritans. *Began to look grave etc.*—had themselves to smart, i.e., were punished and humiliated by the victims of their ridicule. *Rigid*—austere. *Ungainly*—awkward; the Puritans with their hair close-cropped and severely simple dress were rather awkward. *Zealots*—fanatics. *Having furnished much good sport*—having served as the butts of laughter and ridicule. *During two generations*—for about fifty years from the time of Elizabeth to the outbreak of the Civil War. *Rose up in arms*—revolted against their enemies and detractors. *Grimly smiling*—with a dreadful smile of contempt. *Trod down etc.*—trampled beneath their feet; completely humbled. *Mockers*—scoffers; people who derided them. *Inflicted*—caused. *Petulant*—'peevisishly impatient or irritable' (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Petulant malice*—wanton ill-will. *Retaliated*—repaid, i.e., punished. *Implacable*—unquenchable. *Implacable malice*—unappeasable hatred. *Peculiar to bigots*—characteristic of fanatics. *Rancour*—spite; ill-will. *Mistake....:virtue*—who wrongly regarded their feeling of anger and revenge as righteous indignation. *The wounds inflicted.....virtue*—The Puritans had long to endure the bitter taunts of the gay wits, prompted by thoughtless folly. In their hour of triumph, the Puritans wreaked a full measure of vengeance on their enemies. They punished the wits with the most relentless hatred after the manner of fanatics who mistake their own vindictive feelings for righteousness. *The wounds inflicted.....rancour for virtue*—**Expl.** Macaulay is speaking of the terrible revenge that the Puritans took upon their enemies, the wits. The Puritans had suffered much at the hands of the gay wits and

Cavaliers. The latter had attacked the Puritans in a gay, careless spirit mingled with an impatient ill-will. But the malice, with which the Puritans attacked their enemies, was neither frivolous nor short-lived. The revenge of the Puritans was terrible, because it was prompted by a sullen and deep-seated ill-will. It was the bitterness of fanatics who mistake their spite and ill-will for righteous indignation.

*The theatres were closed*—This took place in 1642. The theatres were closed because they were considered to be dens of vice. Not merely the performance but even the witnessing of plays was made a penal offence. *Flogged*—whipped. This was the punishment provided by the new laws against them. *Austere licensors*—severe censors, i.e., officers whose permission had to be previously obtained before books could be printed. *The press was put etc.*—This was done to prevent the publication of books that violated the rules of decorum or propriety in the least. Milton, though an austere Puritan, raised his voice against this strict censorship. *The Muses*—were in classical mythology the goddesses presiding over literature and arts; hence poetry. *Parourite haunts*—beloved abodes. *The Muses were banished etc.*—The study of poetry was put under ban at the universities. *Cowley*—an English poet; see notes on paragraph 77. He was expelled from Cambridge in 1643 for his royalist sympathies. His expulsion from Cambridge does not prove Macaulay's point because after this expulsion he took up his residence at St. John's College, Oxford. *Crashaw* (c. 1613-1649)—a well-known English poet of his age. He was a fellow of Peterhouse whence he was expelled in 1643 for his refusal to accept the Solemn League and Covenant. *Cleveland* (1613-58)—was a Cavalier poet; he was a fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. He was ejected from this situation in 1645 for being a Royalist.

• *Ejected*—expelled. *Fellowships*—situations in the colleges of Cambridge and Oxford to which stipends are attached. Some of the fellows are required to give lectures, others are required to prosecute certain courses of study. The fellowships are generally confined to the graduates who belong to the universities. *Academical honours*—university degrees. *Ovidian epistles*—epistles after the manner of Ovid. *Ovid* (B.C. 43—17 A.D.)—was a famous Latin poet. His best known work was his "*Metamorphoses*"; he composed besides a number of

other works including some epistles. *Epistles*—letters in dignified language. The use of the word in this sense is confined to the letters of the apostles or of the ancient writers. *Virgilian pastorals*—pastoral poems after the manner of Virgil, the great Latin poet (70—19 B.C.). Besides his famous epic, the *Aeneid*, Virgil composed a number of pastoral poems, *viz.*, the *Eclogues* and the *Georgics*. *Pastorals*—poems describing the life and manners of the shepherds. *Strictly interrogated*—severely questioned. *Synod*—council ; group. *Lowering*—frowning ; gloomy. *Supralapsarians*—(Lat. *supra*, above, and *lapsus*, fall) those who held the theological doctrine that long before the fall of man, God had destined some men to eternal life and others to eternal death. They formed a Calvinistic sect believing in predestination, election and reprobation. *The new birth*—*i.e.*, spiritual regeneration.

*The young candidate.....new birth*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's remarks on the decay of poetry and learning in England under the rule of the Puritans. Candidates for university degrees had not to satisfy any test of scholarship. They were not required to prove their knowledge of ancient literature by composing short Latin poems after the manner of the epistles of Ovid and the pastorals of Virgil. Considerations of religious merit and spiritual experiences were considered to be of much greater importance than scholarship. Hence sour-looking examiners of extreme Calvinistic views asked the candidates searching questions about their religious experiences. They were asked when the new spiritual light shone in them from which they could know that they were the elect of God and free from the bondage of sin.

*System*—plan of administration ; ordering of life ; framing of conduct. *Was, of course, fruitful of hypocrites*—was sure to breed a number of men who concealed their sinful impulses under a fair exterior of piety and virtue. *Sober*—as opposed to brilliant or gay ; dull-looking. The Puritans discouraged the use of gay clothes ; they dressed themselves in a very simple manner. *Visages*—faces. *Under visages composed etc.*—assuming the most sour looks. *Composed.....austerity*—looking outwardly calm and almost severe and solemn. *License*—freedom from painful restraints. *Under sober clothing etc.*—The Puritans had by force imposed their joyless



ways of life on the public. A large section of them had outwardly to assume their ways, though they detested these in their hearts. Accordingly these men longed for the time when they would be able to throw off these restraints and revenge themselves on the Puritans for their hateful rule. *At length that desire etc.—vi.*, at the Restoration. *Gratified*—satisfied. *Emancipated*—freed. *Yoke*—bondage. *Insupportable*—unendurable. *The old fight*—the war between the wits and the Puritans. *Animosity*—bitter hatred. *New*—fresh and therefore very fierce. *Not a sportive combat*—a duel in which the parties engaged not for mere amusement or by way of pastime. *A war to the death*—a battle between parties actuated by the most vindictive feelings which was to be decided by the death of one or both of them. *It was now not a sportive combat etc.*—The reference is to the tournaments fought by the knights of the Middle Ages. Some of these were held for the mere display of skill and were fought with blunt weapons. Others were fought in earnest with sharp weapons and were decided by the death of one or both the combatants.

*The Roundhead*—the Puritan; see previous notes. *Quarter*—mercy. *Better quarter*—more merciful treatment. *Slave driver*—properly an overseer of slaves at their work; hence a severe master. *Insurgent*—rebellious. *Collars*—steel rings placed round the necks of slaves for the purpose of identification. *Scourges*—whips. The slaves were often cruelly scourged by their masters for negligence or other faults. *The Roundhead had no etc.*—The Puritans could not expect any merciful treatment from the people whom they had oppressed so long. So cruel masters can never expect any kindness from mutinous slaves smarting from the sense of their cruel insults and wrongs. The Puritans, like masters of slaves, had so long oppressed and insulted the Cavaliers who had suffered greatly like slaves. The emancipated Cavaliers, like the emancipated slaves, now punished their oppressors.

**Paragraph 129.** The war between the wits and the Puritans soon became a war between wit and morality. The new school of wits not merely ridiculed pretensions to virtue but virtue itself. Virtue, so closely associated with the hated Puritans, became itself the object of contempt. All decent and virtuous conduct was laughed to scorn.

*The war between wit and etc.*—Originally the wits had held up the Puritans to ridicule on account of their pretensions to superior piety; afterwards the scoffers began to ridicule virtue and morality itself. *Hostility*—animosity; opposition. *Grotesque caricature*—extravagant pretensions. A *caricature* is a picture in which the good points are suppressed and the defects exaggerated with a view to make a person or thing ridiculous. The Puritans caricatured virtue by their ludicrous airs of superior sanctity. *Spare*—treat with mercy or forbearance. *Did not spare virtue etc.*—did not hesitate to ridicule even morality itself. *Canting*—shamming holiness; hypocritical. *Roundhead*—Puritan. *Insulted*—ridiculed; condemned. *Proscribed*—denounced; prohibited. *Scrupulous*—punctilious; careful. *Trifles*—things of little moment. *Scruples*—moral hesitation; conscientious objection. *Derision*—mockery. *Because he had been etc.*—The Puritans had been very punctilious about little things: the wits poured their scorn or ridicule on conscientious objections.

*Covered his failings*—concealed his vices. *Mask of devotion*—cloak of religion or piety. *Obtrude*—thrust prominently. *Cynic impudence*—scandalous audacity or effrontery; shamelessness worthy of a hater of goodness and virtue. The Cynics were a sect of philosophers in ancient Greece who prided themselves on their contempt of riches, arts and learning. Diogenes was the best-known member of this school. The word 'cynic' has thus come to mean a sneering fault-finder; a misanthrope. *Scandalous*—disgraceful; shameful. *Public eye*—view of the public. *Because he had covered etc.*—The Puritans were in the habit of concealing their vices under a pious exterior; the wits ran to the opposite end of the scale and instead of keeping their vices secret thrust them unblushingly before the view of the public. They thought lightly of both virtue and decency. Hence with a shamelessness characteristic of a despiser of human goodness, they publicly exhibited their vices. *He*—the Puritan. *Illicit*—unlawful. *Barbarous severity*—savage cruelty. Such love was during the Commonwealth made a felony without the benefit of the clergy. *Virgin purity*—spotless chastity like that of an unmarried girl. *Conjugal fidelity*—connubial faith; constancy of husband and wife to each other. *A jest*—a subject of laughter. *Sanctimonious*—hypocritically pious.

*Sanctimonious jargon*—hypocritically pious cant; utterance of pious formulas and sayings. *Jargon* is language peculiar to a sect or profession. *Shibboleth*—the word which was made the criterion by which to distinguish the Ephraimites from the Gileadites in *Judges*, XII. The Ephraimites not being able to pronounce correctly the Hebrew letter for *sh* pronounced it as *sibboleth*. Hence the watchword of a party or the peculiar mark by which one party is distinguished from another; “test word or principle or behaviour or opinion, the use of or inability to use which betrays one’s party, nationality etc.”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *That sanctimonious jargon..... shibboleth*—The reference is to the pious expressions and scriptural phrases frequently used by the Puritans in their conversation. This peculiarity of language distinguished the Puritans from other men. *Another jargon*—viz., the language affected by the wits. *Not less absurd*—equally extravagant. *Odious*—hateful. The peculiar dialect of the Cavaliers was more odious because it was full of vulgar oaths and swearings and obscene ribaldry.

*Scriptural phrase*—Biblical language. *He never opened etc.*—The Puritans were in the habit of frequently using Biblical expressions in their conversations. *Breed*—race; generation. *Ribaldry*—vulgar or indecent language. *Porter*—one who carries burdens; ऋषि। Hence a man belonging to a low vulgar rank. *Without calling etc.*—Whenever they spoke, they uttered oaths in the name of God; e.g., they would say—‘God blast me’—an oath which was an offence against both religion and morality. *Their Maker*—God. *Sink them*—an oath; *sink* here means to ruin or cause to perish. *Confound them*—another oath; *confound* is here used in its older sense ‘to destroy’. *Blast*—to ruin or destroy. *Without calling on their Maker etc.*—without using the most impious oaths.

**Paragraph 130.** With the exception of a few poets, like Waller, Cowley and the great Milton, the Restoration authors indulged in gross immorality in their works. The utter depravity of their writings provided its own antidote.

*Polite literature*—viz., drama, poetry, novels, history etc.; *belles lettres*. *Revived*—again flourished. *Revival*—restoration; re-establishment. *The old civil and ecclesiastical polity*—the old

form of administration both of the state and the church, *viz.*, monarchy and the Anglican Church. **N. B.** During the Commonwealth, a Republic had been established in place of the monarchy, and the Anglican system had been replaced by Presbyterianism and the Independent form of worship. The monarchical form of government and the Anglican system of worship were re-established at the time of the Restoration. *Profoundly*--deeply. *Eminent*--famous. *Belonged to an earlier and better age*--were born and brought up in a former and purer age. *Exempt*--free. *The general contagion*--the widespread infection, *viz.*, immorality.

*Waller* (1606-87)--a leading poet of the \*period of the Commonwealth. *Breathed the sentiments*--was pervaded by the feelings. *Animated etc.*--inspired the men of a more gallant and refined age; *viz.*, the Elizabethan age when the passion of love was celebrated in poetry in a purer and more refined manner. The Elizabethans were inspired by the true chivalric feeling. They treated of love as a pure and noble passion. Waller carried on in his love poems the purer tradition of the Elizabethan poets. *Breathed the sentiments etc.*--The reference is to Waller's graceful love-poems full of refined sentiments. *Cowley*--See notes on paragraph 128. *Loyalist*--one who supports the cause of the sovereign in times of revolt or revolution. Cowley was a staunch supporter of the royal cause for which he was expelled from Cambridge. At the time of the Restoration he composed odes on the event and against Cromwell. *A man of letters*--an author or a literary man. Cowley besides being a poet was a famous prose-writer. He was the most brilliant English essayist of his age. *Raised his voice courageously against*--boldly protested against. *Which disgraced etc.*--which cast a stain on the characters of literary men and on loyal subjects. This immorality was a blot on the character of literary men and of Royalists. In fact, most Royalists or Cavaliers and most literary men were tainted with this infection of immorality. Cowley pleaded that the pursuit of literature and expression of loyalty to the King should not be accompanied by gross immorality. *Mightier*--greater. The *mightier poet* referred to here is Milton. *Tried*--tested; suffering acutely from.

*Danger*--Some of the leading men of the Commonwealth, especially those who had taken any share in the trial and

execution of Charles I, were beheaded. Milton, however, had to undergo only a few months' imprisonment. His life, was saved through the intercession of some friends. But as he had rendered himself particularly obnoxious to the Cavaliers by his vehement attacks on the character of Charles I he ran the risk of being assassinated by the more fanatically-minded amongst them. *Poverty*—The last years of Milton's life were spent in great poverty. *Obloquy*—calumny; slander. *Blindness*—Milton became totally blind in 1652. Through overwork in the service of the Commonwealth of Cromwell he lost his eyesight. *Tried at once by pain, danger etc.*—This is an adaptation of Milton's pathetic description of himself in *Paradise Lost*. VII. 25-28:

"though fallen on evil days,  
On evil days though fallen, and evil tongues :  
In darkness, and with dangers compass round,  
And solitude."

*Meditated*—thought on; composed. Milton's three great masterpieces were composed after the Restoration. *Paradise Lost* was finished in 1665; *Paradise Regained* and *Samson Agonistes* were finished in 1671. *Undisturbed*—without being distracted. *Obscene tumult*—noise of indecent revelries or immoral excesses; licentious orgies. Milton has described this 'obscene tumult' in the following lines:

"And in luxurious cities, where the noise  
Of riot ascends above their loftiest towers,  
And injury and outrage; and, when night  
Darkens the streets, then wander forth the sons  
Of Belial, flown with insolence and wine".

—*Paradise Lost*, I. 498-502.

*Raged*—prevailed without restraint. *A song so sublime and so holy*—such a noble and devout song. The reference is to *Paradise Lost*. *Paradise Lost* is a sublime poem because it deals with a noble and lofty theme, viz., the ways of God to men. Milton calls it an 'adventurous song that with no middle flight intends to soar above the Aonian mount.' The subject is 'holy'—a religious one. *Would not have misbecome*—would not have proved unworthy of. *Ethereal Virtues*—heavenly angels. The expression occurs in *Paradise Lost*—

"Thrones and imperial Powers, offspring of heaven.  
Ethereal Virtues."—*Paradise Lost*, II. 310—11.

*Virtues*—name of an order of angels. They are represented in works of art as angels in complete armour and bearing pennons and battle-axes.

According to Milton's conception, there were three orders of angels, *viz.* (1) Seraphim, Cherubim, Thrones; (2) Dominations, Principalities, Powers; (3) Virtues, Archangels, Angels. *Ethereal Virtues*—heavenly angels.

*Inner eye*—eye of mind; poetic vision. *Calamity*—disaster: the reference is to the poet's blindness. *Darken*—blind *That inner eye which no calamity could darken*—Macaulay is probably thinking of the following lines in which Milton, after speaking of his blindness, refers to his inner vision:

"So much the rather thou Celestial light  
Shine inward, and the mind through all her powers  
Irradiate, there plant eyes, all mist from thence  
Purge and disperse, that I may see and tell  
Of things invisible to mortal sight."

—*Paradise Lost*, III. 51-55.

*Jasper*—a sort of valuable stone; it admits of an elegant polish and is used for making vases, seals, etc. *Pavement*—floor. *Jasper pavement*—the floor of heaven made of jasper. The reference is to the following lines—

"the bright  
Pavement, that like a sea of jasper shon,  
Impurpl'd with celestial roses smil'd".

—*Paradise Lost*, III. 362-64.

*Amaranth*—an imaginary flower that was supposed never to fade. *Their crowns of amaranth and gold*—The reference is to Milton's description of the crowning by God of His only begotten Son in Heaven. The angels lay down their wreaths of amaranth and gold upon the jasper floor of Heaven before the throne of God in an act of perfect adoration. The reference is to the following passage:—

"With solemn adoration down they (angels) cast  
Their crowns inwove with amarant and gold,  
Immortal amarant, a flow'r which once  
In Paradise, fast by the tree of life  
Began to bloom. .... —*Paradise Lost*, III. 351-55.

With reference to this appreciative account of Milton's poetry, the student should remember that Macaulay was an

ardent admirer of the poet's character and writings from his youth. His earliest contribution to literature, by which he suddenly sprang into fame, was his essay on Milton.

*A mightier poet, tried at once.....amaranth and gold—Expl.* In this sentence Macaulay speaks in appreciation of Milton's great poems, composed after the Restoration. Milton fell into great poverty and distress after the Restoration. He had lost his eyesight some years before it. He was quite unaffected by the wave of immorality that passed over English society in the last years of his life. While the rest of the country was sunk in vice and immorality, he composed a poem so majestic and pure that it was not unworthy of the heavenly spirits he saw in his poetic vision. His physical blindness did not dim this poetic vision in the least. In his inspired mood he could see with his mind's eye these angels strewing the jasper pavement of heaven before the throne of God with crowns of eternal glory woven of amaranth and gold.

*Vigorous*—powerful, because the poem *Hudibras* displays rich power of invention. *Fertile*—rich; productive. Butler composed not merely *Hudibras*, a long poem in three parts, but was besides the author of some miscellaneous writings published after his death. *Butler* (1612-80)—a famous English poet; the author of *Hudibras*. See notes on paragraph 127. *Prevailing infection*—general contagion. *Mild*—as opposed to virulent or severe. *If it did not altogether, etc.*—Butler did not quite escape the immorality prevailing around him but he was only slightly tainted by it. The reference is to the fact that though Butler's poem is in places very coarse, it is not decidedly immoral. *Whose minds had been trained etc.*—They had been brought up under the influences of a past and a purer age. This cannot be said of all the writers mentioned by Macaulay but of some of them. Milton, for example, is commonly regarded as the last of the Elizabethans. *They gave place in no long time to—* their places were shortly occupied by. *Younger generation of wits*—literary men of the new age. *Dryden*—the greatest English author of the age; see notes on paragraph 99. *Durfey*—generally known as "Tom Durfey" (1653-1723), was a witty and immoral writer of the age. He moved in the best society in his times and was a friend of Charles II and James II. *From Dryden down to Durfey—i.e., from the greatest to the least of*

them. *Hardhearted*—cruel; heartless. *Swaggering*—defiant; insolent. *At once inelegant and inhuman*—as coarse as savage.

*Noxious*—baneful; morally unwholesome. *Depraved*—corrupt; immoral. *Less noxious etc.*—They would have been more harmful if they were less immoral. Gross immorality is sickening and provokes a healthy reaction. But a slight mixture of decency with immorality is more injurious. English society was saved because these writers were so absolutely immoral. *The influence of these writers etc.*—an epigrammatic sentence meaning that the extreme immorality of their works prevented them from being harmful. The public grew sick of their shameless immorality. Macaulay explains himself more fully in the following sentences *Poison*—moral poison; vitiating influence. *In no long time*—very quickly. *Rejected*—cast off; discarded. *Nausea*—disgust. *The poison which they administered etc.*—The comparison is with a powerful drug that a patient is unable to assimilate. If it proves too strong for the patient, he vomits it up and his system remains unaffected by it. So the writings of the authors of this age disgusted the readers by their gross immorality and thus saved the public against their corrupting influence. *Dangerous*—Such an art is more dangerous because it is insidious. *The dangerous art etc.*—Vice becomes more dangerous when it is presented in the alluring form of noble virtue. The art of presenting immoral and vicious things in close association with things that we hold dear and holy is an insidious art, because it makes vice pleasing and alluring to us. This art, *viz.*, the art of working upon the baser passions by subtle hints and suggestions, the writers of the age lacked. They delighted in and represented vice absolute and unqualified. *All that is endearing and ennobling*—thereby rendering it more attractive. *Decorum*—decency; propriety. *Essential*—absolutely necessary. *Voluptuousness*—sensuality. *Drapery*—veil; screen. *Alluring*—tempting; attractive.

*Exposure*—laying things bare or uncovering them before public gaze. *Moved*—stimulated. *Delicate hints*—subtle suggestions. *Impel*—lead. *Exert*—exercise. *Gross*—coarse; indelicate. *Takes in*—imbibes. *Passively*—receptively; without putting forth any active efforts. *None of them.....takes in passively*—**Expl.** Macaulay means to say that the shameless immorality



of these writings provided its own antidote by creating a feeling of disgust in the minds of their readers. They are compared to a strong poison against which the human system protects itself by rejecting it. Immoral works, in which a writer preserves a degree of restraint, are more dangerous. In these the author, by skilfully veiling the coarser features of vice, renders it more tempting.

**Paragraph 131.** The dramas of the age were the worst from the moral point of view. The theatres re-opened after the Restoration. Actresses were employed to represent female characters. The most scandalous immorality prevailed in the theatres and the artists pandered to the depraved tastes of the public.

*Antipuritan reaction*—movement against the Puritan outlook on life. *The spirit of the Antipuritan reaction*—i.e., licentious tone. *Pervades*—fills. *Quintessence*—pure and concentrated essence; the essential part of a thing. [*quintessence*, n. most essential part of any substance—(*Oxford Dictionary*).] *Comic drama*—comedy; play of a light amusing kind. The best known dramatic productions of the Restoration age were its comedies. Macaulay wrote an essay on the *Comic Dramatists of the Restoration* in 1840. *Playhouses*—theatres. *Shut*—closed. *The meddling fanatic*—the officious Puritan; the Puritan who unwisely interfered in matters which he should have let alone. *In the day of his power*—when he was predominant or was in the ascendant. The theatres were closed by the Long Parliament in Sept. 1642 immediately after the outbreak of the Civil War. *Were again crowded*—The theatres re-opened in 1656 and were a popular form of amusement even before the Restoration. *Decorations*—ornamental accessories; trappings. *Such as would now he thought mean or absurd*—which cannot satisfy the fastidious tastes of modern audience. *Incredibly magnificent*—so grand as to surpass belief or seem improbable. *Early in the seventeenth century*—i.e., in the most brilliant days of the Elizabethan drama. *Filthy*—dirty. *The Hope, the Rose*—names of theatres built on the southern bank of the Thames towards the end of the 16th century. Most of the theatres of the Elizabethan age had no roof overhead—a few had only thatched roofs. *Dazzled the eyes of the multitude*—charmed the audience by their splendour.

*Fascination*—attraction ; charm. *Fascination of sex etc.*—Besides splendour of scenery, dress and decoration, a further attraction was added to the theatres of the Restoration age, viz., actresses were employed to represent the female parts. In the Elizabethan age, the parts of women were represented by boys, dressed in female garb. *Contemporaries of Shakespeare and Jonson*—people living at the time of Shakespeare and Jonson, i.e., in the Elizabethan age. *Shakespeare* (1564—1616)—the greatest of the English dramatists. *Jonson*—Ben Jonson (1573-1637) a famous English dramatist and a contemporary of Shakespeare; author of *Every Man in his Humour*, *Every Man out of his Humour*, *Volpone*\* and a number of other plays. *Tender*—delicate. *Sprightly*—gay; lively. *Personated*—represented. *Lovely women*—i.e., beautiful actresses.

*Reopened*—after the Restoration. *Seminaries*—properly a seed-plot or nursery where young plants are grown for transplantation; hence a school or breeding-ground. *Propagated itself*—continued spreading. *Representations*—dramatic performances. *Sober*—staid; serious. *Frivolous*—silly; worthless. *Who remained*—who continued to frequent the theatres. *Stronger and stranger stimulants*—more and more corrupt plays in order that their interest might be kept up. *Artists*—dramatists. *And the spectators the artists*—because the dramas had to be suited to the vicious tastes of the play-goers. *Turpitude*—shameful wickedness. *Relaxation*—laxity; looseness. *Natural effect*—inevitable result. *Extreme restraint*—undue rigour or severity. *In the regular course of things*—naturally. *Impudence*—shamelessness.

**Paragraph 132.** The most disagreeable characteristic of these dramas was that the most immoral verses were put into the mouths of women. Favourite actresses generally recited the epilogues, the worst portions in the play.

*Nothing is more characteristic of the times*—It is a significant feature of the age. *The care with which etc.*—The poet carefully arranged the play in such a manner. *Loosest verses*—most immoral lines. *Greatest licence*—the grossest violation of the laws of decency. *Epilogues*—speeches or short poems addressed to the spectators by one of the actors at the conclusion of a play. The prologue and the epilogue were important

features of the Restoration dramas. *Recited*—rehearsed. *Charmed*—pleased. *Grossly indecent*—extremely immodest or indelicate. *Repeated*—recited. *Innocence*—virgin purity.

**Paragraph 133.** The originals, from which many of the English dramatists drew their plots, suffered a change for the worse in the hands of the borrowers.

*Plots*—stories. *Characters*—figures of dramas. *To Spain, to France.....masters etc.*—to Spanish and French authors and to famous English dramatists of an earlier age. *Masters*—properly men possessed of great skill in any art, here the reference is to great English dramatists, like Shakespeare and Ben Jonson. *Touched*—handled. *Tainted*—polluted; defiled. *Their imitations*—the adaptations of the originals for the Restoration stage.

*Culderon* (1600-81)—an eminent Spanish dramatist who is said to have written about two hundred plays. *Stately and high-spirited etc.*—grand and brave Spanish nobles. *Sties of vice*—dens of beastly debauchery. A *sty* is properly an inclosure for swine: here 'a place of debauchery'. *Viola*—the beautiful and stainless heroine of Shakespeare's *Twelfth Night*. She is the original of Fidelity in Wycherley's *The Plain Dealer*. *Procuress*—a woman who procures for another the gratification of his lust; bawd. *Moliere's Misanthrope*—i.e., Alceste, the hero of Moliere's comedy *Le Misanthrope*. Alceste, in spite of his faults, is a man of noble character—indeed his very faults testify to the loftiness of his disposition. His is a generous temper that has been soured by the perfidy and falsehood of society. The character of Horner in *The Plain Dealer* is based on Alceste's. *Ravisher*—one guilty of outrage against women. *Agnes*—the heroine of Moliere's *L'Ecole des Femmes*. She is an unsophisticated girl brought up in a country convent and is entirely ignorant of the ways of the world. Mrs. Pinchwife in *The Country Wife* is modelled on this character.

*Adulteress*—a faithless wife. The following passage from Macaulay's *Essay on the Comic Dramatists of the Restoration*,

[Page 225, Footnote—*Jeremy Collier* (1650-1726)—an ardent non-juring clergyman who mercilessly condemned the immorality of the English stage. His powerful pamphlet on the subject, named *A Short View of the Immorality and Profaneness of the English Stage*, was published in 1698. *Keeness*—sharpness; penetration.]

in which he gives expression to his opinion of Wycherley will explain the allusions in these lines:—"It is not too much to say that there is hardly of anything of the least value in his (Wycherley's) plays of which the hint is not to be found elsewhere. The best scenes in the *Gentleman Dancing-Master* were suggested by Calderon's *Maestro de Dançar*, not by any means one of the happiest comedies of the great Castilian poet. *The Country Wife* is borrowed from the *Ecole des Maris* and the *Ecole des Femmes*. The groundwork of the *Plain Dealer* is taken from the *Misanthrope* of Moliere. One whole scene is almost translated from the *Critique d' l' Ecole des Femmes*. *Fidelia* is Shakespeare's *Viola* stolen and\* marred in the stealing." *The Gentleman Dancing-Master*, *The Country Wife*, *The Plain Dealer* are the names of three plays by Wycherley.

*In their imitations.....an adulteress*—**Expl.** Macaulay says that in borrowing plots and characters from other dramatists, the English dramatists of the Restoration period grossly perverted them. In borrowing from the great Spanish dramatist Calderon, the English dramatists converted the houses of noble and high-minded Spanish nobles into dens of vice and debauchery. *Viola*, the beautiful and pure heroine of Shakespeare's *Twelfth Night*, became in their hands a wicked bawd. Some of the great comic characters of Moliere, the French dramatist, were transformed into monsters of immorality. Moliere's *Alceste*, the hero of *Misanthrope*, became a ravisher, and his innocent *Agnes* an adulteress.

*But that it became foul and ignoble*—which was not polluted or degraded. *Transfusion*—the act of pouring liquor from one vessel into another ; hence passing.

**Paragraph 134.** The drama was the most paying branch of polite literature in those times. This explains why Dryden set himself to the composition of dramas, though his genius did not fit him for this sort of literary work.

*Department*—branch. *Subsistence*—maintenance ; livelihood. *Pen*—literary work. *A poet had the best chance etc.*—i.e., this was the most profitable kind of literary work. *A man of the greatest name*—the most famous author. *A pittance*—a very small amount. *Copyright*—the sole right enjoyed by an

author of publishing or selling his own work. *Performance*—work. *Instance*—proof. *The Fables*—The volume was published in 1700. It included five stories from Chaucer, three from Boccacio, and a few original poems like *Alexander's Feast*. *The versification is admirable*—The metre is flawless. "It would not be too much to say that this book (*Fables*) achieved two things either of which would have immortalised a poet: it fixed the standard of narrative poetry, except of the metrical romance or ballad class, and also that of heroic versification"—*Richard Garnett*. *Full of life*—vivid and animated. *Palamon and Arcite*—Dryden's version of Chaucer's *Knights Tale*. *Cymon and Iphigenia* and *Theodore and Honoria*—English versions of two tales from Boccacio, the famous Italian author. *Alexander's Feast*—Dryden adds the sub-title "*A song in honour of St. Cecilia's Day: 1697.*" It is a Pindaric Ode on the Power of Music. *The noblest ode in our language*—*Alexander's Feast* is one of the most famous in the whole range of English literature. *Ode*—a song proper to be set to music. *Two hundred and fifty pounds*—"Jacob Tonson paid 250 guineas (not pounds) to Dryden for the first edition and 50 guineas more to his widow for the second edition in 1713. Dryden also received considerable sums from the Duke of Ormond for a dedication from the Duchess for a poetical epistle prefixed to '*Palamon and Arcite*' (*Salmon*). *Two articles etc.*—essays contributed to a magazine.

*Nor does the bargain etc.*—The terms, offered by the publisher, do not seem to have been unfair. *Went off*—was sold. *The second edition etc.*—The book did not go through a second edition. *Until the author etc.*—i.e., until 1710. Dryden died in 1700. The second edition was published in 1713, not 1710. *By writing for the theatre*—by composing plays. *Southern* (1660–1746)—a minor play-wright of the Restoration period. He produced altogether ten plays of which the most famous were *The Fatal Marriage* (1694) and *Oroonoko* (1696). The latter play contains a pathetic picture of the sufferings of the unhappy negro when he is torn from his beloved home by the cruel slave-trader. "His distinction rather arises from the financial success of his pieces, which was such that he died "the richest of all our poets, a very few excepted." For this, however, he is said to have been indebted not so much to the actual vogue of his

pieces as to his assiduity in soliciting tickets." His good fortune in this respect explains Pope's lines on him—

"Tom whom heav'n sent down to raise  
The price of prologues and of plays."

*Otway* (1652—1685)—an English dramatist; his best known plays are *The Orphan* and *Venice Preserved* in which he almost rivals the great dramatists of the Elizabethan age. *Beggary*—extreme poverty. Otway had received a regular education at Winchester school and Oxford, but being left without any means on the death of his father was compelled to seek his fortune on the stage, where he entirely failed. *Temporary affluence*—short-lived prosperity. The life of this unfortunate poet was almost an unbroken record of poverty and distress. He died of great misery and under very tragic circumstances. *By the success of his Don Carlos*—Otway's first play *Alcibiades*, staged in 1675, introduced him to Rochester and other patrons. In the following year appeared his *Don Carlos*, a play founded on a novel by Saint Real. This play proved partly by the support of Rochester a striking success and is said to have produced more money than any previous play. Rochester says of this play:—"Don Carlos his pockets so amply had filled."

*Shadwell* (c. 1642-92)—was, on account of his Whig politics, appointed Poet-laureate after Dryden's dismissal. He wrote seventeen plays but is now best remembered for being the subject of Dryden's fierce satires *MacFlecknoe* and *The Medal*. He was a brilliant talker though his plays were of poor literary merit. "If," said Rochester, "Shadwell would burn all he writes and print all he says he would have more wit and humour than anybody." *Cleared*—obtained. *Squire of Alsatia*—Shadwell's play staged in 1688. *Live by his wit*—depend for subsistence on the fruits of genius, i.e., literary works. The meaning of this expression should be carefully distinguished from "to live by one's wits" meaning 'to live by shifts or tricks.' *Internal vocation*—inward call, i.e., natural fitness; natural inspiration. *As a satirist etc.*—Some of Dryden's satires, like *Absalom* and *Achitophel*, and *MacFlecknoe*, are the best known in English literature. He had besides translated a number of Juvenal's satires. *Rivalled*—equalled.

*Juvenal* (c. 55-140 A.D.)—a famous Roman poet. His sixteen satires are commonly held to be the finest works of their kind in classical literature. *Didactic poet*—a poet whose works are intended to instruct the readers in the principles of any subject. Macaulay is thinking of Dryden's poem like *Religio Laici* in which he expounds the principles of the English Church. *Lucretius* (95-52 B.C.)—a Roman poet who expounds the atomic theory of the philosophers in his famous poem, "*De Rerum Natura*."

*Lyric poets*—Lyric poetry was originally sung to the lyre. Now lyric poetry, as distinguished from epic or dramatic, means that class of poetry in which the poet gives expression to his own thoughts and feelings. Dryden composed some very famous lyrics like *Alexander's Feast* and *St. Cecilia's Day*. *Sublime*—lofty; excellent. *Brilliant*—distinguished; splendid. *Spirit-stirring*—inspiring; full of vigour and animation. *Profuse*—liberal. *Rare gifts*—great talents. *But nature, profuse to him etc.*—Dryden had been gifted by nature with many rich talents but dramatic genius was not one of these. He did not possess dramatic talents of a high order. *Best years*—when his powers were at their prime. Dryden's first drama, *The Wild Gallant*, appeared in 1663; from this date till 1679 he devoted himself almost entirely to the composition of dramas. *Wasted*—devoted to very little purpose because the dramas he wrote were not of a high order. 'Fashion, court encouragement and the necessity of providing for his family, had bound him (Dryden) to what was then the most conspicuous and lucrative form of authorship. In one point of view he committed a great error in addicting himself to the drama. He was not naturally qualified to excel in it, and could only obtain even a temporary success by condescending to the prevalent faults of the contemporary stage, its bombast and indecency.'—*Richard Garnett*.

*Judgment*—discernment; critical understanding. *The power of exhibiting etc.*—the power of unfolding the features of character by means of speeches; the talent of dramatic characterisation. This is the greatest of all dramatic gifts, viz., that of revealing character through speeches. *Dialogue—speech*. *He was deficient*—he was wanting. *He had too much judgment etc.*—He had sufficient critical power to know that he

was wanting in the talent for adequately representing human character through speeches. *Deficiency*—defect. *By surprising and amusing incidents*—by introducing into the plot strange and interesting events. *Stately declamation*—pomp of language; inflation of style. This is what Richard Garnett calls bombast in his estimate of Dryden's plays quoted above. *Declamation*—impassioned and rhetorical speech. *Harmonious numbers*—musical verses. *Ribaldry*—indecenty. *Profane*—impious. *Pit*—the part of a theatre on the floor and below the level of the stage. *But too well suited etc.*—which greatly pleased the impious and dissolute audience. *Never obtained any theatrical success*—never became so popular as plays written by men decidedly inferior to him in literary talents. *Exertions*—labours. *Scanty remuneration*—poor recompense. *Apparently*—evidently. *In any other way*—by literary compositions of a different kind.

**Paragraph 135.** The income of the authors of those times from the sale-proceeds of their works was very small. So they were compelled to dedicate their books to rich men in the hope of pecuniary reward. This system of patronage had a very demoralising effect on the authors.

*Recompense*—remuneration. *Could obtain from the public*—i.e., from the sale of their works. *Eking out*—adding to; supplementing. *Levying*—raising. *Contributions*—donations of money; pecuniary aids. *By levying etc.*—with the help of pecuniary aid from the rich men. *Pestered*—troubled; vexed. *Mendicancy*—begging; solicitation. *Importunate*—pressing. *Abject*—servile; mean. *Incredible*—impossible to be believed. *Every rich and goodnatured.....incredible*—**Expl.** In the present age, we can hardly believe how pressingly and unceasingly the authors of those times solicited help from wealthy and good-natured nobles and how meanly they flattered them. *Patron*—was commonly used in those times of a rich man who assisted needy authors with money. The authors

---

[Page 227, Footnote—*Contract*—between Dryden and Jacob Tonson, the publisher of his works. *Sir Walter Scott*—published an edition of Dryden's works. *Shiels* (died 1753)—a chief contributor to the "*Lives of the Poets to the time of Swift*." *Rochester*—John Wilmot, Earl of Rochester (1647-80), was one of the most profligate men of that dissolute age. He dabbled in poetry and wrote a few satires including *The Session of the Poets*.]



recognised such help by dedicating their books to their benefactors. **N.B.** Dr. Johnson, who had a bitter experience of the patron, amusingly defines him as "commonly a wretch who supports with insolence and is paid with flattery." *Inscribed*—dedicated. *A purse of gold*—a sum of money. *Fee*—amount.

*Books were therefore etc.*—Books were composed not because the author possessed any literary merits or had anything new or interesting to say, but simply because the author hoped to earn some money by dedicating them to rich men. *Traffic*—trade. *Praise*—i.e., of the patron in the dedication. *Traffic in praise*—The praise and flattery of patrons was, as it were, a lucrative business, for it brought money in return for books which were worthless. *The effect*—the mischievous consequences. *Which might have been expected*—which were inevitable. *Adulation*—extravagant praise; servile flattery. *Verge*—border. *Impiety*—irreverence towards God; blasphemy. The author, with a view to attract the favour of his benefactor, ascribed to him virtues which belong only to God. *Adulation pushed etc.*—It was considered no degradation for an author to bestow the most fulsome praise on his benefactor—the praise was sometimes too extravagant to have any meaning and sometimes bordered on blasphemy. The poet Gray refers to this unworthy practice of heaping praise on patrons in the following lines of his *Elegy*:—

"Or heap the shrine of Luxury and Pride

With incense kindled at the Muse's flame."—*ll.* 71-72.

*Veracity*—truthfulness. *The world*—the public. *Independence, veracity etc.*—This shows to what a low depth the literary profession had sunk in public estimation in those times. *Pandar*—originally a procurer; hence one who ministers to the gratification of the baser passions of another. *He was in morals etc.*—His conduct was that of a beggar who flatters the vices of his patron.

**Paragraph 136.** Another glaring blemish of the literature of that age was its bitter party-spirit. The wits rallied round the King and fiercely denounced the Whigs. The dramatists indulged in bitter taunts against the Trimmers and did not think the cruel punishments of their opponents severe enough.

*Degraded*—lowered ; disgraced. *The literary character*—the character of literary men. *Savage intemperance*—wild excess ; virulence. *Take the side of the court*—support the party of the King. *Had been found useful allies*—had rendered good service to the royal cause by inflaming popular passions against the Whigs. Macaulay means to say that the Tory reaction of 1681 had, to some extent, been due to the writings of the courtly authors. *Absalom and Achitophel*—Dryden's famous political satire which describes the political condition of England in those times under the disguise of Biblical names.

**N.B.** The poem, based on the scriptural story of Absalom's rebellion against his father David, is intended to be a satire against Monmouth and his partisans who wanted to win his succession to the throne against his father's (King Charles II's) wishes. Most of the important political figures of the age find a place in the poem. David stands for Charles II, Absalom for Charles II's illegitimate son, Monmouth, and Achitophel, who tempted Absalom to revolt, stands for Shaftesbury, a staunch Whig and a supporter of the Exclusion Bill. It was published in 1681 during the Exclusion Bill controversy. Its publication was so skilfully timed that it appeared only a few days before Shaftesbury's release from prison where he had been committed on the charge of high treason. *Amazed the town*—filled Londoners with admiration. *Had made its way*—had spread. *Unprecedented rapidity*—unexampled quickness. *Rural districts*—where Tory sympathies were very strong. *Annoyed*—displeased. *Exclusionists*—the supporters of the Exclusion Bill, i.e., the Whigs. *Raised the courage of*—stimulated the spirit of.

*Diction*—language ; "wording" and phrasing, verbal style" (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Noble diction and versification*—admirable language and metre. The satire is written in heroic couplets which came to be afterwards regarded as the standard metre for long compositions. *But we must not in the admiration etc.*—Though the poem deserves great praise on account of the beauty of its language and the vigour and melody of its lines, still the unworthy spirit, by which it is pervaded, cannot but be regarded as a grave defect. *Compeers*—companions ; fellow-poets. *Animated*—inspired. *Fiendish*—diabolical. *Ser-vile judges*—in those times the judges held their offices during

the King's pleasure and so they did not venture to offend him by their decisions; they were also ready to oblige the King by pronouncing very harsh judgments on the Whigs whom the King hated. *Sheriffs*—See notes on paragraph 9. *Evil days*—disgraceful age. *The servile Judges etc.*—Expl. Macaulay refers in this sentence to the cruel persecution of the Whigs in the reign of Charles II and the ferocious party-spirit of the literary men of that age. Though the Whigs were executed in large numbers for real or fancied crimes, yet this did not satisfy the lust for blood of the authors. The judges were passing numerous sentences of death on the Whigs. Yet the authors, who sided with the Tories, were not satisfied. They were so bitterly opposed to the Whigs that they wanted more executions. *Calls*—demands. *Victims*—sacrifices. *Calls for more blood*—The fierce party-spirit of the authors of those times required the sacrifice of more lives for its satisfaction. *Hideous*—dreadful; shocking. *Hideous jests on hanging*—Jests on a subject, like hanging, must give a cruel shock to persons, possessed of the least humanity. Yet the dramatists of those times freely indulged in such jests. The reference is to the following passage in the *Epilogue to the Duke of Guise* :—

"Lenitives" says he "best suit with our condition."  
 "Jack Ketch" says I "'s an excellent physician."  
 "I love no blood." "Nor I, Sir, as I breathe;"  
 "But hanging is a fine dry kind of death."  
 "We Trimmers are for holding all things even"  
 "Yes; just like him that hung 'twixt hell and heaven."

... ..  
 "Now since the weight hangs all on one side, brother,  
 "You Trimmers should to poise it, hang on the other."

—ll. 29-38.

For example, in the *Epilogue to the Duke of Guise* to which Macaulay refers in the footnote, Jack Ketch (the hangman) is called "an excellent physician," and hanging is described as "a fine dry kind of death."

*Bitter taunts*—severe ridicule; biting gibes. *Those who having stood by the King etc.*—i.e., the party of Trimmers, as they were called, of which Halifax was the head. The object of the Trimmers was to maintain the balance of power between the

Whigs and the Tories so that neither of them became too powerful at the expense of the other. When the Whigs were at the height of their power, Halifax had, by his opposition to the Exclusion Bill, prevented it from being passed. In the days of their persecution, the Trimmers sought to prevent the utter annihilation of the Whigs. *Stood by the King*—supported the King. *In the hour of danger—viz.*, during the agitation over the Exclusion Bill when the Whigs were in the ascendant. *To deal mercifully.....enemies*—to treat his enemies after their fall with mercy and forbearance. *That nothing might be wanting to the guilt and the shame*—to render the crime and the disgrace all the more unpardonable. *Discard*—cast aside. *Having long been taught etc.*—a reference to the shameless immorality of the stage in those times. *Compassion*—pity. *Who having long been taught etc.*—who now added pitiless cruelty to their former crime of shameless immorality.

**Paragraph 137.** The study of science received a great impetus during this period. People did no longer waste their time and energy in the discussion of ideal political constitutions but employed themselves in examining the laws of nature. The Royal Society, founded in 1660, led to a number of discoveries and men of all classes and professions united themselves together in the pursuit of science.

*Nuisance*—something offensive. *Effecting*—accomplishing. *Revolution*—radical change. *To the end of time*—for ever. *Reckoned*—esteemed. *Highest achievements etc.*—noblest performances of human intelligence. *Bacon* (1561—1626)—a statesman and one of the greatest of English philosophers. He taught in his *Novum Organum* that knowledge depends for its advance not on *a priori* speculations but an examination of nature. He may thus be said to have been the founder of the Inductive Method which helped the progress of science in the subsequent ages. *The good seed*—the new and precious method of Induction which Bacon taught, upon which the development

[Page 231. Footnote—*The Duke of Guise*—It was the joint production of Dryden and Lee and appeared in 1682. The play is based on the life of Henry, Duke of Guise, the famous French prince. During the period of the religious wars of France, he placed himself at the head of the Catholic League and was responsible for the Bartholomew Massacre. He afterwards rose in revolt against Henry III and was assassinated in 1588.]

of science depended so much; valuable principles which lay at the root of the progress of science in Europe. The metaphor is borrowed from the parable of the sower in *Matthew*, XIII. The expression *good seed* is scriptural:—"The kingdom of heaven is likened unto a man which sowed *good seed* in his field." *Matthew*, XIII. 24. *Sluggish*—inert; inactive; infertile; slow to produce crops. The public mind of England was still under the spell of Scholastic philosophy and so could not readily accept Bacon's principles. *Ungential season*—unfavourable age. No scientific progress could be expected in that age, because the minds of men were agitated by civil and religious struggles. Bacon's *Novum Organum* was published in 1620. Bacon's New Method was the method of Induction, *i.e.* the acquisition of knowledge through observation and investigation of the facts of experience. It was, therefore, opposed to the Deductive Method of Aristotle which prevailed among the Schoolmen (scholastic philosophers) of mediæval Europe.

*Bacon had sown.....season*—**Expl.** This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's observations on the growth of science in Charles II's reign. He means to say that early in the 17th century, Bacon had laid down the valuable principles which lay at the root of the subsequent development of science in Europe. But the Englishmen of those days being still under the influence of Scholastic philosophy could not readily recognise the value of Bacon's principles. Moreover, no scientific development could then be expected in the country because Englishmen were then engaged in a violent struggle for religious and political liberty. *Early crop*—immediate result. *He had not expected etc.*—He had not anticipated that the publication of his book would immediately lead to great scientific discoveries. *Testament*—will; the reference is to the following passage in his will: "For my name and memory, I leave it to men's charitable speeches, and to foreign nations and to the next age." *Had solemnly bequeathed etc.*—had expressed the hope that succeeding generations would be able to appreciate the value of his teachings. *Tumults*—disorders; disturbances. *Proscriptions*—proclaiming citizens as public enemies and dooming them to death and forfeiture of property. *Tumults, wars and proscriptions*—The reference is to the events of the Civil War. *Ripening*—maturing; producing its fruits. *Well constituted minds*—men of a thoughtful and

philosophic temper; sober and well-balanced minds fit to study and analyse the facts of experience.

*Factions*—political parties creating discord in the state. *Dominion*—ascendancy. When political parties were fighting for power over human society and government, wise men were striving to gain control over nature. *Sages*—wise men. *Benevolent disdain*—good-natured contempt. *Conflict*—struggle. *The nobler work etc.*—the loftier task of bringing nature under human control. This can only be done by the study of nature and the consequent advance of human knowledge. *Dominion*—power. *Tranquillity was restored*—peace was re-established. *These teachers easily found etc.*—The scientists found the public eager to pursue their method of investigation. *Discipline*—correction; punishment inflicted by way of training and instruction. *Through which the nation had passed*—which the English people had undergone; the reference is to the sufferings caused by the Civil War and the lesson that it taught. *Temper*—mood; condition. *Well fitted for*—favourable to. *Reception*—acceptance. *Verulamian doctrine*—Baconian philosophy. *Verulamian*—adjective from Verulam. Bacon was raised to the peerage as Baron Verulam in 1618; three years later he became Viscount St. Albans. Tennyson also refers to Bacon by his title of Verulam. *Cf.*

“Plato, the wise, and large-brow'd Verulam,  
The first of those who know.”—*Palace of Art*, 163-64.

Again,

“The highest is the measure of the man.  
And not the Kaffir, Hottentot, Malay,  
Nor those horn-handed breakers of the globe.  
But Homer, Plato, Verulam.”—*The Princess*, ii. 144-47.

N.B. The student should remember that Macaulay was an out-and-out admirer of Baconian philosophy which introduced in his opinion a new era of happiness and progress in the history of mankind. He wrote an essay on Bacon in which he spoke enthusiastically of the new philosophy.

*Stimulated*—quickenened; spurred to vigorous action. *Called forth*—roused. *Restless activity*—unwearied industry. *Insatiable*—unquenchable; “that which cannot be satisfied”—(*Oxford Dictionary*). *Insatiable curiosity*—unquenchable thirst for knowledge. It is by means of such inquisitiveness and industry of

the scientists that scientific discoveries become possible. Two beneficent results of the Civil War were (1) awakening of an insatiable thirst for knowledge and (2) power of unwearyed industry. *Such as had not etc.*—unprecedented in the history of England. *Schemes*—projects. *Were generally regarded etc.*—because Englishmen had by this time learnt the valuable lesson that the mere form of constitution cannot ensure good government. The republican form of government, that had succeeded the arbitrary rule of the first two Stuarts, had its evils as glaring as those of the previous despotism. The political and religious reorganisation that followed the establishment of the Commonwealth failed to produce the desired results. So men grew sceptical about new schemes of reform in politics and religion.

*During twenty years—i.e., from the outbreak of the Civil War to the Restoration. Ingenious—clever. To frame constitutions—*to draw up schemes of ideal systems of government. *First magistrates—kings. Constitutions with first magistrates—i.e.,* monarchical forms of government. *Without first magistrates—i.e.,* republics. *Hereditary senates—*like the English House of Lords. A *senate* is an assembly of citizens invested with supreme legislative power. *By lot—*by lottery and not by the number of votes secured by the different candidates.

*Annual senates—*legislative assemblies whose members are elected every year. *Perpetual senates—*legislative assemblies whose members hold their seats for lives.

*During twenty years the chief etc.*—The following books that appeared on the subject during the period in question lend support to Macaulay's statement. (1) Milton's *A Ready and Easy Way to Establish a True Commonwealth* published in 1660. (2) Hobbes's *Leviathan*, published in 1651, was a strong argument in support of monarchical form of government. (3) Harrington's *Oceana* published in 1656. The author draws up in this book an elaborate project for the establishment of a pure republic on philosophical principles. In the following lines, Macaulay alludes to the fanciful provisions, made in this book to secure good government. (4) During the reign of Charles I, Sir Robert Filmer had written his *Patriarcha* in which he had strongly supported the patriarchal theory of government. Filmer's book was not published before 1680. *In these*

*plans nothing was omitted*—The authors of these books were not satisfied with laying down merely the broad principles of government but discussed elaborate and minute details. **N.B.** This remark applies only to Harrington's *Oceana* and not to the other books. *Nomenclature*—system of names. *Ceremonial*—formal procedure. *Set forth*—described. *Polemarch*—was in ancient Athens a magistrate who had under his care all strangers residing in the city and orphans whose parents had died in the service of the country. *Phylarch*—a tribal chief in ancient Athens who was specially charged with the command of the cavalry. *Tribes*—divisions or classes of citizens. The people of ancient Athens were divided into ten tribes for political purposes. *Galaxies*—tribal magistrates. *Archon*—The *archons* of ancient Athens were the chief magistrates chosen to superintend the civil and religious affairs. They were nine in number. *Strategus*—title of Athenian generals. Harrington was a learned man of his age and so had based his ideal constitution on that of the ancient Greek republics and also borrowed from them the titles of the different officers.

*In these plans..... Lord Strategus—Expl.* Macaulay speaks of the ideal schemes of government, devised by writers, who were interested in political questions during the twenty years between the Civil War and the Restoration. Many of these ideal schemes were very elaborate and full of minute details of administration and procedure. Harrington's *Oceana*, for example, contained a full and elaborate description of the entire machinery of the ideal government—the various divisions of administration with their names drawn from the ancient Athenian Constitution. Harrington used the names of the various officers and departments of the Athenian State for the officers and departments of his ideal state.

*Ballot boxes*—boxes for receiving ballots. A ballot is a ticket or paper by which one votes, but which does not contain any indication as to who the voter is. Voting by ballot for the election of members of Parliament was introduced into England as late as 1872. *Were to be green and which red*—In clubs and scientific societies, the election of members is generally made by white and black balls, the black balls indicating rejection. *Peak*—"projecting part of brim of cap" (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Mace*—a weapon of war used in former



times, now it is used to mean an ornamented staff of silver or other metal resembling the old weapon of war and borne before magistrates or other persons in authority. *Heralds*—officers whose duty is to order, marshal and conduct state processions. *Uncover*—bare their heads; remove the caps from their heads. *Trifles*—minute and unimportant details. *Of no common capacity and learning*—possessed of great talents and scholarship. All the trivial details of administration were carefully devised.—This proved that the authors were not only profound scholars, but were familiar with all the intricate details of government. There seems to be a hint that all this scholarship and political wisdom was wasted upon the framing of visionary schemes. It has been pointed out above that Harrington, to whom Macaulay particularly refers, was a man of great scholarship. *Visions*—impracticable projects. *But the time for etc.*—People no longer wasted their time and energy in drawing up such fanciful projects of government. *Steadfast*—constant; resolute. *Steadfast republican*—a staunch lover of the republican form of government who clung to his ideal even in the days of royalist reaction. *Amuse himself with them*—indulge in the pleasure of drawing up such schemes. *Derision*—ridicule. *Criminal information*—information lodged against him as a promoter of disorder and revolution. *Keep his fancies to himself*—secretly satisfy his love of republican government, and not give a wide publicity to his opinions.

*Unpopular*—The excesses of the Commonwealth had made the English people sick of the republican form of government. *Unsafe*—dangerous because people ran the risk of being punished for treason. *Mutter a word*—make the least complaint. *Fundamental*—basic principles. After their bitter experiences of the Commonwealth, the English people restored Charles II to the throne because of their deliberate conclusion that the monarchical form of government was the best for England. If any particular king proved unsatisfactory, he might be deposed and replaced by a better man. But Englishmen were not prepared to tolerate views that proposed to introduce a change in the system of constitution, namely, to establish a republic in place of the monarchy. *Daring*—of a boldly speculative turn of mind. *Indemnify*—compensate. *Treating with disdain*—refusing to accept as final; belittling and ridiculing.

*But daring and ingenious etc.*—As the clever minds of those times were no longer permitted to indulge in fearless speculations in the field of politics, they turned their attention to nature. They made bold investigations into the laws of nature, because they were not prepared to accept as final what had till then been regarded as her fundamental principles. *Lately*—in the recent past, *i.e.*, before the time of Bacon. *Dammed up*—checked; restricted. *Channel*—bed; course. *The torrent which.....another*—**Expl.** Macaulay explains in this sentence the cause that led to progress and development of science in the reign of Charles II. The best minds of England had, till the Restoration, been occupied in drawing up ideal political constitutions for the country. Politics then commanded the greatest share of public interest. Men of daring and original minds found in the framing of ideal constitutions a fruitful exercise of their abundant energies. But as with the restoration of monarchy political speculation was at an end, their high intellectual energy found a different expression, *viz.*, in the reading and interpretation of the facts of Nature. As the establishment of monarchy at the Restoration did no longer permit them to indulge in political speculations, their energies found an outlet in investigating into the laws of Nature. **N.B.** The metaphor is from a stream which follows in a new bed when its course is blocked by any dam. *Revolutionary spirit*—activities intended to bring about a violent change in the existing state of things; dynamic impulse of change and progress. *Operate*—act. *Began to exert itself with unprecedented vigour*—was employed with unexampled energy. *Hardihood*—boldness. *Department*—branch. *Era*—fixed point of time from which successive years are counted; date. *Ascendancy*—growth and development. *The new philosophy*—Baconian philosophy was so named in the time of Charles II to distinguish it from Scholastic philosophy. *Of*. “Ask a follower of Bacon what *the new philosophy*, as it was called in the time of Charles the Second, has effected for mankind and his answer is ready”—*Essay on Bacon*.

*Royal Society*—See notes on paragraph 94. It was founded in 1660 and received a royal charter in 1662. Sir Robert Moray was its first President. *Agent*—instrument. *Salutary*—healthy. *Glorious and salutary reforms*—brilliant and healthy changes. The advance of scientific knowledge has led to

many useful reforms in men's ways of life. *Experimental science*—See notes on paragraph 2. *Became all the mode*—became fashionable for the time. *The mode*—i.e., the fashion. *Transfusion of blood*—a surgical operation, performed for the transmission of blood from the veins of one living animal into those of another or of a man with the view of restoring the vigour of exhausted patients. This operation is of very old date but frequently ended in failures. The reason of such failure was detected in the 19th century to be that sufficient precautions were not taken to prevent air from coming in contact with the blood during the operation. It is now frequently performed with much greater success. *Ponderation*—weighing. *Air*—atmosphere. *Fixation*—solidification. The process of solidifying mercury has not yet been discovered. *Rota*—the name of a political association, formed in 1659 by Harrington, the author of *Oceana*, whose object was to secure the election of the chief officers of state by ballot and the retirement of a certain number of members of Parliament by rotation. The club was so named because of the rotation of members thus advocated. The members of this club were mostly the philosophical republicans of that day.

*The transfusion of blood etc*—Englishmen of these times devoted their attention to scientific experiments and discoveries instead of wasting their energy on the discussion of fanciful political theories. *Dreams of perfect forms of government*—fanciful schemes of ideal constitutions. *Made way for*—yielded place to. *The Tower*—i.e., the Tower of London. *The Abbey*—i.e., Westminster Abbey. *Dreams of wings etc*—The invention of wings was a subject that occupied the attention of scientists from the earliest times. In pre-historic Greece, there were traditions about Daedalus and his son Icarus who, it was believed, constructed wings and flew in the air. The problem of flying in the air now became the subject of scientific speculation. Mastering the air and controlling the sea were no longer dreams of the mind, for earnest students of science now pursued these problems with great zeal. The dream of mastering the air has been realized in quite recent times. *Double keeled*—provided with two keels. A *keel* is the principal timber in a ship extending from the prow to the stern at the bottom which supports the whole frame; hence *double keeled* means 'double-bottomed'. *Founder*—sink.

*Hurried along*—carried along; deeply influenced by. *Prevailing fashion*—wide-spread rage for scientific study and experiments. *Were for once allied*—forgetting their age—along rivalries and differences—were united together in the pursuit of science. *Divines*—clergymen; persons skilled in theology. *Jurists*—lawyers. *Swelled the triumph of the Baconian philosophy*—agreed in paying homage to Bacon's principles. They followed the Baconian method in their investigations into Nature's secrets. **N.B.** The metaphor is from the triumphs granted to victorious generals in ancient Rome. A magnificent procession was held on the occasion when the general drove into the city in a chariot followed by the prisoners of war. *With emulous fervour*—rivalled each other in their ardour or enthusiasm. *Golden age*—age of perfect happiness and innocence that is believed to have existed in the distant past. *Poets sang with emulous etc.*—poets rivalled one another in the ardour with which they sang the praise of the new philosophy. The new philosophy—they declared—would introduce an era of perfect happiness for mankind.

*Cowley in lines etc.*—The reference is to Cowley's *Ode to the Royal Society*. *Weighty with thought*—full of deep thought. *Resplendent*—brilliant; sparkling with flashes of wit.

*The chosen seed*—the Jews who believed themselves to be the special objects of God's favour. This view finds expression in a number of scriptural passages, for example, in *Psalms*, CV. 6—"O ye seed of Abraham his servant, ye children of Jacob his chosen." The expression "*chosen seed*" occurs in Milton's *Paradise Lost*, I. 8—"who first taught the chosen seed." The reference in this passage is to the early history of the Jews recorded in the *Book of Exodus*. The Jews lived as slaves in Egypt ("house of bondage") in great misery. God took pity on the sufferings of His chosen people and sent Moses to deliver them from their bondage. Under Moses's direction they left Egypt and set out for "the land flowing with milk and honey" (Canaan in Palestine) which God had promised them. After wandering through wilderness for forty years they reached Mount Sinai where God gave His Ten Commandments to be observed by the Jews as a condition of His help and protection. But Moses, their leader, was not destined to enter the Promised Land. He had from the

top of Mount Pisgah a distant view of it but died before it could be occupied by the Jews. After his death, the Jews, under their leader Joshua, entered the Promised Land and conquered it for themselves. *Promised land*—Canaan in Palestine in allusion to the divine promise (God's promise) to Abraham and his descendants. *Land flowing with milk and honey*—a land of plenty and prosperity. The expression is scriptural:—"And I am come down to deliver them out of the hand of the Egyptians, and to bring them up out of that land unto a good land and large, unto a land flowing with milk and honey"—*Exodus*, iii. 8. Stripped of figure *the expression means the age of happiness and prosperity for mankind that the study of the new philosophy promises to introduce*. The object of Baconian philosophy was not like that of Plato to make man perfect but only to ameliorate his material condition in life.

*Their great leader and lawgiver*—(1) In the case of the Jews, the reference is to *Moses*; (2) in the case of the scientists, the reference is to *Bacon* who laid down the principles which the scientists followed. *Pisgah*—the mountain in Moab from which Moses viewed the Promised Land. Bacon in his *New Atlantis* gives us a glimpse of the "promised land." He imagines a new land in which the spirit of scientific investigation has triumphed over the obsolete methods of schoolmen. He sees the vision of Solomon House a mighty laboratory of scientific research from which the new spirit will radiate to all spheres of life. The Royal Society was, as it were, a materialisation of this vision. Macaulay here refers to the following lines in Cowley's *Ode to the Royal Society*:—

"Bacon, like Moses led us forth at last  
The barren wilderness he passed,  
Did at the very border stand  
Of the blest Promised Land,  
And from the mountain's top of his exalted wit  
Saw it himself and showed us it.  
But life did never to one man allow  
Time to discover worlds and conquer too;  
Nor can so short a line sufficient be,  
To fathom the vast depths of nature's sea.....  
From you great champions, we expect to get  
These spacious countries but discovered yet."

*Cowley, in lines weighty.....to enter—Expl.* Macaulay describes in this sentence the great things hoped for from the scientific movement by the poets of the days of King Charles II.

Cowley in his *Ode to the Royal Society* compared the students of science to the Jews who were delivered from the land of their bondage by their great leader Moses. The Jews under his leadership advanced close to the Promised Land which they subsequently conquered and occupied. But Moses was not permitted to enter it; he enjoyed only a distant view of it from the summit of the Pisgah mountain. So also Bacon. Bacon, similarly had laid down the scientific principles which would lead to great scientific discoveries that would improve the material condition of man and make his life happier than before. But Bacon did not live to see the fruits of his work. The scientists of the new age were to enjoy the precious fruits of Bacon's labours simply by following the method that he taught. *With more zeal than knowledge*—The reference is to his passage from *Annus Mirabilis* quoted in the footnote. These lines testify to his deep admiration for the scientific researches of the Royal Society but betray at the same time his gross ignorance of science. *Joined his voice to the general acclamation*—loudly praised like the others the general movement for the study of science. *Foretold*—anticipated. *Things which neither he nor anybody else understood*—because the lines are quite meaningless from the scientific point of view; the hope of coming to the end of the world and seeing the ocean leaning on the sky is fanciful; again the idea that the moon is somewhere at the end of the world and may be closely seen from there is wildly unscientific. Dr. Johnson cited the stanza from *Annus Mirabilis*, quoted in the footnote, as an example of Dryden's "delight in wild and daring sallies of sentiment, in the irregular and eccentric violence of wit" which he said "sometimes issued in absurdities of which probably he was not conscious." Johnson went on to say: "These lines have no meaning but may we not say in imitation of Cowley on another book,

'Tis so like sense, 'twill serve the turn as well?"

*Extreme verge*—furthest border. *Delight us etc.*—The absurdity of this remark is apparent. As we live on the surface  
S. P.—27.

of the globe, we may be said to be already on its *furthest verge* and so by moving from one place to another we cannot come nearer the moon. *Aspiring*—ambitious. *Prelates*—high dignitaries of the church. *Ward* (1617—89)—was a divine and a well-known mathematician of those times. He was the Savilian Professor of Astronomy at Oxford from 1649 to 1661 and advanced an original theory of planetary motions. He was appointed Bishop of Salisbury in 1667 and published some mathematical treatises. *Wilkins* (1614—72)—was Master of Trinity College, Cambridge, and was the centre of the group of men, who formed the Royal Society and was its first Secretary. After holding a number of clerical situations, he became Bishop of Chester in 1668. He was the author of a number of scientific publications like "*The Discovery of a World in the Moon*" and "*A Discourse tending to prove that it is probable our Earth is one of the Planets.*" *Conspicuous*—eminent. *Leaders of the movement*—chief promoters of the study of science. *High distinction in his profession*—eminence as a clergyman. *Thomas Sprat*—See notes on paragraph 58. He was one of the first fellows of the Royal Society and wrote its history in 1667. *Chief Justice Hale* (1609—76)—a famous English lawyer and judge. He was appointed Justice of the Court of Common Pleas in 1654 and Lord Chief Justice of the King's Bench in 1671. He was the author of two scientific works besides a number of books on philosophy and religion. *Lord Keeper Guildford*—Francis North, first Baron of Guildford (1637—85) was an eminent lawyer and a prominent figure in the politics of those times. He became the Chief Justice of the Court of Common Pleas in 1675 and Lord Chancellor in 1682. He was a great patron of art and science.

*Stole some.....courts*—devoted the few hours of leisure that were at their command after the performance of their judicial duties. *Hydrostatics*—the science which deals with the motion, weight and equilibrium of fluids especially of water. *Immediate directions*—direct instruction or supervision. *Barometers*—instruments for measuring the weight or pressure of the atmosphere. *Chemistry divided for a time etc.*—The Duke of Buckingham dabbled in Chemistry and spent much time in building and laying out gardens. Macaulay's description of Buckingham in this sentence is apparently based on

Dryden's description of his character under the name of Zimri :

"A man so various that he seemed to be  
Not one, but all mankind's epitome :  
Stiff in opinions, always in the wrong,  
Was everything by starts and nothing long :  
But in the course of one revolving moon  
Was *chymist, fiddler, statesman and buffoon* ;  
Then *all for women, painting, rhyming, drinking*,  
Besides ten thousand freaks that died in thinking  
Blest madman, who could every hour employ  
With something new to wish or to enjoy !"

—*Absalom and Achitophel*, 545—554.

*With wine and love*—The reference is to Buckingham's licentious habits and hard drinking. *With the stage and the gaming table*—Buckingham wrote some plays for the stage—the best known of these being the *Rehearsal* in which he ridiculed contemporary dramatists especially Dryden. He greatly impaired his fortune by gambling and other follies.

*Intrigues*—underhand schemings. *Courtier*—Buckingham was a member of the Cabal and was one of the greatest favourites of Charles II in the earlier years of his reign. *Demagogue*—popular leader especially one who seeks to acquire influence with the populace by pandering to their prejudices or playing on their ignorance. On being dismissed from his offices in 1674, Buckingham joined the Whigs and intrigued against Charles II. [*demagogue*, n. Popular leader; political agitator appealing to cupidity or prejudice of the masses—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Fickle*—inconstant. *Buckingham* (1627-1687)—George Villiers, the second Duke of Buckingham; after a long career of vice and folly he died under miserable circumstances at the house of one of his tenants; see notes on paragraph 83. *Chemistry divided for a time etc.*—The inconstant Duke of Buckingham, amidst his manifold pleasures, vices and political intrigues, thought it worth his while to study Chemistry for a time; Chemistry claimed his attention for some time amidst other and more interesting occupations, viz., drinking, love-making, writing plays, gambling, scheming and intriguing in the court and among the populace. *Rupert*—Prince Rupert was Charles I's nephew and a



prominent Royalist general during the Civil War; see notes on paragraph 29. *Has the credit of having invented*—is believed to have invented. *Mezzotinto*—an improved manner of engraving from steel and copper plates which produces an impression of effective light and shade; “method of engraving in which the plate is roughened uniformly, lights and half-lights being given by scraping away the nap thus produced, deep shadows by leaving it”—(*Oxford Dictionary*): Rupert spent the later years of his life in scientific investigations. *The curious bubble of glass*—commonly known as Rupert’s drop. It is a glass bead of the shape of a tadpole formed by throwing a drop of glass while in a state of fusion suddenly into water. The thick end does not break even when struck with a hammer, but when the thin end is nipped off or even slightly scratched, the whole mass is at once reduced to fine dust with an almost explosive force. *Has long amused children*—Rupert’s drop is a common toy for children. *Puzzled philosophers*—perplexed scientists, because they found it difficult to explain the cause of this phenomenon. *Laboratory*—workshop intended for scientific experiments and investigation. *Council board*—the table round which the members of a council hold their deliberations. In those times the Kings of England used personally to preside over the meetings of their councils. *Was far more active and attentive etc.*—took greater interest in scientific experiments than in the deliberations of his council.

*Fine gentleman*—polished and fashionable gentleman. *To have something to say*—i.e., to know something. *Air pumps*—instruments for the purpose of producing vacuum in closed vessels called receivers by exhausting the air contained therein; বায়ুনিষ্কাশন যন্ত্র। *Telescopes*—optical instruments for bringing distant objects within the range of distinct vision : দূরবীক্ষণ। *It was almost etc*—Fashionable gentlemen were required to know something about scientific instruments. *Now and then*—occasionally. *Becoming*—decent; graceful. *To affect a taste for science*—to pretend to have a liking for scientific studies. *Coaches and six*—Macaulay has mentioned previously that this was the equipage commonly used by the rich in those times. *Gresham curiosities*—strange or rare objects kept at the Gresham House; the Royal Society was housed

at Gresham College in the early years of its history. There its early meetings were held and museum located. *Broke forth*—burst into. *Microscope*—an optical instrument for magnifying objects and thus rendering visible minute things that cannot be seen with the naked eye. *And even fine ladies, now and then etc.*—As Macaulay points out in the footnote, this is a reference to the entry in Pepys' *Diary* under 30th May, 1667, describing the visit of the Duchess of Newcastle. The description runs as follows:—"The Duchess hath been a good, comely woman; but her dress so antick and her deportment so ordinary, that I do not like her at all, nor did I hear her say anything that was worth hearing, but that she was full of admiration, all admiration. Several fine experiments were shown her of colours, loadstones, microscopes, and of liquors.....After they had showed her many experiments, and she cried still she was full of admiration, she departed..."

**Paragraph 138.** The wide-spread craze for science was ridiculed by some old-fashioned men. Yet it led to useful discoveries in various departments of practical life like agriculture, horticulture and medicine. The advance of medical knowledge, especially of sanitation, drainage etc., was utilised in re-building London after the fire. Foundations of a number of new sciences, like Botany and Zoology, were laid, and the fallacy of many old beliefs was demonstrated. Some of the greatest scientific achievements of the age were the discoveries of Wallis, Halley and above all of Sir Isaac Newton.

*Stir*—activity. *Great stir of the human mind*—vigorous intellectual activity. *There was doubtless etc.*—It had certainly a ridiculous element in it. *Universal law*—general rule. *Dignity*—respect. *Small but earnest minority*—few but devoted adherents. *Loved for its own sake*—and not for the good opinion of the public. *It is the universal law etc.*—Though Macaulay dignifies this statement by the name of a universal law, it contains no recondite truth. Everyone knows that when a party contains a large number of men, instead of being confined to a select few, it must necessarily include some unworthy members. The misconduct of these weaker members brings discredit on the whole party. *Aptitude for science*—fitness for the study of science. *Professed a passion for it*—pretended to have a great love for this subject. *Passion*—i.e., great love.

*Furnished matter for contemptuous mirth*—served as a subject of jest or ridicule. *Malignant*—ill-natured. *Who belonged to the preceding generation*—who were old-fashioned in their ways of thinking. Men of the older generation and older habits of life were likely to look upon the new philosophy with grave doubts and misgivings. They sought for an opportunity to ridicule and damn the new thought. Men who had not the proper scientific spirit but merely dabbled in science provided targets for the satire of these enemies of the new thought. *Were not disposed etc.*—were not inclined to shake themselves free from their former bias or prejudice. Macaulay here refers to Butler, the author of *Hudibras*, as he points out in the footnote. The Satire on the Royal Society, named the *Elephant in the Moon*, begins as follows:—

“A learned society of late,  
The glory of a foreign state,  
A greed upon a summer’s night,  
To search the moon by her own light;  
To take an invent’ry of all  
Her real estate and personal;  
And make an accurate survey  
Of all her lands and how they lay,  
As true as that of Ireland, where  
The sly surveyors stole a share;  
T’observe her country how ’twas planted,  
With what she abounded most or wanted;  
And make the prop’rest observations  
For settling of all new plantations  
If the society should incline  
T’attempt so glorious a design.”

*Interpreting nature*—discovering the laws of Nature. *Was abroad*—was widely diffused. *A spirit etc.*—a spirit that was a happy mixture of boldness and sanity; the new scientific spirit boldly wanted to discover the secrets of Nature, yet wisely kept itself within the bounds of fact and commonsense. *The spirit of Francis Bacon.....sobriety*—Expl. Macaulay describes in this sentence the scientific spirit by which Englishmen of the age of Charles II were inspired. The movement was then wide-spread in the country; and the students of science, while pursuing their investigations

fearlessly into every department of Nature, were never guilty of any extravagance or absurdities.

*Persuasion*—belief. *Secrets*—undiscovered truths. *High moment*—great importance. *Of high moment to the happiness of man*—i.e., the knowledge of these secrets would add greatly to the welfare and happiness of human life. *Maker*—i.e., God. *Man had by his Maker etc.*—Man had been given by God the power of unlocking these secrets. *Key*—power of discovering these secrets; Reason or the Inductive Method was the key. *Access*—reach. *Conviction*—strong opinion. *In physics*—in sciences dealing with the properties of matter or the physical universe. It was realised that in studying the physical universe or matter, we must proceed from particular facts to general truths. This was the teaching of Bacon. *It was impossible to arrive etc.*—This was what Bacon had laboured to teach the world. *Professors*—followers or teachers. *Ample earnest*—considerable promise or proof: first fruits. *And before a century etc.*—The great success, achieved by them during the first twenty-five years, was a fair promise of the great advance that has since been made. *New vegetables etc.*—The cultivation of turnips was introduced in the 18th century. *Implements of husbandry*—agricultural instruments or machinery. Sowing drills were introduced in the 17th century. *Evelyn*—author of the famous diary. He was an original member of the Royal Society. See notes on paragraph 40. *Formal sanction*—solemn or express permission. *Planting*—laying out grounds with timber trees. The reference is to the entry under 15th Oct., 1662:—"I this day delivered my *Discourse concerning Forest-Trees* to the Society, upon occasion of certain queries sent to us by the Commissioners of his Majesty's Navy, being the first book that was printed by order of the Society, and by their printer, since it was a Corporation." The book contained in it a Gardener's almanac "*directing what he is to do monthly during the year.*"

*Temple*—Sir William Temple (1628-99) was an English statesman and author. He was the English ambassador at the Hague in Charles II's time and negotiated the marriage between William III and Princess Mary. He retired from politics in middle life and spent the remaining years at Moor-Park in Surrey amusing himself with gardening

and literary pursuits. *Horticulture*—the art of cultivating gardens. *The natives of more favoured climates*—which naturally grow in warmer countries. *With the help of art*—by artificial means, like the use of hothouses. *Was in abject bondage*—was completely under the influence of old theories and traditions, the fallacy of which was subsequently proved by the growth of scientific knowledge. *Inexhaustible*—endless. *Afforded an inexhaustible etc.*—which Moliere was never tired of holding up to well-merited scorn; (the fact that the science of medicine was still under the sway of old orthodox methods) supplied always a subject of satire to Moliere—a satire which it fully deserved. *Moliere*—the famous French dramatist. See notes on paragraph 133. He wrote a number of plays ridiculing the ignorance and pedantry of physicians. *Progressive science*—a science which instead of remaining in a stationary condition advanced with the progress of knowledge. *In defiance of Hippocrates and Galen*—in bold opposition to the theories and practices of the ancient writers on the subject. *Hippocrates* (460-359 B. C.)—ancient Greek writer on the science of medicine commonly regarded as the Father of Medicine. He was a native of Thessaly but practised and taught at Athens. *Galen* (130-200 A.D.)—a famous physician of ancient Rome. He was the medical adviser of Emperor Marcus Aurelius. The systems of Hippocrates and Galen were followed in Europe till the dawn of the modern medical science. *Medicine which in France.....Galen*—**Expl.** This remark occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the advance of science in England during the Restoration period. In France, the medical men accepted, without any question, the old theories and traditions that had come down from former ages. Hence the medical science did not make any progress in France; and Moliere held up to ridicule the ignorance of the physicians in some of his dramas. The science made, however, a rapid advance in England, because it was sought to be based on theories that could stand the test of experiment—though these theories were opposed to those that had been handed down from the greatest authorities of ancient times; *viz.*, Hippocrates and Galen.

*Speculative*—thoughtful *Sanitary police*—regulations for the preservation of public health; public health and hygiene of a city (police). *Defective*—insanitary. *Ventilation*—supply

of fresh air. *Effecting extensive etc.*—accomplishing sanitary reforms on a large scale. *The great fire of 1666 afforded etc.*—“Great as the suffering caused by the fire was, it was not without its benefits, as the old houses with their overhanging storeys were destroyed by it, and were replaced by new ones built in the modern fashion, so that *there was more air in the streets*. After this reconstruction of London, it was never again visited by the Plague.”—*Gardiner. Diligently—carefully. Suggestions—recommendations. Attributed—ascribed. The changes—viz., in the construction of the houses and the streets. Though far short of etc.*—The streets were made a little wider though not exactly to the degree that the science of sanitation required. *Close—end. Pestilence—plague. Put a final close etc.*—See the above quotation from Gardiner.

*Founders—organisers.* Sir William Petty was one of the original members of the Royal Society. *Sir William Petty*—See notes on paragraph 3. *Created—laid the foundations of. Political arithmetic—statistics. Indispensable—very useful; necessary. Indispensable handmaid—very useful adjunct. Political philosophy—science of politics. The humble but etc.*—the branch of knowledge which, though not highly esteemed, is extremely useful to the science of politics. *Kingdom—department. Unexplored—uninvestigated. Boyle (1627-91)*—an eminent English scientist who took a leading part in the foundation of the Royal Society. He established the law establishing proportionate relation between elasticity and pressure which is named *Boyle's law* after him. *Botanical researches—investigations into the science of plants. Sloane*—Sir Hans Sloane (1660-1753) was an eminent physician of his day. He was intimately connected with the Royal Society being its secretary from 1693 to 1712 and its president from 1727 to 1741. He founded a Botanic Garden at Chelsea in 1721 and wrote a book on Jamaica plants. After his death, his collections were purchased by the Government and presented to the British Museum.

*Ray*—John Ray (1627-1705) was an eminent English naturalist. He, for the first time, divided flowering plants into *monocotyledons* and *dicotyledons*. He worked in collaboration with a friend—the latter devoting himself to researches into the nature of birds and fishes, while Ray carried

on his investigations into the nature of plants. On his friend's death in 1672, Ray took up his unfinished zoological work and arranged for the publication of his works on birds and fishes. Woodward (1665-1729)—a physician and geologist. In 1695 he published an "*Essay towards a Natural History of the Earth*." He recognised the existence of various strata in the earth's crust, but overlooked the true disposition of the fossils in them. *Fossils*—petrified forms of plants and animals occurring in the strata that compose the surface of the earth; পৃথিবীর ভিন্ন ভিন্ন স্তরে প্রাপ্ত উদ্ভিদ or প্রাণীর প্রস্তরীভূত দেহ। The study of fossils is useful to geologists for determining the ages of the different strata and the condition of the surface of the earth in the different ages. *Shells*—the hard organised substance forming the skeleton of many animals like the snail.

*Phantoms*—spectres : apparitions ; hence erroneous ideas : superstitious beliefs. *Haunted*—frequented or inhabited like a ghost or spirit. *Ages of darkness*—periods of ignorance. The earlier part of the Middle Ages is commonly called the Dark Ages on account of the ignorance which prevailed therein. *Fled before the light*—disappeared before the advance of knowledge. *One after another.....before the light*—**Expl.** Macaulay makes this observation in connection with his description of the advance of science in England during the reign of Charles II. As evil spirits (ghosts, etc.), that haunt the earth during the dark hours of the night, fly away with the morning light so the old errors and superstitions, cherished by men during the ages of ignorance, disappeared one after another with the growth and development of scientific knowledge. *Astrology*—the science (now regarded as exploded), which ascribes events in human life and affairs to the influence of the heavenly bodies (stars, etc.) and which pretends besides to foretell the future from their positions and conjunctions ; কলিত জ্যোতিষ।

*Alchemy*—another pseudo-science from which the modern science of Chemistry took its rise. The alchemists laboured for the discovery of the following three things :—(1) Philosopher's stone which would have the power of changing baser metals into gold ;, (2) Panacea, a cure for all diseases ; (3) Alkahest or universal solvent.

*Jests*—objects of scorn and ridicule. *Quorum*—justices of the peace whose presence is necessary to constitute a bench. Among the justices of the peace it was customary to name some person eminent for knowledge and prudence to be of the *quorum*; but all justices are now generally of the *quorum*; [*quorum*, n. Fixed number of members that must be present to make proceedings of assembly or society or board valid—*Oxford Dictionary*.] *Riding on broomsticks*—The witches were popularly supposed to have the power of flying through the air on broomsticks. Scott alludes to this practice in the following lines of his *Lady of the Lake*:

“We stem the flood, we ride the blast,  
On wandering knights our spells we cast.”

I. 618—19.

*Murrain*—cattle-plague. *Soon there was etc.*—People no longer believed in witchcraft, and magistrates laughed in scorn when old women were brought before them for trial as witches. N.B. Belief in witchcraft was widespread in Europe during the Middle Ages. Persons, believed to be guilty of the crime, were punished with death. Joan of Arc, the heroic French girl, was burned to death for being a witch. The laws against witchcraft existed in England as late as 1736.

*Arduous*—difficult; requiring great labour. *Induction*—the method by which general truths or laws are inferred from the examination of particular cases. This was the method taught by Bacon. *Demonstration*—proof. *Cooperate*—are united. In sciences, like Botany, Zoology or Geology, the discovery of general laws depends on correct observation and generalisation. It is neither necessary nor possible to test the truth of these laws by mathematical calculations. But in subjects like Physics and Astronomy, the general laws must be capable of satisfying rigorous mathematical tests. For example, the movements of the heavenly bodies are capable of being accurately determined from Newton's laws of gravitation by means of mathematical calculations. *English genius won etc.*—English scientists of those times made their greatest discoveries. *John Wallis* (1616-1703)—an eminent English mathematician of his age. He was the Savilian Professor of Geometry at Oxford from 1649 to 1703 and was one of the



early members of the Royal Society. He published a number of works containing original researches in mathematics. *Statics*—that branch of mechanics which treats of the properties and relations of forces in equilibrium. *Placed the whole etc.*—established the whole science of Statics on altogether new principles. "The theory for the collision of bodies was propounded by the Royal Society in 1668 for the consideration of mathematicians. Wallis, Wren and Huygens sent correct and similar solutions, all depending on what is now called the conservation of momentum; but while Wren and Huygens confined their theory to perfectly elastic bodies, Wallis considered also imperfectly elastic bodies. This was followed in 1669 by a work on statics (centres of gravity) and in 1670 by one on dynamics: these provide a convenient synopsis of what was then known on the subject."—Ball's *History of Mathematics*.

*Edmund Halley* (1656-1742)—a famous English astronomer who discovered what is known as Halley's comet. He accurately predicted the return of this comet in 1758. He was a member of the Royal Society before which he introduced Newton's *Principia* in 1687. *Investigated the properties of the atmosphere*—Halley invented a method for determining heights by the barometer and ascended the Snowdon to test his method. He established besides a law, connecting atmospheric elevation with density. *The ebb and flow of the sea*—Halley surveyed the coasts and tides of the British channel of which he published a map in 1702 embodying the results of his investigations. *Laws of magnetism*—The reference is to the chart that he made of the variation of the compass with the "Halleyan lines." *The course of the comets*—The reference is to his discovery of the comet known by his name. *Nor did he shrink etc.*—an allusion to the number of voyages undertaken by Halley for carrying on his scientific investigations. *Exile*—Halley resided in St. Helena from 1676-78 where he laid the foundation of the astronomy of the southern heavens. Here he observed the complete transit of Mercury in 1677. *St. Helena*—a rocky island in South Atlantic. Halley resided here for two years. See previous note. *Mapped the constellations of the southern hemisphere*—drew a chart of the stars of the southern sky. *Constellations*—groups of fixed stars. *Observatory*—a building constructed and fitted up with instruments for making

astronomical observations ; মান-মন্দির। *Our national observatory etc.*—The Royal Observatory at Greenwich was completed in 1675.

*John Flamsteed* (1646-1719)—an eminent English astronomer. He was the first Astronomer Royal, being appointed to this post in 1675. He was a great friend of Newton and his observations 'gave great help to the latter in writing his "*Principia*". He laid the basis of modern astronomy by ascertaining absolute right ascensions through simultaneous observations of the sun and a star near both equinoxes" (*D. N. B.*). *Cast into the shade*—eclipsed. *Transcendent lustre*—surpassing glory. *Name*—person. *Isaac Newton*—See notes on paragraph 94. *Two kinds of intellectual power*—These were, as Macaulay points out below, (1) power of accurate observation and (2) mathematical genius. *Which have little in common*—which are dissimilar in nature. *Are not often found together*—are seldom seen to be possessed by a single individual. *Most sublime departments*—highest regions ; speculations on the most abstruse questions. *They have never been united etc.*—These powers were not possessed by any man to such an eminent degree before and after him. *Happily*—favourably. *Constituted*—formed.

*Cultivation of pure mathematical science*—This requires the possession of strong reason, purely intellectual powers. *Cultivation of science purely experimental*—This requires the power of accurate observation. *Demonstrative faculty*—power of proving the truth of things by practical demonstration or experiment ; power of observation and experiment. *Inductive faculty*—power of drawing general conclusions from the observation of particular facts ; power of abstract reasoning. *Coexisted*—were united or associated. *In such supreme excellence etc.*—to such an eminent degree and in such perfect combination. *There may have been minds etc.*—Some men may have been gifted with a genius for mathematics, *i.e.*, abstract reasoning and calculation as great as Newton. Others may have been gifted with powers of accurate observation and happy generalisation as he, but these gifts of a high degree were never seen in such perfect combination as in Newton.

*Scotists*—followers of Duns Scotus, a famous scholastic theologian of the 13th century. He was at first the professor

of theology at Oxford, but afterwards migrated to the University of Paris. He was the great opponent of Thomas Aquinas in his doctrines. *Thomists*—followers of Thomas Aquinas (1226-74), the most famous of the scholastic philosophers. He is commonly known as the "Father of Moral Philosophy." Though he came of a noble family, he became a monk in 1243 and spent the remaining years of his life in pilgrimages and disputations. The scholastic philosophers of the Middle Ages, Duns Scotus, Thomas Aquinas and their followers, wasted their intellectual powers in subtle abstract speculations on trivial subjects. They devoted themselves to the exposition of different questions of religion, and tried to reconcile the teachings of the Church with the dictates of human reason. They appear from their works to have been men of very powerful intellect, but on account of the misapplication of their powers, they could not achieve anything useful. *In an age etc.*—in the Middle Ages when the great intellectual powers of scholastic philosophers were wasted in unprofitable discussions on trivial subjects. Newton, however, found in his age a proper subject for the exercise of his great intellect, *viz.*, the application of abstract truth to the practical realities of life. *Run to waste*—become lost for any useful purpose; become spoilt for want of proper direction. *Which were inferior only to his*—men possessed of an intellect almost as powerful as Newton's.

*Perhaps in an age.....only to his*—Expl. This sentence occurs in connection with Macaulay's observations on the greatness of Newton's genius. He means to say that if Newton had been born in the Middle Ages, his intellect could not have achieved anything great or useful. For want of proper direction, his mighty genius would have exhausted itself over the discussion of trivial things—like the scholastic philosophers of those times, many of whom possessed intellects of a very superior kind.

*The spirit of the age*—the scientific spirit of the times. *His lot was cast*—He happened to be born. *Gave the right direction to his mind*—directed his intellectual activities into the proper channel. *Reacted with tenfold etc.*—gave a great impetus to the spirit of inquiry into the laws of nature which was the spirit of the age. The scientific spirit was the prevailing spirit of the age. It acted upon his mind. But Newton's mind,

richly gifted by Nature with the scientific spirit of inquiry, responded vigorously to the influence of the time spirit; *i.e.*, actively moulded and directed it. Newton himself was the child of his age and did, in his turn, greatly influence it. *Dawning*—beginning. Before this date, Newton had already made a name for himself by the discovery of the binomial theorem, the principles of the Calculus and his original researches into Optics. *In the meridian*—in its prime; at its height; his intellectual powers were then in full activity. *His great work*—the *Principia* in which Newton established the laws of universal gravitation. *Provinces*—branches. *Natural philosophy*—Physics. *But was not yet published etc.*—The first book of Newton's *Principia* was submitted to the Royal Society in 1686 and the whole was published about the midsummer of the following year. The publication of the work was to a large extent due to Halley's assistance.

**Paragraph 139.** With the exception of Architecture the Fine Arts did not flourish in Charles II's reign. Though the profession of the fine arts was even more lucrative than that of letters, and foreign artists grew very rich, yet it did not attract men of the soil. The greatest painters of the day, like Lely and Kneller, were foreigners. So were the sculptors. Even the designs for the coins were made by French medallists.

*The nation—viz., the English nation. So far before*—in such advance. *Art—i.e., Fine Arts. Have been far behind them all*—have been in a much more backward condition than the other European countries. *Architecture*—that branch of fine arts which aims at the erection of buildings that gratify the sense of beauty and are pleasing to a cultivated and artistic taste. *An art which is half a science*—*Art* differs from *Science* in being practical. The latter concerns itself with what is true without any particular regard to utility.

"The fundamental conception of the occupation of the architect embraces the two ideas of *science* and *art*. Architecture as an *art* is the work of the skilled hand; as a *science*, it is that of the informed and cultivated brain." "The fine or beautiful arts are those among the arts of man which minister not to his material necessities or conveniences, but to his

love of beauty ; or if any art fulfils both these purposes at once, still as fulfilling the latter only is it called a fine art. Thus, architecture, in so far as it provides shelter and accommodation, is one of the useful or mechanical arts, and one of the fine arts only in so far as its structure gives pleasure by the aspect of strength, fitness, harmony, and proportion of the masses, by disposition and contrast of light and shade, by colour and enrichment, by variety and relation of lines, surfaces, and intervals." *None but a geometrician can excel*—because architecture deals with straight lines, curves and symmetrical proportions which form the subject-matter of geometry ; this forms the element of *science* in architecture. *An art which has no standard etc.*—an art which is not controlled by sheer love of beauty, but by considerations of practical utility ; its ideal of perfection is not to delight and satisfy the sense of beauty merely, but also to satisfy practical needs ; it is, therefore, called one of the useful or mechanical arts. Its standard of beauty or perfection is, therefore, very much influenced by considerations of practical usefulness.

**N. B.** This forms the element of *art* in architecture. Architectural excellence of a building is to be judged by the degree of its usefulness for the purpose for which it is erected. *Majesty*—grandeur. *Bulk*—size ; massive structure. *Christopher Wren*—See notes on paragraph 74. *Unprecedented*—unexampled. *Displaying his powers*—showing his skill as an architect. Wren built fifty-two churches in London besides St. Paul's, Marlborough House and Chelsea Hospital.

*Austere beauty*—severely simple beauty. The reference is to the style of ancient Greek architecture known as Doric. It was distinguished from the Ionian and the Corinthian by its simplicity and strength. *Athenian portico*—The reference is to the famous public buildings of ancient Athens known as *stoae*. They were *halls* supported by pillars and used as places of resort in the heat of the day. There were several such buildings in Athens. **N.B.** The style of ancient Greek architecture should be distinguished from mediæval Gothic architecture. The former is noted for its straight, *horizontal* beams resting on pillars ; the latter noted for its *vaults* and *arches*. *Portico*—an open space covered by a roof supported on pillars. In modern times a portico often serves as an

entrance to a building. *Gloomy sublimity*—solemn grandeur; dark and majestic appearance. *Gothic*—This was the name of the style of architecture that prevailed in Europe during the Middle Ages. The chief peculiarities of this style of architecture are the pointed arches and the clustered shafts. The high arches and the deep vaults make the interior of buildings rather gloomy but leave a sense of mysterious depth and vastness. *Arcades*—a series of arches supported on pillars. In the architecture of the Middle Ages such arcades were often used as ornamental dressings to walls. *Emulating*—rivalling. *Incapable of appreciating*—unable to understand their beauty or worth. Love of classical Greek architecture or of mediæval Gothic architecture was dead in the days of Charles II. Interest in Gothic architecture was revived in the 18th century. *The austere beauty etc.*—In the many buildings that he constructed, Wren never attempted to reproduce the simple Doric beauty of the famous porticoes of ancient Athens or the solemn grandeur of the Gothic style. This was either because he felt himself unequal to this task or because he did not properly understand the beauty of these styles. *On our side of the Alps*—i.e., north of the Alps. *Has imitated with so much success*—has so successfully reproduced. *Palacelike etc.*—palatial churches of Italy. The reference is to magnificent cathedrals like St. Peter's of Rome.

*The superb Lewis*—Lewis XIV of France with his love of grandeur. He was called Lewis the Great. He built the splendid palace at Versailles and adorned Paris with beautiful edifices like the Hotel des Invalides. He provided the Louvre with its brilliant colonnade. *Saint Paul's*—the Cathedral of St. Paul in London which was designed and built by Wren after the Great Fire. *Statuary*—sculptor; this word is used to mean also the art of making statues. *Sterility*—barrenness; unproductiveness, i.e., absence of any such artist. *Somewhat mysterious*—rather difficult to explain. *Were by no means etc.*—i.e., these artists were held in respect and received proper remuneration for their work. *Their social position was at least etc.*—They were then held in as much respect as now. *Gains*—remuneration. *When compared with*—relatively to. *Remuneration*—profits. *Munificent patronage*—generous support or encouragement. *Artists*—persons skilled in the fine arts, viz.,

painters and sculptors. *Our shores*—our country. *Multitudes*—large numbers. *Lely*—Sir Peter Lely (1618—80) was a famous painter who drew the portraits of many of the beauties of the court of Charles II now exhibited at Hampton Court. This collection is known by the title of the Windsor Beauties. He was a German whose proper name was Van der Faes. *Full*—plump; not thin. *Languishing eyes*—soft and tender looks; eyes drooping with voluptuous languor. *Frail beauties*—ladies of easy virtue. *Celebrated by Hamilton*—described in "*Memoires du Comte de Grammont*". Count Grammont was a French nobleman who lived in England in those times and married Hamilton's sister. He was a prominent figure of the court of Charles II and intimately knew the ways of the courtiers of those days. His memoirs contain a picture of the scandalous ways of the fashionable people of those days. Most of the fashionable beauties whose portraits were painted by Lely figured in the memoirs of Grammont. These memoirs were anonymously published by Hamilton in 1713 and were afterwards edited by Horace Walpole and Sir Walter Scott. *A Westphalian*—an inhabitant of Westphalia, a province in Germany, on the borders of Holland.

*Having received the honour of knighthood*—being promoted to the rank of a knight. *Having accumulated a good estate etc.*—having amassed a large fortune from the remuneration he received for painting portraits. *Fruits of his skill*—profits of his artistic labours. *Decease*—death. *Exhibited*—presented for public inspection. *The Banqueting House at Whitehall*—It was built by Inigo Jones in the reign of James I and is the only portion of the old palace that now remains standing. It was before this Banqueting House that Charles I was beheaded. *Auction*—public sale to the highest bidder; नीलाम । *Incredible*—unbelievable. *Incredible sum*—Considering the largeness of the sum it is hard to believe that the pictures could have been sold for such a price. *A sum which bore etc.*—as the incomes of the rich men of those times were much less than now. £ 26,000 must have been to them a much larger sum than £ 100,000 to the men of the present age. *His countryman*—i.e., another German. , *Godfrey Kneller* (1646-1723)—the most celebrated portrait painter of his day in England who enjoyed

the patronage of the English sovereigns from Charles II to George I. He is said to have painted the portraits of ten reigning sovereigns and almost all the important men of his day. *Who was first made a knight etc.*—Kneller was knighted in 1691 and made a baronet in 1715. *Keeping up a sumptuous establishment*—living in an expensive style. *Sumptuous*—rich and costly, suggesting lavish expenditure (*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Unlucky speculations*—risky commercial enterprises that ended in failures. The reference is to the loss undergone by Kneller for investing money in the notorious South Sea Company. *Bequeath*—leave at his death. • *The two Vandeveldes*—They were father and son. Both of them excellent in painting marine subjects. The elder Vandevelde came to England with his son in 1675 and received a pension from Charles II. At the great sea-fight between the Duke of York and the Dutch admiral Opdam the elder Vandevelde is said to have sailed between the two lines of fleet in a skiff to mark their positions and operations. He is said to have similarly observed the three days' engagement between Monk and De Ruyter. The elder Vandevelde (1610-93) drew sketches, and his son (1633-1707) produced copies in oil of his father's pictures. *Liberality*—generous patronage; munificence. *Sea pieces*—pictures on marine subjects. *Simon Varelst*—The name is more commonly spelt as Verelst. He was a famous flower and portrait painter. He came to England in 1699 and was for a time highly popular. *Glorious*—splendid. *Sunflowers*—well-known flowers so named from their habit of turning to the sun: सूर्याभ्यां कूल । *Tulips*—well-known garden flowers highly prized for the beauty of their colours. *Prices, such as had etc.*—very handsome remuneration.

*Verrio* (c. 1639-1707)—born near Otranto; he was employed by Charles II and James II to decorate Windsor Castle and by William III and Anne to decorate Hampton Court; he decorated besides many English noblemen's houses. *A Neapolitan*—an inhabitant of Naples in South Italy. *Ceilings*—inside surface of an apartment overhead. *Gorgons, Muses, Nymphs etc.*—i.e., figures from classical mythology. *Gorgons*—three sisters of very dreadful aspect of the ancient classical legends. They were of such dreadful aspect that their sight turned beholders into stone. *Muses*—nine divinities



(goddesses) presiding over different branches of learning and arts. They were generally represented as beautiful women. *Nymphs*—minor divinities (goddesses) of the ancient classical legends who were believed to be the tutelary spirits of certain localities—rivers, forests, mountains, etc. They were generally represented as beautiful maidens. *Virtues and Vices*—viz., allegorical pictures representing Virtues and Vices. *Gods quaffing nectar*—as they were represented as drinking nectar according to Homer and the other classical poets. Tennyson alludes to this picture of the gods in his *Lotos-Eaters*:—"For they (gods) lie beside their nectar"—156. *Quaffing*—drinking in large quantities. *Nectar*—was the drink of the gods in classical mythology.

*Laurelled princes etc.*—princes (or generals) riding at the head of pompous processions on their return home after a victory. The reference is to the triumphs granted to victorious generals in ancient Rome. *Laurelled*—In ancient times heroes and victorious generals were honoured with a crown of laurels; hence wearing the crown of victory; victorious. *Performances*—pictures. *Keep one etc.*—live in a very luxurious manner hospitably entertaining guests with rich and sumptuous feasts. *Expensive table*—rich and sumptuous feasts and entertainments. *Pieces*—pictures. *Windsor*—Windsor Castle, the famous royal palace of the British sovereigns from the time of Henry III. It stands on the Thames only a few miles from London. *A gentleman of moderate wishes*—as opposed to a man of extravagant ambition, is one whose wishes do not go beyond reasonable limits: a man of reasonable ambition. *Perfectly easy*—quite comfortable. *A literary life of forty years*—Dryden's literary life commenced with the publication of his *Wild Gallant* in 1662 and ended with that of the *Fables* in 1700.

*Lewis Laguerre* (1663-1721)—a French painter who was employed in England by Verrio as his assistant. He painted halls, staircases or ceilings at Burleigh House, Blenheim, Chatsworth, Marlborough House and elsewhere and was employed by William III at Hampton Court" (*D. N. B.*). *Cibber* (1630-1700)—was born in Holstein. He learned sculpture at Rome and was brought to England by John Stone. The allegorical figures before Bethlehem Hospital were produced by him in 1680. He was the father of the well-known actor

and dramatist Colley Cibber. *Pathetic emblems etc.*—sorrowful figures representing Fury and Melancholy. These figures are appropriately placed before the Lunatic Asylum because mad men generally suffer from these passions. *Fury*—raving madness. *Bedlam*—a corruption of Bethlehem. It was originally a priory in Bishopsgate and was afterwards converted into a hospital for lunatics. The asylum was removed to St. George's Fields, Lambeth in 1815. *A Dane*—an inhabitant of Denmark. *Gibbons* (1648-1720)—a wood-carver and statuary. His talents were discovered by Evelyn who introduced him to Wren and the royal family. He executed statues of Charles II and his brother and decorated St. Paul's and some of the royal palaces with his carved works. *Delicate touch*—subtle carving; fine execution. *Palaces, colleges and churches*—Gibbons was employed to decorate Windsor, Whitehall, and the library of Trinity College, Cambridge; he carved stalls in St. Paul's and many of the new churches in London. *Decorations*—ornamentations. *Was a Dutchman*—Gibbons was born at Rotterdam.

*Designs*—decorative figures. *Medallists*—engravers or stampers of medals. *Could glory in*—could boast of. *A great painter*—As George II reigned from 1727 to 1760, the painter, referred to here, must be William Hogarth (1697-1764). His earliest pictures, known as conversation-pieces, were painted in 1728-29. Sir Joshua Reynolds was of course the greatest English painter of the 18th century but he was born only four years before George II's accession, though some of his famous portraits were produced during that King's reign. *George the Third was on the throne*—He became King in 1760. *Before she had reason etc.*—The reference is to John Flaxman (1755-1826), the first great English sculptor. He learnt this art in Italy where he studied for seven years and was the first professor of sculpture at the Royal Academy.

**Paragraph 140.** Very little can be said on the condition of the common people of those times because of the meagre information available on the subject. It would, however, be a great error to suppose that their condition was better than now.

*Time*—proper time. *Draw to a close*—come to an end. *The highest moment*—the greatest importance. *Untouched*—unnoticed.

*The great body of the people*—the labouring classes who form the majority of the inhabitants of every country. *Who held the ploughs*—i.e., peasants. *Who tended the oxen*—i.e., shepherds and cowherds. *Tended*—looked after. *Who toiled at the looms of Norwich*—i.e., weavers. Norwich was the great centre of woollen industry in those days. *Looms*—weaving machines; ଚିତ । *Squared the Portland stone*—i.e., bricklayers. *Squared*—shaped with four equal sides; i.e., reduced them to the form of bricks. *Portland stone*—a sort of sandstone found in the Isle of Portland in Dorsetshire. It is soft when quarried and becomes hard on exposure to the atmosphere and is extensively used for building purposes. *Saint Paul's*—The great Cathedral was mostly built of this material after the great fire. *Nor can very much be said*—It is not possible to give a detailed account of the condition of the labouring classes, because very little information is available on this point. *The most numerous class*—viz., the working classes who form, by far, the majority of the population. *Precisely*—exactly. *The most meagre information*—very poor or slender knowledge.

*Philanthropists*—(Greek *philos*, friend and *anthropos*, man) friends of man; hence benevolent persons; persons who try to do good to their fellow-men. The reference is here to charitable individuals or organisations who draw public attention to the sufferings of the poor in order that they may be redressed. *Demagogues*—(Greek *demos*, people, and *agogos*, leader) properly mob-leaders. popular leaders; hence unscrupulous politicians appealing to the cupidity or the prejudices of the masses. *Lucrative trade*—profitable occupation. *Expatriate*—dwell at large; speak or write copiously. N.B. The miseries of the common people attract the attention of classes of men, (1) those who are impelled by their natural kindliness of mind to remove or alleviate their sufferings; and (2) those who use and exploit popular grievances to serve their own selfish political ends. To the former, alleviation of human misery is a part of religion, to the latter it is a profitable business.

*Occupied with courts and camps*—busy in describing the doings of kings and queens and the fortunes of battles and wars. *Spare*—devote. *Garret*—the part of a house on the uppermost floor immediately under the roof; attic. *Mechanic*—artisan. Carlyle also echoes this complaint against historians

in the following passage: "From of old, it was too often to be reproachfully observed of him (Historian), that he dwelt with disproportionate fondness in Senate-houses, in Battle-fields, nay even in King's ante-chambers; forgetting, that far away from such scenes, the mighty tide of Thought and Action was still rolling on its wondrous course, in gloom and brightness"—*Essay on History*.

*History was too much.....mechanic—Expl.* In this sentence Macaulay gives expression to what he considers to be the great defect of the historians of former times. They recorded in their books only accounts of the lives and doings of kings and emperors or the results of battles and sieges. But they did not make the least mention in their books of the condition of the common people and the labouring classes—the peasants living in their rural cottages and the artisans living in their miserable town dwellings.

*The press*—the newspapers. *Declamation*—showy, passionate discourse. *Elapsed*—passed. The press now is full of loud and vehement complaints about the condition of the labouring classes—this is due to the awakening of what is called the social conscience. *It would be a great etc.*—We shall be much mistaken if we conclude from the increase in the volume of complaint that the condition of the working classes has become worse. The condition of the working classes is perhaps less miserable than before; but there has come about a keen awakening of the sense of their misery in all ranks of society.

**Paragraph 141.** Four-fifths of the common people were then employed in agriculture and means are available for calculating their wages.

*Criterion*—standard by which things are judged; principle for forming correct judgments. *State*—condition. *Wages*—pay or remuneration of labourers; মজুরী। *Four fifths of the common people etc.*—because English trade and industry were then in their infancy. *Agricultural industry*—labourers employed in agriculture: farm labourers. *For our purpose*—to serve our object in view.

**Paragraph 142.** According to Sir William Petty's calculations, four shillings a week represented fair agricultural wages.

*Sir William Petty*—See notes on paragraph 138. *Mere assertion*—bare statement (unsupported by facts or arguments). *Carries great weight*—is of great importance. *In the lowest state*—of the poorest condition. *Four shillings a week*—i.e., without food. *Fair*—just; equitable.

**Paragraph 143.** The correctness of Petty's statement is borne out by the decision of the Justices of Warwickshire.

*Calculation*—estimate. *Remote*—far. *Was not remote from truth*—was not incorrect. *Justices*—Justices of the Peace; magistrates. *Warwickshire*—a midland county in England mostly agricultural in character. *Quarter sessions*—a court held quarterly by the justices of the peace in counties for the trial of petty criminal cases. These courts were invested with extensive jurisdiction over miscellaneous matters like the settlement of the questions relating to the poor, the highways, etc. *Scale*—graduated measure. *The authorised sum*—the amount settled by the magistrates.

**Paragraph 144.** The wages differed in different parts of the kingdom. The Warwickshire wages represented the average. The wages in Devonshire were about five shillings a week.

*The earnings*—the wages. *The average*—the mean, i.e., neither too high nor too low. *Near the Scottish border*—i.e., further north. *Below it*—Macaulay has described in the earlier parts of this chapter that the northern parts of England were in a very backward condition in those times. *More favoured districts*—i.e., districts where the labourers enjoyed higher wages. *Tract*—pamphlet. *Understood his subject well*—had thoroughly mastered the question. *A few months later his work was reprinted*—It appears from the footnote that the first edition was published in 1685 and the second in 1686. *Exeter*—county town of Devonshire. *Parochial officers*—officers in charge of parishes.

**Paragraph 145.** The wages of the Suffolk labourers varied from five to six shillings.

*Bury St. Edmund's*—a municipal borough in West Suffolk. *Boarded*—provided with food.

**Paragraph 146.** The wages of the labourers in Essex varied from six to seven shillings in 1661. This seems to have been the highest rate of agricultural wages.

*Chelmsford*—county town of Essex. *Remuneration*—wages. *Necessaries of life*—things without which it is not possible to live. *viz.*, food and clothes. *Inmoderately*—extremely. *Wheat was at seventy shillings the quarter*—The price of a quarter of wheat was 70s. *Quarter*—a grain measure equal to eight bushels. *A famine price*—a high price that prevails during times of scarcity. The price of wheat was about 54s. a quarter in 1850; it has since then fallen off to about 30s. in recent years

**Paragraph 147.** These conclusions about the wages of agricultural labourers find support from the wages of soldiers in those days. In modern times the wages range much higher

*Are in perfect accordance with*—quite agree with; are in no way inconsistent with. *Which seems to deserve consideration*—which should be attended to. *In a country where etc.*—in England where the voluntary system of enlistment prevails and no man can be forced to enter the army. In many of the European countries, the compulsory system prevails and every able-bodied adult is required by law to serve as a soldier for a number of years. *The ranks of an army cannot be filled*—a sufficient number of recruits cannot be obtained for the army. *Rustic labour*—labourers employed on agricultural work.

*Beer money*—an allowance of one penny per day granted to a British soldier in addition to his pay for beer or spirit. *Private*—a common soldier. *The line*—the infantry of an army as distinguished from the guards or the volunteers. *Stipend*—allowance; wages. *Coupled with*—added to. *Pension*—half-pay that is granted to a soldier after the prescribed period of service. *Does not attract etc.*—An adequate number of English recruits cannot be obtained on these terms. *Deficiency*—defect; shortage. *Enlisting*—enrolling as soldiers. *Munster and Connaught*—two provinces in Ireland where the condition of the common people is much worse than in England. The English regiments contain a large number of Irish soldiers. *Recruits*—candidates for enlistment as soldiers. *At very short*

*notice*—within a very short time. *Corporal*—the lowest non-commissioned officer in an infantry regiment next below the sergeant. *Fill the ranks*—i.e., of the army. *Decidedly*—markedly. *The generality of the people*—i.e., the average. *State shocking to humanity*—scandalously miserable condition. *The average is much higher*—Bowley notices that the wages of agricultural labourers varied about the date of Macaulay's History (1850) from 7s. 6d. in Wiltshire to 11s. in Northumberland and that the average for England and Wales was 9s. 6d. *Prosperous*—rich. *Husbandmen*—men employed in agriculture.

**Paragraph 148.** The wages of woollen manufacturers were higher than of those engaged in agriculture. Yet their average remuneration did not exceed a shilling a day or six shillings a week.

*Remuneration*—wages. *Workmen employed in manufactures*—men working in factories and workshops; factory hands. *Tillers of the soil*—peasants; agricultural labourers. *Textures*—woven fabrics; cloths. *Maintain competition with*—vie with; command a hold of the market. *The produce of the Indian looms*—cloth manufactured in India. **N.B.** In the 17th and 18th centuries before steam was employed for the purpose of manufacture of cloth in England, Indian cotton cloth was imported in large quantities into England, because it was much cheaper than cloth produced in that country. The exportation of cloth from India was one of the main branches of the trade in which the East India Company was engaged in its earlier days. In view of the serious danger with which the English industry was threatened, a heavy duty (tax) was imposed on cloth imported from India into England. *Mechanic*—operative; workman. *Slaving*—working hard like a slave. *A piece of copper*—a single copper coin; এক পয়সা। It should be remembered that wages in this country were much less than now in

[Page 252, Footnote—*Thurloc*—(1616--1668) an English statesman and a prominent political figure of the period of the Commonwealth; he rose to be the Secretary of State during the Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell. He left behind him a vast correspondence which is the chief authority for the history of the Protectorate. *State Papers*—letters and documents on subjects referring to the administration of a country. *Memorandum*—in diplomacy is a brief summary of the arguments on a political question.]

those times and it was not quite impossible to engage a labourer for a copper a day. *Exacted*—demanded.

*Extant*—available ; still existing. *Manufacturer*—labourer : factory hand. (The word is now commonly used to mean one who engages others in manufacture). *Thought himself entitled*—thought that he could justly claim it as his due. *Forced*—compelled by competition or other causes. *Common people*—labouring classes : the mass. *Meeting for public discussion*—holding meetings for drawing the attention of the public to their grievances. *Haranguing*—making impressive speeches : declaiming on their grievances. *Petitioning Parliament*—applying to Parliament for the redress of their wrongs. In modern times the people resort to all these means for the redress of their wrongs or grievances. *Pleaded their cause*—argued in their favour : supported their case. *No newspaper etc.*—Now-a-days the labourers have got many organs (newspapers) of their own which devote themselves to their interests and the ventilation of their grievances. But in those times no such newspaper existed. *Rude rhyme*—rough unpolished poems ; doggerel verses. *Exultation*—joy. *Distress*—suffering ; misery. *Utterance*—expression. *It was in rude rhyme that their etc.*—They expressed their joy and sorrow, their love and anger in ballads or doggerel verses. *Ballads*—properly short narrative poems adapted for singing : here used in the sense of popular poems. *A great part of their history etc*—It is from these poems only that one can know their condition in the past. This is because the historians of the past ages did not think it worth their while to inquire into the condition of the common people or to record it in their books.

*Lays*—songs. *Popular lays*—i.e., ballads. *Chaunted*—sung. *Norwich and Leeds*—the centres of English woollen industry in those times. *May still be read*—Macaulay points out in the footnote that this ballad is preserved in the British Museum. *Original*—as opposed to a copy or imitation. *Broadside*—a piece of paper printed on one side only, the other being blank. *Original broadside*—i.e., the ballad as it was first published. *Vehement*—strong ; fierce. *Labour*—Abstract for concrete meaning 'labourers'. *Capital*—properly the money laid out in any trade or business ; here used to mean 'capitalists', i.e., the owners of the factories or the workshops. *It is the vehement and bitter cry of labour against capital*—**Expl.** Macaulay refers



here to a ballad of the age of Charles II that was sung in the streets of Norwich and Leeds. This ballad expresses the bitter discontent and passionate anger of the labourers against what they consider to be the injustice and unfairness of their employers. *Good old days*—the days of the past. *Artisan*—labourer ; mechanic. *Farmer*—The farmer is not a mere agricultural labourer, but either owns or holds the lease of the land which he cultivates. He is a man of comfortable circumstances. *Those times were past*—Those happy days were no more. *All*—the utmost. *At the loom*—i.e., in a weaving factory. *The poor*—i.e., the poor labourers. *Pittance*—poor wages ; beggarly allowance. *They were free etc.*—They were at liberty to leave their employment if they liked. The employer did not listen to the complaints of the poor labourer or hold out to them any hope of increasing their wages. He callously told the poor labourers that they might give up their work at the factory if they considered their wages too small.

*So miserable a recompense*—such a poor reward or wages. *Recompense*—reward ; allowance. *Producers of wealth*—workmen ; labourers. They are so called because their labour creates wealth. Food, clothes and other things that we require for our subsistence or comfort are the creations of manual labourers. *Toil*—labour. *Rising early and lying down late*—i.e., from early morning till late evening. *Master clothier*—Macaulay uses this word to mean the owner of the cloth factory or the capitalist who employs weavers under him for the manufacture of cloth. *Clothier*—means a man who sells cloth. *Idling*—doing nothing ; spending his time in no useful work. *Exertions*—labours. *Became rich by their exertions*—because the profits of the business were enjoyed by the capitalists. *For so miserable a recompense etc.*—This has been the eternal complaint of labour against capital. This cry, indistinct in the past, has become insistent and pronounced in modern times. The apparent injustice of this arrangement is the chief object of attack of the Socialistic thinkers of the present age. *If justice were done*—if he got the wages which he could fairly claim. *Staple manufacture*—chief or principal industry. The manufacture of woollen goods constituted the chief industry of England from the time of Edward III or even earlier. This was symbolized by the fact that a bag of wool formed the seat of

the Lord Chancellor in the House of Lords. This office is still designated as the Woolsack. *Fairly*—justly.

**Paragraph 149.** The cruel practice of employing children of tender years as factory labourers prevailed on a large scale in the 17th century. It is an old social evil but was not perceived to be such in those times.

*Noticed*—pointed out. *Setting to work*—employing. *Prematurely*—at a too early age. *The state*—the government of the country. *The legitimate protector of those etc.*—It is the duty of the government to look after the interests of those members of society who cannot protect themselves on account of their tender age or weakness. *Legitimate*—lawful; proper. *In our time*—Macaulay is evidently thinking of the Factory Acts passed from 1833 to 1847. In 1833 Lord Ashley in the face of strong opposition from interested quarters had a law passed limiting the hours of work for children under thirteen years from thirteen to eight hours a day. In 1844 Graham passed an Act prohibiting the employment of children under nine in cotton and silk mills. In 1847 Lord Ashley had another Act passed prohibiting the employment of women and children in all factories for more than ten hours a day. The arguments put forward for confining these restrictions to women and children were exactly the same that Macaulay mentions in this connection. These were that women and children could not take care of themselves as well as men. Humanitarian legislation to protect women and children workers is a feature of 19th century history. *Humanely*—from motives of humanity or kindness. *Interdicted*—prohibited; forbidden. *Prevailed in the seventeenth century*—The evils of the factory system, though

[Page 253, Footnote—*Barnstaple*—a municipal borough in Devonshire.

[Page 255, Footnote—*Precise*—exact. *Imprimatur*—license to print a book. In those times the English press was controlled by an officer, called Censor, without whose permission no book could be printed. *Roger Lestrangle*—See notes on paragraph 121. He was appointed Licensor of the press in 1663. *Workfolks*—workmen. *If they had their just pay*—If they were paid the wages to which they were justly entitled. *Murmur*—complain. *We bid them choose etc.*—i.e., we ask them to leave if they consider their wages too low. *Hey*—an exclamation of joy or exultation. *Hey for*—i.e., may it thrive and prosper. *Bravé*—excellently. *Toyl and moyl*—work hard and painfully. *We go when we will etc.*—We work according to our convenience and pleasure.]

they must have existed in the 17th century, were not so prominent as to attract public notice. They grew to scandalous proportions towards the end of the 18th century after the introduction of improved machinery and the application of steam-power for purposes of manufacture. Pauper children from London and other towns were then sent in waggon-loads to the cotton mills of Yorkshire and Lancashire where these unfortunate creatures were made to work for fifteen or sixteen hours a day in spite of their tender age. *To an extent—to a degree.* *The extent of the manufacturing system*—the volume of English manufactures of those times. English industries were in the 17th century a very small fraction of what they became when Macaulay wrote his History. *Incredible*—unbelievable. *Which when compared etc.*—Considering the small volume of English manufactures in those times, it is hard to believe that children should have been employed in such large numbers in factories in England.

*Chief seat*—principal centre. *Clothing trade*—textile industry; cloth manufacture. *Eminently benevolent*—of a very kind and philanthropic disposition. *That single city—viz., Norwich.* *Of very tender age*—very young. *Created wealth*—produced manufactured articles. *Subsistence*—maintenance. *Dissent from*—disagree with. *Our age has been fruitful of new social evils*—The present age has created vices and evil customs from which the society was free in the past. *With scarcely an exception*—almost all. *Discerns*—perceives; understands. *Remedies*—corrects; rectifies. *The more carefully we examine the history etc.*—Macaulay means to say that there are some men who are blind admirers of the past and unsparing critics of the present age. They hold that society in modern times suffers from various evil customs from which it was free in the past. A careful study of history proves the falsity of these views. It teaches us not that the evils did not exist in the past but that they were not felt to be evils. It is only in modern times that people recognise them to be evils and try to remove them from society.

*The truth is.....which remedies them—Expl.* Macaulay, while speaking of the cruel practice of employing child labour in the 17th century, refers to the awakening of a healthy feeling of opposition against such evils in the present age. Some evils of the industrial system (the factory system) are very

old. The employment of child labour, for example, is as old as the 17th century. The modern age, therefore, should not be condemned for all the evils of the industrial system. On the other hand, it is in the present age that there has been a sharp awakening of the social conscience, a keen sense of the evils of industrialism. It is also in recent times that the humanitarian movement has led to the passing of laws for the improvement of the condition of factory labourers.

**Paragraph 150.** Bricklayers, masons, carpenters, and other artisans received higher wages. It appears from the records, preserved in Greenwich Hospital, that during the last 120 years there has been an increase in the wages of labourers, employed in the different branches of the building trade.

*Inquiries*—researches; investigations. *Nearly the same conclusion—viz.*, that the wages of labourers have greatly increased, since the reign of Charles II. *Commissioners*—governors; managers. *Greenwich Hospital*—See notes on paragraph 35. *Kept a register*—preserved a record. *Valuable record*—document very useful to a historian. *Bricklayer*—one who builds with bricks. *Crown*—an old English coin of the value of five shillings. *Mason*—a builder in stone or brick. The mason enjoys a higher status and commands higher wages than the bricklayer. *Plumber*—properly one who works in lead; hence it means one who fits up lead pipes for the conveyance of water and gas or covers the roofs of buildings with sheets of lead.

**Paragraph 151.** In 1685, the wages of labourers, estimated in money, were not more than half of what they are now, but the price of most of the necessities of life was more than half of what they are at present. So the necessities of life were comparatively dear for the labourers. Meat, though cheaper, was beyond the means of most families of the working class. The price of wheat was what it is now. But the great majority of the nation lived on rye, barley and oats.

---

[Page 256, Footnote—*Firmin*—(1632—1697) an English merchant and philanthropist. He established a depot where corn and coal were sold to the poor at cost price and started in 1676 a workhouse for the employment of the poor in linen manufacture.]

*Estimated*—calculated. *Articles*—things. *Articles important to the working man*—things that the labourers required for their daily use or consumption. *Of which the price was not in 1685 etc.*—The wages being half but the prices of things being more than half, it follows that the labourers were in a worse condition in 1685 than at the time when Macaulay wrote. *Beer was undoubtedly etc.*—because it was not then subjected to any excise tax. *Was still so dear*—though comparatively cheaper yet it was beyond the means of many families. *Scarcely knew the taste of it—i.e.,* could not afford to buy and eat it. *In the cost of wheat etc.—i.e.,* the price of wheat has remained stationary. *Quarter*—of a ton, *i.e.,* eight bushels. *Fifty shillings*—Br. Bowley notes that the price of wheat has fallen from an average of 54 shillings in 1850 to about 30 shillings in recent years. *Work-house*—a house where paupers are made to work and are fed and clothed at public expense. *Such as is now given to the inmates of a workhouse—i.e.,* the coarsest bread now eaten. It is only the poorest and the most destitute that live in a work-house. So they get only coarse bread. *Trencher*—a wooden plate on which meat was served in former times. *Bread, therefore, such as is etc.*—The price of wheat being then the same as now, wheaten bread was within the reach of only very well-to-do people. Therefore men of comparatively decent positions in society had in those times to live on bread which was coarser than what is now supplied to paupers in workhouses. *The great majority of the nation*—the bulk of Englishmen. *Rye*—a grain resembling wheat but coarser and cheaper. *Oats*—a grain commonly used as food for horses; when ground into meal it is also used as human food. Macaulay pointed out in paragraph 42 that only very well-to-do men could consume wheat in England in 1685.

**Paragraph 152.** Imported and manufactured articles, like sugar, salt, coal, candles and articles of clothing and bedding, were then much dearer than now. Clothes and blankets were not merely dearer but were less serviceable.

*Tropical countries*—countries situated within the tropics; as these countries possess a hot climate, the expression is here used to mean 'hot countries.' *Produce of tropical countries*—articles grown in hot countries, *e.g.,* sugar. *Produce of the mines*—*e.g.,* coal. *The produce of machinery—e.g.,* woven fabrics or

textiles. *Positively*—absolutely; decidedly. *Commodities*—articles. *Posterity*—descendants. *Articles of bedding*—bed-clothes like blankets and coverlets. *Old coats*—coats worn in those times. *Blankets*—pieces of soft woollen cloth used for beds; rugs. *Costly*—dear. *Serviceable*—useful; durable. *Modern fabrics*—woven articles manufactured in modern times. *Less serviceable etc.*—because the art of weaving had not reached the present state of improvement.

**Paragraph 153.** A much larger proportion of the population than now had to depend on the parish for their subsistence. In modern times, this proportion ranges from one-thirteenth to one-tenth of the population. In the Restoration period, it was no less than one-fifth.

*Maintain themselves and their families by means of wages*—i.e., earn their livelihood by their work. *Necessitous*—needy; destitute. *Community*—society. *Subsist*—support or maintain themselves. *Without some aid from the parish*—without being helped out of the poor rates (or taxes) of the parish. A parish was originally the area under the jurisdiction of a bishop; in England it is now a sub-division of the county for the purposes of self-government. Each parish has to pay a special tax, called the poor rate, for the maintenance of the poor, living within it. "To go on the parish" is to receive parochial relief—(*Oxford Dictionary*).

*Test*—criterion; standard. *Ratio*—proportion. *There can hardly be etc.*—The proportion of the population of a country that depends on poor rates for their support, furnishes the best indication of the condition of its common people. *Relief*—help from the poor rates. *Official returns*—figures or statements obtained from the officers in charge of the administration of poor relief. *Bad years*—years in which trade has been dull and crops poor. *Good*—prosperous. *Gregory King*—See notes on paragraph 5. *Estimated*—calculated. *In his time*—i.e., in the 17th century. *His authority*—the esteem and the credit in which he is held. *Extravagant*—unreasonably high. *Which all our respect etc.*—Though we hold him in high esteem, yet this statement strikes us as being unreasonable. *Pronounced*—declared. *Davenant*—See notes on paragraph 5. *Eminently judicious*—quite just and rational.

**Paragraph 154.** Pauperism was not in those times a less serious evil than now. The poor rate amounted to one-sixth of the present amount. The population then being less than a third of what it is now and the allowance to paupers being only half of the present rate the proportion of people in receipt of poor relief must have exceeded the present proportion.

*We are not quite without etc.*—Materials are available from which we can calculate this proportion ourselves without taking for granted the statements made by others. *Poor rate*—tax imposed by law for the relief or support of the poor. *The poor rate was undoubtedly etc.*—The heaviest tax, imposed on Englishmen in the 17th century, was the poor rate. *Computed*—calculated; estimated. *Near*—nearly. *The produce of*—the revenue obtained from. *The excise or of the customs*—See notes on paragraph 12. *Risen*—grown. *One sixth of what it now is*—The total amount, spent in Poor Relief in England and Wales in 1849, was £ 5,790,000 according to Dr. Bowley. *Minimum*—lowest rate. *Allowance*—relief. *A pauper*—a poor person especially one who depends on the parish for support. *We can therefore hardly suppose etc.*—The allowance, given to a pauper, must be according to the income of the general population; as the wages of labourers were then only half of what they are at present, the allowance given to the poor must have been in the same proportion to the present rate.

*It seems to follow*—it may be inferred. *Parochial relief*—help from the parish. *It seems to follow that etc.*—Macaulay argues as follows. The total amount, spent on poor relief in the 17th century, was one-sixth of the present amount. The population of the country at that time was less than one-third of what it is now, and as the rate of allowance was only half the present rate, the proportion of paupers to the whole population must have been larger than now. *Diffidence*—want of confidence; doubt and hesitation. *It is good to speak on such questions with diffidence*—One cannot be sure of the correctness of one's opinion on such questions; a man must pronounce his opinions on such questions with doubt and hesitation. It is really refreshing to find Macaulay assuming such a tone of diffidence. It is usual with him to pronounce his opinions on the most difficult and complex questions with

an air of absolute certainty and omniscience. *Pauperism*—poverty (or destitution) especially of persons who require support from the community. *Was a less heavy burden*—pressed less heavily on the nation: was less oppressive. *Serious*—grievous. *Social evil*—source of misery (or unhappiness) from which the nation suffered.

**Paragraph. 155.** The reclamation of the country from its former wild condition, especially the enclosure of commons, has caused some minor disadvantages to the poor. The peasant can no longer obtain his fuel free in the waste lands or catch wild fowl in the marshes. These disadvantages have been more than compensated by the various blessings that have followed the advance of civilisation. Means of communication have been rendered quick, easy and safe; the advance of medical science has rendered better treatment possible in the case of accidents. A number of diseases has been extirpated; the term of human life has been lengthened and death-rate reduced.

*Progress of civilisation*—advance in knowledge and the arts. *Diminished*—reduced. *Physical comforts*—bodily enjoyments. *It has already been mentioned*—See paragraph 41. *Heath*—waste and uncultivated lands; “bare flat waste tract of land, esp. if covered with shrubs” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Wild*—uncultivated; desolate. *Was by law common*—belonged to the public; no individual could be said to have any legal right to the exclusive possession of this land. *Was worth so little*—was of such little use or profit. *Proprietors*—owners. *Suffered*—permitted. *In fact*—practically. *Much of what was not common etc.*—Though a large portion of such land belonged to some individuals, yet they derived so little profit from it that they allowed it to be freely used by the public. *Squatters*—See notes on paragraph 89.

---

[Page 261. Footnote—*Poor Law Commissioners*—body of men entrusted with the administration of the laws established for the maintenance of the poor. *Arthur Moore*—(died 1730); English economist and politician. *Sir Frederick Eden* (1766-1809)—a writer on the condition of the poor in England; his chief work, “*The State of the Poor; or an History of the Labouring Classes in England from the conquest to the present period*” was published in 1797. *De Foe*—(died 1731) an English journalist and a miscellaneous writer: he published over 250 works of which the best known is his *Robinson Crusoe*. *McCulloch* (1789-1864)—an English statistician and economist; published in 1832 *A Dictionary, Practical, Theoretical and Historical of Commerce*.]



*Trespassers*—persons who occupy and enter upon land that belongs to another. *Tolerated*—permitted. *Extent*—degree. *In such a tract etc.*—Persons who had no right to such lands were permitted to utilize them in a manner that is not tolerated now.

*Charge*—expense. *Procure occasionally*—obtain at times. *Hard fare*—coarse or scanty meal. *Palatable*—savoury ; tasteful. *Provide himself with fuel for winter*—obtain the turf and the peat for the fire with which he warmed himself in the cold of winter. *On what is now an orchard etc.*—on a tract of land which was then a marsh but which has since been drained and been converted into a garden full of apple trees. *Orchard*—fruit-garden. *Snared*—trapped ; caught in a trap. *Wild fowl*—birds like wild ducks. *Drained*—cleared of water. *Turf*—peaty substance cut from the surface of ground and used as fuel ; “surface earth filled with matted roots of grass etc.” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Furze*—a low shrub growing abundantly on heaths and in barren, sandy soils ; “spiny yellow-coloured evergreen shrub growing on European waste lands, gorse” (*Oxford Dictionary*). *Which is now a meadow*—which has now been turned into a pasture land. *Clover*—a plant of various species that is grown as fodder for cattle. *Renowned for butter and cheese*—famous for its dairy produce. because cattle are reared on such meadows rich with fodder crops. *Progress of agriculture*—growth of agriculture that led to the inclosure of land which formerly remained waste and uncultivated. *Increase of population*—This led to the growth of towns and villages on sites that were formerly waste tracts. *Necessarily*—naturally ; inevitably. *Privileges*—advantages. *But against this disadvantage etc.*—This solitary disadvantage is compensated by a large number of advantages. *Set off*—counterbalanced ; placed against as an equivalent. *Philosophy*—used here in the sense of ‘science’. *Bring with them*—give rise to. *Is common to all ranks*—is shared alike by all classes of men. *Withdrawn*—removed ; recalled. *Be missed as painfully by the labourer as by the peer*—The absence of these blessings would cause as much inconvenience to the poor workman as to the rich lord ; one such common blessing is the railway which has made travelling swift and cheap both for the rich and the poor. *Be missed*—have their absence keenly felt.

*Rustic*—peasant. *Cart*—carrying the produce of his land to the market. *A day's journey from him*—on account of the badness of the roads. *Artisan*—workman; labourer. *Secure*—safe. *Walk*—pathway. *So dark after sunset*—because the roads were not lighted at night. *To see his hand*—an expression commonly used to mean to see things very close to one. *Ill paved*—rough and uneven. *Breaking his neck*—on account of a violent fall. *Ill watched*—badly policed. A new and effective police force was introduced in London in 1829 by Sir Robert Peel. *Imminent*—derivatively means hanging over; hence about to fall or occur; impending; immediate. *Knocked down*—struck down. *Small earnings*—poor wages that he had earned. *Scaffold*—a temporary structure of timber and planks near a wall for supporting workmen and materials; ভরা। *Crossing*—a place where streets cross each other; চোঁকা। *Dressed*—treated with remedies and bandaged. *Set*—put in proper position; reduced from a fractured or dislocated condition. *With a skill*—due to the advance of the medical science. *Ormond*—one of the greatest English peers of the age raised to a dukedom by Charles II; see notes on paragraph 38. *Merchant prince*—merchant of great wealth. *Clayton*—See notes on paragraph 80.

*Frightful diseases*—like small-pox. *Extirpated*—rooted out; extinguished. *Science*—advance of medical science. Small-pox disappeared from England after the introduction of Jenner's system of vaccination. *Banished*—driven out or expelled from the country. *Police*—laws of sanitation enforced in towns. The rigid enforcement of the rules of sanitation has rendered the out-break of epidemics, like the plague, impossible in English towns. *Term*—length; span. *The term of human life etc.*—Englishmen of the modern age enjoy longer lives than their ancestors. *Accounted sickly*—considered unhealthy. *More than one in twenty-three etc.* i.e., the death-rate was over 43 in a thousand. *At present only one inhabitant etc.*—i.e., the death-rate is 25 in a thousand. Bowley notices that since Macaulay wrote, the death-rate in London has been reduced to 15 in a thousand. *Salubrity*—healthfulness. *London of the nineteenth century*—Modern London is one of the healthiest towns of the world in spite of the density of its population. *London in the cholera*—The reference is to the outbreak of an

epidemic of cholera in London shortly before Macaulay's book was written. The number of deaths was not very large after all, but the epidemic created a terrible panic.

**Paragraph 156.** English national character has been rendered softer and more humane by the advance of civilization. Englishmen of the 17th century were harsh and cruel in their ways and their cruelty was perceptible in all spheres of life. Englishmen of the present age are decidedly a more humane people. This change in the national character is most perceptible amongst the poorer classes.

*Still more important—i.e., more important than the material blessing enumerated above. Orders—ranks. The lower orders—the poorer classes. Derived—obtained. Mollifying—softening. Groundwork—basis: fundamental qualities. Has indeed been the same through many generations—has not undergone any change for centuries. In the sense—in the same way. Refined—polished. Accomplished—cultivated. The groundwork of that character has indeed etc.*—The basic qualities of the English national character have remained the same for centuries in the same way, as the fundamental traits of a man's character do not change when he grows from a rough, thoughtless boy into a man of polished and cultivated tastes and ways. The basic qualities of the English national character are, in the opinion of competent judges, repression of emotion, "a hard reserved taciturn resolute strain," and a stubborn doggedness of will.

*Reflect—think. The public mind of England—the English national character. Softened—grown mild and humane. Ripened—matured; advanced in power and wisdom; grown wiser with the advance of knowledge. Lighter literature—e.g., fiction and drama as distinguished from serious literature like philosophy or theology. Humane—kind and gentle. Work-shops—factories; houses where artisans carry on their work. Efficient—effective. Infinitely harsher—much more cruel. Well born and bred—born in good families and possessed of good education. Pedagogues—school-masters. Imparting—communicating. Decent station—respectable social position. Ashamed to beat—ashamed is always followed by of and never by to. Implacability—vindictiveness; relentlessness. Hostile factions—rival parties in politics, viz., Whigs and Tories. Scarcely conceive*

—hardly imagine. Rival political parties were bitterly hostile to each other to an extent almost unthinkable to us.

*Were disposed to murmur*—were inclined to complain; were dissatisfied. *Stafford* (1614-1680)—Viscount Stafford, a Catholic peer, was executed in 1680 on a false charge of desig-  
 nating to murder the King. He protested his innocence even on the scaffold. The attainder against him was reversed in 1824. *Without seeing his bowels etc.*—The reference is to the old savage practice of disembowelling prisoners proved guilty of serious crimes. They were ordered to be hanged, drawn and quartered. *Whigs were disposed.....before his face*—**Expl.** In this sentence Macaulay seeks to illustrate the savage party-spirit that inspired the Englishmen of the 17th century and the cruelty of their ways. When the innocent Catholic peer, Viscount Stafford, was executed on the false charge of treason, the Whigs were not satisfied. So savage and relentless was their party malice that they wanted that the man should have been disembowelled before he was beheaded. The reference is here to the old cruel practice of drawing or disembowelling a criminal, proved guilty of a serious crime. *Reviled*—vilified; abused. *Russell* (1659-83)—Lord William Russell was a prominent Whig and took a leading part in the movement for excluding the Duke of York from the throne. He was executed on the charge of being implicated in the Rye House Plot; See notes on paragraph 60. *His coach*—The coach in which he was carried to the place of execution. *Scaffold*—a platform for the execution of a criminal. *Lincoln's Inn Fields*—See paragraph 88. *As little mercy was shown etc.*—The common people were equally cruel in their treatment of offenders belonging to the lower classes. *Populace*—the common people; the mass. *Offender*—criminal. *Pillory*—a frame of wood, fixed to a post with movable boards, through which the head and hands of the offender were put by way of punishment. Persons guilty of certain offences were thus exposed to public view and generally to public insult. This form of punishment was abolished in 1837.

*Well*—fortunate. *Brickbats*—pieces or fragments of bricks. *Paving stones*—large stones used for paving roads. *It was well if he escaped etc.*—The common people, instead of feeling any pity for him, would pelt him with stones which threatened to kill

him. The punishment of the pillory actually resulted in death sometimes. *If he was tied to the cart's tail*—when a criminal was subjected to whipping; see notes on paragraph 100 for *cart's tail*. *Pressed*—thronged. *Imploring*—entreating; beseeching. *Hangman*—public executioner; his duty was to execute punishments from hanging to whipping. *To give it the fellow well*—to lash the offender soundly. Notice the idiomatic use of *it* in this expression. *Howl*—cry out in pain. ,

*Arranged parties of pleasure to Bridewell*—went to Bridewell in companies on pleasure trips. *Bridewell*—a house of correction for disorderly persons. The inmates of this house were subjected to solitary confinement and hard labour. It was so named because it was originally the old palace of St. Bride. Edward VI made it over to the City of London to be converted into a penal workhouse. This prison was demolished in 1864. *Beat*—pounded. *Hemp*—a plant widely cultivated in hot countries for the valuable fibre contained in its bark. This fibre is largely used for rope-making and in the manufacture of coarser fabrics like sail-cloth ; २१ ।

*Beat hemp there*—This was the hard labour imposed on the women convicts at Bridewell. *Whipped*—It should be remembered that till late in the 18th century, whipping was inflicted on women in public as well as privately. *Pressed to death*—a cruel form of judicial torture which consisted in placing heavy weights on a man till he was crushed to death. It was commonly called *peine forte et dure* i.e., strong and severe punishment. This form of torture was employed to compel men charged with serious crimes to plead “guilty” or “not guilty”. Felons, who knew their conviction to be certain, refused to plead either “guilty” or “not guilty” so that their property might not be confiscated in case of conviction

*To plead*—to confess the charge or to declare that he is not guilty. *A woman burned*—Burning of criminals, proved guilty of serious crimes, was practised till the end of the 18th century. *Coining*—manufacturing false coins. *Galled horse*—a horse with its back or shoulders sore on account of the friction of the saddle and harness. *Gall* is ‘chafe’ or sore produced by friction. *Overdriven*—over-worked. In fact, the humanitarian movement has advanced so remarkably among the English

people that they, more than all other people of the world, have devised elaborate measures for the prevention of cruelty to animals. Dean Inge in *England* takes pride upon the fact that the English have led the way in the alleviation of the miseries of dumb animals.\* In fact, as Macaulay says, Englishmen now feel more pity for a galled horse than their ancestors ever felt for a tortured criminal. *Boxing match*—prize-fight or pugilistic encounter. A contest, in which the boxers pound each other with fisticuffs, is a savage sight that is avoided by men of gentle and mild disposition. *Refined and humane spectacle*—graceful and gentle sight. In a boxing contest only heavy blows with the gloved fists are given. So the only injuries to the body are a black eye, a swollen chin etc. But in fencing fights blood is spilt and limbs are cut to pieces. So the former is a more humane sight than the latter. *Diversions*—amusements.

*Multitudes*—large numbers of men. *Gladiators*—(Lat. *gladius*, a sword) properly a swordsman; the gladiators of ancient Rome were combatants who fought in public for the entertainment of the people. The word is used here of professional swordsmen or fencing masters who offered open challenges to the public promising a reward to any man who was inclined to fight with them. Spectators were admitted to these contests on the payment of an entrance fee. *Hack*—cut; deal cutting blows; slash; mangle. *Deadly weapons*—viz., swords. *Hells on earth*—places of utter misery and wretchedness. *Seminaries*—nurseries; breeding-grounds. The condition of the English prisons was utterly wretched till their reform towards the end of the 18th century. This reform was effected mainly through the philanthropic efforts of John Howard (1726-1790). The prisons, reeked with disease and the prisoners, were treated with every form of cruelty. No discipline was enforced, the men were not separated from women and the grossest immorality prevailed in the prisons. Young men or women, who had to undergo imprisonment for a light offence, came out as confirmed criminals if they were not previously carried off by jail-fever.

*Assizes*—See notes on paragraph 100. *Lean and yellow culprits*—weak and diseased criminals. *Yellow*—pale and sallow because of the disease from which they suffered. *Culprits*—offenders; criminals. *Cells*—prisons. *Dock*—the

enclosed place in the court room where the accused stand during their trial. *Stench*—foul smell; this was due to the dirty and unclean condition of the prisons. *Pestilence*—a contagious and deadly disease.

**N.B.** The reference is to the dangerous sort of fever which formerly prevailed in jails and which, therefore, came to be named *jail-fever*. It was due to confinement and the insanitary conditions under which prisoners lived in jails.

*Signally*—remarkably; thoroughly. *Bench*—judges. *Bar*—lawyers. *Which sometimes avenged them etc.—i.e.*, the prisoners avenged themselves for their sufferings by spreading the contagion around them so that the judges, lawyers and jury-men caught the infection. *Profound indifference*—deep apathy; utter carelessness. *But on all this misery etc.*—but the nation did not care in the least for the wretched condition of the prisons or the misery of the prisoners.

*Nowhere could be found etc.—i.e.* no class of men or individuals felt etc. *Sensitive*—keen; readily responsive. *Restless compassion*—ever-active sympathy issuing out in concrete action; a feeling of deep sympathy for the distress or suffering of others that does not allow a man to enjoy any rest before he has redressed or alleviated it. The 19th century saw the birth of the humanitarian movement—a keen sense of human misery and an active sympathy expressed in concrete acts of amelioration. A wave of humanitarian feeling swept over English society. The result was the passing of laws to put an end to much undeserved human suffering. *Extended a powerful protection to the factory child*—The reference is to the factory laws of the 19th century which prohibited the employment of children in some industries and reduced their hours of work in others. See notes on paragraph 14!). *Protection*—in the shape of prohibitive laws. *The Hindoo widow*—The reference is to the suppression of *suttee*, i.e., the burning of Hindoo widows on the funeral pyres of their husbands. This cruel practice was abolished by a law passed during Lord Bentinck's administration in 1829. *The negro slave*—The reference is to the abolition of negro-slavery in the British colonies in 1833, at a cost of £20,000,000 to Great Britain. It may be pointed out in this connection that Zachary Macaulay, the historian's father, was a staunch advocate of

the abolition of slavery. *Pries into*—minutely examines. The law empowers agents of the government to examine the ships. *Stores*—provisions carried in the ship for the use of passengers and sailors. *Watercasks*—i.e. supply of water. *Emigrant ship*—ship carrying emigrants or passengers who leave England to settle in another country.

*Which pries into the stores etc.*—The reference is to the law that no emigrant ship must sail out of England before proving to the satisfaction of an officer appointed for the purpose that it contains an adequate supply of wholesome food and water for the use of the passengers during the voyage. The laws on the subject of emigration from British and Colonial ports are laid down in two Acts of Parliament, called the Passenger Acts of 1855 and 1863. According to these laws, it is the duty of the Board of Trade to supervise that emigrant ships are not over-crowded and that adequate arrangements are made for the provisioning, health and safety of the passengers in the transit. *Winces*—shrinks as from a blow or pain. *Lash*—stroke with a whip. *Which winces at every etc.*—The reference is to the reform of the English army in the 19th century which abolished flogging. *Drunken soldier*—Drunkenness on the part of a soldier was considered a breach of military discipline for which a soldier was used to be flogged. It is now punished with a small fine. *The hulks*—old or dismasted ships formerly used as prisons. *Repeatedly endeavoured*—attempted several times. *To save the life even of the murderer*—The reference is to the movement set on foot in modern times for the abolition of capital punishment.

*Nowhere could be found.....even of the murderer*—Expl. Macaulay contrasts the cruelty of Englishmen in the 17th century with the great increase in kindness and humanity among Englishmen in the 19th century. In the 17th century there was no keen sense of human misery nor any active sympathy for removing misery such as we notice in the 19th century. Humanitarian feeling has been so active in recent times that it has expressed itself in Acts of Parliament, designed to relieve and remove human suffering. Factory laws have been passed to improve the condition of child labour. Laws for the suppression of the cruel practice of *Suttee* in India have been passed. Negro-slavery has been



abolished by law. Emigration laws have been so amended that adequate arrangements for the food and drink of emigrants must be made on ships. Army regulations have abolished the flogging of drunken soldiers—a cruel practice shocking to our sense of humanity. The feeling of humanity has also prompted the introduction of measures intended to provide ordinary comfort even to criminals. There has been even a movement to abolish capital punishment. All these clearly indicate the growth of feelings of humanity and their concrete manifestation in acts for the removal of human suffering.

*Ought to be under the government of reason*—should follow rational lines; should not aim at unreasonable objects. *Government*—guidance. *Deplorable effects*—lamentable results. *Annals*—records; history. *Abhorred*—hated. *Pain*—viz., punishment for crimes. *Deserved*—well-merited. *Is inflicted reluctantly etc.*—Offenders are punished not because the judges find pleasure in causing them pain, but because they think it their duty to do so. *Gained largely*—benefited greatly. *Which has gained most*—whose character has been most softened.

**Paragraph 157.** In spite of the evidence given above, there are some persons who are inclined to think that the England of the Stuarts was a happier country than the England of the present age. Men naturally think highly of the past because they are discontented with the present. This discontent serves a useful purpose—it helps progress.

*The general effect of the evidence*—the impression made by the facts given above. *Submitted to the reader*—placed before the reader. *Seems hardly to admit of doubt*—is clear enough. There need be no doubt about the condition of the country that the above facts go to prove. *The England of the Stuarts*—the England of the 17th century. *The England in which we live*—the England of the 19th century. (Macaulay began his History in 1839, and brought out the first two volumes in 1848). *Moving forward with eager speed*—advancing rapidly. *Should be constantly*

---

[Page 266. Footnote—*Burnet* (1643-1715)—was the Bishop of Salisbury: he wrote a "*History of My own Time*." *Mungleton* (1609-98)—a staunch Puritan who declared himself to be the messenger of a new dispensation: was the author of a book named "*Transcendent Spiritual Treatise*." *Tom Brown* (1663-1704)—a satirist and miscellaneous writer.]

*looking backward with tender regret*—should always be thinking highly of the past and regret that the old state of things no longer exists. *Propensities*—natural tendencies, *viz.*, progressive movement and regret for the past. *Resolved into the same principle*—traced to the same cause. *Spring*—take their rise. *Impatience of*—dissatisfaction with. *Stimulates*—urges; spurs. *Surpass*—exceed; outstrip. *Disposes*—inclines. *Overrate*—over-estimate. *But in truth, there is constant improvement etc*—This discontent lies at the root of all improvement; it is because men are not satisfied with their condition that they try to better it—hence society is making continual progress. *Perfectly satisfied with the present*—quite contented with our existing condition. *Contrive*—invent. *Save with a view to the future*—lay by or hoard for future use. *To contrive, to labour etc.*—human progress depends on man's inventive power, his labour and the capital he creates out of his savings. *Form a too favourable estimate of the past*—think too highly of the happiness of the past ages.

**Paragraph 158.** This tendency of men to magnify the happiness of the past, though natural, is as illusory as the mirage, seen in the Arabian desert. Every age exaggerates the happiness of the past age. The England of the 19th century will appear to the eyes of the 20th as having been an age of happiness and virtue.

*Are under a deception*—labour under an illusion; have a false belief. *Misleads*—deceives. *That which misleads the traveller in the Arabian desert*—The reference is to the optical illusion called mirage (मरू-मरौचिका), often observed in desert regions. It is caused by the refraction of light passing through strata of air of different density due to unequal heating. Thus in deserts where the surface is perfectly level, a plain assumes the appearance of a lake reflecting the shadows of objects within and around it. *Caravan*—a company of travellers or merchants journeying together for greater security through deserts or regions, infested by robbers. *Bare*—bare of vegetation. *In advance*—in front. *In the rear*—behind. *Semblance*—appearance. *Pilgrims*—travellers. *A lake—i.e.*, the appearance of a lake. It has been pointed out in a previous note that the mirage often assumes the appearance of a lake. *Turn their eyes—i.e.*, backwards. *Illusion*—deception or false show. *Haunt*—possess.

*Opulence*—wealth. *A similar illusion seems to haunt etc.*—Nations suffer from a similar delusion as they slowly and gradually advance from an ignorant and backward condition to wealth and civilisation.

*If we resolutely chase the mirage backward*—if we carefully study the history of the past that seems so alluring and attractive from a distance. *Recede*—retire; retreat backwards. *Regions of fabulous antiquity*—period of ancient legends. *We shall find it recede before us etc.*—The happy age will be gradually moving backwards until it is lost in the dim period of the ancient legends. Macaulay means to say that in no age in the past, of which we have any accurate history, men can be said to have been happier than in the present. It is only in the dim legendary period of which no truthful history exists that men are believed to have been happier than now. *It is now the fashion etc.*—People now believe that the condition of England was very happy in the past. *Golden age*—properly an age of happiness and innocence that is believed to have existed at an early legendary age in the history of all races. *Were destitute of*—were deprived of; had to go without. *Would be intolerable*—would be felt to be extremely inconvenient or painful. *Footman*—a servant who attends the door and the table of his master. *Raise a riot*—cause a disturbance. *When farmers and shopkeepers etc.*—The inmates of a modern workhouse would consider the loaves, which the farmers and shop-keepers of a preceding age had for their breakfast, as being too coarse for them. *Pestilential*—unhealthy. *Pestilential lanes of our towns*—insanitary slums of the modern towns. *Guiana*—on the north-east coast of South America. The climate of this country is notoriously unhealthy and it is commonly known as the “Whiteman’s grave.”

*In our turn*—when our chance comes, i.e., in an after age. *Outstripped*—surpassed; excelled, viz., by our posterity. *Be envied*—for having lived in a happy age. *It may well be*—it is probable. *May think himself etc.*—may consider the weekly wages of fifteen shillings as being too low. Macaulay’s anticipation of the weekly wages of the peasants of the 20th century has proved correct. Dr. Bowley calculates the average wages of agricultural labourers of England and

Wales in 1906 at 14s. 7d. *The carpenter at Greenwich may receive ten shillings a day*—Macaulay has shewn in paragraph 150 that the daily wages of a carpenter ranged from half a crown to five and five pence in the 17th century. *Sanitary police*—administration and enforcement of the laws of health. *Medical discoveries*—advance of the medical science. *Reach*—means. *May be within the reach of*—will not be beyond the means of. *Diligent*—hard-working. *Thrifty*—frugal. *May be within the reach etc.*—Every hard-working labourer of frugal habits will have the means of enjoying these comforts.

*Mode*—fashion. *Increase of wealth*—viz., of the country. *Have benefited the few at the expense of the many*—The advance made by the country in wealth and science, has turned to the advantage of a few rich and powerful men who have used this advantage in exploiting the masses. *The many*—the common people; the masses. Here Macaulay gives expression to the usual complaint made by the spokesmen of the labouring classes of his age. This was that the scientific and mechanical inventions of the 19th century benefited only the few rich capitalists and that these capitalists employed their power in exploiting the poor labourers. *Merry England*—an expression that frequently occurs in old ballads and poems to describe the happy condition of England in the past ages. *Brotherly sympathy*—mutual love. *Grind the faces of*—oppress; treat harshly. The expression is a quotation from *Isaiah*, iii. 15—"What mean ye that ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor?" *Splendour*—wealth; magnificence. Macaulay here refers to the popular opinion that the gulf, which now separates the rich from the poor, did not exist in the happy past and that the different sections of society were then bound together by mutual love and goodwill. He gives expression to this common opinion about the ideal condition of the past in the following lines of his poem *Horatius* :—

Then none was for a party ;

Then all were for the state ;

Then the great man helped the poor,

And the poor man loved the great :

Then lands were fairly portioned ;  
    Then spoils were fairly sold ;  
The Romans were like brothers  
    In the brave days of old.

Now Roman is to Roman  
    More hateful than a foe,  
And the Tribunes beard the high  
    And the Fathers grind the low."

—Stanzas xxxii and xxxiii.

— — —

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

### Paragraphs 1—39

*Q. 1. What are the two main causes of the advance of civilisation in Macaulay's opinion? How have they influenced the history of England?*

*Ans.* The two main causes that have helped the advance of civilisation are (1) the growth of scientific knowledge and (2) the desire natural in man to improve his condition. These two powerful factors have carried societies onwards in spite of faulty government and natural calamities. It has often been found that societies have grown rich and prosperous though seriously misgoverned and exposed to dreadful visitations, like fire, flood and pestilence.

*The history of England bears out the truth of this view. It has been one of continual progress in spite of wars, persecutions, gross misgovernment and widespread havoc, caused by natural calamities. In Macaulay's opinion, the wealth of the country increased without any interruption during the preceding six hundred years. It was greater in the time of the Tudors than under the Plantagenets. It was greater under the Stuarts than under the Tudors. Notwithstanding the scandalous extravagance of Charles II's government, two costly and unsuccessful wars, public bankruptcy, the plague and the fire, the national wealth of England was greater at the end of Charles II's reign than at its commencement. This progress of civilisation in England having continued through many centuries became very rapid about the middle of the 18th century—and proceeded through the 19th with greater velocity.*

*Q. 2. How does Macaulay seek to explain the rapid progress made by England since the 17th century?*

*Ans.* The rapid advance of the country was due to two causes—one, physical and the other, moral.

The island position of the country saved her from the destructive wars that ravaged Europe from one end to the other.

The other cause lay in the English national character, *viz.*, an Englishman's natural love of order and respect for law. Political revolutions occurred in all other parts of Europe. But in England the government was never pulled down by violence. Public credit was held sacred and the administration of justice was pure. Thus England enjoyed an ample measure of civil and religious liberty even in the worst periods of her history. Under the fostering influence of peace and liberty, science greatly flourished. The discoveries of science, being applied to the arts of life, led to an unprecedented progress of the country.

*Q. 3. What does Macaulay say on the difference between the England of 1685 and the England of his times?*

*Ans. The England of 1685 was, in Macaulay's opinion, a country very different from the England of his day. The face of the country was altogether altered. The change was so great that but for a few striking features of the natural landscape of the country, like Snowdon and the Windermere and some of the old castles and cathedrals, it would be difficult for one to recognise the country. Thousands of square miles that were corn lands and meadows dotted with villages and pleasant country seats in the 19th century, had been fens and wildernesses in the 17th. The famous manufacturing towns and seaports of the 19th century England, had been in the 17th century, mean villages with a few straggling huts. London, the mighty capital of the 19th century, had been in the 17th century, no larger than its suburb on the south bank of the Thames. Equally striking changes had occurred in the dress, the manners and the ways of life of the inhabitants of the country.*

*Q. 4. What is Macaulay's estimate of the population of England in 1685 and how does he arrive at it?*

*Ans. Refer to A Full Analysis of the Text (Pages xlv-xlvi).*

*Q. 5. Was the increase of population since 1685 uniform over the whole country? State what you know of the condition of the northern counties of England in the 17th century and explain the causes that attracted population to them in subsequent times.*

*Ans. Refer to A Full Analysis of the Text (Paragraphs 9-10).*

Q. 6. *What does Macaulay say about the state of the English finances in the reign of Charles II?*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 11-15).

Q. 7. *Write a short note on the hearth-money; why was the tax so unpopular?*

Q. 8. *Give a brief account of the English militia in the reign of Charles II.*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 16-18).

Q. 9. *Reproduce the substance of Macaulay's remarks on the beginnings of the English standing army.*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 19-26).

Q. 10. *Describe the English navy of the time of Charles II.*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 27-33).

Q. 11. *Why was the navy universally popular with Englishmen?*

Ans. The navy was popular with Englishmen of all political parties because it protected the shores of England against foreign enemies. Also it could not be employed like the standing army in crushing the liberties of the English people. The last English standing army had fought in the Civil War and its victories were remembered by one class of Englishmen with pain and humiliation. But the victories of the navy had been won over foreign foes and were remembered by all Englishmen with unmixed pride and joy. The House of Commons never hesitated to vote liberal grants for the navy even in their most ungenerous moods.

Q. 12. *"But the liberality of the nation had been made fruitless by the vices of the government." In what connection does this remark occur?*

Ans. This remark occurs in connection with Macaulay's description of the wretched condition of the English navy



towards the close of Charles II's reign. Macaulay means to say that the miserable condition of the English fleet was not due in any way to want of supplies or the niggardliness of the nation. The wretched condition was due entirely to corruption and maladministration. In 1677 the Commons had voted £ 600,000 for building thirty new men-of-war but this liberality was to little purpose. The administration was extremely corrupt and inefficient. Pepys reported in 1684 that of the vessels recently built some were unfit to go to sea and others were so rotten that they would go down at their moorings unless speedily repaired.

Q. 13. *"There were gentlemen and there were seamen in the navy of Charles the Second. But the seamen were not gentlemen, and the gentlemen were not seamen."* Expand this remark.

Or,

*Describe the two classes of English naval officers of the time of Charles II.*

*Ans.* This pithy remark describes the two classes of English naval officers in the reign of Charles II. Some of these officers were young men belonging to noble families or licentious courtiers who had been placed in command of vessels by reason of their influence with the King and his mistresses. These men had never been on sea. They were quite ignorant of seamanship and navigation. They proved not only incompetent officers by reason of their ignorance but some of them were incapable of ever making good officers on account of their moral and intellectual defects. These men never cared to perform their duties either towards the nation or towards their subordinates—their only care being to make money by escorting bullion ships and spend it on their pleasures. They were 'the gentlemen captains'; but they were not seamen.

Mingled with these were to be found a number of officers of an entirely different character. These were skilful sailors who had by their merits raised themselves to rank and distinction from the humblest situations. They were popular with the crew. In great naval fights they upheld the honour of the flag. But though capable naval officers, these men

were without refinement and education. Their professional knowledge was more practical than scientific; and their language was made up of oaths and nautical phrases. Though possessed of good nature, their manners were rough and their deportment uncouth. They were fine seamen; but they had not the polished and refined manners of 'gentlemen'.

Indeed among the English naval officers of those times, the seamen were not 'gentlemen' and the 'gentlemen' were not seamen.

Q. 14 *State what you know of the English ordnance of the 17th century.*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text** (Paragraph 34)..

Q. 15. *What does Macaulay say on the remuneration of the public officers of Charles II's times?*

Ans. Refer to the Text.

Q. 16. *"Charles was, as usual, niggardly in the wrong place and munificent in the wrong place." Justify the truth of the remark.*

Ans. Charles II retrenched expenditure on the different branches of administration. But he bestowed wealth lavishly on his favourites and ministers and most on his mistresses.

Very few of the naval and military officers received pensions. The costs of the construction of the Chelsea Hospital were partly met by deductions from the pay of the sailors—the government contributing only a small fraction of the costs of its construction and upkeep. The expenses of the civil administration cost the government a comparatively small amount. The magistrates and other executive officers did their work without any remuneration. The higher judicial officers were supported by fees. The diplomatic service was managed in the most economical manner. The only English ambassador resided at Constantinople. He was partly paid by the Turkey Company. In the other European countries, England was represented only by envoys.

A more liberal expenditure on these departments of public administration would have borne useful fruit. Yet the most

rigorous economy was practised so far as these were concerned. But the money, thus saved, was not spent to any good purpose; it was spent on the lavish remuneration of the ministers and the King's favourites. Their salaries and pensions were nothing short of enormous when compared with the incomes of the peers and the professional men. The sums, thus lavishly spent on the officials, could be said to be simply wasted, because in spite of such liberal salaries they were given to gross corruption.

Q. 17. *How does Macaulay account for the violence with which the politicians of Charles's day struggled for power?*

Ans. High offices in the state were, in Charles's time, the surest roads to wealth. A statesman, who was at the head of any branch of administration, could, in a short time and without creating any scandal, accumulate wealth sufficient to support a dukedom. This was, in Macaulay's opinion, the true reason why the politicians of those days struggled for power with such violence and clung to their offices so tenaciously in spite of dangers and humiliations.

Q. 18. *Explain with context the following :—*

- (1) *While every part of the Continent...a trophy* (Paragraph 2).
- (2) *The capital itself would.....of the Thames* (Paragraph 2).
- (3) *Physical and moral.....region* (Paragraph 9).
- (4) *No traveller ventured.....making his will* (Paragraph 9).
- (5) *A farmer of taxes.....most rapacious* (Paragraph 12).
- (6) *Bastions and ravelins.....or Spinola.* (Paragraph 15).
- (7) *In our island.....and a calling* (Paragraph 15).
- (8) *Smaller proprietors.....a Synteleia* (Paragraph 16).
- (9) *The result of a contest...Marshals of France* (Paragraph 18).
- (10) *There was scarce.....Parliamentary soldiers* (Paragraph 18).
- (11) *A third could never.....their horses there.* (Paragraph 18).
- (12) *As there were then.....and the Strand.* (Paragraph 21).
- (13) *The common law.....Mutiny Bill* (Paragraph 25).
- (14) *By at least half the nation.....all parties* (Paragraph 27).
- (15) *But it existed only on paper* (Paragraph 28).

- (16) *The discipline of the navy was of a piece throughout* (Paragraph 31).  
 (17) *It was idle to expect...and Hampton Court* (Paragraph 31).  
 (18) *It was well if the loss of ship and crew were not the consequence* (Paragraph 31).  
 (19) *It was by such resolute...and perilous years* (Paragraph 32).  
 (20) *Such were the chiefs...Commodore Truncheon* (Paragraph 32).  
 (21) *The sumptuous palace.....boundless wealth* (Paragraph 39).

Q. 19. *Unfold the allusions in the following :—*

- (1) *During a hundred.....an insurrection* (Paragraph 2).  
 (2) *Such as even Richelieu, whom the preceding generation had regarded as a worker of prodigies* (Paragraph 15).  
 (3) *Men who had travelled...from the gates of Vienna* (Paragraph 18).  
 (4) *The costly, useless, and pestilential.....dwelt around it* (Paragraph 19).  
 (5) *That great and renowned army...Candahar* (Paragraph 20).  
 (6) *The first,.....deliverance of the Netherlands* (Paragraph 22).  
 (7) *In the great civilised nations...as by land* (Paragraph 29).  
 (8) *At Flodden the right...Admiral of France* (Paragraph 29).  
 (9) *Raleigh, highly.....Castile on the ocean* (Paragraph 29).  
 (10) *Great fleets had.....Rupert and Monk* (Paragraph 29).

Q. 20. *Write short notes on the following :—*

*The Plantagenets ; Long Parliament ; civil and religious freedom ; Snowdon ; Windermere ; Norman minster ; Wars of the Roses ; Lancaster herald ; political arithmetician ; parochial registers ; mosstroopers ; direct imposts ; domiciliary visits ; the first fruits and the tenths which had not yet been surrendered to the church ; privy purse ; Fifth Monarchy men ; grenadier dragoons ; household cavalry ; Montecuculi ; regiments of the line ; courts of Westminster*

*Hall ; trainbands of the City ; Mutiny Bill ; Saltee rover : foremast man ; gala at Versailles ; Castilian harquebusses ; Greenwich Hospital : Chelsea Hospital : head boroughs ; petty constables ; Turkey Company ; the Treasury was in commission ; Groom of the stole : Lords of the Bedchamber ; the noblemen who held the white staff and the great seal : Lord Lieutenant of Ireland.*

### Paragraphs 40—60

Q. 1. *State what you know of the condition of agriculture in England in the 17th century.*

Ans. England had not become a great manufacturing country in the 17th century. *Agriculture constituted then the main industry of the country ; yet it was in a rude and imperfect condition. The arable and pasture lands did not then amount to half the area of the kingdom—the remainder consisting of forest, fen and moor. It appears from the books and maps of the 17th century that the roads which now pass through an endless succession of cornfields, orchards and pasture lands then ran through interminable heaths and swamps. Wild birds and beasts that have since become rare or extinct then abounded all over the country.*

The Statute Book furnishes, in Macaulay's opinion, a convincing proof of the progress of agriculture in the country since the 17th century. He says that more than 400 Enclosure Acts were passed since George II came to the throne. He thinks it quite probable that a quarter of the country must have been reclaimed from wilderness into gardens from the 17th century till his time.

Not only was *the land under cultivation limited in area but even the system of agriculture was not skilful.* The average crop of wheat, rye and other grains in Macaulay's days exceeded thirty million quarters ; but it amounted to only ten million quarters towards the end of the 17th century. The wheat crop alone which in Macaulay's days amounted to at least twelve million quarters was not more than two million in the 17th century.

*The principle of rotation of crops was not thoroughly understood. Though some new vegetables, like the turnip, had been introduced, still it had not yet become the practice to grow them for feeding cattle in winter. Accordingly cattle were slaughtered in large numbers at the beginning of cold weather; and people had to depend entirely on salted meat during winter.*

The sheep and the ox were of much smaller size than now. The English horses were held in poor esteem and fetched very low prices. Their average value did not amount to more than fifty shillings each. The need of improving the English breed was keenly felt. A number of barbs were imported for the purpose. But the breed of the modern English dray or race horse had not yet come into existence.

Q. 2 *Estimate after Macaulay the mineral resources of England in the 17th century.*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 45-47).

Q. 3. *Sketch the character of the English country gentlemen of the 17th century and compare them with their descendants of the modern times.*

Ans. Refer to **A Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 50-52).

Q. 4. *Give a brief account of the political and religious views of the country gentlemen of Charles II's time*

Ans. *The ignorant and untravelled country gentlemen of Charles's time were staunch Tories in politics. Though they were firm supporters of the principle of hereditary monarchy, yet they bitterly hated the King's ministers and the corruption that prevailed in the court. They grumbled against the King because he squandered the revenues of the country on worthless favourites. Their hearts were filled with resentment because the King meekly submitted to French dictation. But though they bitterly complained of the King's ways, yet they rallied round him when the throne was really in danger. It was when the pampered favourites deserted the King that the discontented country gentlemen ranged themselves on his side and enabled him to gain a crushing victory over the opposition.*

*In religion, they were staunch supporters of the Church of England. Their loyalty to this institution was even greater than their love of hereditary monarchy. They bore a bitter hatred against Papists, Dissenters and everybody, who did not profess their form of faith. Their love of this Church was simply a matter of tradition and habit. It was not based on deep study or meditation. Nor could they be said as a class to strictly follow the code of morality that Christianity enjoins on all sects. But for all this they were ready to fight to death for 'the sake of this church and to relentlessly persecute men who differed from its principles.*

*Q. 5 Summarise Macaulay's reflections on the social position and character of the rural clergy of the 17th century.*

*Ans. Refer to A Full Analysis of the Text*

*(Paragraphs 57—59).*

*Q. 6. Estimate the influence of the Reformation on the social position of the clergyman.*

*Ans. Refer to A Full Analysis of the Text*

*(Paragraph 55).*

*Q. 7. State what you know of the English clergymen of the universities and the capital in the 17th century. Name a few of them.*

*Ans. The priests of the Anglican Church, who officiated at the Universities or in the capital, belonged to a class greatly superior to the rural clergy in culture and social position. They were men of great talents and learning: and were to be found only where the means of acquiring knowledge were available and the opportunities of vigorous intellectual exercise existed. They were men, gifted with great eloquence. They possessed a thorough knowledge of literature and science to be able to defend their Church against the criticism of heretics and unbelievers. Some of them were distinguished theologians, some profound Biblical critics, some talented logicians. Some again had cultivated rhetoric so thoroughly that their discourses are still admired as models of style. Of the twelve distinguished clergymen who adorned the principal pulpits of London in Charles II's reign, ten rose to be Bishops and four Archbishops.*

Amongst others, the following may be named as some of the distinguished clergymen of the age—

Cudworth and Henry More at Cambridge, South and Pococke at Oxford, and Sherlock, Tillotson, Jeremy Collier, Burnet, Stillingfleet Sprat, in London

*Q. 8. Distinguish between the two classes of English clergymen of the time of Charles II. Estimate the political influence of the rural clergy.*

*Ans.* The priests of the Anglican Church of the time of Charles II could be divided into two classes, widely differing from each other in their culture, ways and social positions. These two classes were (1) the city clergy, and (2) the rural clergy.

(1) *The city clergy*: They included men of talents and wide study; they could defend the principles of their religion against the attacks of sceptics and champions of Catholicism. Some of them were gifted with such political sagacity that the greatest statesmen of the day, like Halifax, loved to discuss with them momentous political questions. Others were such excellent masters of style as to have taught Dryden how to write. These men favoured the constitutional principles of government. They lived on friendly terms with the Dissenters. They were prepared to grant toleration to all Protestant sects and even to allow alterations in the Liturgy to satisfy the conscientious scruples of honest Nonconformists.

(2) *The country clergy (rural clergy)*: The rural clergy, on the other hand, were scattered over the whole country. They looked after the spiritual needs of the rural population. In wealth and culture, they were not much above the small farmers and the upper class of domestic servants. They had no hope of rising to the higher honours of the church, yet the professional spirit was very strong in them. *They were men of very narrow views on religion and government. In politics they believed in the absurd theory of the divine right of kings and the duty of passive obedience. In religion they were opposed to all measures of toleration towards the Dissenters. They were fierce Tories and exercised all the influence they possessed on the Tory side.*



These men were poor and ignorant and occupied a low social position. Yet they exercised a very powerful influence on the politics of the country. Their influence in this direction may well be judged by that of the Catholic priests in the backward parts of Ireland. This was because the pulpit of the 17th century served the purpose of the periodical press and the newspapers of modern times. They greatly influenced the rural population by their harangues from the pulpits. The Tory reaction that followed the dissolution of the Oxford Parliament was to a large extent due to the influence of the rural clergy.

Q. 9. Give a brief account of the domestic chaplains of the 17th century.

Ans. Refer to the Text.

Q. 10. Who were the yeomen? What does Macaulay say about their character and their religious and political views?

Ans. The yeomen were petty proprietors of land. They owned the lands which they cultivated with their own hands. They enjoyed a modest competence with incomes of from £ 60 to £ 70 a year and occupied a position in society below the ranks of gentlemen.

In the time of Charles II there were about one hundred and sixty thousand of such petty landed proprietors in England. Thus the yeomen with their families constituted more than one-seventh of the total population of the country.

The yeomen were a brave and true-hearted race. They counteracted to some extent the Tory influence of the country gentlemen and the rural clergy. They had, from the time of the Reformation, leaned towards *Puritanism in religion*. They had taken the side of Parliament during the Civil War. After the Restoration they continued to attend the Presbyterian and Independent chapels. In politics they were *staunch Whigs* and were the bitter opponents of Popery and arbitrary royal power.

Q. 11. Explain with context the following:—

- (1) *The fox, whose life.....a mere nuisance* (Paragraph 40).
- (2) *This illustration would.....of our time* (Paragraph 40).

- (3) *At a much later period.....sands of Arabia* (Paragraph 44).
- (4) *They would not readily.....from Barbary* (Paragraph 44).
- (5) *In 1685 the tin.....of the island* (Paragraph 45).
- (6) *In the parks and.....alluring form* (Paragraph 50).
- (7) *He troubled himself.....but deformity* (Paragraph 50).
- (8) *The coarse jollity.....under the table* (Paragraph 50).
- (9) *He adhered to them.....fed with flattery* (Paragraph 51).
- (10) *They stitched and spun.....venison pasty* (Paragraph 51).
- (11) *His family pride...a Talbot or a Howard* (Paragraph 52).
- (12) *He knew the genealogies.....aldermen* (Paragraph 52).
- (13) *Whitehall was filled.....mankind* (Paragraph 53).
- (14) *It was precisely when.....in a body* (Paragraph 53).
- (15) *But the experience.....habitually disobey* (Paragraph 53).
- (16) *The main support.....than at present* (Paragraph 54).
- (17) *Down the middle .....the priesthood* (Paragraph 55).
- (18) *The princely splendour.....were no more* (Paragraph 55).
- (19) *The spiritual character.....disqualification* (Paragraph 55).
- (20) *The state kept by Parker.....Wolsey* (Paragraph 55).
- (21) *The coarse and ignorant.....with economy* (Paragraph 55).
- (22) *He might fill himself.....been excluded* (Paragraph 55).
- (23) *He often found it...generation of scoffers* (Paragraph 56).
- (24) *Even so late as the time.....the steward* (Paragraph 56).
- (25) *Nor did his utmost.....in execution* (Paragraph 57).
- (26) *It was a white day.....meat and ale* (Paragraph 57).
- (27) *Even a keen and strong.....a situation* (Paragraph 57).
- (28) *Prideaux was in the close.....of Salisbury* (Paragraph 58).
- (29) *Men able to encounter Hobbes...controversy* (Paragraph 58).
- (30) *Men with whom Halifax...learned to write* (Paragraph 58).
- (31) *He was indeed .....scarlet hoods* (Paragraph 59).
- (32) *Having long been engaged.....sharper edge* (Paragraph 59).
- (33) *A Cardinal.....Saint Francis* , (Paragraph 59).
- (34) *In the 17th century the pulpit.....now is* (Paragraph 59).

Q. 12. *Unfold the allusions in the following :—*

- (1) *A third had defended.....with a petard* (Paragraph 52).
- (2) *Being himself generally...their best friends,* (Paragraph 53).
- (3) *There was no longer.....powerful Earl* (Paragraph 55).
- (4) *His palaces which.....Hampton Court* (Paragraph 55).

Q. 13. *Write short notes on the following :—*

*Oliver Saint John ; Salisbury Plain ; rotation of crops ; North-umberland Household Book ; Martinmas beef ; a passion for the amusements of the turf ; scorbutic and pulmonary complaints ; chairmen of quarter sessions ; Commissions of Peace and Lieutenancy ; Mittimus ; their old stories of Goring and Lunsford ; Nell Gwynn ; Madam Carwell ; Master of the Rolls ; near kinsmen of the throne ; Scroops ; Nevilles ; Bourchiers ; Staffords and Poles ; he was in orders ; William Cecil ; Nicholas Bacon ; Roger Ascham ; Thomas Smith ; Walter Mildmay ; Francis Walsingham ; a young Levite ; the most patient of butts and listeners ; Cassock ; glebe ; advowson of his living ; biblical criticism ; tithe sheaves and tithe pigs ; indefeasible hereditary right ; College of Cardinals ; Lord's anointed ; Exclusionists ; Rye House Plot ; proscription of the Whig leaders.*

### Paragraphs 61—75

Q. 1. *What does Macaulay say of the comparative position of the provincial towns of the 17th century and of his own times ? What does he say about their importance ? What was the relative position of London with reference to other towns ?*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**.

Q. 2. *Reproduce the substance of Macaulay's description of Bristol and Norwich.*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 63-64).

Q. 3. *Give a brief account of the growth and development of the great English manufacturing towns from the 17th to the 19th century.*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 68-72).

*Q. 4. Compare the Liverpool of the 19th century with that of the time of Charles II.*

*Ans.* In the reign of Charles II Liverpool was known to be a rising town that maintained a profitable intercourse with Ireland and with the sugar colonies. The customs had greatly increased during sixteen years and amounted to fifteen thousand pounds annually, then believed to be an enormous sum. The population hardly exceeded four thousand and the shipping was about fourteen hundred tons. The number of sailors belonging to the port did not exceed two hundred.

In the 19th century Liverpool contained about three hundred thousands and the shipping registered at the port amounted to between four and five hundred thousand tons. The customs annually paid in the port amounted to more than thrice the revenues of England in 1685. The receipts of the Post Office in the town in the 19th century exceeded the postage of the whole kingdom in the reign of Charles II. The endless docks and quays of the town were unequal to the volume of business in the port in the last century and a rival city was fast growing on the opposite shore.

*Q. 5. Describe briefly the condition of the English watering places and health resorts in the 17th century.*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 73-75).

*Q. 6. Explain with context the following :—*

- (1) Castles which had in the old time repelled the Nevilles  
or De Veres.....Cromwell (Paragraph 65)
- (2) In the language.....Severn (Paragraph 66)
- (3) Whitney had not.....seem magical (Paragraph 68)
- (4) They had indeed.....Canterbury Tales (Paragraph 70)
- (5) In allusion to their.....Birminghams (Paragraph 71)
- (6) Of Birmingham guns nobody had yet heard (Paragraph 71)
- (7) This supply of literature.....to the demand (Paragraph 71)
- (8) The springs of that.....the Romans (Paragraph 75)
- (9) That beautiful city.....begun to exist (Paragraph 75)
- (10) Readers who take.....ancestors looked (Paragraph 75)

Q. 7. *Explain the allusions in the following :—*

- (1) *A fine collection of gems.....of Oxford* (Paragraph 64).
- (2) *Gloucester renowned...to Charles the First* (Paragraph 66).

Q. 8. *Write short notes on the following :—*

*Antilles ; Transatlantic possession of the crown ;, Sir Thomas Browne ; Fellows of the Royal Society ; Italian masters ; Twelfth Night ; opened the King's commission twice a year ; queen of the cider land ; court of the marches of Wales ; Hallamshire ; court leet ; magnificent editions of Baskerville ; Indiaman ; morris dances ; Saint Charles the Martyr ; rag shops and pot houses of Ratcliffe Highway ; Small beer.*

### Paragraphs 76—99

Q. 1. *Compare the population and trade of London of the 17th century with those of the 19th.*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**.

(Paragraph 76)

Q. 2. *Give an account of the City of London in 1685.*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 78—83).

Q. 3. *What does Macaulay say about the political influence of the City of London in the 17th century ?*

**Ans.** The City of London was then the most powerful in the kingdom. From 1640 to 1685, it exercised a paramount influence on the politics of the country. *The influence of the City of London on English politics in the 17th century was almost as great as the influence of Paris on the politics of France in the 19th century.* The City excelled all other parts of the kingdom not merely in intelligence but possessed such pecuniary and military resources that no government could afford to ignore. A government, enjoying the confidence of the City, could, in the course of a single day, receive such financial assistance that it would have been unable to raise in a month from the

rest of the country. The military resources of the City were also not to be despised. The power, exercised by Lord Lieutenants in other parts of the country, was, in London, entrusted to a body of eminent citizens. They had, under their orders, twelve regiments of foot and two of horse. Thus a town which had under its command a body of trainbands twenty thousand strong could not but be regarded as very powerful in a country that possessed few regular troops. *It is a matter of common knowledge that but for the hostility of the City, Charles I could not have been defeated. Also the restoration of Charles II would not have been possible without the help of the City.*

It was for this reason that some of the powerful statesmen of the day preferred to dwell in the City when engaged in bitter opposition to the court. Shaftesbury lived in Aldersgate Street and Buckingham at Dowgate.

Q. 4. *Give some account of the fashionable quarters of London in the 17th century.*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 84—91).

Q. 5. *Sketch Macaulay's description of the streets of London of the 17th century.*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 90—93).

Q. 6. *What was the Whitefriars and what do you know of its condition in the 17th century?*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraph 94).

Q. 7. *Sketch the description of the court of the English Kings in the 17th century and indicate the change that it underwent in subsequent times.*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 95—97).

Q. 8. *State what you know of the London coffee houses of the 17th century.*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 98—100).

Q. 9. *Explain with context the following :—*

- (1) *The town did not.....Kent and Surrey* (Paragraph 77).
- (2) *Islington was almost.....monster London* (Paragraph 77).
- (3) *In 1685, a single.....navigation of the river* (Paragraph 77).
- (4) *The noblest of Protestant temples...of St. Paul* (Paragraph 78).
- (5) *The City is no longer.....for his home* (Paragraph 79).
- (6) *Lombard Street.....and to expend* (Paragraph 79).
- (7) *London was to the Londoner...fifteenth century* (Paragraph 79).
- (8) *That City being then...politics of France* (Paragraph 82).
- (9) *A Lincoln's Inn mumper was a proverb* (Paragraph 88).
- (10) *At another time.....and balls* (Paragraph 89).
- (11) *The mild and timid.....took it* (Paragraph 90).
- (12) *If he was a merc.....Montague House* (Paragraph 90).
- (13) *The walk.....common people* (Paragraph 91).
- (14) *The Muns and Tityre Tus...name of Moharrak* (Paragraph 92).
- (15) *Those who now see.....one night in three* (Paragraph 93).
- (16) *In spite of these.....left undefended* (Paragraph 93).
- (17) *There were fools in those...alphabetical writing* (Paragraph 93).
- (18) *Such relics of the barbarism...Isaac Newton* (Paragraph 94).
- (19) *The Revolution.....classes of society* (Paragraph 95).
- (20) *It was by degrees.....by his advisers* (Paragraph 95).
- (21) *Every ambitious.....of his prince* (Paragraph 95).
- (22) *This proved a far.....had practised* (Paragraph 98).
- (23) *Yet every rank...own headquarters* (Paragraph 99).
- (24) *The conversation was.....mirth of theatres* (Paragraph 99).
- (25) *Tobacco in any other.....abomination* (Paragraph 99).
- (26) *That celebrated house...hooted from the stage* (Paragraph 99).
- (27) *There were Puritan...through their noses* (Paragraph 99).
- (28) *Popish coffee houses.....shoot the king* (Paragraph 99).

Q. 13. *Explain the allusions in the following :—*

- (1) *The old charter had.....remodelled* (Paragraph 81)
- (2) *It was not forgotten that.....signal part* (Paragraph 82).

- (3) *La Hogue and Blenheim* (Paragraph 93).  
 (4) *About his flight.....of Scotland* (Paragraph 96).  
 (5) *Whether John Sobiesky.....really at Paris* (Paragraph 97).  
 (6) *Was the Duke of York.....Scotland?* (Paragraph 97).

Q. 14. Write short notes on the following :—

*Forest of masts and yard arms which covered the river from the Bridge to the Tower : immense line of warehouses and artificial lakes which now spreads from the Tower to Blackwell ; not inferior in magnificence and solidity to the noblest works of the Cæsars : guests of rank and fashion form beyond Temple Bar ; halls of the great companies : Dunkirk House : Royal Oaks ; Michaelmas to Lady Day ; boasted inventions of Archimedes : Carmelite Friars ; coronets and garters ; tellerships of the Exchequer : acquiring the dominion of a Cornish borough : austere republican of the school of Marvel ; Cavalier : Turkey merchant : fourth Estate of the realm : Will's ; poetical justice : unities of place and time . Earls in stars and garters ; Garraway's : election and reprobation.*

### Paragraphs 100—114

Q. 1. What does Macaulay say about the difference that separated the Londoners from the rustic Englishmen of the 17th century? How does he account for this difference?

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text** . . .  
 (Paragraphs 100-101).

Q. 2. What was the chief means of communication in England in the 17th century?

Ans. In the 17th century highways constituted the only means of communication in England. It was only by these that travellers and goods could pass from place to place. The principle of steam-engine, that has introduced a revolution in the means of locomotion, was not quite unknown in Charles II's reign. The Marquess of Worcester had observed the expansive



power of steam and constructed a rude sort of engine. But he was known to be a Papist. So no importance was attached to his invention. The only railways that existed in those times were of timber and extended from the mouths of the Northumbrian coal pits to the banks of the Tyne. There was then very little of inland communication by water. Not a single navigable canal was in existence.

*Q. 3. Briefly describe the highways of England in the time of Charles II. What explanation does Macaulay offer of their miserable condition and by what means were they improved?*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 103-104).

*Q. 4. What do you know of the means for the inland transport of goods and of the conveyances by which men travelled during the reign of Charles II?*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 105-107).

*Q. 5. Describe the stage-coaches of the time of Charles II. What objections were raised against the introduction of flying coaches?*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 108-110).

*Q. 6. State what you know of the highwaymen of the 17th century.*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 111-112).

*Q. 7. Sketch Macaulay's description of the English inns of the time of Charles II. How does he account for the fact that the improvement of these inns has not kept pace with the progress of the country in other directions?*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 113-114).

*Q. 8. Explain with context the following :—*

- (1) *A cockney in a rural...of Hottentots* (Paragraph 100).
- (2) *Money droppers sore...had ever seen* (Paragraph 100).

- (3) *Of all inventions.....our species* (Paragraph 101).
- (4) *Thoresby who was...Desert of Sahara* (Paragraph 103).
- (5) *For unjust and absurd...which is new* (Paragraph 104).
- (6) *We attribute...disagreeable necessity* (Paragraph 107).
- (7) *And as usual.....it was an innovation* (Paragraph 109).
- (8) *That the Thames...down to Gravesend* (Paragraph 109).
- (9) *Lay in state with...and mutes* (Paragraph 112).
- (10) *In these anecdotes...mixture of fable* (Paragraph 112).
- (11) *Our first great poet...in Southwark* (Paragraph 113).
- (12) *Never was an.....in his inn* (Paragraph 113).
- (13) *Johnson declared...found at an inn* (Paragraph 113).

Q. 9. Explain the allusions in the following :—

- (1) *The immense trench...Mediterranean* (Paragraph 102).
- (2) *Vanbrugh in.....up to London* (Paragraph 107).
- (3) *Were often compelled...and Falstaff* (Paragraph 111).
- (4) *Services much resembling...to Gibbet* (Paragraph 111).
- (5) *The traveller...Walton has described* (Paragraph 113).

Q. 10. Write short notes on—

*The Marquess of Worcester ; the great North Road ; break the way ; Prince George of Denmark ; Sea coal.*

### Paragraphs 115—139

Q. 1. Describe the postal system of the time of Charles II.

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 115-118).

Q. 2. What do you know of the condition of newspapers at the end of Charles II's reign? Give a brief account of the newsletters of the age.

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**  
(Paragraphs 119-121).

*Q. 3. What does Macaulay say on the condition of female education in the reign of Charles II? How does he account for the ignorance of women in that age?*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 123-124).

*Q. 4. Give an account of the literary attainments of gentlemen in the reign of Charles II.*

*Ans.* Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 125-127).

*Q. 5. Reproduce the substance of Macaulay's remarks on the literature and culture of France in the 17th century. Trace the influence of the former on the English literature of the Restoration age.*

*Ans.* France was at the height of her glory in the Restoration age. She was not merely the leading military power in Europe but exercised a paramount influence on the manners, fashions and literature of Europe. France thus combined in herself the political influence of ancient Rome with the cultural influence of ancient Greece. French was fast replacing Latin as the language of international diplomacy and of fashionable society all over Europe. The best European literature of the day belonged to France and the fame of the great French authors of the age filled all Europe. In several of the European courts, princes and nobles used French more elegantly and correctly than their mother tongue. No such servility was practised in England. Still in English fashionable society, it was considered a proof of one's culture to introduce scraps of French in one's conversation.

Under the influence of French, new principles of criticism and models of style found their way into English literature. The literary tricks of Donne and Cowley disappeared from English poetry. English prose under the influence of French became less stately and involved and became better fitted for controversy and narrative. Great English writers showed a preference for French to English words and the rhymed tragedy made its short-lived appearance in English literature.

**Q. 6.** *Write a short note on the immorality of English literature of the Restoration period. How does Macaulay account for it?*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 128-133).

**Q. 7.** *Explain the reasons that led to the appearance of such a large number of dramas during the Restoration period.*

**Ans.** The reason is to be found in the fact that the dramas were the most lucrative branch of polite literature during the Restoration. The sale of books was then so small that authors of the greatest fame could not expect more than a miserable sum for the copyright of their best works. Dryden, for example, did not get more than £ 250 for his volume of Fables, though it contained some of his best pieces. By writing for the theatre it was possible for authors to earn much larger sums with much less trouble. Southern made £ 700 by one play. Otway was raised to affluence for the time being by the success of his *Don Carlos*. It was, therefore, no wonder that authors, who depended for their subsistence on their pens, composed dramas whether they had any natural gift for the purpose or not. This explains why Dryden with all his talents as a satirist and a lyric poet devoted some of the best years of his life to the composition of dramas. Dryden did this for money—though nature had denied him the dramatic faculty.

**Q. 8.** *What do you know of the system of literary patronage that prevailed towards the close of the 17th century? Estimate its influence on the literature of the age.*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraph 135).

**Q. 9.** *What does Macaulay say of the party-spirit of the literary men during the reign of Charles II?*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraph 136).

**Q. 10.** *Explain the causes that led to the prevalence of the scientific spirit in the Restoration age.*

**Ans.** Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraph 137).

*Q. 11. Give an account of some of the useful results achieved by the study of experimental science in the reign of Charles II. Name some of the famous scientists of the age.*

*Ans.* The study of science led to reforms in agriculture and horticulture. New instruments of agriculture were invented, new vegetables introduced, and improvements were made in the system of planting trees. New experiments were made in horticulture and the art of growing the delicate fruits of warmer countries in England was introduced. Great advance was made in the science of medicine. It was freed from the bondage of tradition and was placed on an experimental basis. The new medical knowledge was profitably utilised in rebuilding London after the Great Fire. The new city was built on more sanitary principles, and great care was paid to better ventilation and drainage. The principles of town-construction, laid down by the Royal Society, though far from perfect, at least put an end to the ravages of the plague in England. It was during this period that Sir William Petty founded the science of political arithmetic so useful to students of politics. Great discoveries were made in Chemistry and foundations were laid of the sciences of Botany, Zoology and of the study of birds, fishes and fossils. One of the most useful services, that the study of experimental science performed in practical life, was that it exposed the fallacy of the old beliefs in witch-craft and alchemy. The noblest scientific achievements of the age were made in those departments of knowledge in which induction is combined with mathematical demonstration. The science of Statics was placed on a new foundation, the properties of the atmosphere were investigated, the laws of magnetism and the causes governing the ebb and flow of the sea and the course of the comets were discovered. But the greatest achievements in this department of physical science were those of Sir Isaac Newton. His fame might be said to have just dawned in 1685 because his greatest work, though completed, was not yet published.

The following were some of the eminent scientists of the age :—

Evelyn was the author of a treatise on planting, and Temple made experiments in fruit-culture. Sir William Petty was the

founder of the science of Political Arithmetic. Boyle made monumental discoveries in Chemistry and Sloane made researches in Botany. Ray made a new classification of birds and fishes. Woodward commenced the study of fossil and shells. John Wallis improved the science of Statics. Halley made momentous discoveries on the laws governing the courses of comets, ebb and flow of the sea and magnetism. Admittedly the greatest scientist of the age was Sir Isaac Newton. He startled the world with his discoveries in optics and especially his theories on the movements of material bodies, celestial and terrestrial.

Q. 12. *Describe the condition of the Fine Arts in England in the reign of Charles II.*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraph 139).

Q. 13. *Explain with context the following :*

- (1) *Yet it was such.....and Cecil* (Paragraph 115).
- (2) *The great Doctor Oates.....treason* (Paragraph 117).
- (3) *Freedom too.....or skill* (Paragraph 119).
- (4) *Thither the Londoners.....any news* (Paragraph 119).
- (5) *It furnished.....or Popery* (Paragraph 119).
- (6) *Lestrange alone set.....and martyrs* (Paragraph 121).
- (7) *An esquire passed...fowling pieces* (Paragraph 122).
- (8) *But they are familiar...and Schiller* (Paragraph 123).
- (9) *Of the too celebrated...Grand Cyrus* (Paragraph 124).
- (10) *At Cambridge.....in the original* (Paragraph 125).
- (11) *The language of Rome...a negotiator* (Paragraph 126).
- (12) *She had forced.....precedence* (Paragraph 127).
- (13) *The literary glory.....by contrast* (Paragraph 127).
- (14) *France had over.....over Rome* (Paragraph 127).
- (15) *The melodious.....pompos pedant* (Paragraph 127).
- (16) *And from France.....speedily did* (Paragraph 127).
- (17) *They looked.....torments of the other* (Paragraph 128).

- (18) *The wounds inflicted.....for virtue* (Paragraph 128).
- (19) *The Muses.....and Orford* (Paragraph 128).
- (20) *The young candidate.....new birth* (Paragraph 128).
- (21) *The Roundhead.....his scourges* (Paragraph 128).
- (22) *A mightier poet.....and gold* (Paragraph 130).
- (23) *The vigorous.....mild form* (Paragraph 130).
- (24) *The poison which.....with nausea* (Paragraph 130).
- (25) *None of them was.....in passively* (Paragraph 130).
- (26) *Nor does'the bargain.....a hard one* (Paragraph 134).
- (27) *But nature.....dramatic faculty* (Paragraph 134).
- (28) *Books were therefore.....dedicated* (Paragraph 135).
- (29) *The serrile Judges...cried out for it* (Paragraph 136).
- (30) *Bacon had sown.....ungenial season* (Paragraph 137).
- (31) *In a few months.... of the Rota* (Paragraph 137).
- (32) *Cowley, in lines.....to enter* (Paragraph 137).
- (33) *Chemistry divided.....Buckingham* (Paragraph 137).
- (34) *The spirit of Francis.....sobriety* (Paragraph 138).
- (35) *Medicine which in France...and Galen* (Paragraph 138).
- (36) *One after another.....before the light* (Paragraph 138).
- (37) *Soon there was.....the murrain* (Paragraph 138).
- (38) *Perhaps in an age.....only to his* (Paragraph 138).
- (39) *The austere beauty.....appreciating* (Paragraph 139).

Q. 15. *Explain the allusions in the following :—*

- (1) *The excitement caused...at the height* (Paragraph 117).
- (2) *A skirmish between...on the Danube* (Paragraph 119).
- (3) *What horrible.....of covenanters* (Paragraph 119).
- (4) *When in the reign.....public school* (Paragraph 125).
- (5) *She had summoned.....foot-stool* (Paragraph 127).
- (6) *Who christened their...Christmas day* (Paragraph 128).
- (7) *In their imitations.....an aduress* (Paragraph 133).
- (8) *Indeed it was not till...her sculptors* (Paragraph 139).

Q. 15. Write short notes on the following :—

*Royal progress ; the Downs ; censorship ; Janissaries ; Old Bailey ; their October ; broadside ; Trimmers ; charity girl ; Jane Grey ; Lucy Hutchinson ; a trifler so agreeable as La Fontaine ; a rhetorician so skilful as Bossuet ; Ovidian epistles ; Virgilian pastorals ; Supralapsarians ; sanctimonious jargon ; Shibboleth ; Antipuritan reaction ; sate on the filthy benches of the Hope or under the thatched roof of the Rose ; Absalom and Achitophel ; Verulamian doctrine ; the new philosophy ; that curious bubble of glass which has long amused children and puzzled philosophers ; Bedlam.*

### Paragraphs 140–158

Q. 1. “But it would be a great error to infer from the increase of complaint that there has been any increase of misery.” How does Macaulay establish this?

Or,

*Reproduce the substance of Macaulay's remarks on the general condition and wages of the common people in the Restoration period.*

Ans. Refer to the **Full Analysis of the Text**

(Paragraphs 140-152).

Q. 2. “It has certainly never yet been proved that pauperism was a less heavy burden or a less serious social evil during the last quarter of the 17th century than it is in our time.” Justify this remark after Macaulay.

Ans. Towards the middle of the 19th century the number of persons in receipt of poor relief varied from one-thirteenth to one-tenth of the total population. In the 17th century Gregory King estimated the proportion of paupers at one-fifth of the population and Devenant considered this estimate to be quite judicious.

The poor rate was the heaviest tax borne by the Englishmen of the 17th century. In Charles II's time, it amounted to nearly



seven hundred thousand pounds a year and rose within a short time to between eight and nine hundred thousand a year, *i.e.*, one sixth of the amount in Macaulay's time.

The population of England in the 17th century had been less than a third of what it was at the latter period. The minimum of wages in money being half, the allowance to paupers could not have then been more than half of what it was in the 19th century. Hence it follows that the proportion of paupers in receipt of poor relief must have been larger in the 17th than in Macaulay's days (*i.e.*, in the 19th century).

*Q. 3. How did the progress of civilisation from the 17th to the 19th century affect the material comforts of the common people of England?*

*Ans.* The progress of England did, in one respect, injuriously affect the material comforts of the English poorer classes. This was mainly due to the reclamation of the country from its previous wild condition. In the 17th century, large tracts of land were covered with marshes or forest; and the peasant could obtain there a palatable addition to his meals by catching wild birds or obtain his fuel free in winter or rear a flock of geese in the fens. He was deprived of these privileges in the 19th century because the waste lands and fens were then converted into orchards, cornfields and pasture lands.

This solitary disadvantage was more than counterbalanced by the manifold blessings that the progress of civilisation brought within the reach of all the members of society. The improved means of communication (better roads etc.) enabled the peasants to bring the produce of their fields quickly and easily to the markets. The labourer could securely walk the brilliantly lighted streets without fear of accidents or dangers from thieves and robbers. On account of the advance of the medical science the poorest labourer in the 19th century could then in case of accidents receive better treatment than the richest peers or merchant-princes could do in the 17th century. Some terrible diseases were extirpated; and others rendered impossible on account of the enforcement of the laws of sanitation. The term of human life was lengthened and death-rate substantially reduced. Modern London is a much healthier town than the London of the 17th century.

Q. 8. *Estimate the influence of the progress of civilisation on the English national character.*

*Ans.* The progress of civilisation has tended to soften the English national character. Englishmen have, in the course of ages, become not only a wiser but a kinder people. From the study of history and of lighter literature, it becomes evident that the Englishmen of the 17th century were less humane than their descendants. Their harshness and cruelty were perceptible in all departments of life—in workshops, schools, family life, methods of punishment and amusements. Masters used to beat their servants and husbands of respectable positions used to beat their wives. The only method of teaching, known to school masters, was by thrashing their pupils. The ferocity of party spirit was implacable. People of the lower classes faithfully imitated the ways of their superiors in their treatment of offenders of humble ranks. The prisons were hells on earth, the nurseries of crime and disease and criminals were executed with cruel torture. The amusements too were in keeping with the cruel disposition of the nation in those times. Gentlemen arranged parties of pleasure to Bridewell to see women whipped; and multitudes assembled to witness cruel fights in which the combatants maimed each other with deadly weapons.

*The present is assuredly a more sensitive and humane age.* Englishmen now have put an end to cruel customs in foreign countries, prevented children from working in factories, emancipated the negroes, abolished the cruel system of flogging in the army and will not allow even hardened criminals to be ill-fed or ill-treated. The more we study the history of the past, the more thoroughly we are convinced that the present is a merciful age, in which cruelty is abhorred. Every class has benefited by the change, but the class, that has derived the greatest benefit, has been the poorest, the most dependent and defenceless.

Q. 5. *How does Macaulay account for the tender regret that men generally feel for the past? Explain how discontent with the present helps the progress of human society.*

*Ans.* At the first sight it may seem quite strange that men should feel a regret for the past while society is continually progressing. Yet this tendency admits of an easy explanation.

Men are never satisfied with their present condition, it is this discontent with the present that leads them to magnify the happiness of the past. It should be borne in mind that this discontent also lies at the root of all progress and improvement. It is because men are never satisfied with the present that they try to improve their condition. If they were perfectly satisfied with their existing condition, there would have been an end to all improvement in the future.

Q. 6. *Explain with context the following:—*

- (1) *History was too much.....mechanic* (Paragraph 140).
- (2) *A great part of their history.....ballads* (Paragraph 148).
- (3) *It is the vehement.....against capital* (Paragraph 148).
- (4) *The truth is.....remedies them* (Paragraph 149).
- (5) *A man pressed to death.....overdriven ox* (Paragraph 156).
- (6) *At the assizes the lean.....and jury* (Paragraph 156).
- (7) *But if we resolutely.....fabulous antiquity* (Paragraph 158).

Q. 7. *Write short notes on the following:—*

*Portland stone : parochial relief : Bridewell : London in the cholera : golden age : benefited the few at the expense of the many : the rich did not grind the faces of the poor.*

### Questions on Introduction.

Q. 1. *Write a short note on the composition and publication of Macaulay's History of England. Give a brief description of the popularity of the work.*

Ans. See Introduction.

Q. 2. *State what you know of Macaulay's conception of History. How far was he able to realise it?*

Ans. See Introduction.

Q. 3. *What references to Macaulay's conception of History are to be found in the Third Chapter?*

Ans. Amongst other passages, the following may be mentioned as bearing directly on Macaulay's conception of History:

(1) Not less strange to us would be the garb and manners of the people, the furniture and the equipages, the interior of the shops and dwellings. Such a change in the state of a nation seems to be at least as well entitled to the notice of a historian as any change of the dynasty or of the ministry.  
(Paragraph 9)

(2) Readers: who take an interest in the progress of civilisation and of the useful arts, will be grateful to the humble topographer who has recorded these facts, and will perhaps wish that historians of far higher pretensions had sometimes spared a few pages from military evolutions and political intrigues, for the purpose of letting us know how the parlours and bedchambers of our ancestors looked.  
(Paragraph 75).

(3) History was too much occupied with courts and camps to spare a line for the hut of the peasant or for the garret of the mechanic.  
(Paragraph 140).

Q. 4. *Enumerate the chief merits and defects of Macaulay's History.*

Ans. See Introduction.

Q. 5. *Write a short note on Macaulay's style.*

Ans. See Introduction.

Q. 6. *Can we know anything of Macaulay's political views from the Third Chapter?*

Q. 7. *Give a critical estimate of the Third Chapter of Macaulay's History.*

Ans. See Introduction.

Q. 8. *Give a brief account of Macaulay's philosophy. How far do you agree with him?*

Ans. See Introduction.

Q. 9. *Quote instances from the Third Chapter of what you consider to be Macaulay's love of exaggeration.*

Ans. Refer to (a) the picture of the north country; (b) the description of the courtly naval officers; (c) the rural clergy; (d) the highways.

---





